LBP-660

SERVICE MANUAL

REVISION 1

Canon

AUG. 1998 **RY8-1382-010**

COPYRIGHT © 1998 CANON INC.

CANON LBP-660 REVISION 1 AUG. 1998 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

COPYRIGHT © 1998 CACON INC

Printed in Japan
Imprimé au Japon

Use of this manual should be strictly supervised to avoid disclosure of confidential information.

Prepared by

PERIPHERAL PRODUCTS QUALITY PLANNING DIV.
PERIPHERAL PRODUCTS TECHNICAL DOCUMENTATION DEPT.

CANON INC.

5-1, Hakusan 7-chome, Toride-City, Ibaraki-Pref. 302-8501, Japan

PREFACE

This Service Manual contains basic information required for field service to maintain the functions and product quality of the LBP-660 laser beam printer (hereinafter referred to as the "printer"). This manual consists of the following chapters:

Chapter 1: Product information
Features, specifications, operation, and installation

Chapter 2: Operation and Timing
A description of the operating principles and timing sequences of the electrical and mechanical systems.

Chapter 3: The Mechanical System
Explanation of mechanical construction, disassembly, reassembly and adjustment procedures.

Chapter 4: Troubleshooting
Maintenance and servicing, reference values and adjustments, troubleshooting procedures, lubricants and solvents.

Appendix: General circuit diagram, and list of signals/commands.

The information in this manual is subject to change as the product is improved or redesigned. All relevant information in such cases will be supplied in the form of Service Information bulletins.

A thorough understanding of the information in this Manual and any relevant Service Information bulletins is required to maintain printer performance and perform troubleshooting and repair.

Trademarks

Microsoft, MS-DOS and Windows are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or in other countries.

DTP system

This manual was produced on an Apple PowerMacintosh 9500/200 personal computer and output by an Apple LaserWriter 16/600 PS laser beam printer.

All graphics were produced with Macromedia FreeHand (J), and all documents and page layouts were created with QuarkXPress (E).

The video images were captured with SONY degital video camcorder and MASS microsystems Quickimage 24 video capture board, and modified with Adobe Photoshop™ (J).

CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1 PRODUCT INFORMATION

I. FEATURES 1-1
II. SPECIFICATIONS..... 1-2
A. Printer..... 1-2
III. ⚠ SAFETY INFORMATION..... 1-6
A. Handling the Laser/Scanner Unit..... 1-6
B. Toner Caution 1-6
C. Ozone Safety 1-6
IV. PARTS OF THE PRINTER 1-7
A. External Appearance 1-7
B. Cross-sectional View..... 1-8
V. INSTALLATION 1-9
A. Precautions 1-9
B. Storage and Handling of EP-A Cartridges 1-9
VI. MAINTENANCE BY CUSTOMER 1-13
VII. OPERATION..... 1-14
A. Microsoft Windows Printing System 1-14
B. Microsoft Windows NT..... 1-16
C. Microsoft Windows 95/98.. 1-50
D. Microsoft Windows 3.1 1-67
E. PCL Emulation 1-75
F. Printing Environment Setting and Test Printing 1-81

CHAPTER 2 OPERATION AND TIMING

I. BASIC OPERATION..... 2-1
A. Functional Configuration .. 2-1
B. Outline of the Electrical System 2-2
C. Printer Controller Input/Output Signals 2-3
D. Basic Sequence of Operation 2-5
II. LASER/SCANNER SYSTEM..... 2-8
A. Outline..... 2-8
B. Laser Control Circuit..... 2-9
C. Scanner Drive..... 2-12
III. IMAGE FORMATION SYSTEM . 2-13
A. Outline..... 2-13
B. Print Process..... 2-14
C. High-voltage Power Supply Circuit..... 2-20
IV. PICK-UP/FEED SYSTEM..... 2-22
A. Outline..... 2-22
B. Fixing/Delivery Unit..... 2-24
C. Jam Detection..... 2-26
V. SYSTEM INTERFACE..... 2-28
A. Outline..... 2-28
B. Video Interface..... 2-29
C. Video Controller PCB..... 2-30
D. Microsoft Windows Printing System Messages . 2-33
VI. POWER SUPPLY..... 2-37
A. Outline..... 2-37
B. Protective Function..... 2-38

CHAPTER 3 THE MECHANICAL SYSTEM

I. EXTERNALS..... 3-1
A. External Covers..... 3-1
B. Door Switch Unit..... 3-2
II. DRIVE SYSTEM..... 3-3
A. Drive Gears 3-3
B. Main Motor..... 3-3
III. PAPER TRANSPORT SYSTEM . 3-4
A. Pick-up Unit 3-4

B. Pick-up Roller Unit..... 3-7
C. Pick-up Solenoid 3-8
D. Separation Pad 3-8
IV. EXPOSURE SYSTEM..... 3-10
A. Laser/Scanner Unit 3-10
V. CHARGING/DEVELOPING & CLEANING SYSTEM..... 3-11
A. EP-A Cartridge..... 3-11
B. Transfer Charging Roller ... 3-12
VI. FIXING SYSTEM..... 3-14
A. Fixing Unit 3-14
VII. ELECTRONIC COMPONENTS .. 3-17
A. Video Controller PCB..... 3-17
B. Printer Controller PCB..... 3-18
VIII. CONNECTOR LOCATIONS..... 3-21

CHAPTER 4 TROUBLESHOOTING

I. MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING..... 4-1
A. Periodic Replacement Parts 4-1
B. Expected Service Lives of Consumable Parts..... 4-1
C. Periodic Servicing 4-1
II. LIST OF TOOLS..... 4-2
A. Standard Tools 4-2
B. Special Tools..... 4-3
III. MEASUREMENT AND ADJUSTMENT 4-4
A. Mechanical Adjustment..... 4-4
B. Electrical System Adjustment 4-5
IV. INITIAL CHECK..... 4-6
A. Environment 4-6
B. Paper..... 4-6
C. Consumable Parts..... 4-6
D. Other..... 4-6
V. IMAGE DEFECTS..... 4-7
A. Test Print..... 4-7
B. Image Defect Samples 4-12
C. Image Defect Troubleshooting 4-13
VI. MALFUNCTION TROUBLESHOOTING 4-19
VII. PAPER TRANSPORT SYSTEM TROUBLESHOOTING 4-23
A. Print Paper Jam 4-23
B. Incomplete Feed..... 4-25
VIII. LOCATION/FUNCTION OF ELECTRICAL PARTS..... 4-27
A. Switches/Sensors/ Solenoid 4-27
B. Motor/Others 4-28
C. Printing Circuit Boards..... 4-29
D. Connectors..... 4-30
IX. VARIABLE RESISTORS (VR), LEDs, CHECK PINS, JUMPERS, AND SWITCHES ON THE PCB..... 4-31
A. Printer Controller PCB..... 4-31
X. LIST OF LUBRICANTS, CLEANERS 4-32

APPENDIX

I. GENERAL CIRCUIT DIAGRAM A-1
II. LIST OF SIGNALS/ COMMANDS A-3

CHAPTER 1

PRODUCT INFORMATION

I. FEATURES 1-1
II. SPECIFICATIONS..... 1-2
III. ⚠ SAFETY INFORMATION..... 1-6
IV. PARTS OF THE PRINTER 1-7
V. INSTALLATION 1-9
VI. MAINTENANCE BY CUSTOMER 1-13
VII. OPERATION..... 1-14

I. FEATURES

1. Microsoft® Windows® Printing System
This printer utilizes the Microsoft Windows Printing System in which data is processed within the host computer. Through the implementation of this method, Canon has been able to increase the speed, yet reduce the cost compared to traditional printers, as there is no longer the need to carry out PDL conversion and image processing.

2. Microsoft Windows Series Compatible
The printer is compatible with the Microsoft Windows NT4.0, Microsoft Windows 95/98 and Microsoft Windows 3.1. As the printer supports PCL (host emulation) on Microsoft Windows 95/98 and 3.1, you can print the conventional MS-DOS applications in high quality.

3. Simplified Operation
This printer makes use of a bidirectional parallel host interface, allowing the user to set the printer and monitor the status on the host computer display. As a result, its operation has been simplified, eliminating complicated panel operation.

4. Compactness
The size of this printer has been realized through employing a vertical paper feed system which does not carry a cassette but carries a multi-purpose tray on the top. It is a compact printer best suited for deskside.

5. Excellent Print Quality and Speed
The printer is capable of printing 6 pages/min., the highest speed among the Canon compact LBPs. In addition to the engine resolution of 600 DPI, the printer adopts Canon's original image processing technology, Automatic Image Refinement. The result is high image-quality specifications of 2400 x 600 DPI.

6. Shortened Wait Time, Low Power Consumption & Low Noise
Through adoption of the on-demand fixing method, a shortened wait time and low power consumption have been achieved. By removing the fans, a lower noise level has been achieved.

7. Various Paper Types
This printer is capable of printing on plain paper, labels. OHT, envelops and other special paper.

8. WYSIWYG (What You See Is What You Get)
By using the host computer fonts, this printer is able to perfectly match what you see on the screen to what is printed, through WYSIWYG.

9. Toner Saver Mode
Through utilization of Toner Saver mode which enables the user to conserve the toner when test printing, reduction of the running cost has been made possible.

10. Trouble Shooter
The Trouble Shooter solves the problems when printing is impossible by destroying the settings or installing a different printer. This is not available for Microsoft Windows 3.1.

11. Form Overlay Function
This printer supports form overlay function which makes formats, headers and footers possible even if the application does not support them. This is not available for Microsoft Windows NT 4.0.

II. SPECIFICATIONS

A. Printer

1. Printer Engine

1)	Type	Desktop page printer
2)	Printing method	Electrophotography
3)	Printing speed	Approx. 6 pages/min. (A4-size paper)
4)	First print time **(Note 1)**	
	Face down	Approx. 23 sec.
	Face up	Approx. 21 sec.
5)	Wait time	Approx. 8 sec.
6)	Scanning pitch	
	Horizontal	600 dots/inch
	Vertical	600 raster lines/inch
7)	Image formation system	
	Laser	Semiconductor laser
	Scanning system	Four-faced prism mirror
	Photosensitive drum	OPC
	Charging	Roller charging
	Exposure	Laser scanning system
	Toner	Single-component dry toner
	Development	Toner projection development system
	Toner supply	Replaceable EP-A cartridge (able to print approx. 2,500 A4-sized print sheets: with image density set in the middle, and 4% dot density ratio)
	Image transfer	Roller transfer
	Separation	Curvature separation
	Cleaning	Blade
	Fixing	On-demand fixing method
8)	Feeding	Manual feed slot Multi-purpose tray
	Print Paper	Plain paper, colored paper, labels, recycled paper, OHT, post cards, envelopes
	Paper size (Multi-purpose tray /Manual feed slot)	Legal, Letter, A4, Executive, B5-sized plain paper (75g/m² ~ 90g/m² recommended paper), colored paper, labels, recycled paper, post cards, OHT and (W) 96mm x (L) 188mm (min.) ~ (W) 164mm x (L) 255mm (max.) sized envelopes
	Multi-purpose tray capacity	10mm stack Approx. 100 sheets of 75g/m² plain paper Approx. 7 envelopes **(Note 2)**
	Manual feed slot capacity	1 sheet
9)	Print delivery	Face-up/Face-down
	Face down	Approx. 50 sheets
	Face up	1 sheet
10)	Duplexing **(Note 3)**	Manual feeding only, plain paper (64g/m² ~ 90g/m² recommended paper)
11)	Environment	
	Temperature	10 ~ 32.5°C
	Humidity	20 ~ 80%RH (relative humidity)
	Air pressure	613 ~ 1013hPa (460 ~ 760mmHg)

12) Power consumption	Approx. 620W or less (100/120V Room temperature 20°C, with rated voltage input)	
	Approx. 520W or less (220/240V Room temperature 20°C, with rated voltage input)	
13) Noise (officially announced noise emission level based on ISO 9296)		
	Sound power level(1B=10dB)	5.4B or less (PRINT)
		Background noise level (STANDBY)
	Sound pressure level	42dB or less (PRINT)
	(Bystander position)	Background noise level (STANDBY)
14) Dimensions	336 (W) x 321 (D) x 249 (H) mm	
15) Weight	Approx. 6.4kg (without EP-A cartridge)	
16) Line voltage requirements	100-127V (±10%), 50/60Hz (±2Hz)	
	220-240V (-10%, +6%), 50Hz (±2Hz)	

Notes: **1.** When the printer is in READY mode at a room temperature of 20°C, the time taken from reception of the PRINT signal from the video controller until an A4-sized print is delivered.

2. When envelopes are wrinkled, straighten out the four edges before loading them into the multi-purpose tray.

3. Before starting manual duplexing, the user must uncurl the delivered paper, load it in the manual feed slot, and select face-up delivery.

2. Video Controller

1)	Printing System	Microsoft Windows Printing System
2)	Standard Emulation	PCL Emulation (host-base)
3)	Font	Refer to pages 1-4 & 1-5.
4)	Effective Printing Area	Refer to page 1-5.
5)	CPU (frequency)	None
6)	ROM Size	None
7)	RAM Size	128KB
8)	Interface	Bidirectional 8-bit parallel interface (Centronics specifications)

Note: As the Printing System, Emulation and Fonts for the printer are not stored in the video controller, they need to be installed from the floppy disks packed with the printer into the host computer (see section VII in this chapter).

<Internal Character Sets>

• TrueType Fonts for the Microsoft Windows Printing System

Table 1-2-1

Type face	Size	Style	Remarks
Lucida Blackletter	TrueType	Regular	
Lucida Bright	TrueType	Regular	
		Demibold	
		Italic	
		Demibold Italic	
		Math Extensions	
		Math Italic	
		Math Symbol	
Lucida Calligraphy	TrueType	Regular	
Lucida Fax	TrueType	Regular	
		Demibold	
		Italic	
		Demibold Italic	
Lucida Handwriting	TrueType	Regular	
Lucida Sans	TrueType	Regular	
		Demibold	
		Italic	
		Demibold Italic	
Lucida Sans Typewriter	TrueType	Regular	
		Bold	
		Oblique	
		Bold oblique	

• Bit Map Font for PCL4 emulation

Table 1-2-2

Type face	Size	Style	Remarks
Courier	12	Regular	For portrait and landscape printing.
	12	Bold	
Line printer	8.5	Regular	
Post Latin	8	Regular	
	10	Regular	
	10	Bold	
	10	Italic	
	12	Regular	
	12	Bold	
	12	Italic	
	14	Bold	For portrait printing.
Sans Serif Bold	8	Regular	
	10	Regular	
	10	Bold	
	10	Italic	
	12	Regular	
	12	Bold	
	12	Italic	
	14	Bold	

<Effective Printing Area>

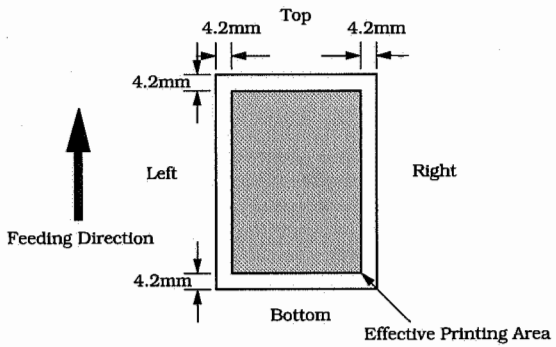


Figure 1-2-1

Note: Effective printing area varies depending on the size of paper

Specifications are subject to change with product improvement.

III. ⚠ SAFETY INFORMATION

A. Handling the Laser/Scanner Unit

An invisible laser beam is emitted from within the laser/scanner unit.

The laser beam can cause eye damage if exposed, so be sure to not disassemble the laser/scanner unit. It is not necessary to adjust the laser/scanner unit in this printer in the field.

The following label is attached to the laser/scanner unit cover.


DANGER- Invisible laser radiation when open. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM.
CAUTION- INVISIBLE LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. AVOID EXPOSURE TO BEAM.
ATTENTION- RAYONNEMENT LASER INVISIBLE EN CAS D'O UVERTURE. EXPOSITION DANGEREUSE AU FAISCEAU.
VORSICHT- UNSICHTBARE LASERSTRAHLUNG, WENN ABDECKUNG GEÖFFNET. NICHT DEM STRAHL AUSSETZEN.
ATTENZIONE- RADIAZIONE LASER INVISIOILE IN CASO DI APERTURA. EVITARE L'ESPOSIZIONE AL FASCIO.
PRECAUCION- RADIACION LASER INVISIBLE CUANDO SE ABRE. EVITAR EXPONERSE AL RAYO.
VARO! - AVATTAESSA OLET ALTTIINA NÄKYMÄTTÖMÄLLE LASERSÄTEILYLLE. ÄLÄ KATSO SÄTEESEEN.
VARNING!- OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD. BETRAKTA EJ STRÅLEN.
ADVARSEL! - USYNLIG LASER STRÅLING. NÅR DENNE ER ÅBEN. UNDGÅ BESTRÅLING.
ADVARSEL- USYNLIG LASERSTRÅLING NÅR DEKSEL ÅPNES. UNNGÅ EKSPONERING FOR STRÅLEN.
注意 このカバーの内部では不可視レーザー光が放射されています。 レーザー光にさらされないようにしてください。

Figure 1-3-1

B. Toner Caution

The toner is non-toxic substance composed of minute plastic and color pigment components.

If toner adheres to the skin or clothing, remove as much as possible with a dry tissue, then wash with cold water. If hot water is used, the toner will solidify and become difficult to remove.

Toner will easily break down vinyl materials, therefore avoid letting the toner come into contact with vinyl.

C. Ozone Safety

An infinitesimal amount of ozone gas (O_3) is generated during corona discharge from the charging roller. The ozone gas is only emitted while the printer is operating.

This printer meets the ozone emission reference value set by Underwriters Laboratory (UL) at the time it is shipped from the factory.

IV. PARTS OF THE PRINTER

A. External Appearance

1. Main Unit

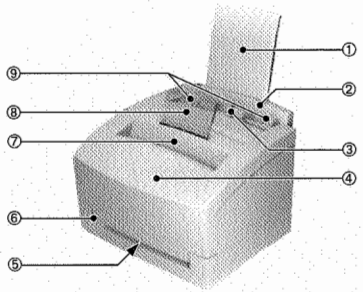


Figure 1-4-1

1: Paper support
2: Multi-purpose tray
3: Manual feed slot
4: Front cover
5: Face-up delivery slot
6: Delivery switching lever
7: Face-down delivery slot
8: Face-down delivery tray
9: Paper guides

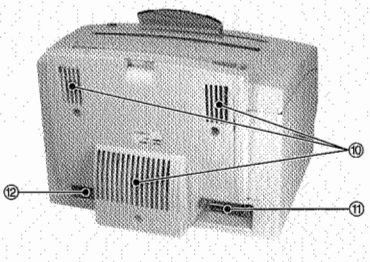


Figure 1-4-2

10: Ventilation slots
11: Interface connector
12: Power receptacle

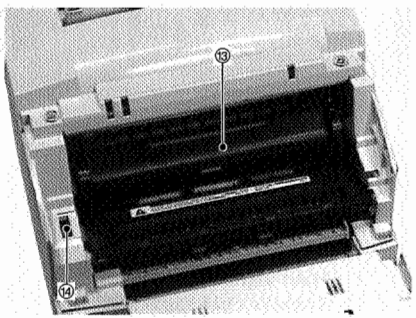


Figure 1-4-3

13: EP-A cartridge
14: Paper release lever

B. Cross-sectional View

1. Cross-sectional of the Printer

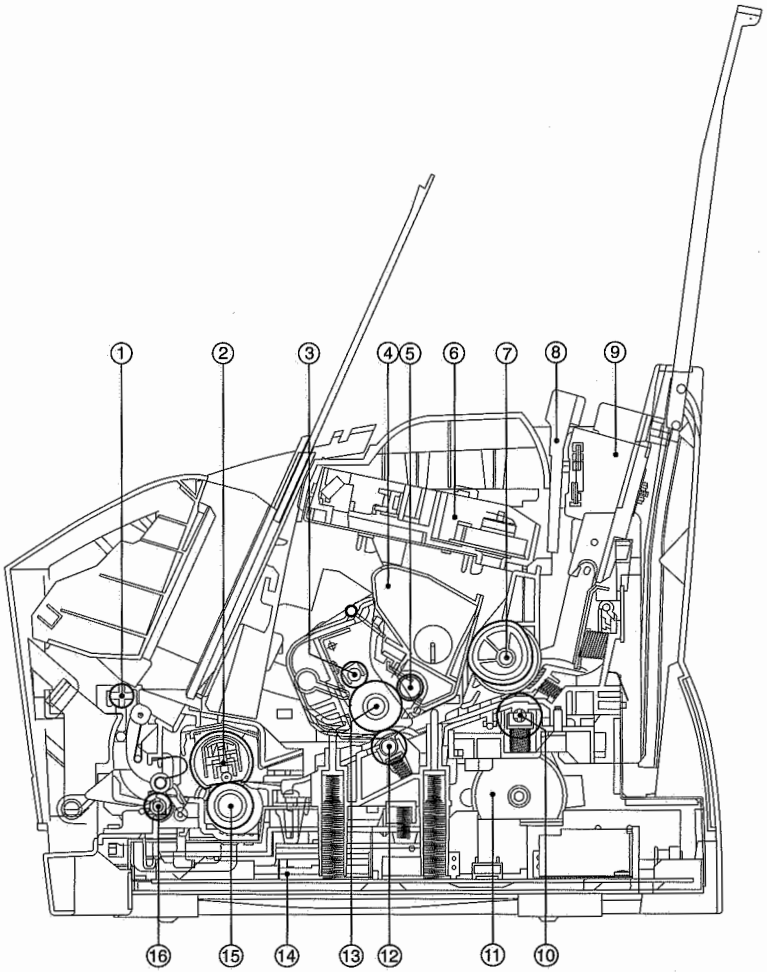


Figure 1-4-4

1: Face-down delivery roller
2: Fixing film unit
3: Primary charging roller
4: EP-A cartridge
5: Developing cylinder
6: Laser/scanner unit
7: Pick-up roller
8: Manual feed slot
9: Multi-purpose tray
10: Paper feed roller
11: Main motor
12: Transfer charging roller
13: Photosensitive drum
14: Printer controller PCB
15: Pressure roller
16: Fixing unit delivery roller

V. INSTALLATION

A. Precautions

1) This product has been carefully adjusted and strictly inspected before packing and shipment. To ensure that it operates as intended, it is important that it is installed correctly. Service engineers must sufficiently understand the performance of the printer, install it in a location with the appropriate environment, and conduct the necessary checks.

2) Before taking the printer to the customer's premises, the following conditions at the installation location should be confirmed:

- Power must be directly connectable to a socket with a supply voltage within 10% of the rated voltage.
- The temperature should be in a range from 10 to 32.5°C and the relative humidity from 20 to 80 %. Avoid areas close to water faucets, boilers, humidifiers, or refrigerators.
- Avoid areas near open flames, dusty locations, areas which emit ammonia gas, and sites directly exposed to sunlight. When exposure to direct sunlight is unavoidable, it is recommended that curtains are hung.
- The room should be well ventilated.
- The printer should be placed on a level surface.
- If the printer is to be set up on a desk, be sure a sturdy desk is used.
- Set the printer at a suitable distance from the wall being sure to leave enough clearance for easy operation (see Fig. 1-5-1).

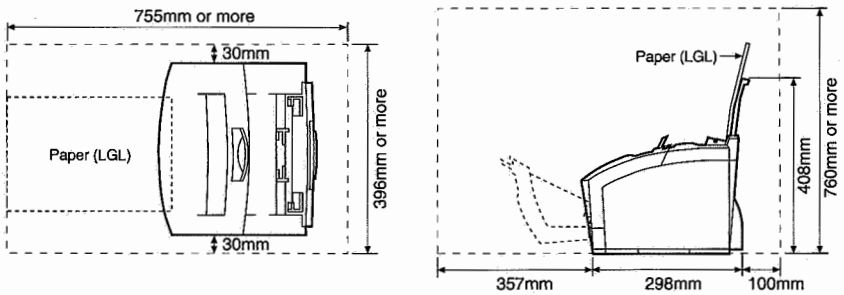


Figure 1-5-1

3) When metals are moved from a cold to a warm place, condensation may appear. This can lead to various troubles when operating. When moving the printer to a warm area from a cold one, leave it packed in its box for at least an hour to acclimatize to room temperature.

B. Storage and Handling of EP-A Cartridges

The natural environment will change the EP-A cartridge whether sealed or installed in the printer over time regardless of the number of prints. The progression of this natural change depends largely on the storage and installation environments, therefore care needs to be taken when storing and handling the cartridges.

a. Storing Sealed EP-A Cartridge Packages

When storing EP-A cartridges in warehouses or workshops, ensure that they are kept within the range shown in Table 1-5-1. Also note the following:

1) Avoid areas exposed to direct sunlight.
2) Do not place them in locations which are subject to severe vibration.
3) Do not bump or drop the cartridges.
4) Avoid high temperature environments. Keep the cartridges below 35°C.

Table 1-5-1 Humidity / Storage conditions

Temperature	Normal (total storage time × 9/10)		0 to 35°C
	Severe (total storage time × 1/10)	High	35 to 40°C
		Low	–20 to 0°C
Temperature change (within 3 minutes or so)			40°C→15°C –20°C→25°C
Relative humidity	Normal (total storage time × 9/10)		35 to 85% RH
	Severe (total storage time × 1/10)	High	85 to 95% RH
		Low	10 to 35% RH
Air pressure			613 to 1013hPa (460 to 760 mmHg)

Note: Total storage time is a year from the date of the manufacture displayed on the EP-A toner cartridge package.

b. Storing Unsealed EP-A Cartridge Packages

An organic photoconductor (OPC) is used in the photosensitive drum, therefore intensive light will damage the drum. Toner is also contained in EP-A cartridges, therefore it is essential to thoroughly explain to customers the various storage and handling procedures of opened packages.

Opened-package storage environment

1) Avoid areas which are exposed to direct sunlight such as near windows. Avoid leaving the packages in cars for an extended period of time as high temperatures can be damaging.
2) Avoid high temperature/high humidity and low temperature/low humidity environments. Refrain from keeping them in areas subject to abrupt temperature or humidity changes, like near air conditioners.
3) Avoid dusty areas or locations which emit ammonia or organic solvent gases.
4) Keep the EP-A cartridge below 35°C.
5) Avoid placing the packages near CRT displays, disk drive units, and floppy disks.

c. Notes on Handling

1) Before installing a new EP-A cartridge in the printer, hold the EP-A cartridge horizontally as shown below, and gently rock it 5-6 times at 45° in both directions to evenly distribute the toner. Do not rock the cartridge in other ways as toner may leak from the developing or cleaner units.
   To ensure that output images are not spoilt by a toner leak, print 3 to 5 sheets of test patterns after loading the cartridge in the printer.

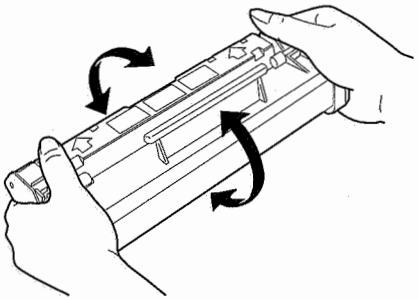


Figure 1-5-2

2) If blank spots appear on the output image during printing due to an uneven distribution of toner in the cartridge, shake the cartridge as indicated in 1) above to equally distribute the toner.
3) Do not stand the EP-A cartridge on end or turn it upside down as shown in Fig. 1-5-3.

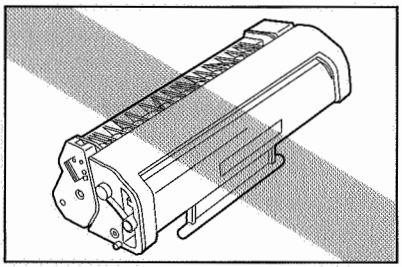


Figure 1-5-3

4) Do not open the protective shutter of the photosensitive drum and never touch the drum surface. If the drum surface is dirty, clean it with a flannel cloth dipped in toner. Do not use solvents.
5) Do not disassemble the EP-A cartridge.
6) Do not expose the cartridge to vibration or shock.
7) The photosensitive drum is easily damaged by intensive light. If it is exposed to strong light, blank spots or black stripes may appear on the printed image.
   Faulty print images such as blank spots or black stripes can be corrected by stopping the printer momentarily. However, if the drum is exposed to light for any extended period of time,

the blank spots and black stripes may remain even after stopping the printer. To prevent this, be sure to always place the unsealed cartridges in their box or cover them when removed from the printer. Do not leave them uncovered.

Reference: If the cartridges are exposed to ordinary light for five minutes then left in a dark area for another five minutes, it is possible to return the print quality to a virtually permissible level. However, do not expose the cartridges to direct sunlight.

VI. MAINTENANCE BY CUSTOMER

Table 1-6-1

Item	Maintenance description
Cartridge	Shake or replace the cartridge as necessary.
External cover	Clean as necessary.

VII. OPERATION

A. Microsoft Windows Printing System

1. Concerning Microsoft Windows Printing System

Microsoft Windows Printing System printing software reduces the processing time, and simplifies operations while printing in the Microsoft Windows environment.

Microsoft Windows Printing System performs the following procedures to enable easy and speedy printing;

- Instead of converting application print data into the printer's page description language (PDL), this software changes the data into resource data (data form adapting GDI data) corresponding to the writing system commands (GDI data).
- The processing of the resource data corresponding to the writing system commands (GDI data) is developed into dot data in the host computer.
- The printing environment can be set in the dialog box on the host computer screen.
- The printer status is shown on the host computer screen, so that the printing completion time, the feeding status of the print paper, error conditions, etc. can be confirmed on the host computer screen.

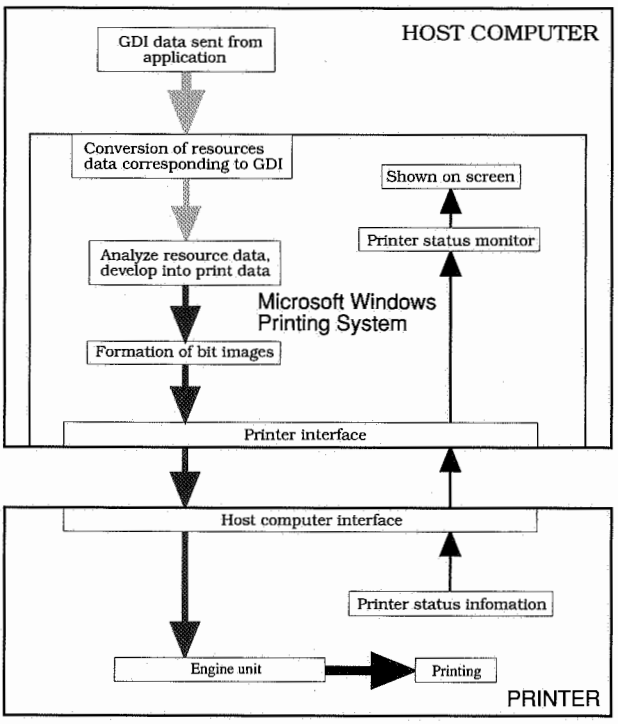


Figure 1-7-1

Note: GDI: Graphics device interface
Graphic writing system to perform printing and screen display in the Windows environment (and a graphic writing system interface for the application).

Microsoft Windows Printing System is installed on Microsoft Windows NT, Microsoft Windows 95/98 and Microsoft Windows 3.1 for use. The installation is done using the Microsoft Windows Printing System installation disks (CD-ROM or floppy disks).

Microsoft Windows Printing System specifies the paper size, document size, number of copies and print quality on the computer screen. The operation methods of the dialog boxes differ for Microsoft Windows NT, Microsoft Windows 95/98 and Microsoft Windows 3.1.

The installation procedures and operation of Microsoft Windows Printing System are explained on the following pages. (Microsoft Windows NT: Page 1-16, Microsoft Windows 95/98: Page 1-50, Microsoft Windows 3.1: Page 1-67, Others: 1-75)

B. Microsoft Windows NT

1. Installation of Microsoft Windows Printing System

A Windows Printing System installation disk is packed with the printer.

The types and contents are as follows:

Types:

- A 5-inch CD-ROM disk: Europe (English for Europe, German, French, Italian, and Spanish)
- A 3.5-inch 1.44MB floppy disk: Chinese, Taiwanese, English (for non-Europe)

Contents:

- Microsoft Windows Printing System V2.0 driver
- WPS print processor
- Status window
- On-line help
- Voice message
- Installer
- Uninstaller
- Font installer (Europe version)
- Troubleshooter
- Network status monitor

a. Operating environment

The following environment is required to install Microsoft Windows Printing System:

● PC hardware

This printer supports an IBM-PC or a compatible machine. Operating conditions of them are as shown below.

< Minimum operating environment >

- CPU: Pentium 90MHz or above
- RAM: 24MB or above
- Available memory on the disk: 10MB or above
- Printer port: Standard Centronics parallel port (when the printer is connected as a local printer)
- CD-ROM drive (Europe version)
- Floppy drive: 3.5-inch 1.44MB (Chinese, Taiwanese, English (for non-Europe) version)
- Sound: PCM sound module is required to use the sound.

<Recommended operating environment >

- CPU: Pentium 166MHz or above
- RAM: 48MB or above
- Printer port: ECP
- Screen size: VGA with resolution 640 x 480 or above, or Super VGA color monitor
- Sound: PCM sound module is required to use the voice message.

● OS software

One of the following OS software is required:

- Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 Workstation
- Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 Server

This printer does not operate on Microsoft Windows NT 3.51, Microsoft Windows 95/98/3.1/WfW/CE, nor OS/2. As a basic rule, Windows language and the software language of this printer must match.

Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 Workstation/Server is required for print server.

● Printer cable
  • Use bidirectional 8-bit parallel interface cable for IBM-PC.
  • Connections through the printer selector and printer buffer are not supported.

b. Installation procedures

● Connecting the printer as a local printer

This section describes how to install the Microsoft Windows Printing System for using the printer as a local printer. Install it to the host computer by following the procedures below.

For details, see the user's manual packed with the printer.

1. Switch on the computer to which the printer is connected and start up Microsoft Windows NT.
2. Log on as an Administrator.
3. Use one of the following methods to start up the Add Printer Wizard:
   • Start button / Settings / Printers / Printers folder / Add Printer
   • My Computer / Printers folder / Add Printer
   • Explorer / Desktop / My Computer / Printers folder/ Add Printer
4. Add Printer Wizard (Initial screen)
   The Add Printer Wizard window provides the following two choices:
   • My Computer: All settings will be managed and configured on the computer.
   • Network printer sever: Connect to a printer on another machine. All settings for this printer are managed by a print server that has been set up by an administrator.
   Select My Computer to install Microsoft Windows Printing System for using the printer as a local printer. In case of using the printer as a network printer, see Page 1-18 for details.
5. Add Printer Wizard (Port selection)
   Select the port to which the printer is connected. If the port is not available, click the Add Port button to create a new port.
   If the check box for Enable printer pooling is selected, you can select multiple ports in the Available ports list box simultaneously.
6. Add Printer Wizard (Printer selection 1)
   <Installation media: CD-ROM>
   Insert the CD-ROM in the computer and click the Have Disk button to open the Install From Disk dialog box.
   Type the drive name for the CD-ROM drive in the Copy manufacture's files from text box, then click the Browse button.
   <Installation media: Floppy disk>
   Click the Have Disk button to open the Install From Disk dialog box.
   Insert the floppy disk in to the drive indicated in the Copy manufacture's files from text box and click the OK button.
   If you insert the disk into another disk drive, type the drive name in the text box and then click the OK button.
7. Add Printer Wizard (Printer selection 2)
   When the name of the printer appears in the Printers list box, confirm that it is selected and then click the Next button.
8. Add Printer Wizard (Overwrite selection)
   This window appears only when the same driver has already been installed.
   Select whether or not the existing driver is to be overwritten by the newly installed driver.
9. Add Printer Wizard (Printer name change)
   Type the printer name in the Printer Name text box. Select whether or not the printer is to be a default printer.
10. Add Printer Wizard (Sharing/non-sharing selection)
    Select whether or not the PC is to be designated as the printer server and the printer is to

be shared by other client PCs on a network. You can also specify the printer sharing settings after you have installed the Microsoft Windows Printing System.

11. Add Printer Wizard (Test Page Printing selection)
    Select whether or not to print a test page after you have finished installing the Microsoft Windows Printing System.
12. Copying Files
    When the installation begins, the Copying Files dialog box appears.
13. End of Installation
    When the installation has completed, restart Microsoft Windows as instructed by the on-screen message. When the printer is connected, you will be asked whether you want to print a test page. Print a test page to confirm that the installation has been made properly.

● Connecting to the network printer

Follow the procedures described in this section to perform the installation on a client PC when you want to designate the PC to which the printer is connected as a network print server and to use the printer as a network printer. Refer to the User's Manual packed with the printer for details.

Notes: 1. Precondition for starting the installation
- The Microsoft Windows Printing System should be installed properly in the print server to which the client PC is to be connected, and the printer should be designated as a shared printer. See Page 1-29 for information on how to designate the printer as a shared printer.
- The client must have the access privileges to connect to the server and the shared printer.

2. If the printer is connected to the Microsoft Windows NT network, the printer can be used not only by Microsoft Windows NT clients, but also by Microsoft Windows 95/98/3.1 and Microsoft Windows for Workgroups clients.

If the client that is using the printer as a network printer is running Microsoft Windows NT, simply adding the printer automatically downloads and installs the printer driver and the Network Status Monitor from the print server. Administrator privileges are not needed to add the printer. Normally, anyone can do this.

1. Switch on the client PC, start up Microsoft Windows NT and log in.
2. Use one of the following methods to start up the Add Printer Wizard:
   - Start button / Settings / Printers / Printers folder / Add Printer
   - My Computer / Printers folder / Add Printer
   - Explorer / Desktop / My Computer / Printers folder/ Add Printer
3. Add Printer Wizard (Initial screen)
   The Add Printer Wizard window allows you to select between the following two:
   - My Computer: All settings will be managed and configured on the computer.
   - Network printer sever: Connect to a printer on another machine. All settings for this printer are managed by a print server that has been set up by an administrator.

   Select Network printer server to use the printer as a network printer. In case of using the printer as a local printer, see Page 1-17 for details.
4. Connect to Printer
   Double-click on the print server name shown in the Shared Printers list box, and select the printer name to which you want to connect. Click on the OK button to connect to the selected network printer.
   If the connection could not be made, it will be indicated in the Connect to Printer dialog box.

5. Add Printer Wizard (Installation completion)
   This window tells you that the network printer has been successfully installed. Click on the Finish button to finish the Add Printer Wizard.

2. Using the Microsoft Windows Printing System

The Microsoft Windows Printing System uses Properties dialog boxes to set print environments.

The table on Page 1-81 shows the list of print environments that can be set by the Microsoft Windows Printing System dialog boxes.

The main dialog boxes of the Microsoft Windows Printing System are described below.

a. Printer Properties

How to open the printer properties.

The printer properties can be opened by the following methods.

From the Microsoft Windows desktop

1) Use one of the following methods to open the Printers folder.
   - Start button/Settings/Printers
   - My Computer/Printers
   - Control Panel/Printers
2) Open the printer to which you want to connect from the Printers folder.
   - Click the right mouse button on the Canon LBP-660 icon and select the Properties.
   - Double-click on the Canon LBP-660 icon to open the Canon LBP-660 print queue window, and select the Properties on the Printer menu.

From the Microsoft Windows application

How to open the Printer Properties differs according to each application. See the application manual.

From the Microsoft Windows shortcut

- To create a shortcut, open the Printers folder, drag the Canon LBP-660 icon with the right mouse button to the desktop, and select the Create Shortcut(s) Here. (See the Microsoft Windows NT User's guide for details.) Double-click on the shortcut icon to pen the printer window and select the Properties from the Printer menu.
- To create a shortcut to the Printers folder, open the My computer, drag the Printers icon with the right mouse button to the desktop, and select the Create Shortcut(s) Here. (See the Microsoft Windows NT User's guide for details.) Double-click on the shortcut icon to open the Printers folder, click right mouse button on the Canon LBP-660, and select the Properties.

The Printer Properties dialog box contains the 6 tabs common to all Microsoft Windows NT printers according to the Microsoft Windows NT User Interface model. You can click on each tab or move the focus and then press right or left cursor key to open the tab and make settings.

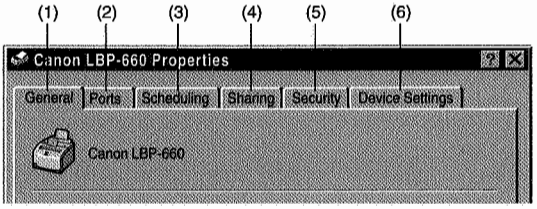


Figure 1-7-2

(1) General : Makes settings relating to the entire printer driver.
(2) Ports : Selects the port to which the printer is connected.
(3) Scheduling : Makes settings relating to print schedule.
(4) Sharing : Designates whether the printer is shared.
(5) Security : Sets the security for the printer.
(6) Device Settings : Sets the printer device.

Click the OK button to store the items set in each tab and to close the Print Properties dialog box. Click the Cancel button to close the box without storing the items set in each tab.

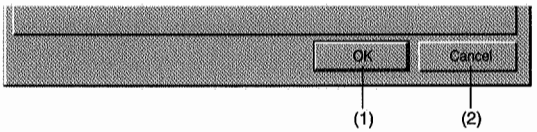


Figure 1-7-3

(1) OK : Changes the items in this dialog box and closes the box.
(2) Cancel : Closes this dialog box without changing its items.

Details of each tab are described below.

● **General Tab**

The settings in this tab apply to the entire printer driver. This tab can be opened by clicking on the General tab in the Properties dialog box.

The General tab is shown in Figure 1-7-4.

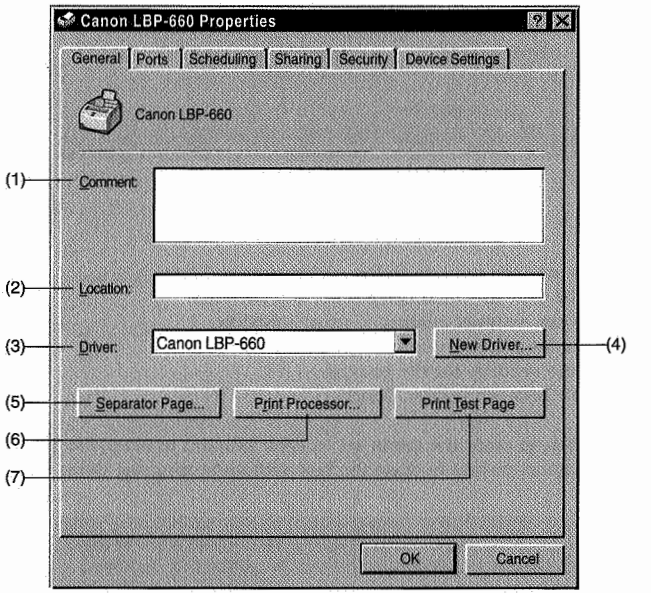


Figure 1-7-4

(1) Comment : Enter comments on the printer.
(2) Location : Enter information on the printer location.
(3) Driver : Displays the list of the installed printer drivers.
(4) New Driver : Click on this button when installing a new or updated printer driver.
(5) Separator Page : As this printer does not support separator pages, clicking on this button will not print a separator page.
(6) Print Processor : Displays the Print Processor dialog.
(7) Print Test Page : Print a test page supported by the Windows NT as standard.

◆ **Print Processor dialog box**

In the Print Processor dialog box, you can specify the print processor and spool data type used for this printer. The Printer Processor dialog box can be opened by clicking on the Print Processor button in the General tab in the Properties dialog box.

The Print Processor dialog box is shown in Figure 1-7-5.

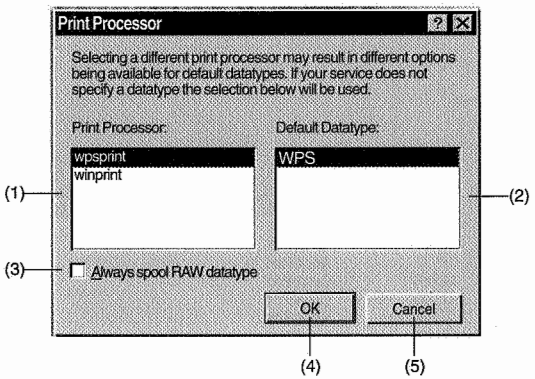


Figure 1-7-5

(1) Print Processor : Specifies the print processor used for this printer. Normally, wpsprint (WPS print processor) and winprint (Windows standard print processor) are available.

(2) Default Datatype : Displays the list of spool datatype available for the selected print processor in the Print Processor list box. Always select WPS for this printer.

(3) Always spool RAW datatype : Select the check box when you want to always spool data as RAW datatype. The "Could not start print job." error occurs in the application and the printer cannot print when the check box for Always spool RAW datatype is selected. Therefore, always keep it off.

(4) OK : Changes the items in this dialog box and closes the box.

(5) Cancel : Closes this dialog box without changing its items.

● **Ports tab**

Use this tab to select the port to which the printer is connected. It can be opened by clicking the Ports tab in the Properties dialog box.

The Ports tab is shown in Figure 1-7-6.

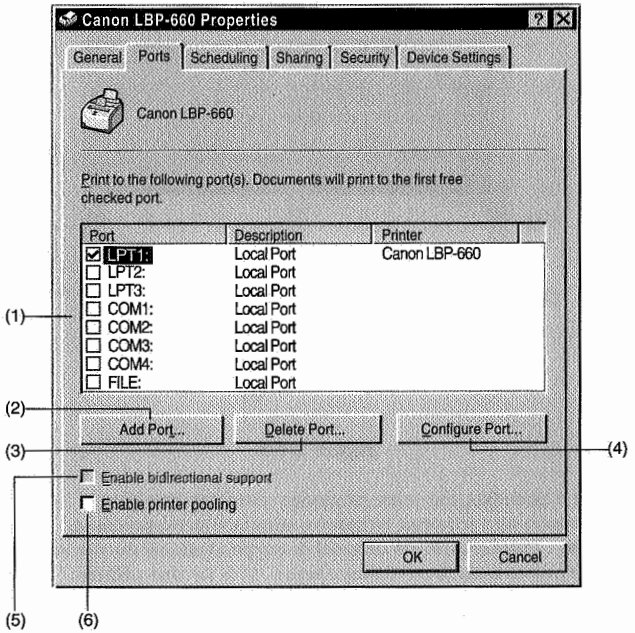


Figure 1-7-6

(1) Print to the following port(s) : List of check boxes for the ports to which the printer can be connected. Select one or more port(s) to which the printer is to be connected. The error dialog box will appear if an nonexistent LPT port has been selected and a print is commanded.

(2) Add Port : Opens the Printer Ports dialog box which enables you to add ports. (See Page 1-25.)

(3) Delete Port : Opens the Delete Port dialog box which enables you to delete selected ports.

(4) Configure Port : Opens the Configure LPT Port dialog box which enables you to set ports. (See Page 1-26.)

(5) Enable bidirectional support : Selects whether or not the Language Monitor is used for bidirectional communication between the PC and printer. As this printer performs the bidirectional communication with the PC without Language Monitor, this check box is not available.

(6) Enable printer pooling : Selects whether or not the printer pool is used. Select the check box when you want to select multiple ports in the Print to the following ports list box.

◆ **Printer Ports dialog box**

Use this dialog box to add ports to which the printer is to be connected if necessary. It can be opened by clicking the Add Ports button in the Ports tab in the Properties dialog box.

The Printer Ports dialog box is shown in Figure 1-7-7.

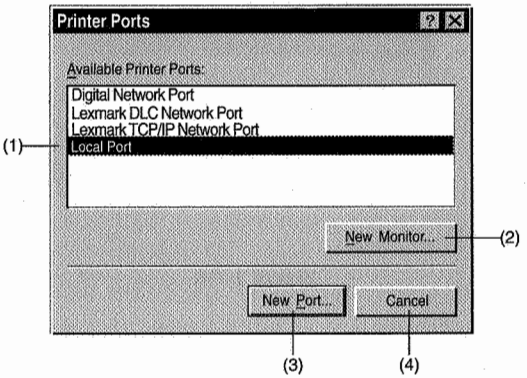


Figure 1-7-7

(1) Available Printer Ports : Displays the list of ports which can be added. Select one port from the list. The printer cannot be connected to ports other than Local Port.

(2) New Monitor : Installs the print monitor. Not available for this printer.

(3) New Port : Opens the Port Name dialog box which enables you to enter the name of the port to be added.

(4) Cancel : Returns to the Ports tab without changing the items.

◆ **Configure LPT Ports dialog box**

Use this dialog box to set the time-out period until the PC notifies the user that the printer does not respond. It can be opened by clicking the Configure Ports button in the Ports tab.

The Configure LPT Port dialog box is shown in Figure 1-7-8.

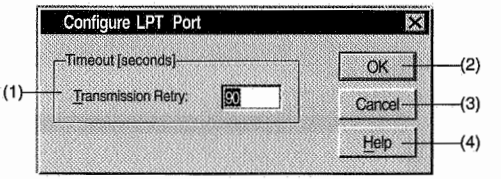


Figure 1-7-8

(1) Transmission Retry : Sets the time-out period of ports. (Unit: second)
(2) OK : Changes the setting in this dialog box and returns to the Printer Ports tab.
(3) Cancel : Returns to the Printer Ports tab without changing the setting in this dialog box.
(4) Help : Opens the Help topic.

● **Scheduling tab**

Use this tab to schedule a set time for printing, to set printing priorities, and to specify the print data spooling method. It can be opened by clicking the Scheduling tab in the Properties dialog box.

The Scheduling tab is shown in Figure 1-7-9.

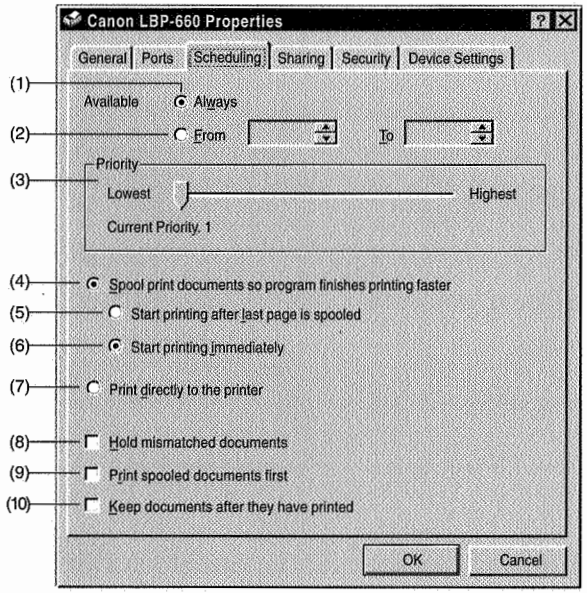


Figure 1-7-9

(1) Always : Keeps the printer ready to print for 24 hours a day.

(2) From to : Keeps the printer ready to print only during the specified period. When this button is selected, specific time can be entered in the spin boxes.

(3) Priority : Sets default printing priorities of documents. Documents with high priorities will be printed before documents with low priorities.

(4) Spool print documents so program finishes printing faster : Sets this option on to spool page at printing. Keep this option on for this printer. When this option is on, option buttons from (6) to (10) become available.

(5) Start printing after last page is spooled : Starts printing after the last page of the document is spooled.

(6) Start printing immediately : Starts printing after the first page of the document is spooled.

(7) Print directly to the printer : Sends the data directly to the printer without spooling. Keep this setting off as printing cannot be conducted from applications when it is on. (The Warning dialog box will appear when it is set on.)

(8) Hold mismatched documents : The spooler compares the settings of the printer and document before sending the document and holds the document in the queue if the data do not match. This option does not function on this printer. A similar function is performed by the status window.

(9) Print spooled documents first : If there is a spooled document when selecting the document to be printed next, prints the spooled document first even if its printing priority is lower than that of the document being spooled at that time.

(10) Keep documents after they have printed : Sets the spooler not to delete documents after they have been printed.

● **Sharing Tab**

Use this tab to designate whether or not the printer is shared with other clients through the network. It can be opened by clicking on the Sharing tab in the Properties dialog box.

The Sharing tab is shown in Figure 1-7-10.

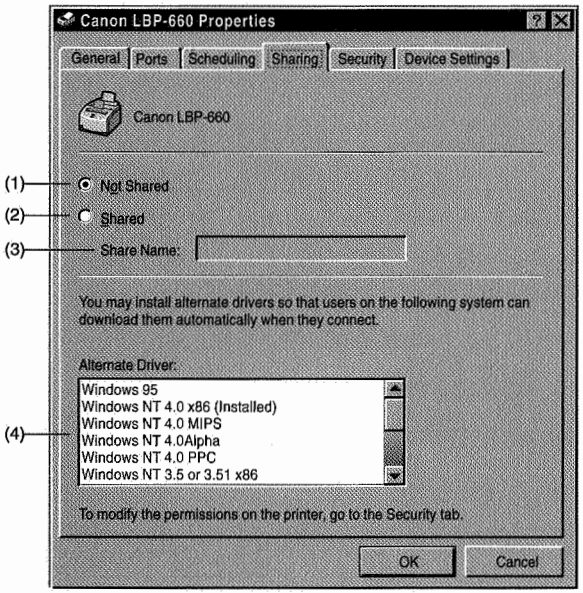


Figure 1-7-10

(1) Not Shared : Does not use the printer as a network printer.

(2) Shared : Uses the printer as a network printer.

(3) Share Name : Available only when the Shared option button is selected. Change the network printer name appears in the box if necessary.

(4) Alternate Driver : Enables you to install driver of different version or with different CPU as an alternate driver. As this printer does not support Alternate Driver, do not select the alternate drivers in this list box.

● **Security Tab**

Use this tab to set the security for the printer such as Permissions, Auditing, and Ownership. It can be opened by clicking the Security tab in the Properties dialog box.

The Security tab is shown in Figure 1-7-11.

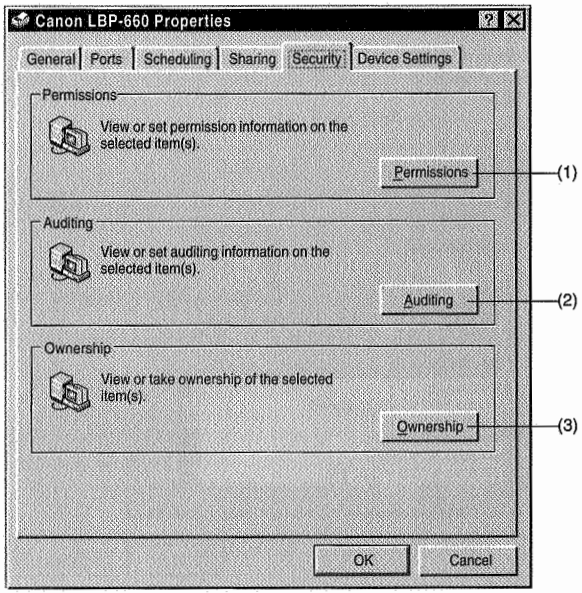


Figure 1-7-11

(1) Permissions : Opens the Printer Permissions dialog box (See Page 1-31)
(2) Auditing : Opens the Printer Auditing dialog box.
(3) Ownership : Opens the Owner dialog box.

◆ Printer Permissions dialog box

The Printer Permissions dialog box displays and sets the access privilege of the users and groups to the printer. It can be opened by clicking the Permissions button in the Security tab in the Properties dialog box.

The Printer Permissions dialog box is shown in Figure 1-7-12.

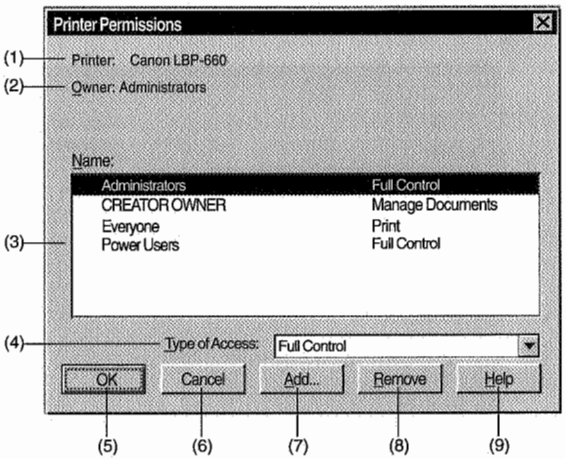


Figure 1-7-12

(1) Printer : Displays the printer name.
(2) Owner : Displays the owner name.
(3) Name : Displays the list of the names of the users and groups and the types of their access privileges. When you want to change the access privilege, select the group or user name and then select the type of access you want from the Type of Access drop down list.
(4) Type of Access : Displays the list of available types of access.
(5) OK : Changes the settings in this dialog box and closes the box.
(6) Cancel : Closes the dialog box without changing the settings.
(7) Add : Opens the Add Users and Groups dialog box which enables you to add the selected group and user to the Name list.
(8) Remove : Delete the selected group and user from the Name list.
(9) Help : Opens the Help topics.

◆ **Printer Auditing dialog box**

In the Printer Auditing dialog box, you can make settings for checking the conditions of the users connected to the printer. To enable the PC to audit, the File and Object Access event in the Audit Policy dialog box in the User Manager dialog box must be set to permit auditing. The Printer Auditing dialog box can be opened by clicking the Auditing button in the Security tab in the Properties dialog box.

The Printer Auditing dialog box is shown in Figure 1-7-13.

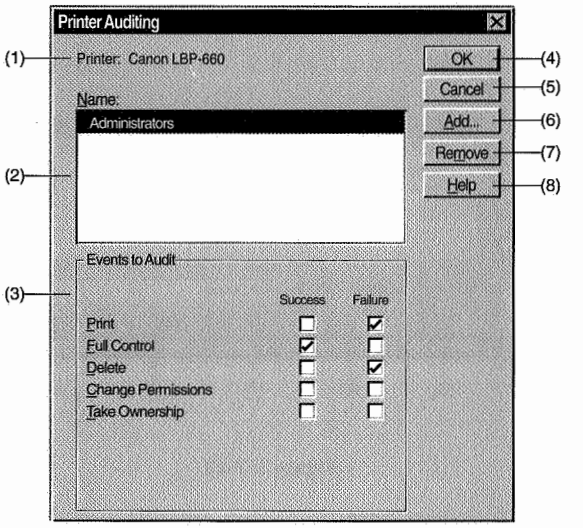


Figure 1-7-13

(1) Printer : Displays the printer name.
(2) Name : Displays the names of groups and users currently being audited.
(3) Events to Audit : Displays the list of events which can be audited. The list includes Print, Full Control, Delete, Change Permissions and Take Ownership. Success or Failure can be selected for each event.
(4) OK : Changes the settings in this dialog box and closes the box.
(5) Cancel : Closes the dialog box without changing the settings.
(6) Add : Opens the Add Users and Groups dialog box which enables you to add selected groups and users to the Name list.
(7) Remove : Deletes selected groups and users from the Name list.
(8) Help : Opens the Help topics.

● **Device Settings Tab**

The Device Settings tab specifies how halftones are handled when you print graphics. The top part of the dialog box displays the list of setting items. If you click on the name of the setting item you want to change, the available options for the item appear in the bottom part of the dialog box. The current setting for each item is shown in blue. The new settings which have not yet been saved are shown in red.

The Device Settings tab can be opened by clicking the Device Settings tab in the Properties dialog box.

The Device Settings tab is shown in Figure 1-7-14.

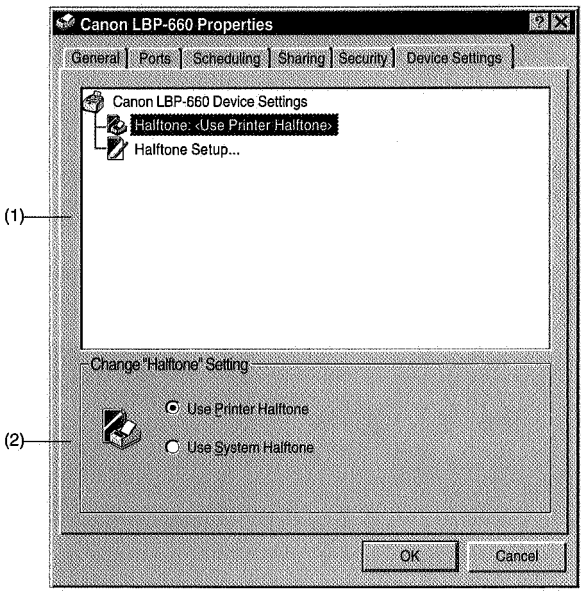


Figure 1-7-14

(1) Setting item list : Select the item you want to change.

(2) Setting change area : Displays the available options for the selected item. See Page 1-34 to 35 for description of each setting change screen.

◆ **Canon LBP-660 Device Settings screen**

The Canon LBP-660 Device Settings screen is displayed by selecting the Canon LBP-660 Device Settings item.

The Canon LBP-660 Device Settings screen is shown in Figure 1-7-15.

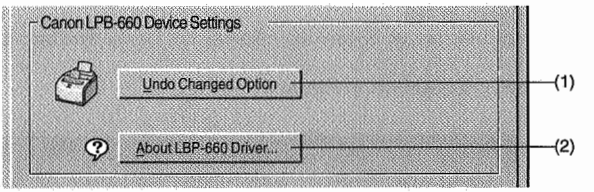


Figure 1-7-15

(1) Undo Changed Option : Undo all the changes made after the tab was opened.
(2) About LBP-660 Driver : Displays the About dialog box.

◆ **Change "Halftone" Setting screen**

The Change "Halftone" Setting screen is displayed by selecting the Halftone item.

The Change "Halftone" Setting screen is shown in Figure 1-7-16.

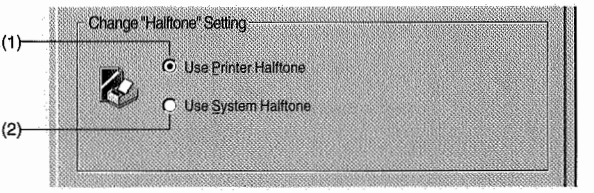


Figure 1-7-16

(1) Use Printer Halftone : Displays the Halftone Color Adjustment dialog box (see Page 1-41) compatible with the Microsoft Windows 95/98/3.1 version Windows Printing System when adjusting halftone.
(2) Use System Halftone : Displays the Halftone Color Adjustment dialog box (see Page 1-42) contained in the Microsoft Windows NT as standard when adjusting halftone.

◆ **Change "Halftone Setup" Settings screen**

The Change "Halftone Setup" Settings screen is displayed by selecting the Halftone Setup item.

The Change "Halftone Setup" Setting screen is shown in Figure 1-7-17.

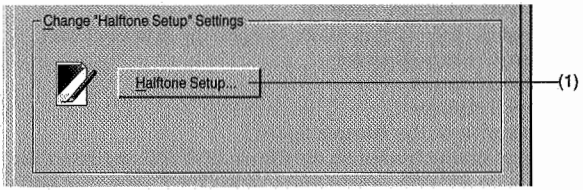


Figure 1-7-17

(1) Halftone Setup : Opens the Device Color/halftone Properties dialog box.

◆ **Device Color/Halftone Properties dialog box**

The Device Color/Halftone Properties dialog box is opened by clicking the Halftone Setup button in the Change "Halftone Setup" Settings screen.

The Device Color/Halftone Properties dialog box is shown in Figure 1-7-18.

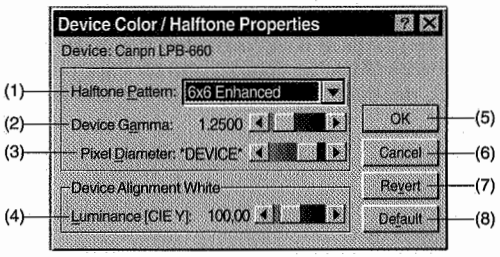


Figure 1-7-18

(1) Halftone Pattern : Sets the cell size of the halftone pattern (Unit: pixel).
(2) Device Gamma : Adjusts the balance of color brightness.
(3) Pixel Diameter : Adjusts the print density by changing the pixel size.
(4) Luminance : Brightens or darkens the output color by adjusting the white point of the device.
(5) OK : Changes the settings and closes the box.
(6) Cancel : Closes this box without changing the settings.
(7) Revert : Resets the values of the items in this box to the values displayed when the box was opened.
(8) Default : Resets the values of the items in this box to the default values.

b. Document Properties

How to open the Document Properties dialog box:

The Document Properties dialog box can be opened by following the procedures below.

From the Microsoft Windows desktop

1) Perform one of the following methods to open the Printers folder.
   - Start button/Settings/Printers
   - My Computer/Printers
   - Control Panel/Printers
2) Open the printer from the Printers folder.
   - Click the right mouse button on the Canon LBP-660 and select the Document Defaults.
   - Double-click on the Canon LBP-660 to open the Canon LBP-660 print queue window and select the Document Defaults in the Printer menu.

From the Microsoft Windows Application

- As how to open the Default Document Properties dialog box differs for each application, refer to the application manual.

From the Microsoft Windows Shortcut

- To create a shortcut, open the Printers folder, drag the Canon LBP-660 icon with the right mouse button to the desktop, and select the Create Shortcut(s) Here. (See the Microsoft Windows NT User's Guide for details.) Double-click on the shortcut icon to open the printer window and select the Document Defaults from the Printer menu.
- To create a shortcut to the Printers folder, open the My Computer, drag the Printers icon with the right mouse button to the desktop, and select the Create Shortcut(s) Here. (See the Microsoft Windows NT User's Guide for details.) Double-click on the shortcut icon to open the Printers folder, click the right mouse button on the Canon LBP-660, and select the Document Defaults.

The Default Document Properties dialog box consists of tabs according to the Microsoft Windows NT User Interface model.

The Default Document Properties dialog box consists of the 2 tabs shown below. You can click each tab or move the focus and then press right or left cursor key to open the tab and make settings.

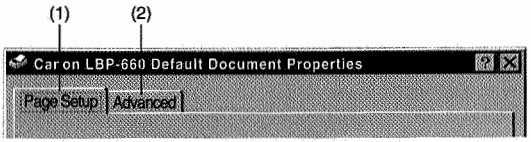


Figure 1-7-19

(1) Page Setup : Sets items frequently used in general printing.
(2) Advanced : Sets all the items in the Default Document Properties dialog box.

Click on the OK button to store the items set in each tab and to close the Default Document Properties dialog box. Click on the Cancel button to close the box without storing the items set in each tab.

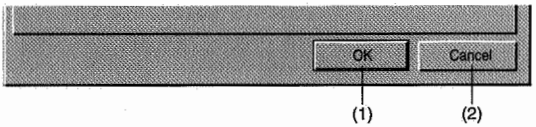


Figure 1-7-20

(1) OK : Changes the items in this dialog box and closes the box.
(2) Cancel : Closes this dialog box without changing its items.

Details of each tab are described below.

● **Page Setup Tab**

Use this tab to set items frequently used in general printing. The items set in the Page Setup tab can also be set in the Advanced tab. The Page Setup tab can be opened by clicking the Page Setup tab in the Default Document Properties dialog box.

The Page Setup tab is shown in Figure 1-7-21.

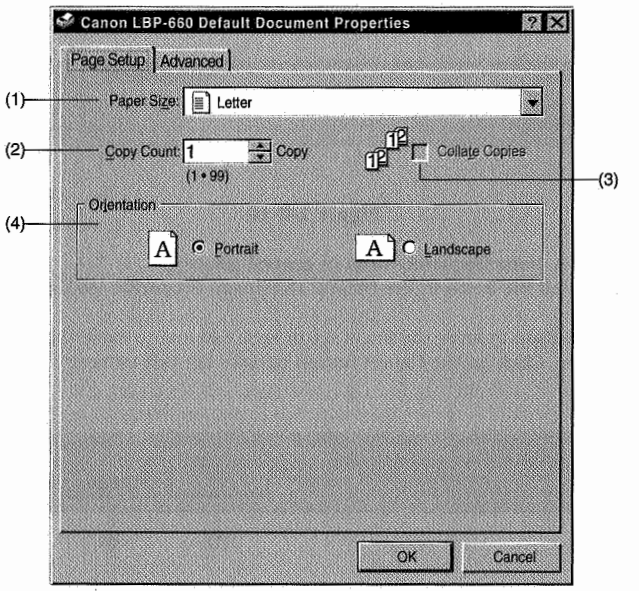


Figure 1-7-21

(1) Paper size : Sets the paper size.
(2) Copy Count : Sets the number of copies to be printed.
(3) Collate Copies : If you have specified 2 or more copies in Copy Count, click in the Collate Copies check box to print collated copies of your document.
(4) Orientation : Sets the printing orientation (Portrait or Landscape).

● **Advanced Tab**

In the Advanced tab, you can set all the items in the Default Document Properties. The items in the tab are grouped under Paper/Output, Graphic, and Document Options. The items in each group are listed hierarchically below the group name. The current setting for each item is shown in blue and the new setting which has not yet been stored is shown in red to the right of the item. If you click on the name of the item you want to change, the available settings for the item appear in the bottom part of the dialog box.

The Advanced tab can be opened by clicking the Advanced tab in the Default Document Properties dialog box.

The Advanced tab is shown in Figure 1-7-22.

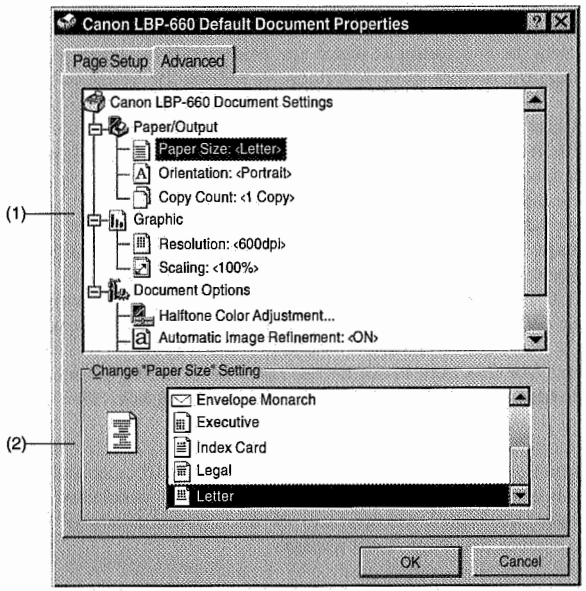


Figure 1-7-22

(1) Setting item : Select the item you want to change. See Page 1-40 for information on each item.

(2) Setting change : Displays the available settings for the selected item.

◆ Paper/Output group

The Paper/Output group consists of 3 items: Paper Size, Orientation and Copy Count. These items can also be changed in the Page Setup tab.

Each item in the Paper/Output group is described below.

(1) Paper size : Sets the paper size.

(2) Orientation : Sets the printing orientation (Portrait or Landscape).

(3) Copy Count : Sets the number of copies to be printed. If you have specified 2 or more copies in Copy Count, the Collate Copies become available. Select the Collate Copies to print collated copies of your document.

◆ Graphic group

The Graphic group consists of 2 items: Resolution and Scaling.

The items in the Graphic group are described below.

(1) Resolution : Sets the resolution at which the printer prints. (600dpi or 300dpi)

(2) Scaling : Change the setting value to enlarge or reduce the image to be printed.

◆ Document Options group

Document Options group consists of 5 items: Halftone Color Adjustment, Automatic Image Refinement, Toner Saver, Toner Density and Custom Paper Size.

The items in the Document Options group are described below.

(1) Halftone Color Adjustment : Opens the Halftone Color Adjustment dialog box. **(Note)**

(2) Automatic Image Refinement : Use this item to select whether the Smoothing function on the printer is switched on or off.

(3) Toner Saver : Use this item to select whether the toner saving function on the printer is switched on or off. When the Toner Density is set to Light, efficacy of the Toner Saver increases.

(4) Toner Density : Use this item to adjust the toner used during printing to one of 5 levels.

(5) Custom Paper Size : Opens the Custom Paper Size dialog box. (See Page 1-43.)

Note: The Halftone Color Adjustment dialog box differs depending on the settings in the Device Settings tab (see Page 1-34). If "Use Printer Halftone" is selected, the dialog box of the printer driver (see Page 1-41) appears. If "Use System Halftone" is selected, the dialog box of the system (see Page 1-42) appears.

◆ Halftone Color Adjustment Dialog Box (Printer Halftone)

Use this dialog box to set Halftoning method, Brightness and Contrast of graphics. It can be opened by selecting Halftone Color Adjustment of the Document Options group and clicking the Halftone Color Adjustment button.

The Halftone Color Adjustment dialog box is shown in Figure 1-7-23.

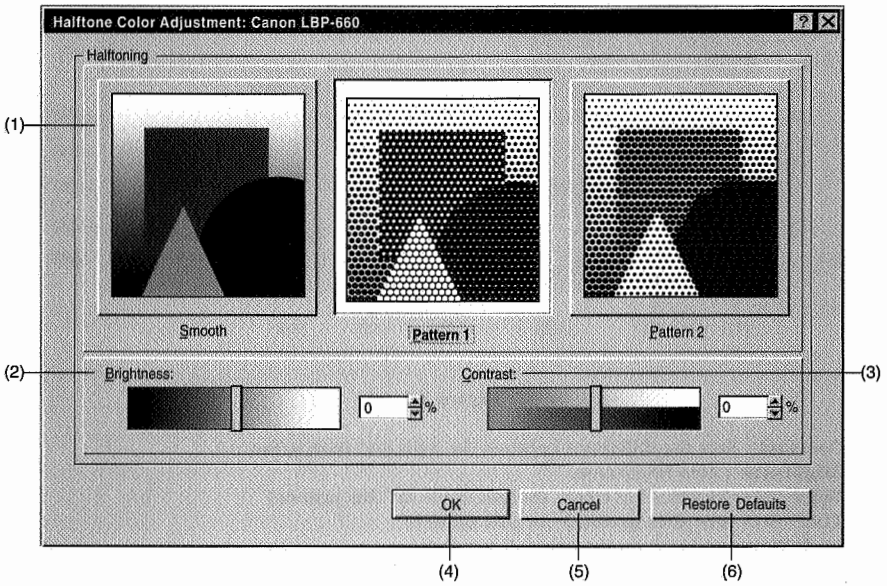


Figure 1-7-23

(1) Halftoning : Sets Halftone. **(Note)**
(2) Brightness : Adjusts brightness.
(3) Contrast : Adjusts contrast.
(4) OK : Changes the settings in this dialog box and closes the box.
(5) Cancel : Closes this dialog box without changing the settings.
(6) Restore Defaults : Sets the values in the halftone group to the default values.

Note: Because monochrome printers can print black dots only, printing a grayscale image requires converting each shade of gray to black and white (non-printed) dots. You can choose from three converting methods: Smooth, Pattern 1 and Pattern 2.

Smooth

Calculates the locations to print black dots to adapt to the gray image data. As it positions the black dots randomly, subtle shades can be expressed.

Pattern 1 and Pattern 2

Pattern 1 and Pattern 2 select a black dot pattern for each shade of gray. Dark gray is expressed by a large number of black dots and light gray is expressed by a small number of black dots. Pattern 2 gives a coarser printed image than Pattern 1.

◆ **Halftone Color Adjustment Dialog Box (System Halftone)**

Use this dialog box to adjust halftone color. It can be opened by selecting Halftone Color Adjustment of the Document Options group and clicking the Halftone Color Adjustment button.

The Halftone Color Adjustment dialog box is shown in Figure 1-7-24.

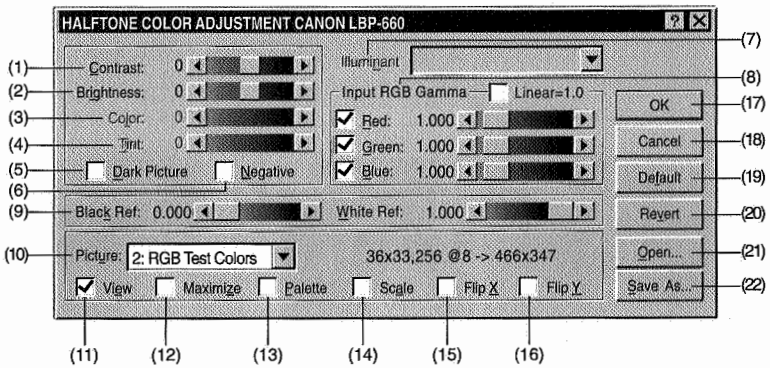


Figure 1-7-24

(1) Contrast : Sets the difference between the light and dark areas.
(2) Brightness : Sets brightness.
(3) Color : Sets vividness of color. (Not available for this printer.)
(4) Tint : Sets tint. (Not available for this printer.)
(5) Dark Picture : Lightens the image if too dark.
(6) Negative : Reverse color to produce negative images.
(7) Illuminant : Sets illuminant. (Not available for this printer.)
(8) Input RGB Gamma : Click on the check box for each color (Red, Green and Blue) and adjust the color with the scroll bar. Click on the check box for Linear=1.0 sets the value of each color to 1.0 and brightness becomes equal to the input value.
(9) Black Ref and White Ref : Sets the darkest and lightest points of the image.
(10) Picture : Sets the graphic style displayed as a test picture or the name of the defined test picture.
(11) View : Displays a test picture that reflects the change in settings. When the check box is selected, the dialog box can be turned on and off by clicking the right mouse button.
(12) Maximize : Displays a full screen test picture.
(13) Palette : Displays a color palette based on the color of the graphics.
(14) Scale : Adjusts the height and width of the graphic based on the ratio of the height and width of the default graphic when the check box is selected. When the check box is not selected, the graphic is displayed at full size in the window.
(15) Flip X : Flips the image along the horizontal axis.
(16) Flip Y : Flips the image along the vertical axis.
(17) OK : Changes the settings in this dialog box and closes the box.
(18) Cancel : Closes this dialog box without changing the settings.
(19) Default : Resets the setting values in this dialog to the default values.
(20) Revert : Resets the setting values in this box to the values displayed when the box was opened.
(21) Open : Opens the graphic file to confirm the settings.
(22) Save As : Saves the opened graphic file with name.

◆ **Custom Paper Size Dialog Box**

Use this dialog box to set user defined paper size. It can be opened by selecting Custom Paper Size of the Document Options group and clicking the Custom Paper Size button.

The Custom Paper Size dialog box is shown in Figure 1-7-25.

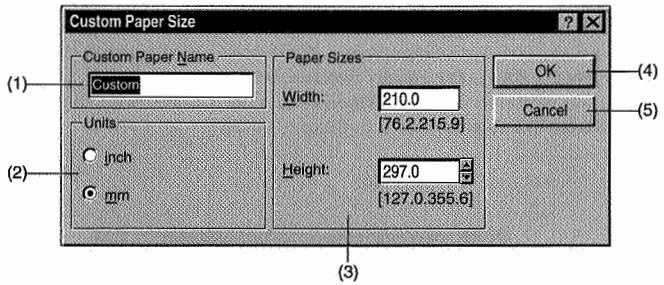


Figure 1-7-25

(1) Custom Paper Name : Specifies the name of the paper size defined by the user.
(2) Units : Selects the unit of the paper size.
(3) Paper Sizes : Specifies the user defined paper size (Width and Height). The numerical values are expressed in the unit selected in Units.
(4) OK : Changes the settings in this dialog box and closes the box.
(5) Cancel : Closes this dialog box without changing the settings.

c. Status Window

The Status Window is an application exclusively for the Microsoft Windows Printing System. It displays the printing job status of the connected printer with the Progress bar and graphic animation. It is also used for setting peculiar items for the printer such as the toner density.

The Printer Status Window opens in the following cases.

- Double-click on the LBP-660 Status Window icon in the Windows Printing System group.
- An error has occurred or operation by the user is required.
- Printing with the Display Printer Status Window While Printing in the Status Options dialog box (See Page 1-46) in the Status Window selected.
- Restarting the Windows after the Windows has been closed with the Status Window open.

The Printer Status Window is shown in Figure 1-7-26.

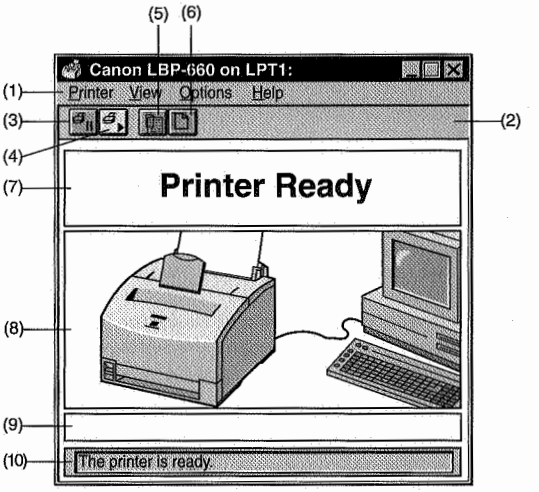


Figure 1-7-26

(1) Menu bar : Contains Printer, View, Options and Help menus. The Printer menu includes Pause Printer, Resume Printer, Force Print Job and Delete Print Job (in the same way as the tool bar button functions). From the View menu, you can open and close the Message area, Animation area, Progress bar, and Status bar. From the Options menu, you can open the Status Options dialog box (see Page 1-46) and enable Client Operation by selecting commands. On-line help can be accessed from the Help menu.
(2) Tool bar : Includes the Pause Printer button, Resume Printer button, Force Print job button and Delete Print job button.
(3) Pause Printer button : Pauses a printing operation.
(4) Resume Printer button : Resumes a printing operation.
(5) Force Print job button : Forcibly prints when the paper size varies.
(6) Delete Print job button : Cancels a printing operation.
(7) Message area : Displays the job title (printing conditions, application name, and file name), symbol **(Note1)**, and either a message or estimated print remaining/completion time **(Note 2)**.
(8) Animation area : Shows the printing status of the document with animation. If a problem has occurred within the printer, the graphic changes and instructions are displayed.
(9) Progress bar : Shows the printing status of the document.
(10) Status bar : Displays the printer status.

Notes: 1. Table 1-7-1 shows the types of symbol displayed in the Message area.

Table 1-7-1

Symbol	Meaning	Description
	Warning	Tells the user what to do to continue printing in such cases as paper jams and paper loading request.
None	Information	Others.

2. When the Start printing immediately in the Scheduling tab in the Printer Properties dialog box is on, accurate total page number data cannot be obtained. Therefore, print remaining time, print completion time, and total page number are not displayed until the print job completes.

◆ **Status Options dialog box**

The Status Options dialog box is for setting the Status Window display and voice messages. It can be opened by selecting the Options command in the Options menu in the Status Window.

The Status Options dialog box is shown in Figure 1-7-27.

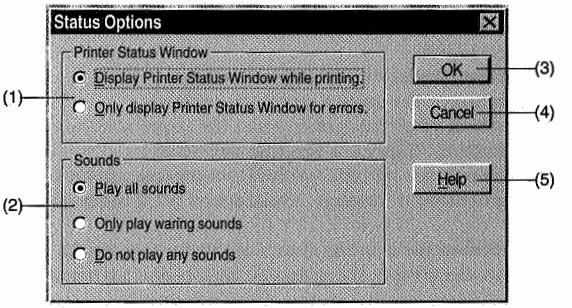


Figure 1-7-27

(1) Printer Status Window : Sets the status window display mode.
(2) Sounds : Sets sound. It can provide print status or error-related information by sound. (Only when the sound file is installed and the status window is opened by bidirectional communication.)
(3) OK : Changes the items in this dialog box and closes the box.
(4) Cancel : Closes this dialog box without changing its items.
(5) Help : Opens the Help topics.

d. Network Status Monitor

The Status Window can be displayed only on the print server in case of network printing. On the other hand, the Network Status Monitor can be used by the client to see the printer status and to operate the printer.

The Network Status Monitor operates only on the Microsoft Windows NT client, and does not operate on Microsoft Windows 95/98/WfW/3.1.

The Network Status Monitor opens at the following times.

1) Double-click on the following.
   - The Canon LBP-660 Network Status Monitor icon in the Windows Printing System group.
   - The Canon LBP-660 Network Status Monitor shortcut on the desktop.
2) Click the Yes button in the Canon LBP-660 Network Status Monitor dialog box to open the Connect to Server dialog box.
3) Select the name of the printer you want to connect from the list box and click the Connect button.

The Network Status Monitor is shown in Figure 1-7-28.

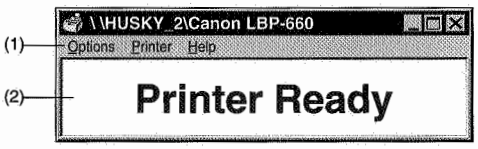


Figure 1-7-28

(1) Menu bar : Includes Options, Printer and Help pull-down menus.
The Options menu sets options relating to the Network Status Monitor operations and consists of the Connect to server, Sounds Option, Default Size, Hide menu and Always On Top options.
The Printer menu controls printing operation of the printer and consists of the Pause, Resume, Force Print Job and Delete Print Job options.
The Help menu opens the dialog box that displays the Network Status Monitor version information.

(2) Message area : Displays the job titles, symbols (Note) and messages. Basically, it displays the same messages as the Printer Status Window of the print server to which your PC is connected. However, unlike the Printer Status Window, it does not display print remaining/completion time.

Note: Table 1-7-2 shows the types of symbol displayed in the Message area.

Table 1-7-2

Symbol	Meaning	Description
	Warning	Tells the user what to do to continue printing in such cases as paper jams and paper loading request.
None	Information	Others.

3. Trouble Shooter

When troubles such as printing error occur in the printer, the Trouble Shooter checks the Microsoft Windows NT configuration settings, and if errors are found they are reported to the user or corrected if possible.

The Trouble Shooter cannot detect problems regarding the hardware such as printer cable and parallel port failure. It does not operate on the Network client PC.

<Starting the Trouble Shooter>

The Trouble Shooter starts when the Canon LBP-660 Trouble Shooter icon in the Windows Printing System Group is double-clicked.

◆ Trouble Shooter Dialog box

The following dialog appears when the Trouble Shooter is started.

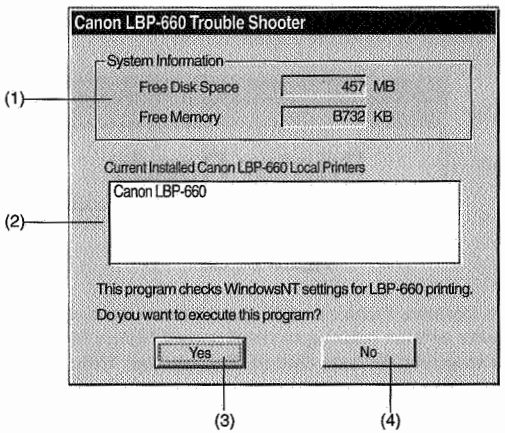


Figure 1-7-29

(1) System Information : Displays the system information of the PC (Free Disk Space, Free Memory).
(2) Port : Selects the port to which LBP-660 is connected. Parallel port installed in the PC and port connected to the network are listed.
(3) Yes : Executes the Trouble Shooter.
(4) No : Exits the Trouble Shooter.

When the Trouble Shooter is executed by clicking the Yes button, it checks the following:

- Displays the free disk space and free memory.
- Checks whether or not the WPS directory is present and corrects the problems if any.
- Checks the installed files and corrects the problems if any.
- Checks WPSNET.INI and WPSHRC.BIN and corrects the problems if any.
- Checks the registry and corrects the problems if any.
- Checks the WpsPeppy communication device driver and corrects the problems if any.
- Checks the WPS print processor and corrects the problems if any.
- Checks the printer driver and corrects the problems if any.
- Checks the settings in the Printer Properties and corrects the problems if any.
- Checks whether or not the selected port is available and corrects the problems if any.
- Checks the WPS group and shortcut and corrects the problems if any.
- Checks the WPS directory to see whether or not the printer is set to be shared and corrects the problems if any.
- Restarts the Windows after the end of the Trouble Shooter if corrections that require to restart the Windows are made. Check results can be stored in a file.

If the Trouble Shooter encounters a problem, it displays an error message with available information. Each message includes some options as shown below.

- Correct this problem.
- Repair all files.
- Don't correct this problem.
- Exit trouble shooting.

C. Microsoft Windows 95/98

1. Installation of Microsoft Windows Printing System

Windows Printing System installation disks are packed with the printer. Types and contents of the installation disks are as follows.

Types

- 3.5-inch 1.44MB floppy disks (3 disks): Single-byte zone (German, French, Italian, Finnish, Danish, Dutch, Spanish, Norwegian, Swedish, Thai, English)
- 3.5-inch 1.44MB floppy disks (2 disks): Double-byte zone (Chinese, Taiwanese)

Contents

- Microsoft Windows Printing System V1.8 driver
- Status Window
- PCL emulator
- PCL emulation front panel
- Print manager
- On-line help
- TrueType fonts (Single-byte zone)
- PCL font
- Voice message
- Installer
- Uninstaller
- Trouble Shooter

a. Operating environment

The following environment is required to install Microsoft Windows Printing System.

● PC hardware

This printer supports an IBM-PC or a compatible machine. Operating conditions of them are as shown below.

<Minimum operating environment>

- CPU: 486SX25MHz or above
- RAM: More than 8MB
- Available disk space: More than 8MB (1MB of temporary space is required for installation) Note that the Thai version requires more than 10MB and the Chinese/Taiwanese version requires more than 9MB.
- Screen size: VGA or above
- Printer port: Standard Centronics parallel port
- Floppy drive: 3.5-inch 1.44MB
- Sound: PCM sound module is required to use the sound.

<Recommended operating environment>

- CPU: Pentium 75MHz or above
- RAM: More than 16MB
- Printer port: ECP

● OS software

One of the following OS software is required:

- Microsoft Windows 95
- Microsoft Windows 98

This printer does not operate on WIN-OS/2. As a basic rule, Windows language and the software language of this printer must match.

Windows for Workgroups or Microsoft Windows 95/98 is required for print server.

Note: Microsoft Windows 95/98 does not operate if it is started in the Safe mode. In such a case, the Configuration Error dialog box may appear, however, reinstallation is not necessary. It operates if it is started normally.

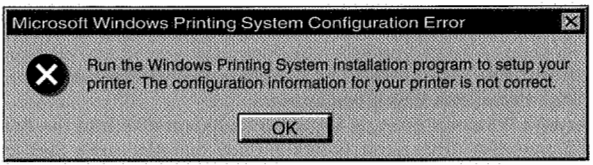

Microsoft Windows Printing System Configuration Error
Run the Windows Printing System installation program to setup your printer. The configuration information for your printer is not correct.
OK

Figure 1-7-30

Windows 95/98 starts in the Safe mode in the following cases:
- The settings of Microsoft Windows are destroyed.
- The power is turned off without properly quitting Microsoft Windows or started after reset.
- The Safe mode start is selected by pressing the F8 key when starting Microsoft Windows.

When Microsoft Windows is started in the Safe mode, it displays a dialog box for confirmation. "Safe mode" is displayed at the 4 corners of the background paper.

● Printer cable
- Use bidirectional 8-bit parallel interface cable for IBM-PC.
- Connections through the printer selector and printer buffer are not supported.

b. Installation procedures

Install Microsoft Windows Printing System to the host computer by following the procedures below. For details, see the user's manual packed with the printer.

1. Connect the printer and turn the power of the computer ON. Then the printer is automatically detected by the plug and play function and the New Hardware Found dialog box appears.
2. Turn on the Driver from disk provided by hardware manufacture and press the OK button so that the Install From Disk dialog box appears.
3. Insert the Microsoft Windows Printing System installation disk into the floppy disk drive.
4. Confirm that floppy disk drive name is in the Copy manufacture's files from text box and click the OK button. If the different drive name is in the text box, input the correct pass name or select the drive with the installation disk by clicking the Browse button.

   Installation program starts. (Proceed to step 5.)

Note: The above procedures do not apply when OSR-2 of Windows 95/98 (OEM Service Release 2) is pre-installed. In such a case, follow the procedures below to start the installation program.
1. Select Run from the Start menu.
2. Input [A:¥SETUP.EXE] in the Open prompt box and click the OK button.
The version displayed in Control Panel/System/General tab is "4.00.950 B" for the host computer in which OSR-2 is pre-installed.

---

5. If started from an unused installation disk, input your name and company name in the What Is Your Name dialog box and click the Continue button.
6. Select and press the Express or Custom button.
   Express Installation installs all the Microsoft Windows Printing System to the host computer. (More than 3.7MB of memory must be available on the disk.)
   Custom Installation installs only the selected software.
7. When installation is completed, restart Microsoft Windows by following the directions on the screen. When the printer is connected, the computer asks you whether to print a test page or not. Print the test page to confirm that the installation was done correctly.

2. Microsoft Windows Printing System Dialog Boxes

The printing environment of Microsoft Windows Printing System is set using the dialog boxes.

A list of printing environment that can be set from the dialog boxes is shown on Page 1-83.

The main dialog boxes of Windows 95/98 are explained below.

a. Properties dialog boxes

The Properties dialog box can be opened by the following methods.

From desktop of Microsoft Windows

1) Open the Printers folder from one of the following:
   - Start menu/Settings/Printers
   - My Computer/Printers
   - Control Panel/Printers
2) Then open the applicable printer in the Printers folder and select Properties in the Printer menu.

From Microsoft Windows application

- Select Page Setup in the File menu and open the Page Setup dialog box. Select the printer by clicking the Printer button and click the Properties button.
- Open the Print dialog box by selecting Print in the File menu and click the Properties button.

From Microsoft Windows shortcut

Open the Printers folder of Microsoft Windows, and drag the printer icon to the desktop while holding down the CTRL key to create shortcut. (See Windows 95/98 User's guide for details.) Open the window of printer by double-clicking the shortcut icon and select Properties in the Printer menu.

Based on the Microsoft Windows 95/98 user interface model, Properties dialog boxes consist of tabs.

The Properties dialog boxes consist of General, Details and Sharing tabs which are common to all Properties dialog boxes, and tabs peculiar to each printer (Copies and Methods, Size & Source, Graphics, Quality, Overlay). Open the desired tab by clicking the tab or pressing the right/left cursor key for setting. (See Figure 1-7-31.)

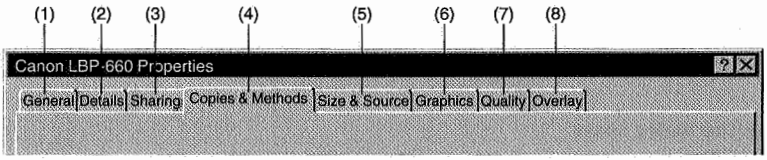


Figure 1-7-31

(1) General : Specifies test page and separator page printing.
(2) Details : Specifies the printer port, printer driver and time-out settings.
(3) Sharing : Specifies the printer sharing settings.
(4) Copies and Methods : Sets the number of copies and sorting method.
(5) Size & Source : Specifies paper size and scaling.
(6) Graphics : Specifies the halftoning method, and the brightness and contrast settings.
(7) Quality : Specifies resolution and whether to use Automatic Image Refinement and Toner saver or not.
(8) Overlay : Sets items relating to the Overlay form.

Click the OK button to store the items set in each tab and to close the Print Properties dialog box. Click the Cancel button to close the box without storing the items set in each tab.

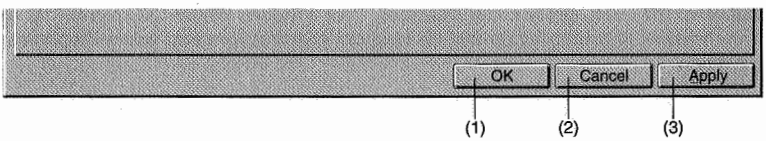


Figure 1-7-32

(1) OK : Changes the items in this dialog box and closes the box.
(2) Cancel : Closes this dialog box without changing its items.
(3) Apply : Changes the items in this dialog box but does not close the box.

The following explains about the tabs peculiar to each printer.

● **Copies & Methods tab**

The Copies & Methods tab is for setting the number of copies, page order and page orientation for printing. It can be opened by clicking the Copies & Methods tab in the Properties dialog box.

The Copies & Methods tab is shown in Figure 1-7-33

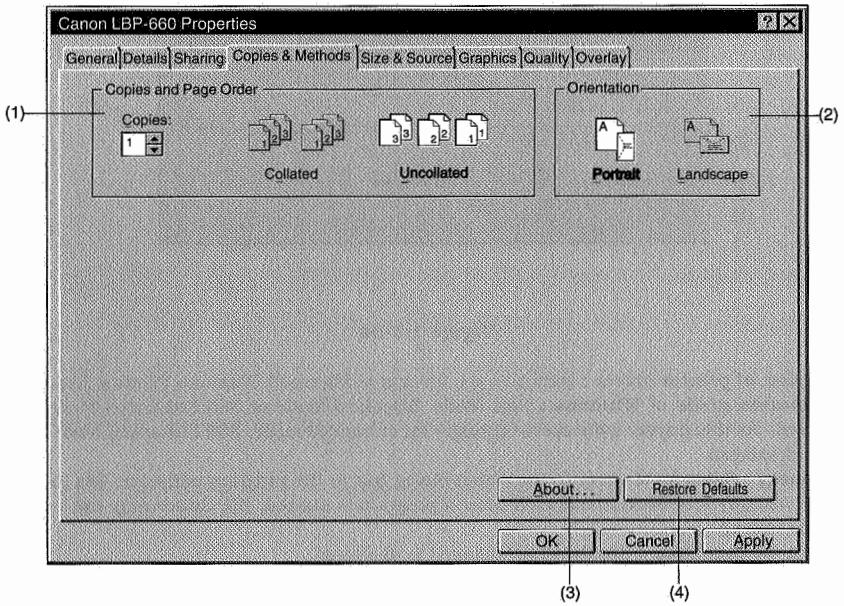


Figure 1-7-33

(1) Copies and Page Order : Sets the number of copies and sorting method (collated or uncollated).

(2) Orientation : Sets the page orientation for printing (portrait or landscape).

(3) About : Opens the About dialog box that contains the version information of Microsoft Windows Printing System. (See Page 1-56.)

(4) Restore Defaults : Resets the values in this dialog box to the default values.

◆ **About Dialog box**

The About dialog box contains such information as the version of Windows Printing System and available memory of the host computer. It can be opened by clicking the About button in the Copies & Methods tab in the Properties dialog box.

The About dialog box is shown in Figure 1-7-34.

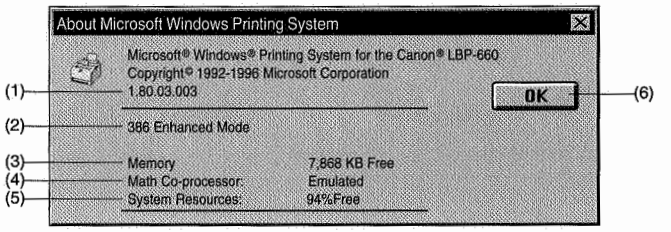


Figure 1-7-34

(1) Version of printer driver : Indicates the version of Microsoft Windows Printing System.

(2) Operation mode of Windows : Real Mode, Standard Mode or 386 Enhanced Mode is displayed. As this printer software is exclusive for enhanced mode, 386 Enhanced Mode is usually displayed.

(3) Memory : Same as Memory in the About dialog box in the program manager. (As the available memory size fluctuates subtly after a program is started, the values may not match in some cases.)

(4) Math Co-processor : Emulated or Installed is displayed.

(5) System Resources : Same as System Resources in the About dialog box in the program manager. (As the System Resources value fluctuates subtly after a program is started, the values may not match in some cases.)

(6) OK : Returns to Copies & Methods tab in the Properties dialog box.

● **Size & Source tab**

The Size & Source tab is for setting paper size and reduction/enlargement rate. It can be opened by clicking the Size & Source tab in the Properties dialog box.

The Size & Source tab is shown in Figure 1-7-35.

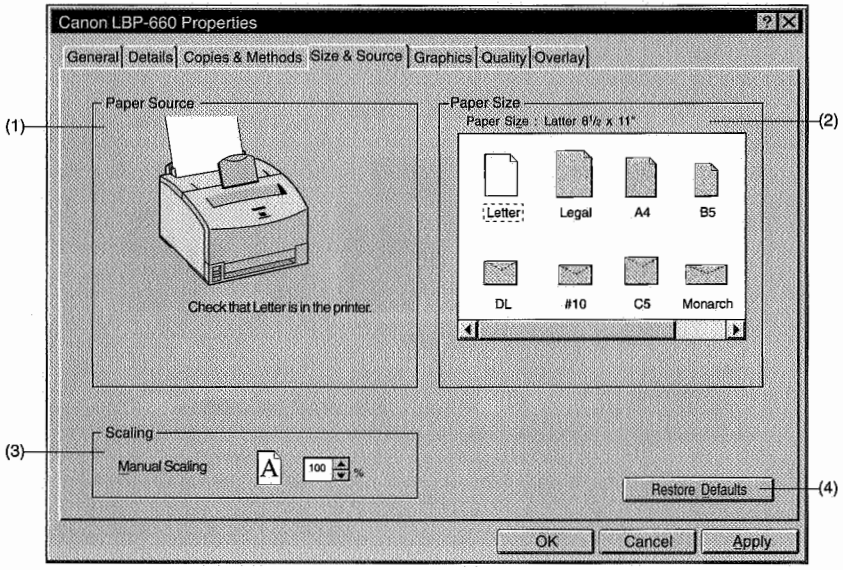


Figure 1-7-35

(1) Paper Source : Shows paper pick-up information.
(2) Paper Size : Sets the print paper size. Click the paper icon.
(3) Scaling : Sets reduction/enlargement rate in the range between 10% and 200%.
(4) Restore Defaults : Resets the values in this dialog box to the default values.

● **Graphics tab**

The Graphics tab is for setting halftoning method, brightness and contrast. It can be opened by clicking the Graphics tab in the Properties dialog box.

The Graphics tab is shown in Figure 1-7-36.

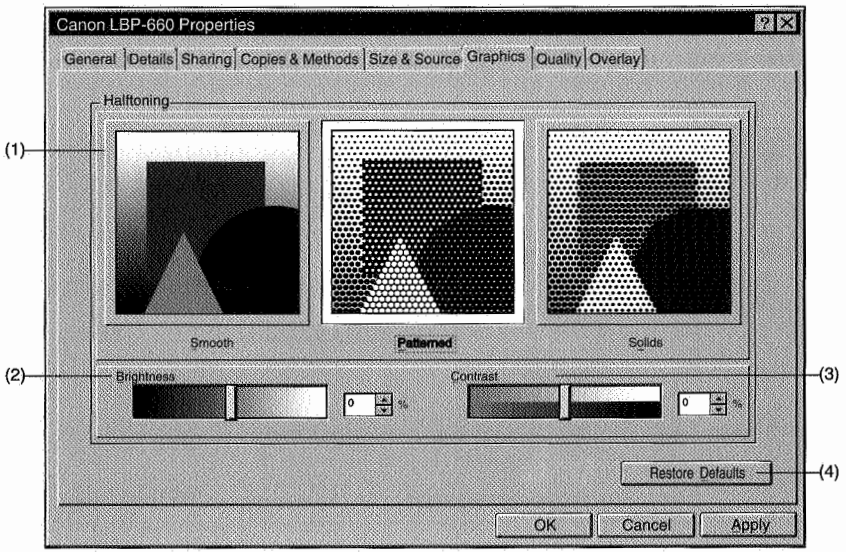


Figure 1-7-36

(1) Halftoning : Sets halftoning. **(Note)**
(2) Brightness : Adjusts image brightness.
(3) Contrast : Adjusts contrast.
(4) Restore Defaults : Resets the values of the halftone group to the default values. (Halftoning: Patterned, Brightness: 0, Contrast: 0)

Note: As the printer prints images only in black dots, when gray image data is sent it is converted to black dots and white (non-printing). The conversion method can be selected from among the following 3 types:

• **Smooth**

Calculates the locations to print black dots to adapt to the gray image data. As it positions the black dots randomly, subtle shades can be expressed.

• **Pattern 1, Pattern 2**

Selects the gray image data from previously set density patterns of black dots. The number of black dots selected for dark gray is large, while the number for light gray is small. Pattern 2 gives a coarser printed image than Pattern 1.

● **Quality tab**

The Quality tab is for setting the resolution and whether to use Automatic Image Refinement and Toner Saving or not. It can be opened by clicking the Quality tab in the Properties dialog box.

The Quality tab is shown if Figure 1-7-37.

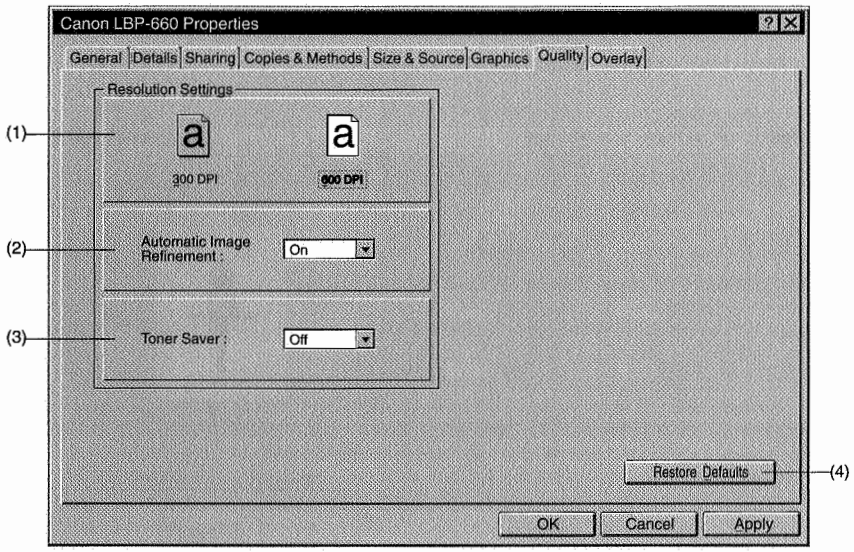


Figure 1-7-37

(1) Resolution Setting : Sets resolution of format by the printer driver.

(2) Automatic Image Refinement : Sets Automatic Image Refinement.

(3) Toner Saver : Sets Toner Saver of the printer. Setting the Toner Density in the Printer Option dialog box (see Page 1-64) in the Printer Status Window to Light improves efficiency of the Toner Saver.

(4) Restore Defaults : Resets the values of the items in this dialog box to the default values.

● **Overlay tab**

The Overlay tab is for setting File group, Overlay Placement group, Position group, Size group and Unit group. It can be opened by clicking the Overlay tab in the Properties dialog box.

The Overlay tab is shown in Figure 1-7-38.

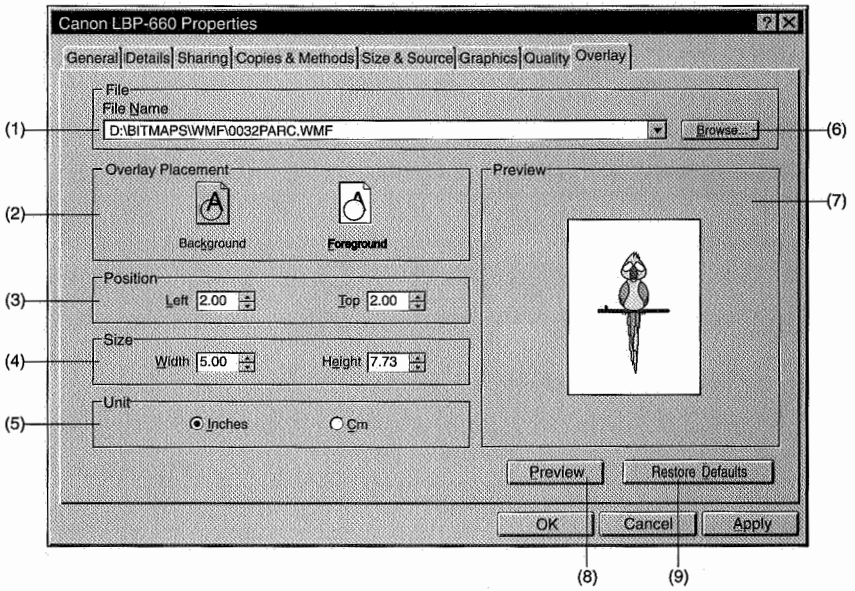


Figure 1-7-38

(1) File : Sets file name of overlay form.
(2) Overlay Placement : Sets whether to place the overlay form background or foreground.
(3) Position : Sets the position of the left top corner of the overlay form.
(4) Size : Sets the size of the overlay form.
(5) Unit : Sets the unit.
(6) Browse : Displays File selection dialog.
(7) Preview : Displays overlay setting for confirmation.
(8) Preview : Renews Preview.
(9) Restore Defaults : Resets the values of the items in this dialog box to the default values.

b. Printer Status Window

The Printer Status Window is an exclusive application for Windows Printing System and shows the printing job status with a progress bar and graphic animation. It is also used for setting peculiar items for the printer such as the toner density.

The Printer Status Window opens at the following times.

- Double-click the LBP-660 Status Window icon in the Windows Printing System group.
- Select the Canon LBP-660 printer cue in the print manager and select the Printer Status Window command in the View menu.
- Select the Canon LBP-660 printer cue in the print manager and click the View Printer Status Window button on the tool bar (for single-byte zone only).
- An error has occurred or operation by the user is required.
- While printing if Display Printer Status Window While Printing in the Status Options dialog box (see Page 1-63) in the Status Window is selected.
- Restart Windows after closing it with the Printer Status window open.

The Printer Status Window is shown in Figure 1-7-39.

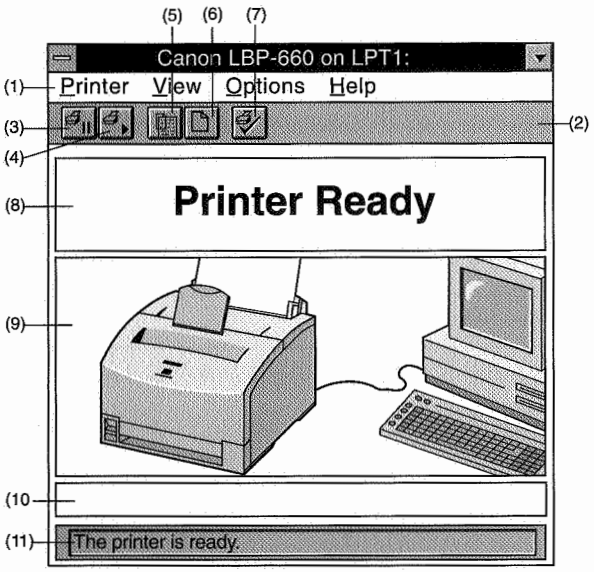


Figure 1-7-39

(1) Menu bar : Includes Printer, View, Options and Help pull-down menus. The Printer menu includes Pause Printer, Resume Printer, Force Print Job and Delete Print Job (in the same way as the tool bar button functions). The Message area, Animation area, Progress bar and Status bar can be opened and closed through the View menu. From the Option menu by selecting commands, the Status Options and Printer Options dialog boxes can be opened. On-line help can be accessed from the Help menu.
(2) Tool bar : Includes the Pause Printer button, Resume Printer button, Force Print job button, Delete Print job button and Test print button. By using the tool bar, the Printer Status Window can be quickly and easily accessed.
(3) Pause Printer button : Pauses a printing operation.
(4) Resume Printer button : Resumes a printing operation.
(5) Force Print job button : Forcibly prints when the paper size varies.
(6) Delete Print job button : Cancels a printing operation.
(7) Test print button : Makes a test print.
(8) Message area : Displays the job title (printing conditions, application name, and file name), symbol **(Note)**, and either a message or estimated print remaining/completion time.
(9) Animation area : Shows the printing status of the document with animation. If a problem has occurred within the printer, the graphic changes and instructions are displayed.
(10) Progress bar : Shows the printing status of the document.
(11) Status bar : Displays the printer status.

Note: Table 1-7-3 shows the types of symbol displayed in the Message area.

Table 1-7-3

Symbol	Meaning	Description
	Warning	Tells the user what to do to continue printing in such cases as paper jams and paper loading request.
None	Information	Others.

◆ Status Options dialog box

The Status Options dialog box is for setting the Status Window display and voice messages. It can be opened by selecting the Status Options command in the Options menu in the Status Window.

The Status Options dialog box is shown in Figure 1-7-40.

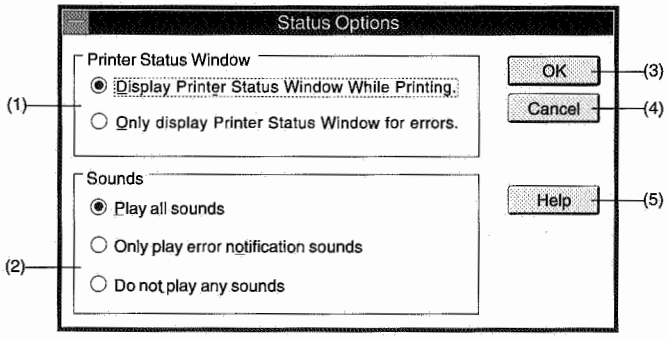


Figure 1-7-40

(1) Printer Status Window : Sets the Status Window display mode.
(2) Sounds : Sets sound. It can provide print status or error-related information by sound. (Only when the sound file is installed and the status window is opened by bidirectional communication.)
(3) OK : Changes the items in this dialog box and closes the box.
(4) Cancel : Closes this dialog box without changing its items.
(5) Help : Opens the Help topics.

◆ **Printer Options dialog box**

The Printer Options dialog box is for setting the toner density and executing test printing. It can be opened by selecting the Printer Options command in the Options menu in the Status Window.

The Printer Options dialog box is shown in Figure 1-7-41.

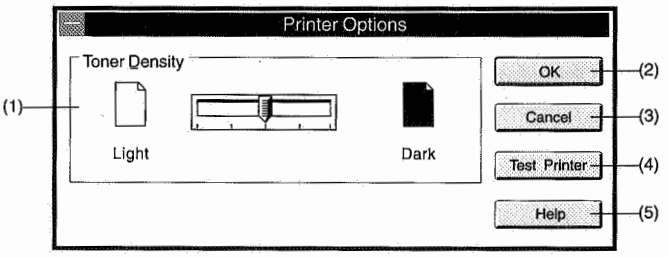


Figure 1-7-41

(1) Toner Density : Sets the density of the toner.
(2) OK : Changes the items in this dialog box and closes the box.
(3) Cancel : Closes this dialog box without changing its items.
(4) Test Printer : Performs a test print.
(5) Help : Opens the Help topics.

3. Trouble Shooter

When troubles such as printing error occur in the printer, the Trouble Shooter checks the Microsoft Windows 95/98 configuration settings, and if errors are found they are reported to the user or corrected if possible.

The Trouble Shooter cannot detect problems regarding the hardware such as printer cable, parallel port failure and wrong ECP setting.

The Trouble Shooter starts when the Canon LBP-660 Trouble Shooter icon in the Windows Printing System Group is double-clicked.

The following dialog appears when the Trouble Shooter is started.

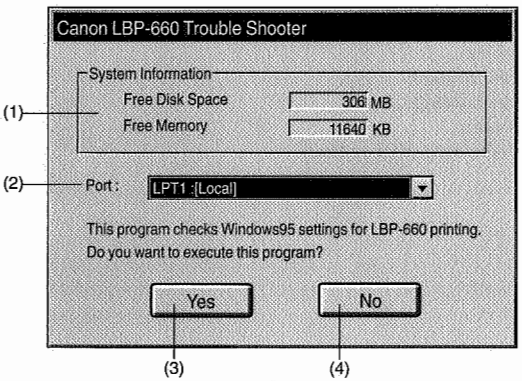


Figure 1-7-42

(1) System Information : Displays the system information of the PC (Free Disk Space, Free Memory).
(2) Port : Selects the port to which LBP-660 is connected. Parallel port installed in the PC and port connected to the network are listed.
(3) Yes : Executes the Trouble Shooter.
(4) No : Exits the Trouble Shooter.

When the Trouble Shooter is executed by clicking the Yes button, it checks the following:

- Checks the port connection (if it is connected to the appropriate port, etc.).
- Checks WIN.INI and SYSTEM.INI and corrects the problems if any.
- Checks the registry and notifies the user of the problems if any.
- Checks Virtual Memory, bidirectional communication and DOS SPOOL settings, and corrects the problems if any.
- If the port to which the printer is connected cannot be used, reports it to the user.
- If the version of the installed file differs, notifies it to the user.
- In case that the PC using the printer is a client in the network to which the printer is connected, checks the network. Check results can be stored in a file.

If the Trouble Shooter encounters a problem, it displays an error message with available information. Each message includes several options as shown below.

- Correct this problem.
- Don't correct this problem.
- Continue troubleshooting.
- Exit trouble shooting.
- Display trouble shooting information.

D. Microsoft Windows 3.1

1. Installation of Microsoft Windows Printing System

Windows Printing System installation disks are packed with the printer. Types and contents of the installation disks are as follows.

Types

- 3.5-inch 1.44MB floppy disks (3 disks): Single-byte zone (German, French, Italian, Finnish, Danish, Dutch, Spanish, Norwegian, Swedish, Thai, English)
- 3.5-inch 1.44MB floppy disks (2 disks) : Double-byte zone (Chinese, Taiwanese)

Contents

- Microsoft Windows Printing System V1.8 driver
- Status Window
- PCL emulator
- PCL emulation front panel
- Print manager
- On-line help
- TrueType fonts (Single-byte zone)
- PCL font
- Voice message
- Installer
- Uninstaller
- Trouble Shooter (Does not operate on Microsoft Windows 3.1)

a. Operating environment

The following environment is required to install Microsoft Windows Printing System.

● PC hardware

This printer supports an IBM-PC or a compatible machine. Operating conditions of them are as shown below.

<Minimum operating environment>

- CPU: 486SX25MHz or above
- RAM: More than 8MB
- Virtual memory: More than 16MB
- Available disk space: More than 8MB (1MB of temporary space is required for installation) Note that the Thai version requires more than 10MB and the Chinese/Taiwanese version requires more than 9MB.
- Screen size: VGA or above
- Printer port: Standard Centronics parallel port
- CD-ROM drive: Required when the installation media is 5-inch CD-ROM.
- Floppy drive: 3.5-inch 1.44MB
- Sound: PCM sound module is required to use the sound.

<Recommended operating environment>

- CPU: Pentium 75MHz or above
- RAM: More than 16MB
- Printer port: ECP

● OS software

One of the following OS software is required:

- Microsoft Windows 3.1x (Enhanced Mode), MS-DOS 3.3 or above.
- Microsoft Windows for Workgroups 3.1x, MS-DOS 3.3 or above.

This printer does not operate on WIN-OS/2. As a basic rule, Windows language and the software language of this printer must match.

Windows for Workgroups or Microsoft Windows 95/98 is required for print server.

- Printer cable
  - Use bidirectional 8-bit parallel interface cable for IBM-PC.
  - Connections through the printer selector and printer buffer are not supported.

b. Installation procedures

Install Microsoft Windows Printing System to the host computer by following the procedures below. For details, see the user's manual packed with the printer.

1. Start Microsoft Windows 3.1.
2. Insert the Microsoft Windows Printing System installation disk into the floppy disk drive.
3. Select Run from the File menu in the program manager.
4. Input [A:¥SETUP.EXE] in the command line box and click the OK button.
   [A:¥] indicates the floppy disk drive name which has the driver disk. As the display may be [B:¥] or [C:¥] depending on the computer system, confirm the floppy disk drive name before inputting.

   Installation program starts. (Proceed to step 5.)

Note: Once the installation program starts, Microsoft Windows Printing System Installation-Product Registration is displayed in the background.
When started from an unused installation disk in which no name is registered, a Welcome dialog is displayed. However, it is not displayed when started from an already used disk.

---

5. If started from an unused installation disk, input your name and company name in the What Is Your Name dialog box and click the Continue button.
6. Select and press the Express or Custom button.
   Express Installation installs all the Microsoft Windows Printing System to the host computer. (More than 8MB of memory must be available on the disk.)
   Custom Installation installs only the selected software.
7. When installation is completed, restart Microsoft Windows by following the directions on the screen. When the printer is connected, the computer asks you whether to print a test page or not. Print the test page to confirm that the installation was done correctly.

2. Microsoft Windows Printing System Dialog Boxes

The printing environment of Microsoft Windows Printing System is set using the dialog boxes. A list of printing environment that can be set from the dialog boxes is shown on Page 1-83. The main dialog boxes of Microsoft Windows 3.1 are explained below.

a. Printer Setup dialog box

The Printer Setup dialog box is for setting the number of copies, orientation and paper size. By clicking the buttons in the box, reduction/enlargement rate and Graphics can also be set. The Printer Setup dialog box can be opened in the following ways.

From Printer Control Panel of Microsoft Windows

1) Opens the Printers dialog box in the Control Panel by one of the following methods:
   - Open the Windows Printing System group in the Program Manager and then click Canon LBP-660 Printer Setup.
   - Open the Main group in the Program Manager and click Printers in the Control Panel.
   - Click Printer Setup in the Options menu in the Print Manager.
2) Select Canon LBP-660 in the Installed Printers and click the Setup button.

From Microsoft Windows application

- Select Printer Setup in the File menu and click the Options button.
- Select Print in the File menu and open the Print dialog box. Click the Setup or Options button.

The Printer Setup dialog box is shown in Figure 1-7-43.

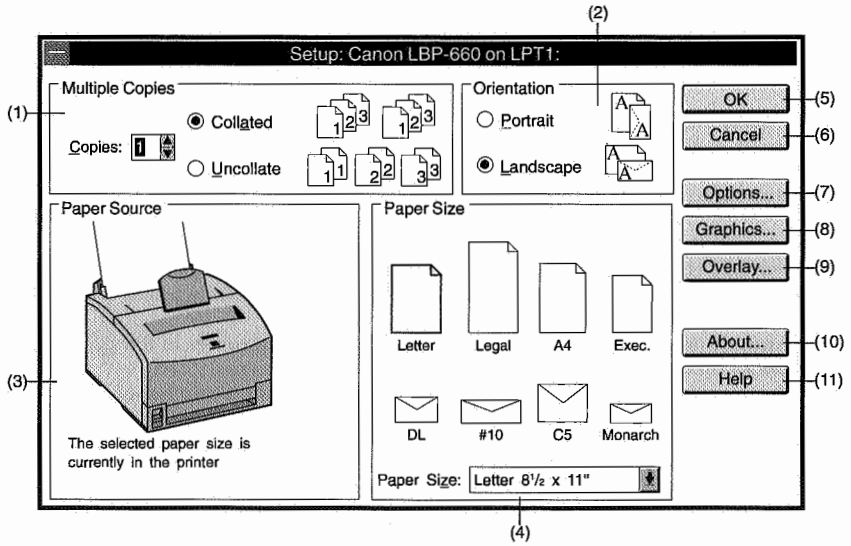


Figure 1-7-43

(1) Multiple Copies : Sets the number of copies and sorting method.
(2) Orientation : Sets page orientation (portrait or landscape).
(3) Paper Source : Shows paper pick-up information.
(4) Paper Size : Sets the print paper size. Click the paper icon or select from the list of paper sizes.
(5) OK : Changes the items in this dialog box and closes the box.
(6) Cancel : Closes this dialog box without changing its items.
(7) Options : Opens the Options dialog box (see Page 1-71).
(8) Graphics : Opens the Graphics dialog box (see Page 1-72).
(9) Overlay : Opens the Overlay dialog box (see Page 1-73).
(10) About : Opens the About dialog box that contains the version information of Microsoft Windows Printing System. See Windows 95/98 About dialog box on Page 1-56 for details.
(11) Help : Opens the Help topics.

◆ Options dialog box

The Options dialog box is for setting reduction/enlargement rate and separator pages. It can be opened by clicking the Options button in the Setup dialog box.

The Options dialog box is shown in Figure 1-7-44.

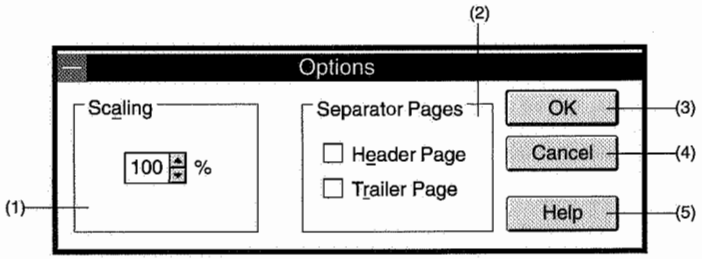


Figure 1-7-44

(1) Scaling : Sets reduction/enlargement rate.
(2) Separator Pages : Sets Separator Pages by setting header page and trailer page.
(3) OK : Changes the items in this dialog box and closes the box.
(4) Cancel : Closes this dialog box without changing its items.
(5) Help : Opens the Help topics.

Note: Separator Pages consists of Header Page and Trailer Page both of which provide print job data. Header Page is printed at the beginning and Trailer Page is printed at the end of print job. (See Page 4-9,10.)

◆ Graphics dialog box

The Graphics dialog box is for setting resolution, Automatic Image Refinement, Toner Saver, halftoning method, brightness and contrast. It can be opened by clicking the Graphics button in the Setup dialog box.

The Graphics dialog box is shown in Figure 1-7-45.

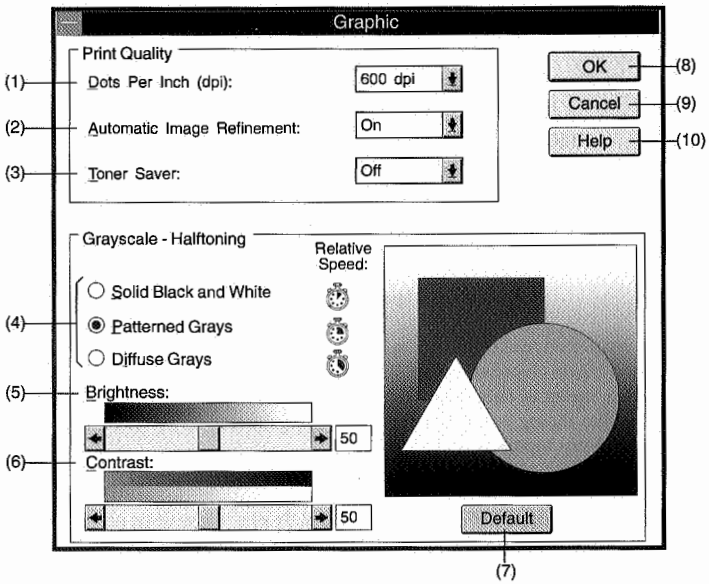


Figure 1-7-45

(1) Dots Per Inch (dpi) : Sets resolution.
(2) Automatic Image Refinement : Sets Automatic Image Refinement.
(3) Toner Saver : Sets Toner Saver.
(4) Grayscale - Halftoning : Sets Halftoning.
(5) Brightness : Adjusts image brightness.
(6) Contrast : Adjusts contrast.
(7) Default : Sets the values of Halftoning Group to the default values. (Halftoning: Patterned Grays, Brightness: 50, Contrast: 50)
(8) OK : Changes the items in this dialog box and closes the box.
(9) Cancel : Closes this dialog box without changing its items.
(10) Help : Opens the Help topics.

◆ **Overlay dialog box**

The Overlay dialog box is for setting File group, Overlay Placement group, Position group, Size group and Unit group. It can be opened by clicking the Overlay button in the Setup dialog box.

The Overlay dialog box is shown in Figure 1-7-46.

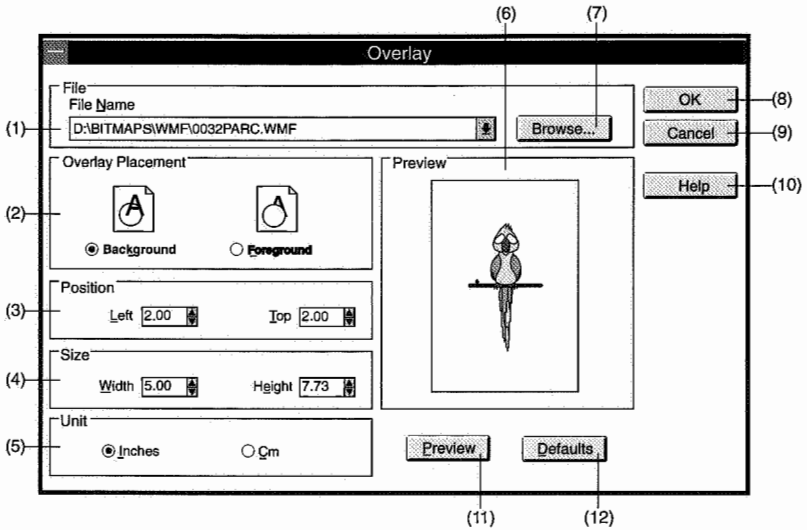


Figure 1-7-46

(1) File : Sets the file name of the overlay form.
(2) Overlay Placement : Sets whether to place the overlay form background or foreground.
(3) Position : Sets the position of the left top corner of the overlay form.
(4) Size : Sets the size of the overlay form.
(5) Unit : Sets the unit.
(6) Preview : Displays overlay setting for confirmation.
(7) Browse : Displays File selection dialog.
(8) OK : Changes the items in this dialog box and closes the box.
(9) Cancel : Closes this dialog box without changing its items.
(10) Help : Opens the Help topics.
(11) Preview : Renews Preview.
(12) Defaults : Sets values of this dialog box to default.

b. Printer Status Window

The Printer Status Window is an exclusive application for Windows Printing System and shows the printing job status with a progress bar and graphic animation. It is also used for setting peculiar items for the printer such as the toner density.

For details, see Page 1-61 to 1-64.

E. PCL Emulation

1. Concerning PCL Emulation

This printer supports PCL4 in the Microsoft Windows 95/98/3.1 environment, and host-based PCL emulation is executed. Settings of PCL are made on the PCL front panel which is a host-based application.

As PCL emulation is host-based, the application needs to be started from the DOS box when outputting to a local printer. In a case that the computer is started up in pure DOS, Windows 95/98 DOS box is set to the MS-DOS mode, or Command prompt or MS-DOS is specified at the start-up of Windows 95/98, the local printer is unable to print. However, in the case of printing via a network, printing from pure DOS is possible.

In DOS application printer setup, select HP LaserJet II as the printer driver.

The DOS box of Windows 95/98 is set to the MS-DOS mode in the following cases:

- Restart the computer in MS-DOS mode? is selected when quitting Windows 95/98.
- MS-DOS box was opened after specifying the MS-DOS mode for Advanced Program Setting in MS-DOS Prompt Properties.
- Suggest MS-DOS mode as necessary is specified for Advanced Program Setting in MS-DOS Prompt Properties and Windows 95/98 judges that execution in the MS-DOS mode is necessary.

2. PCL Emulation Front Panel

The PCL Emulation Front Panel is opened by double-clicking the LBP-660 PCL Emulation Front Panel icon in the Microsoft Windows Printing System group. More than one PCL Emulation Front Panels cannot be opened at the same, but the front panel which was opened first is displayed on the foremost ground in a full size.

PCL Emulation Front Panel has the following dialog box. A list of printing environments that can be set from the dialog box is shown on page 1-83. (For details, see the user's manual packed with the printer.)

◆ **PCL Emulation Front Panel Settings dialog box**

The PCL Emulation Front Panel Settings dialog box is shown in Figure 1-7-47.

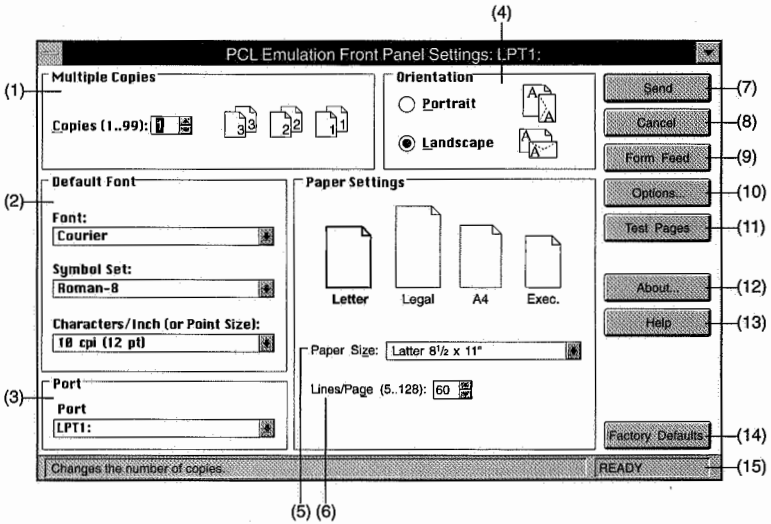


Figure 1-7-47

(1) Multiple Copies : Sets the number of copies.
(2) Default Font : Sets the type of font, the symbol set, and the point size.
(3) Port : Sets the printer port.
(4) Orientation : Sets the page orientation.
(5) Paper Size : Sets the print paper size.
(6) Lines/Page : Sets the number of lines to be printed per page.
(7) Send/Exit : Closes this dialog box and sends any changed items to the printer.
(8) Cancel : Closes this dialog box without changing its items.
(9) Form Feed : Executes form-feeding.
(10) Options : Opens the Options dialog box (see Page 1-77).
(11) Test Pages : Opens the Test Pages dialog box (see Page 1-78).
(12) About : Opens the About dialog box that contains the version information of Microsoft Windows Printing System (see Page 1-79).
(13) Help : Opens Help topics.
(14) Factory Defaults : Returns the PCL Emulation Front Panel settings to their default values.
(15) Status bar : Indicates the status of the printer.

◆ **PCL Emulation Front Panel Options dialog box**

The PCL Emulation Front Panel Options dialog box is for setting Auto-Form Feed which automatically prints and delivers the paper and exits the PCL Emulation Job when the PCL data is interrupted. It can be opened by clicking the Options... button in the PCL Emulation Front Panel Settings dialog box.

The PCL Emulation Front Panel Options dialog box is shown in Figure 1-7-48.

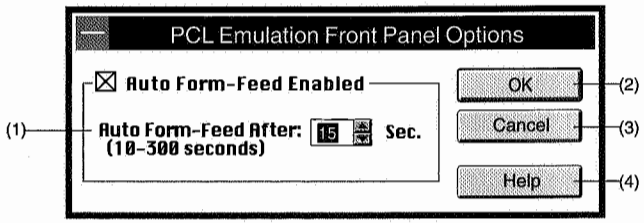


Figure 1-7-48

(1) Auto Form-Feed Enabled : Sets the time.
(2) OK : Changes the items in this dialog box and closes the box.
(3) Cancel : Closes this dialog box without changing its items.
(4) Help : Opens the Help topics.

◆ **PCL Emulation Test Pages dialog box**

The PCL Emulation Test Pages dialog box can print two types of test pages; PCL Emulation Test Page and PCL Emulation Front Page. It can be opened by clicking the Test Page button in the PCL Emulation Front Panel Settings dialog box.

The PCL Emulation Test Pages dialog box is shown in Figure 1-7-49.

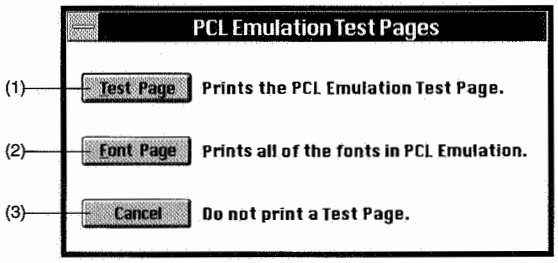


Figure 1-7-49

(1) Test Page : Prints the PCL Test Page (see Page 4-11) and returns to the PCL Emulation Front Panel Settings dialog box.

(2) Font Page : Prints the font list supported by the PCL Emulation and returns to the PCL Emulation Front Panel Settings dialog box.

(3) Cancel : Does not print and returns to the PCL Emulation Front Panel Settings dialog box.

◆ **About Dialog box**

The About dialog box contains such information as the version of Microsoft Windows Printing System and available memory of the host computer. It can be opened by clicking the About... button in the PCL Emulation Front Panel Settings dialog box.

The About dialog box is shown in Figure 1-7-50.

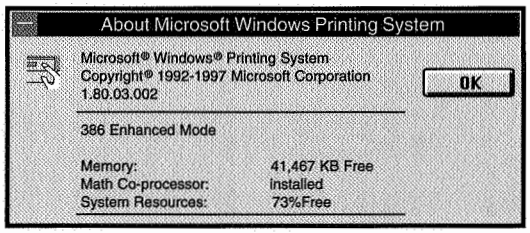


Figure 1-7-50

For details, see About dialog box for Windows 95/98 on Page 1-56.

This page intentionally left blank

F. Printing Environment Setting and Test Printing
1. Microsoft Windows NT
a. Printing Environment Setting

A list of printing environments that can be set from the Microsoft Windows Printing System dialog box is shown below.

Note: The values in bold are the default values at the time of shipment from the factory.

Table 1-7-4

● **Document Properties**

Page Setup tab

Setup item	Setup Value
Paper Size*	**Letter** / Legal / **A4** / Executive / Envelope DL / Envelope #10 / Envelope C5 / Envelope Monarch / B5 / Index Card / Custom
Copy Count	**1** ≤ X ≤ 99
Collate Copies	ON / **OFF**
Orientation	**Portrait** / Landscape

* Default value is Letter size for USA and A4 size for other countries.

Advanced tab

Setup item	Setup Value		
Paper/Output	Paper Size	Letter / Legal / **A4** / Executive / Envelope DL / Envelope #10 / Envelope C5 / Envelope Monarch / B5 / Index Card / Custom	
	Orientation	**Portrait** / Landscape	
	Copy Count	Copy Count	**1** ≤ X ≤ 99
		Collate Copies	ON / **OFF**
Graphic	Resolution	300dpi / **600dpi**	
	Scalling	10% ≤ **100** ≤ 200%	
Document Option	Halftone Color Adjustment	Refer to Halftone Color Adjustment Dialog	
	Automatic Image Refinement	300dpi / **600dpi**	
	Toner Saver	ON / **OFF**	
	Toner Density	Light / Medium Light / **Medium** / Medium Dark / Dark	
	Custom Paper Size	Refer to Custom Paper Size Dialog	

● **Printer Properties**

Device Settings tab

Setup item	Setup Value
Halftone	**Use Printer Halftone** / Use System Halftone
Halftone Setup	Refer to Device Color/Halftone Properties Dialog

Halftone Color Adjustment Dialog (System Halftone)

Setup item	Setup Value	
Contrast	-100 ≤ **0** ≤ 100	
Brightness	-100 ≤ **0** ≤ 100	
CoLor	——	
Tint	——	
Dark Picture	ON / **OFF**	
Negative	ON / **OFF**	
Illuminate	——	
Linear	ON / **OFF**	
Red	Check Box	**ON** / OFF
	Slide Bar	0.250 ≤ **1.000** ≤ 6.500
Green	Check Box	**ON** / OFF
	Slide Bar	0.250 ≤ **1.000** ≤ 6.500
Blue	Check Box	**ON** / OFF
	Slide Bar	0.250 ≤ **1.000** ≤ 6.500
Black Ref	0.000 ≤ **0.000** ≤ 0.400	
White Ref	0.600 ≤ **1.000** ≤ 1.000	
Picture	1: Standard Colors / **2: RGB Test Colors** / 3: NTSC Color Bar	
View	**ON** / OFF	
Maximize	ON / **OFF**	
Palette	ON / **OFF**	
Scale	**ON** / OFF	
Flip X	ON / **OFF**	
Flip Y	ON / **OFF**	

Halftone Color Adjustment Dialog (Printer Halftone)

Setup item	Setup Value
Halftoning	Smooth / **Patterne 1** / Patterne 1
Brightness	-100 ≤ **0** ≤ 100
Contrast	-100 ≤ **0** ≤ 100

Custom Paper Size Dialog

Setup item	Setup Value	
Custom Paper Name	**Custom**	
Paper Sizes	Width	76.2mm ≤ **210** ≤ 215.9mm
	Height	127.0mm ≤ **297** ≤ 355.6mm
Units	inch / **mm**	

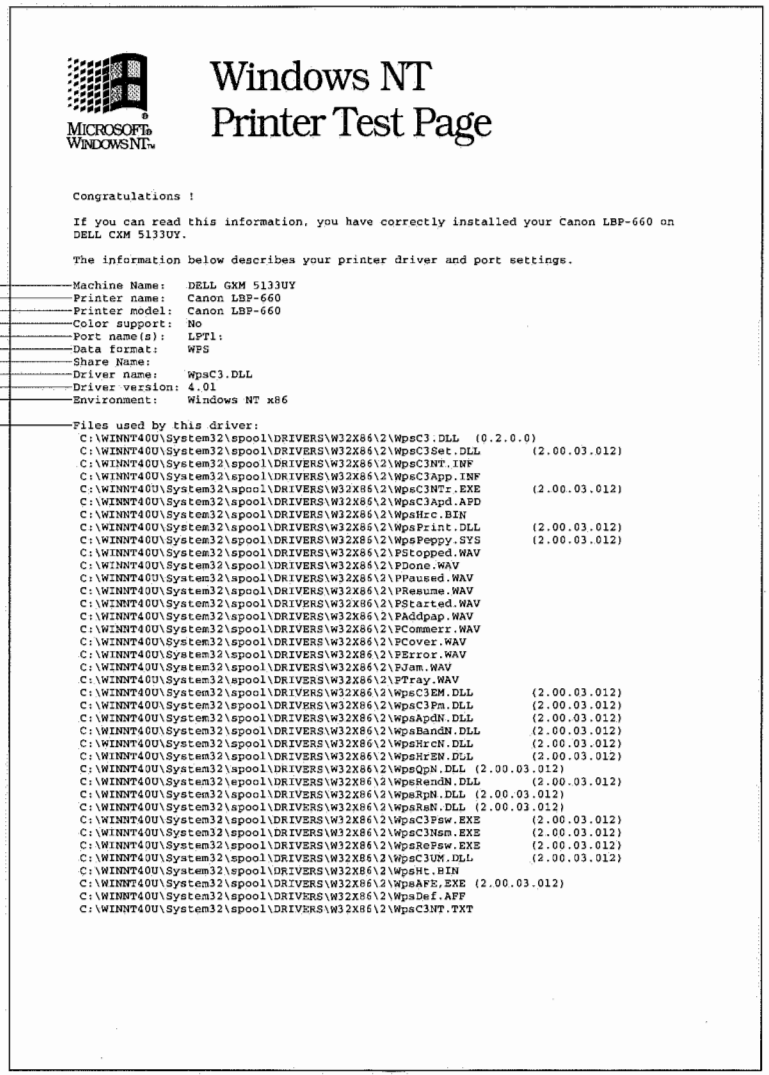
Device Color/Halftone Properties Dialog

Setup item	Setup Value
Halftone Pattern	2x2 / 2x2 Enhanced / 4x4 / 4x4 Enhanced / **6x6** / 6x6 Enhanced / 8x8 / 8x8 Enhanced / 10x10 / 10x10 Enhanced / 12x12 / 12x12 Enhanced / 14x14 / 14x14 Enhanced / 16x16 / 16x16 Enhanced
Device Gamma	0.2500 ≤ **1.2500** ≤ 6.50000
Pixel Diameter	576.9% ≤ x ≤ 33.3% / ***DEVICE*** / 1/104" ≤ x ≤ 1/1800"
Units	25.00 ≤ **100.00** ≤ 400.00

b. Test Printing (1 page)

This test page is supported by Microsoft Windows NT as standard and is also supported by this printer. The printer does not support test page peculiar to Windows Printing System on Microsoft Windows 95/98/3.1.

For details, see "Contents of Test Page."



Windows NT
Printer Test Page

Congratulations !

If you can read this information, you have correctly installed your Canon LBP-660 on DELL CXM 5133UY.

The information below describes your printer driver and port settings.

(1) Machine Name: DELL GXM 5133UY
(2) Printer name: Canon LBP-660
(3) Printer model: Canon LBP-660
(4) Color support: No
(5) Port name(s): LPT1:
(6) Data format: WPS
(7) Share Name:
(8) Driver name: WpsC3.DLL
(9) Driver version: 4.01
(10) Environment: Windows NT x86

(11) Files used by this driver:
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\WpsC3.DLL (0.2.0.0)
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\WpsC3Set.DLL (2.00.03.012)
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\WpsC3NT.INF
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\WpsC3App.INF
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\WpsC3NTr.EXE (2.00.03.012)
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\WpsC3Apd.APD
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\WpsHrc.BIN
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\WpsPrint.DLL (2.00.03.012)
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\WpsPeppy.SYS (2.00.03.012)
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\PStopped.WAV
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\PDone.WAV
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\PPaused.WAV
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\PResume.WAV
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\PStarted.WAV
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\PAddpap.WAV
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\PCommerr.WAV
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\PCover.WAV
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\PError.WAV
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\PJam.WAV
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\PTray.WAV
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\WpsC3EM.DLL (2.00.03.012)
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\WpsC3Pm.DLL (2.00.03.012)
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\WpsApdN.DLL (2.00.03.012)
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\WpsBandN.DLL (2.00.03.012)
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\WpsHrcN.DLL (2.00.03.012)
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\WpsHrEN.DLL (2.00.03.012)
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\WpsQpN.DLL (2.00.03.012)
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\WpsRendN.DLL (2.00.03.012)
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\WpsRpN.DLL (2.00.03.012)
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\WpsRsN.DLL (2.00.03.012)
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\WpsC3Psw.EXE (2.00.03.012)
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\WpsC3Nsm.EXE (2.00.03.012)
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\WpsRePsw.EXE (2.00.03.012)
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\WpsC3UM.DLL (2.00.03.012)
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\WpsHt.BIN
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\WpsAFE,EXE (2.00.03.012)
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\WpsDef.AFF
C:\WINNT40U\System32\spool\DRIVERS\W32X86\2\WpsC3NT.TXT

Figure 1-7-51

Contents of Test Page

(1) **Machine Name:** Name of computer specified when Microsoft Windows NT was installed.
(2) **Printer name:** Name of printer driver specified when the printer was installed (normally "Canon LBP-660").
(3) **Printer model:** Name of printer (in case of this printer "Canon LBP-660").
(4) **Color support:** Whether or not color printing is supported (in case of this printer "No").
(5) **Port name(s):** Name of port to which the printer is connected.
(6) **Data format:** Selected spool data format.
(7) **Share Name:** Share Name when printing via a network
(8) **Driver name:** File name of the graphics driver.
(9) **Driver version:** Version information of driver
(10) **Environment:** Information on OS and CPU (In case of this printer "Windows x86").
(11) **Files used by this driver:** List of files used by this printer driver.

2. Microsoft Windows 95/98/3.1

a. Printing Environment Setting

A list of printing environments that can be set from the Microsoft Windows Printing System dialog box is shown below.

Note: The values in bold are the default values at the time of shipment from the factory.

Table 1-7-5

Windows 95/98

Copies & Methods tab

Setup item	Setup Value	
Copies & Page Order	Copies	**1** to 99
	Page Order	Collated / **Uncollated**
Orientation	**Portrait** / Landscape	

Size & Source tab

Setup item	Setup Value
Paper Size*	**Letter** / Legal / **A4** / Executive / B5 DL / #10 / C5 / Monarch / Index
Scaling	10% ≤ **100** ≤ 200%

* Default value is Letter size for USA and A4 size for other countries.

Graphics tab

Setup item	Setup Value
Halftoning	Smooth / **Pattern 1** / Pattern 2
Brightness	-100 ≤ **0** ≤ 100
Contrast	-100 ≤ **0** ≤ 100

Quality tab

Setup item	Setup Value
Dots Per Inch (dpi)	300dpi / **600dpi**
Automatic Image Refinement	**ON** / OFF
Toner Saver	ON / **OFF**

Overlay tab

Setup item	Setup Value	
File		
Overlay Placement	**Background** / Foreground	
Position*	Left	0 < **X** < 14" (355.6mm)
	Top	0 < **X** < 14" (355.6mm)
Size**	Width	0 < **X** < 14" (35.56cm)
	Height	0 < **X** < 14" (35.56cm)
Unit***	Inches / Cm	

* Default value is the center of the paper.
** Default value is that of file.
*** Default value is in Inches for USA/UK, and in Cm for others.

Windows 3.1

Setup Dialog Box

Setup item	Setup Value
Multiple Copies	**1** to 99
	Collated / **Uncollated**
Orientation	**Portrait** / Landscape
Paper Size*	**Letter** / Legal /**A4** / Executive / B5 #10 / DL / C5 / Monarch / Index card

Options Dialog Box

Setup item	Setup Value
Header Page	ON / OFF
Trailer Page	ON / OFF
Scaling	10% ≤ **100** ≤ 400%

* Default value is Letter size for USA and A4 size for other countries.

Graphics Dialog Box

Setup item	Setup Value
Dots Per Inch (dpi)	300dpi / **600dpi**
Automatic Image Refinement	**ON** / OFF
Toner Saver	ON / **OFF**
Halftoning	**Pattern 1** / Pattern 2 / Smooth
Brightness	0 ≤ **50** ≤ 100
Contrast	0 ≤ **50** ≤ 100

Overlay tab

Setup item	Setup Value	
File		
Overlay Placement	**Background** / Foreground	
Position*	Left	0 < **X** < 14" (355.6mm)
	Top	0 < **X** < 14" (355.6mm)
Size**	Width	0 < **X** < 14" (35.56cm)
	Height	0 < **X** < 14" (35.56cm)
Unit***	Inches / Cm	

* Default value is the center of the paper.
** Default value is that of file.
*** Default value is in Inches for USA/UK, and in Cm for others.

PCL Emulation front panel Setting Dialog Box

Setup item	Setup Value	
Multiple Copies	**1** to 99	
Font	**Courier** / Line Printer / Post Latin / Sans Serif Bold	
Symbol Set	**Courier Line Printer**	Roman-8 / ECMA-94 (Latin1) / IBM-US (PC-8) IBM-DN (PC-8D/N) / 17 ISO Symbol sets GERMAN / SPANISH
	Post Latin Sans Serif Bold	Roman-8 / ECMA-94 / ASCII / 17 ISO symbol sets GERMAN / SPANISH
Characters/Inch (or Point Size)	Courier (Regular, Bold) : 12 Line Printer : 8.5 Post Latin (Normal) : 8 or 10 or 12 Post Latin (Bold) : 10 or 12 or 14 Post Latin (Italic) : 10 or 12 Sans Serif (Normal) : 8 or 10 or 12 Sans Serif (Bold) : 10 or 12 or 14 Sans Serif (Italic) : 10 or 12	
	LPT1 / LPT2 / LPT3/ LPT4/LPT5 / LPT6 / LPT7/LPT8 / LPT9	
Port	**Portrait** / Landscape	
Orientation	**Letter** / Legal / Executive / A4	
Paper Size	#10 / DL / C5 / Monarch	
Lines/Page	5 to 128 (**60**)	

* Default value is Letter size for USA and A4 size for other countries.
** Default value varies according to the Paper Size and Orientation.

PCL Emulation front panel Options Dialog Box

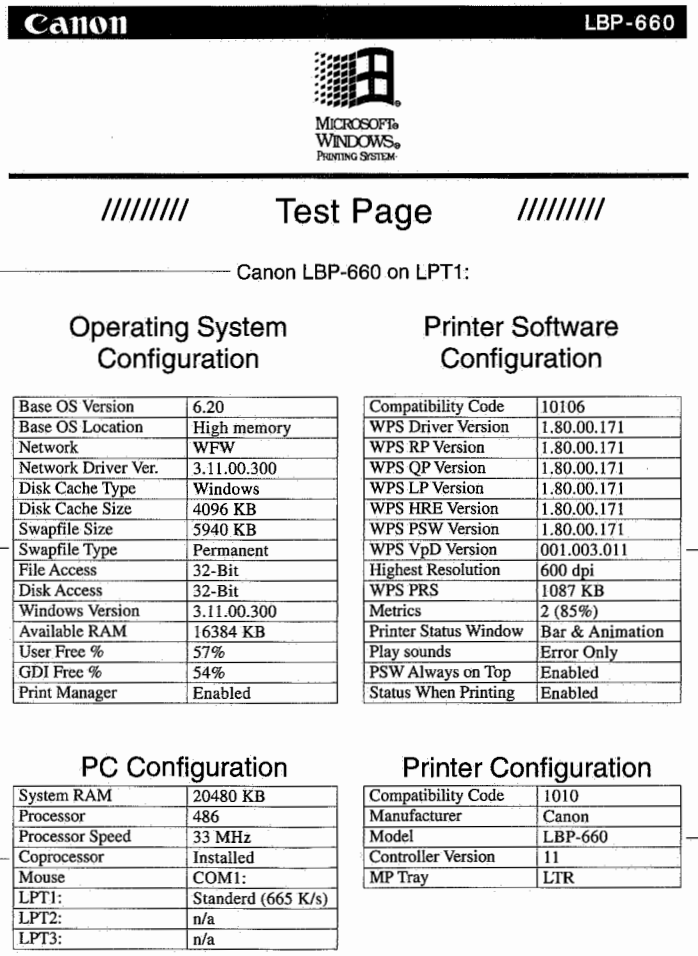
Setup item	Setup Value
Auto Form-Feed After	10 ≤ **15** ≤ 300 seconds

b. Test Printing (1 Page)

This test print is used to check the following information :

(1) Printer Name and Port Number
(2) Operating System Configuration
(3) Printer Software Configuration
(4) PC Configuration
(5) Printer Configuration

See "Contents of Test Page" for details.



Base OS Version	6.20
Base OS Location	High memory
Network	WFW
Network Driver Ver.	3.11.00.300
Disk Cache Type	Windows
Disk Cache Size	4096 KB
Swapfile Size	5940 KB
Swapfile Type	Permanent
File Access	32-Bit
Disk Access	32-Bit
Windows Version	3.11.00.300
Available RAM	16384 KB
User Free %	57%
GDI Free %	54%
Print Manager	Enabled

Compatibility Code	10106
WPS Driver Version	1.80.00.171
WPS RP Version	1.80.00.171
WPS QP Version	1.80.00.171
WPS LP Version	1.80.00.171
WPS HRE Version	1.80.00.171
WPS PSW Version	1.80.00.171
WPS VpD Version	001.003.011
Highest Resolution	600 dpi
WPS PRS	1087 KB
Metrics	2 (85%)
Printer Status Window	Bar & Animation
Play sounds	Error Only
PSW Always on Top	Enabled
Status When Printing	Enabled

System RAM	20480 KB
Processor	486
Processor Speed	33 MHz
Coprocessor	Installed
Mouse	COM1:
LPT1:	Standerd (665 K/s)
LPT2:	n/a
LPT3:	n/a

Compatibility Code	1010
Manufacturer	Canon
Model	LBP-660
Controller Version	11
MP Tray	LTR

Figure 1-7-52

Contents of Test Page

● **Operating System Configuration**
Base OS Version : Version of MS-DOS.
Base OS Location : Storage location of MS-DOS. "Low memory," "High memory," or "ROM".
Network : Currently active network. "WfW," "Windows 95," "LAN Manager" or "ROM".
Network Driver Ver. : Version of network driver. "n/a" when network is inactive or unknown.
Disk Cache Type : "Windows," "MS-DOS," or "Windows 95".
Disk Cache Size : Size of disk cache. "Unknown" when disk cache type is MS-DOS. "Dynamic" when Windows 95.
Swapfile Size : Swapfile size of Windows. "Dynamic" in case of Windows 95.
Swapfile Type : "Permanent," "Temporary," or "None".
File Access : "16-bit" or "32-bit".
Disk Access : "16-bit" or "32-bit." "n/a," in case of Window 95.
Windows version : Version of Windows.
Available RAM : Amount of physical RAM available to Windows. "Dynamic" in case of Windows 95.
User Free % : Percentage of free memory in USER. (USER is the module name of Windows Manager.)
GDI Free % : Percentage of free memory in GDI.
Print Manager : "Enabled" or "Disabled".

● **PC Configuration**
System RAM : Amount of RAM in the PC.
Processor* : "386," "486," "Pentium (TM)" or "Pentium Pro (TM)"
Processor Speed : CPU clock speed.
Coprocessor : "Emulated," "Installed" or "Internal".
Mouse Port : "BUS," "COMx" or "n/a" (x is port number).
LPT1 : "Standard (nnnn K/s)," "Standard," "ECP," "ECP (nnnn K/s)" or "n/a".
LPT2 : "Standard (nnnn K/s)," "Standard," "ECP," "ECP (nnnn K/s)" or "n/a".
LPT3 : "Standard (nnnn K/s)," "Standard," "ECP," "ECP (nnnn K/s)" or "n/a".

* For R1.00 of US version and European version, "Pentium (TM)" is displayed instead of "Pentium Pro (TM)".

● **Printer Software Configuration**
Compatibility Code : Compatibility code of the driver (10106).
WPS Driver : Version of WPSC3.DRV of the driver.
WPS RP Version : Version of Resource Processor WPSSRP.DLL.
WPS QP Version : Version of Que Processor WPSQRP.DLL.
WPS LP Version : Version of Logical Processor WPSLP.DLL.
WPS HRE Version : Version of WPSHRE.DLL.
WPS PSW Version : Version of WPSSPW.DLL.
WPS VpD Version : Version of WPSLJVPD.386.
Highest Resolution : 600 dpi.
WPS PRS : Memory size of PRS.
Metrics : "N at xxx%" (n is basic cost metrics. xxx is adjustment rate.).
Printer Status Window : "Bar," "Animation," "Bar & Animation" or "None". "Status Not Available" when via network.
Play Sounds: "Enabled," "Disabled" or "Error Only".
PSW Always On Top: "Enabled" or "Disabled". "Status Not Available" when via network.
Status When Printing: "Enabled" or "Disabled". "Status Not Available" when via network.

● **Printer Configuration**
Compatibility Code : Compatible code indicated by VER field of the device ID (1010). "Status Not Available" when via network.
Manufacturer : Manufacturer, "Canon," indicated by the MDL field of the Device ID. "Status Not Available" when via network.
Model : Model Name. "LBP-660," indicated by the VER field of the Device ID. "Status Not Available" when via network.
Controller Version : Hardware version indicated by the REV field of the device ID. "Status Not Available" when via network.
MP Tray : Paper on the tray (LTR, LGL, EXE, A4, B5, ENV, INDEX, A5, Postcard, User defined), "EMPTY" or "Unknown". "Status Not Available" when via network.

The user defined text is fixed regardless of the setting of user definition size dialog. When test page is printed via network, the following string appears at the right bottom corner :
"For complete printer information, run the Test Page from the print saver."

CHAPTER 2

OPERATION AND TIMING

1. This chapter describes the printer functions, the relationships between mechanisms and circuits, and the timing of operations. Mechanical linkages are indicated by black and white lines (▬▬▬), the flow of control signals by solid arrows (⟶), and the flow of groups of signals by outline arrows (⇨).
2. An active-high signal is indicated by "H" or by a signal name without a slash in front of it, such as "PSNS." An active-low signal is indicated by "L" or by a signal name with a slash in front of, such as "/SCNON."

   A signal that is "H" or has a name without a slash is active at the supply voltage level (indicating that the signal is being output), and inactive at ground level (indicating that the signal is not being output).

   A signal that is "L" or has a slash in front of its name is active at ground level, and inactive at the supply voltage level.

   There is a microcomputer in this printer. But as the internal operation of the microcomputer cannot be checked, an explanation of the operation of the microcomputer has been left out.

   As it is assumed that no repair will be made to customer circuit boards, the explanation of board circuits is limited to an outline using block diagrams. So there are two types of circuit explanations; (1) everything from the sensor to the input sections of the major circuit boards, (2) everything from the output sections of the major circuit boards to the loads. These are explained with block diagrams according to the function.

I. BASIC OPERATION 2-1
II. LASER/SCANNER SYSTEM 2-8
III. IMAGE FORMATION SYSTEM . 2-13
IV. PICK-UP/FEED SYSTEM 2-22
V. SYSTEM INTERFACE 2-28
VI. POWER SUPPLY 2-37

I. BASIC OPERATION

A. Functional Configuration

The functions of this printer can be divided into five main blocks: overall control system, system interface, image formation system, laser/scanner system and pick-up/feed system.

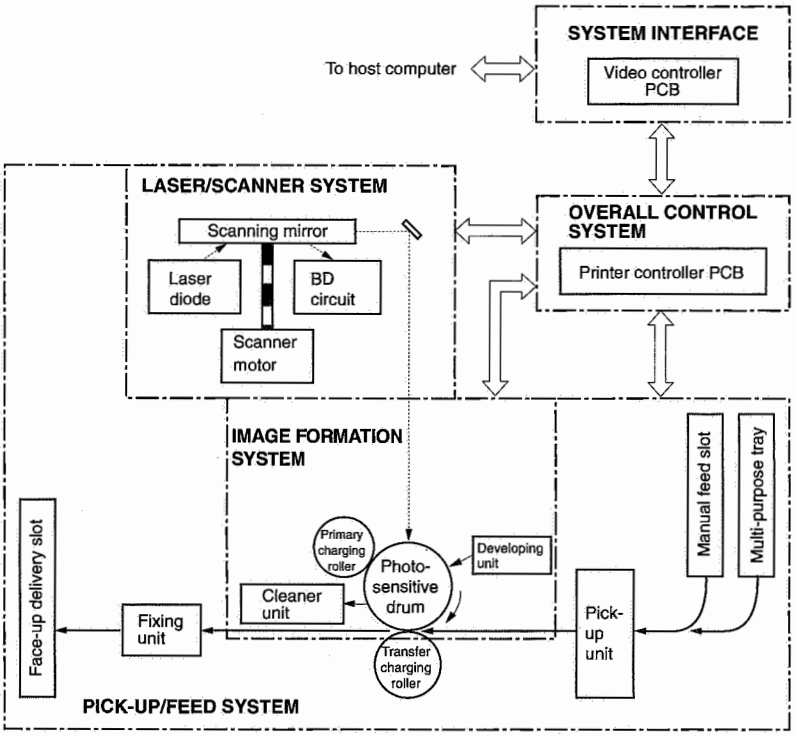


Figure 2-1-1

B. Outline of the Electrical System

The printer's operation sequence is controlled by the microcomputer located on the printer controller PCB. When the printer is turned ON and enters the standby mode, the CPU outputs signals to drive the laser diode, motors, and solenoids based on the print commands and image data input from the video controller.

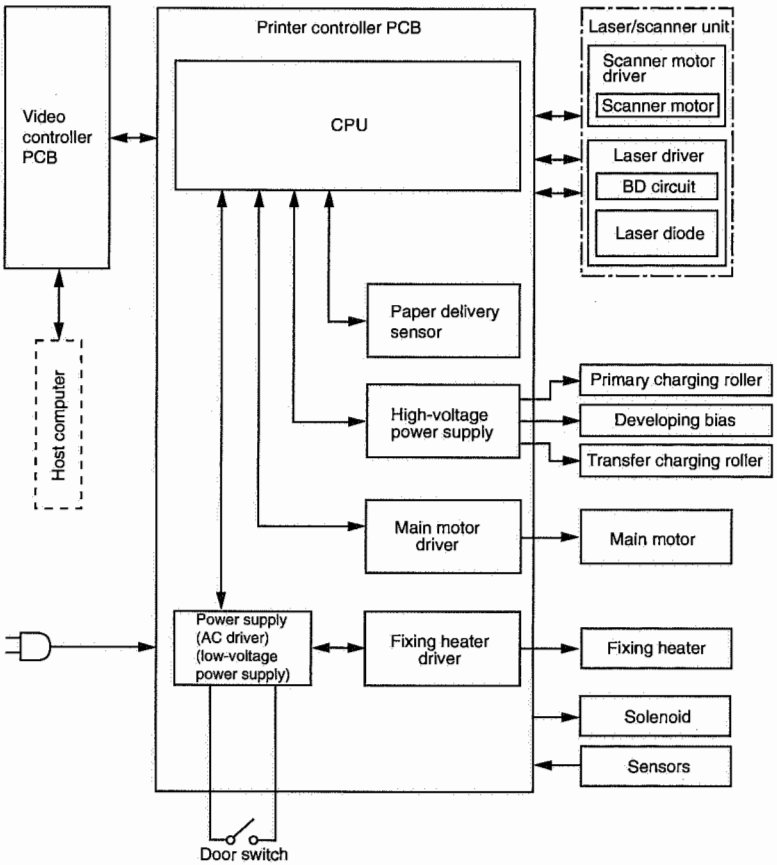


Figure 2-1-2

C. Printer Controller Input/Output Signals (1/2)

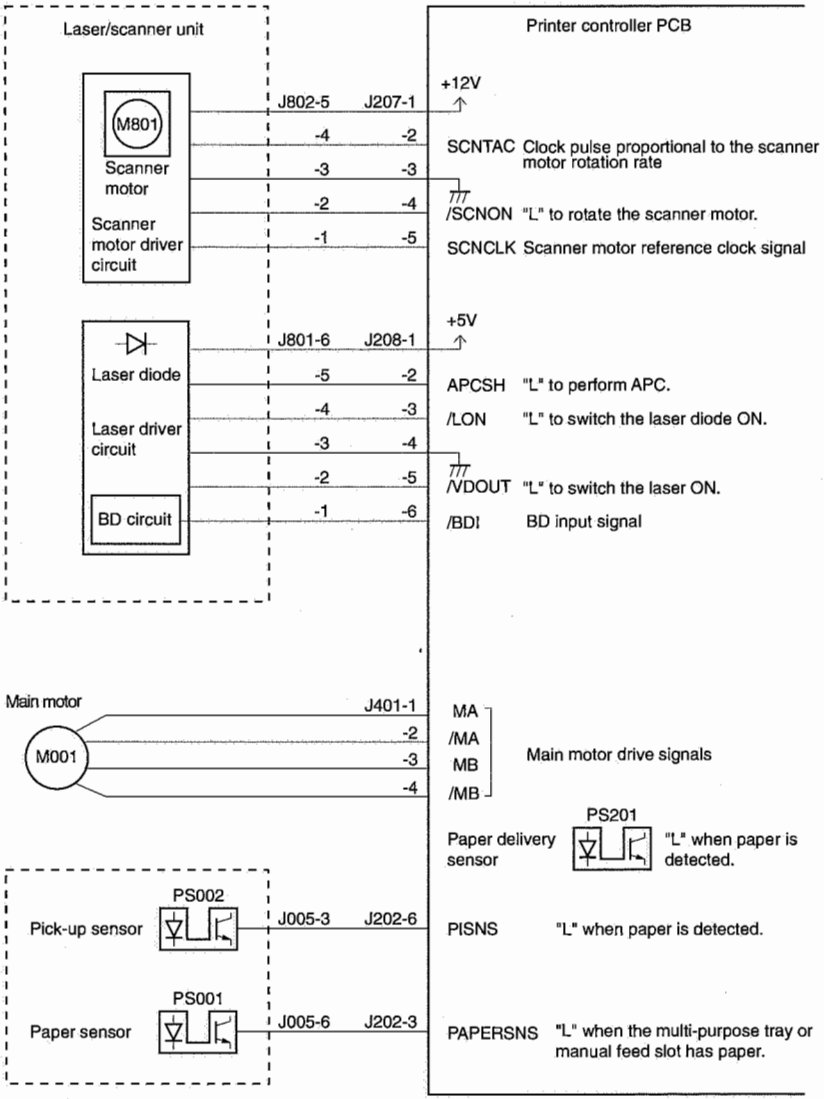


Figure 2-1-3

Printer Controller Input/Output Signals (2/2)

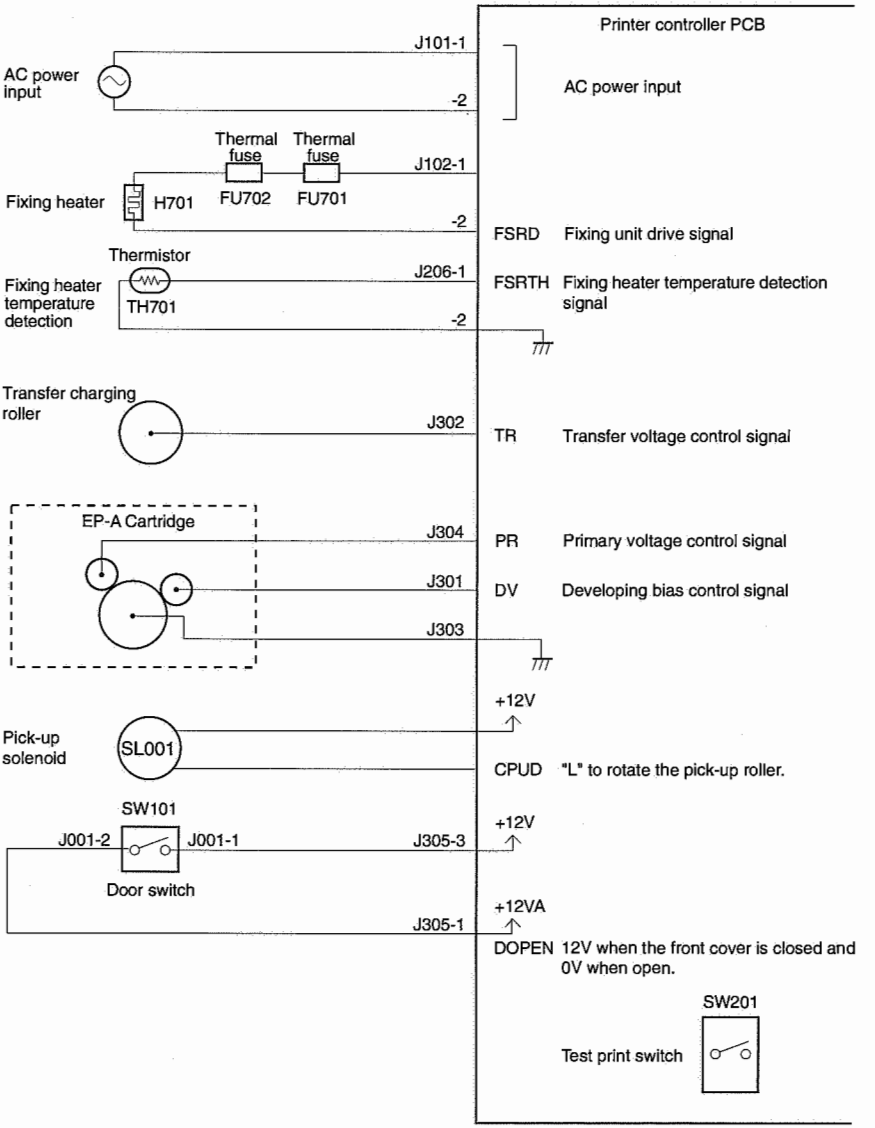


Figure 2-1-4

D. Basic Sequence of Operation

• Timing chart for printing two A4-size sheets continuously

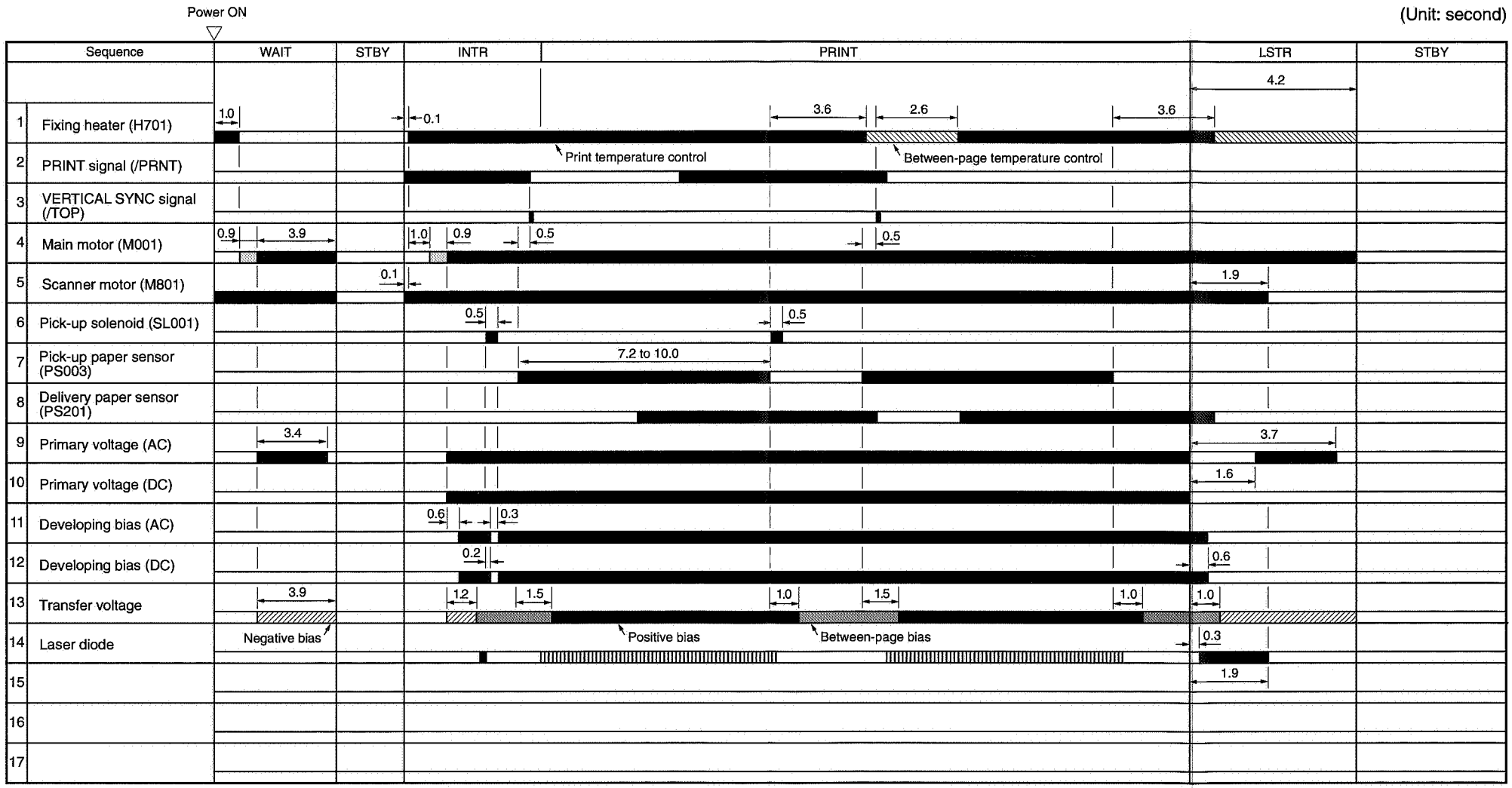


Figure 2-1-5

Table 2-1-1

Period		Purpose	Remarks
WAIT (WAIT period)	From power ON to the end of main motor initial rotation.	Clear the drum surface of potential and to clean the transfer charging roller.	
STBY (STANDBY)	From the end of the WAIT period or the LSTR period until the input of the /PRNT signal from the video controller. Or from the end of the LSTR period until power OFF.	Maintain the printer in ready mode.	
INTR (INITIAL ROTATION period)	From the input of the /PRNT signal from the video controller until the end of the APC operation (See P.2-10).	Stabilize the photosensitive drum sensitivity in preparation for printing. Also to clean the transfer charging roller.	
PRINT (Print)	From the end of initial rotation until the scanner motor stops.	Form images on the photosensitive drum based on the /VDO signal from the video controller and transfers the toner image to paper.	
LSTR (LAST ROTATION period)	From when the primary high voltage (DC) goes OFF until the main motor stops.	To deliver the last sheet of paper. Also clean the transfer charging roller.	The printer enters the INTR period when the /PRNT signal is sent from the video controller.

II. LASER/SCANNER SYSTEM

A. Outline

The microcomputer (CPU: IC201) incorporated in the printer controller generates the LASER DRIVE signal (/VDOUT) to drive the laser diode, according to the VIDEO signal (/VDO) sent from the video controller. The CPU sends the /VDOUT signal to the laser/scanner driver in the laser/scanner unit.

The /VDOUT signal sent from the CPU directs the laser/scanner driver to turn the laser diode ON.

The laser beam emitted from the laser diode passes through the cylindrical lens, and strikes the four faced scanning mirror, which is rotating at a constant speed.

The laser beam reflected by the scanning mirror passes though the focusing lens and is reflected onto the photosensitive drum from the reflecting mirror.

The scanning mirror rotates at a constant speed, therefore the laser beam scans across the photosensitive drum at a set speed.

A latent image is formed on the photosensitive drum as it rotates while the laser beam scans across its surface.

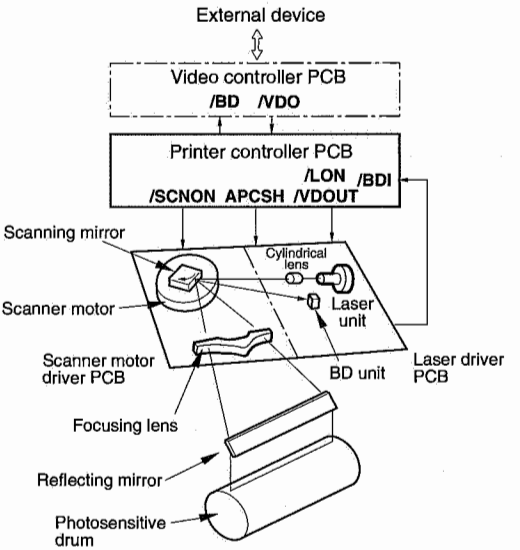


Figure 2-2-1

B. Laser Control Circuit

1. Outline

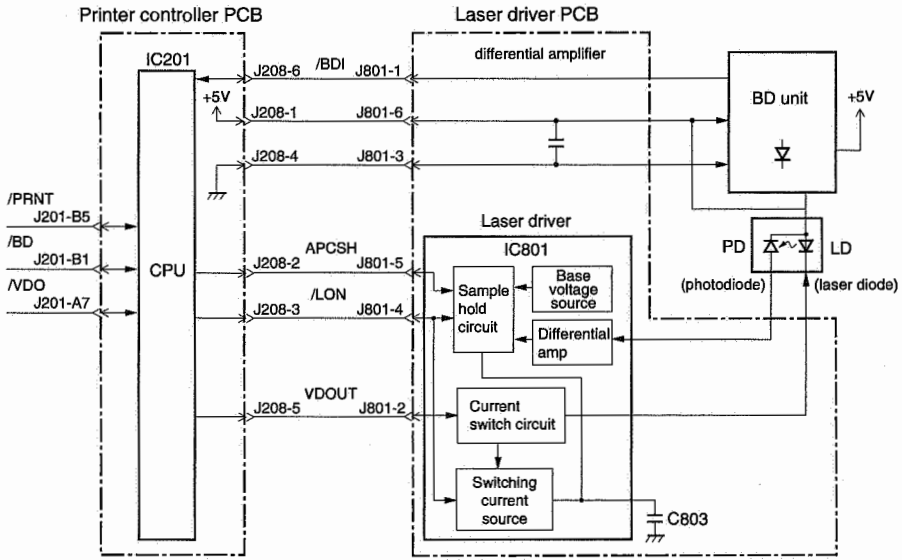


Figure 2-2-2

The microcomputer (CPU: IC201) in the printer controller generates the UNBLANKING signal (/UNBL) based on the BD INPUT signal (/BDI) sent from the laser driver. The CPU combines the /VDO and /UNBL signals sent from the video controller to produce the LASER DRIVE signal (/VDOUT) and sends it to the current switch circuit in the laser driver circuit.

When the LASER DRIVE signal (/LON) input from the CPU to the laser driver (IC801) on the laser driver PCB becomes "L", the laser diode is turned ON and OFF according to the /VDOUT signal.

2. Laser diode automatic power control

This control can be classified into two types; Initial APC and Between-line APC. Between-line APC is conducted just prior to writing the VIDEO signal (/VDO) for each line on the photosensitive drum.

When the LASER DRIVE signal (/LON) input to IC801 from the CPU, and the APC SAMPLE HOLD signal (APCSH) become "L", the sample hold circuit in IC801 enters sampling mode (Note) and the laser diode (LD) simultaneously emits a laser beam.

The photodiode (PD) senses the intensity of the beam from the laser diode. The intensity is fed back to the sample hold circuit in IC801 via the differential amplifier (current/voltage conversion circuit).

IC801 controls the output current of the constant current circuit so that the intensity of the laser beam fed back from the photodiode equals that of the target value set within IC801.

After a certain period of time elapses, the APCSH signal returns to "H" and the constant current circuit enters hold mode (Note), ending the laser diode forced-laser beam emission. IC801 then converts the controlled laser beam intensity into the voltage and stores it in C803.

When cumulative number of prints from the time of power ON is more than four, if the BD is out of the BD cycle for more than 2 seconds while the laser is driven and the scanner motor is rotating, the CPU reports a BD error to the video controller.

Note: Sampling mode:
APC control is executed.
Hold mode:
The laser beam intensity measured by APC control is stored.

---

3. Laser diode emission control

The CPU applies the image top/bottom margin masking to the /VDO signal based on the leading/trailing edges of the paper, detected by the paper pick-up sensor.

The CPU also applies left/right margin masking to the /VDO signal to prevent the laser beam writing on non-image areas outside the unblanking period.

After applying the top/bottom and left/right margin masking to the /VDO signal, the CPU sends it as the /VDOUT signal to the current switch circuit in the laser driver.

Notes:
1. The laser beam writes within the shaded area shown in Figure 2-2-3.
2. Time T1 is 1mm in from both sides of LTR size paper. T2 in Figure 2-2-3 varies according to the size of paper.
3. This printer does not have a paper-size detection function. The paper size is set in the CPU according to paper size information signal sent from the video controller. If the paper-size signal is not output from the video controller, the CPU recognizes the paper size as "undefined." In such cases, the horizontal scanning direction is set as legal size and the vertical scanning direction is set by the paper pick-up sensor (PS002) which detects the length of the paper, and the masking area is set.
4. When paper of a size not matching the size set in the CPU is fed, the printer enters the NOT READY mode and informs the video controller of a paper-size mismatch.

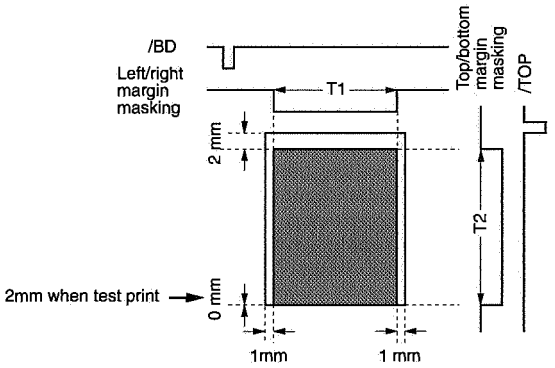


Figure 2-2-3

Note: The top/bottom and left/right margin masking are performed within the CPU.

C. Scanner Drive

The rotation of the scanner motor is controlled by the scanner motor driver, so that the laser beam reflected by the scanning mirror (four faces) scans across the photosensitive drum at a constant speed. The scanner motor is a 3-phase DC motor.

When the printer is turned ON, the oscillating frequency of the crystal oscillator (X201) is divided by the CPU (IC201) and the resulting signal is sent to the scanner motor driver as a SCNCLK signal.

When the /PRNT signal sent to the CPU on the printer controller becomes "L", the CPU sets the /SCNON signal to "L". The /SCNON signal is input to the scanner motor drive circuit on the scanner motor driver PCB to rotate the scanner motor.

When the scanner motor rotates, a signal proportional to the scanner motor rotation rate is returned from the frequency generator to the rotation control circuit. The rotation control circuit compares the signal that is returned with the reference frequency (SCNCLK) and controls the scanner motor rotation to the prescribed rotation rate.

The rotation control circuit also sends the SCANNER MOTOR ROTATION RATE signal (SCNTAC) to the CPU. The CPU monitors the pulse of this signal to determine whether the scanner motor is rotating at the prescribed rotation rate.

If the SCNTAC signal is not detected 255 times or more after the /PRNT signal becomes "L" until the paper pick-up timing, the CPU stops the scanner motor and reports a scanner error to the video controller.

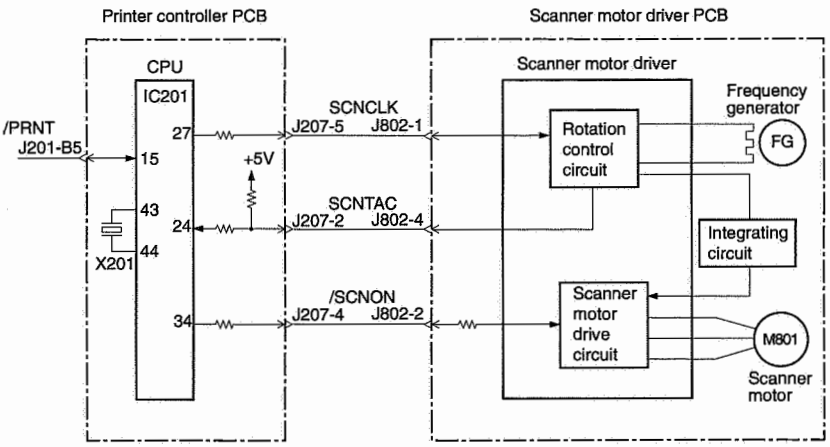


Figure 2-2-4

III. IMAGE FORMATION SYSTEM

A. Outline

The image formation system is the nucleus of the printer, and is comprised of the photosensitive drum, the developing unit, and the charging roller.

Upon receiving the PRINT signal (/PRNT) from the video controller, the printer controller drives the main motor to rotate the photosensitive drum, developing cylinder, primary charging roller, and transfer charging roller. The primary charging roller then applies a uniform negative charge to the photosensitive drum surface while the laser diode irradiates the drum surface with the laser beam modulated by the /VDO signal to form a latent image.

After the latent image on the photosensitive drum is made visible with toner on the developing cylinder, it is transferred onto paper by the transfer charging roller. The residual toner on the photosensitive drum surface is removed by the cleaner blade and the photosensitive drum potential is made uniform by the primary charging roller in preparation for the next latent image formation.

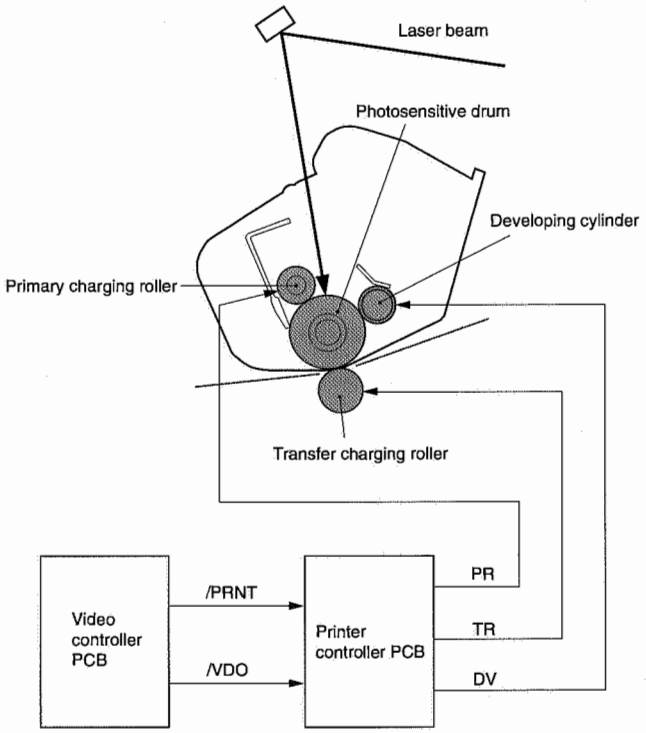


Figure 2-3-1

B. Print Process

A major portion of the image formation system is contained in the cartridge as shown in Figure 2-3-2.

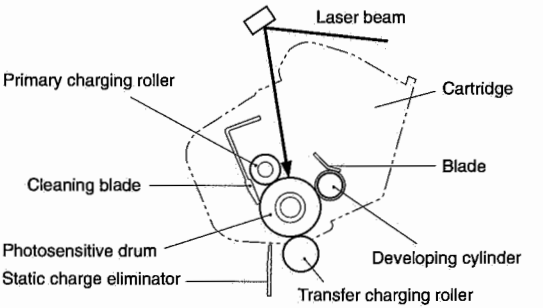


Figure 2-3-2

This printer uses a two-layer seamless drum as shown in Figure 2-3-3.

The seamless drum is comprised of an external organic photoconductive (OPC) layer and an internal aluminum substrate.

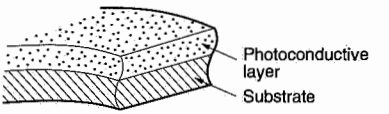


Figure 2-3-3

The print process can be separated into five main blocks:

1. Electrostatic latent image formation stage
   Step 1: Primary charging (-)
   Step 2: Scanning exposure
2. Developing stage
   Step 3: Developing
3. Transfer stage
   Step 4: Transfer (+)
   Step 5: Separation
4. Fixing stage
   Step 6: Fixing
5. Drum cleaning stage
   Step 7: Drum cleaning

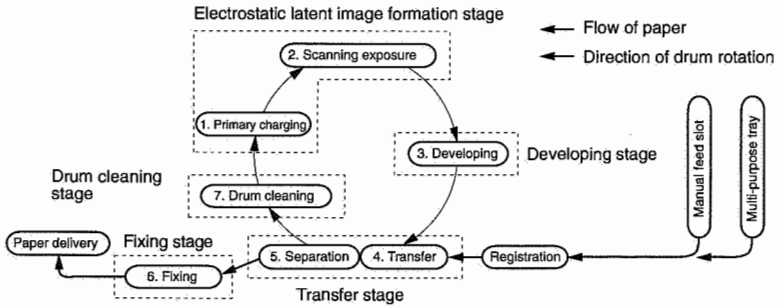


Figure 2-3-4

1. Electrostatic latent image formation stage

This stage has two steps to form electrostatic latent images on the photosensitive drum.
At the end of the last step of this stage, a negative charge remains leaving a dark area where the laser beam did not irradiate the photosensitive drum surface, while the negative charge is removed by the laser beam to form a light area.

Since the drum image created by the negative charge is invisible to the human eye, it is called an electrostatic latent image.

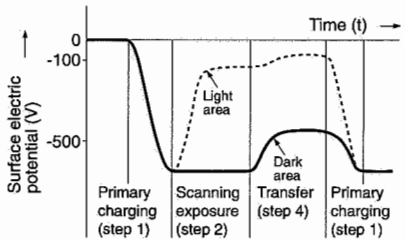


Figure 2-3-5

Step 1: Primary charging

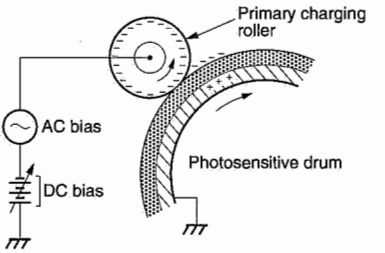


Figure 2-3-6

The photosensitive drum surface is uniformly charged with a negative potential in preparation to form a latent image. This printer performs primary charging by applying the charge directly to the photosensitive drum.

The primary charging roller is made of photoconductive rubber. To maintain an even potential on the photosensitive drum surface, an AC bias is applied to the primary charging roller on top of the DC bias. The DC bias changes in unison with the developing DC bias as it is altered by the image density data signals sent from the video controller.

The direct charging method has several advantages over the corona charging method such as a low applied voltage and no ozone emission.

Step 2: Scanning exposure

When the laser beam scans the photosensitive drum, the charge on the light area is neutralized to form an electrostatic latent image.

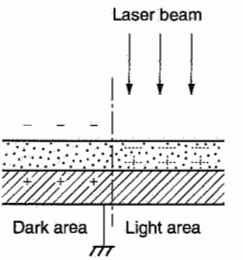


Figure 2-3-7

2. Developing stage

Toner is applied to the electrostatic latent image on the photosensitive drum surface to make the image visible. This printer performs toner projection development with single-component toner.

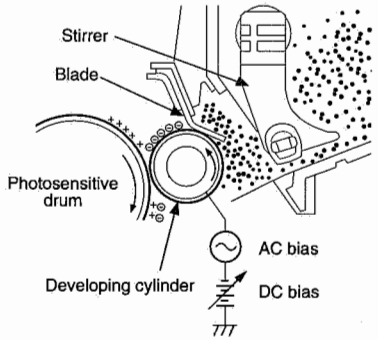


Figure 2-3-8

Step 3: Developing

The developing unit consists of a rubber blade, a developing cylinder comprised of a fixed magnet and a cylinder that revolves around the magnet, as shown in Figure 2-3-8.

The single-component developer is called toner and is comprised mainly of a magnetic substance and a resin. The toner is attracted to the cylinder through its magnetic force. The toner has an insulating property and is charged with a negative potential through friction with the revolving cylinder.

Because the photosensitive drum area irradiated by the laser beam has a higher potential than the negatively charged toner on the developing cylinder, when the drum area approaches the developing cylinder toner layer (with a negative charge) the toner jumps across to the photosensitive drum surface and adheres.

Through this "projection" of toner, the electrostatic latent image on the photosensitive drum surface becomes visible.

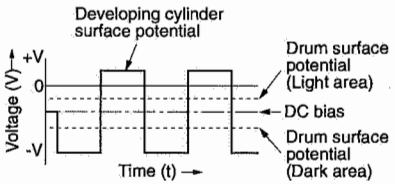


Figure 2-3-9

An AC bias is applied to the developing cylinder to help project the toner particles onto the photosensitive drum surface to improve the output image contrast.

The core voltage of the AC bias (1200 Vp-p) varies according to the DC bias voltage.

The printer changes the potential difference between the developing cylinder and the photosensitive drum to adjust print density by altering the DC bias according to the image density data signals sent from the video controller.

3. Transfer stage

The purpose of this stage is to transfer the toner image from the photosensitive drum surface to the paper.

Step 4: Transfer

A positive charge is applied to the back of the paper and toner is transferred from the photosensitive drum surface to the paper.

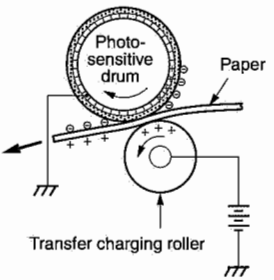


Figure 2-3-10

Step 5: Separation

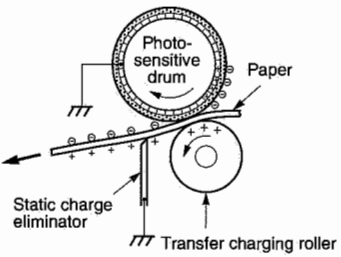


Figure 2-3-11

The paper is separated from the drum due to its elasticity (curvature separation). A static charge eliminator is incorporated to stabilize the paper transport system and to prevent the dispersion of toner on to the printed image in low temperature, low humidity environments. The static charge eliminator lowers the charge on the back of the paper.

4. Fixing stage

The toner is fused onto the paper to create a permanent image.

Step 6: Fixing

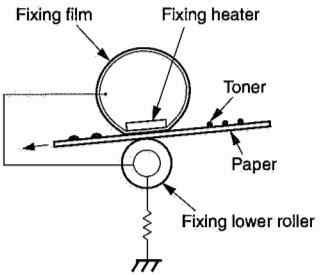


Figure 2-3-12

This printer adopts the on-demand fixing method which utilizes a fixing film with a small heat capacity. Features of the on-demand method include the capability to quickly raise the temperature and halt power supply to the fixing heater during the STANDBY mode. This has realized a short wait time of less than 5 seconds, and enhanced its energy saving capability.
The fixing film used is a polyimide cylindrical film which is coated with fluorine to prevent offsets.

5. Drum cleaning stage

The drum cleaning stage is designed to clean the photosensitive drum surface for the next printing to ensure that a clear image will be obtained.

Step 7: Drum cleaning

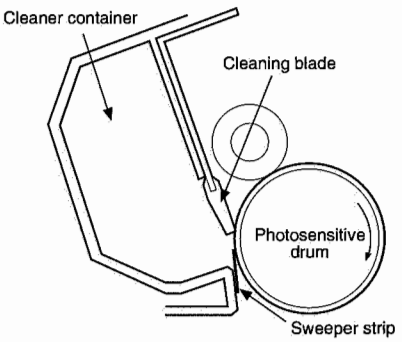


Figure 2-3-13

Any residual toner on the photosensitive drum surface is scraped off with the cleaning blade to prepare the surface for the next printing. The toner which is removed is collected in the cleaner container.

C. High-voltage Power Supply Circuit

1. Outline

This circuit applies a combination of DC and AC voltage to the primary charging roller and the developing cylinder as well as a positive or negative DC voltage to the transfer charging roller according to commands sent from the microcomputer (CPU) on the printer controller.

This circuit also adjusts the image density by changing the primary high voltage (DC) and the developing DC bias according to image density signals sent from the video controller.

2. Operation

a. Generation of voltage applied to the primary charging roller

When the /PRNT signal sent from the video controller becomes "L", initial rotation begins, and the PRIMARY HIGH VOLTAGE (AC) DRIVE signal (PRACC) is rectified in the current amp. (IC301) and input to the primary voltage circuit. The CPU outputs the PRIMARY HIGH VOLTAGE (DC) DRIVE signal (PRDCC) to the primary voltage circuit. Therefore the primary high voltage, consisting of AC bias and DC bias is applied to the primary charging roller.

The primary high voltage DC voltage is detected by the detection circuit. IC302 then compares this with the PRIMARY HIGH VOLTAGE (DC) DRIVE signal (PRDCC) to control the voltage value of the primary high voltage.

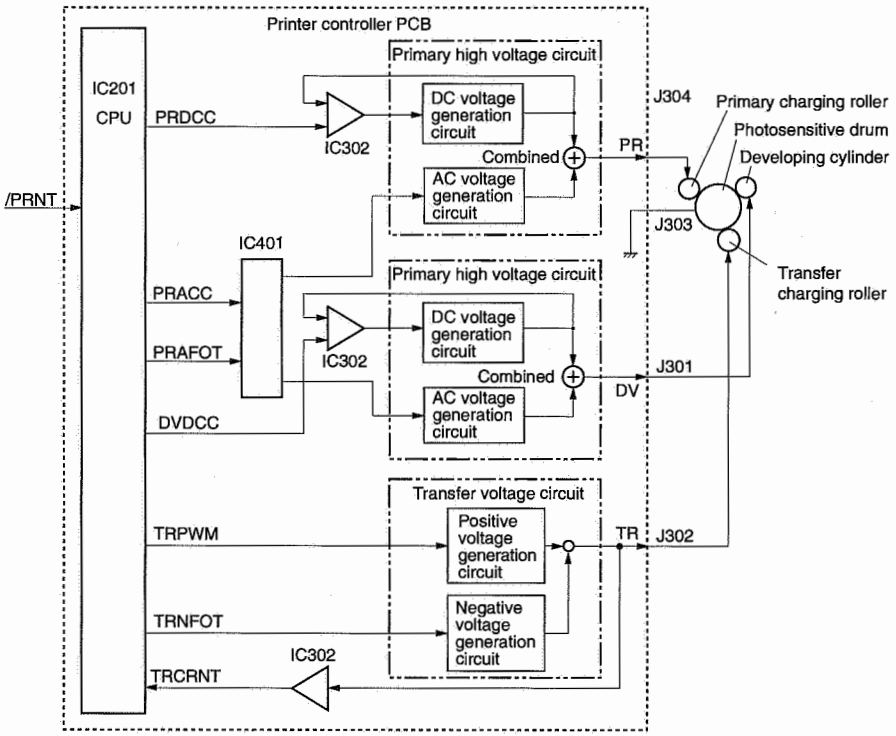


Figure 2-3-14

b. Generation of developing bias

The DEVELOPING BIAS (AC) DRIVE signal (DVFOT) is rectified in IC301and input to the developing bias circuit. The DEVELOPING BIAS (DC) DRIVE signal (DVDCC) is input to the developing bias circuit. Therefore, a combined voltage of developing AC bias and developing DC bias is applied to the developing cylinder.

The developing DC bias is detected by the detection circuit. IC302 compares it with the DEVELOPING BIAS (DC) DRIVE signal (DVDCC) sent from the CPU and controls the voltage value of the developing bias.

The DVDCC and the DVFOT signals become "L" when the initial APC control of the laser diode is executed, halting application of the developing bias. This prevents the toner from descending on the area exposed to the laser beam by APC.

c. Generation of voltage applied to the transfer charging roller

Negative bias, print bias, and between-page bias are applied to the transfer charging roller in coincidence with each print sequence.

Negative bias is applied to the transfer charging roller at the set timing to transfer the toner on the transfer charging roller across to the photosensitive drum, so that the transfer charging roller can be cleaned.

Print bias is applied to the transfer charging roller as positive voltage to transfer the toner on the photosensitive drum surface to the paper.

Between-page bias, which is a lower positive voltage than the print bias, is applied to prevent the photosensitive drum from damaging.

When the /PRNT signal sent from the video controller goes "L", initial rotation begins and the CPU simultaneously outputs the TRANSFER NEGATIVE VOLTAGE DRIVE signal (TRNFOT). Negative bias is applied to the transfer charging roller for a set period of time to clean the roller.

During the print sequence, the CPU outputs the TRANSFER POSITIVE VOLTAGE DRIVE signal (TRPWM), and print bias is applied to the transfer roller. Between-page bias is, as its name suggests, applied between pages. The transfer output current is detected by the detection circuit. IC302 compares then it with the prescribed reference value to control TR.

When the printing operation is completed, negative bias is applied again to clean the transfer charging roller.

IV. PICK-UP/FEED SYSTEM

A. Outline

Paper is fed through the multi-purpose and manual feed tray in this printer. The presence of paper in the manual and multi-purpose trays is detected by the paper-out sensor (PS001).

When the /PRNT signal is input from the video controller to the printer, the main motor (M001) begins to rotate.

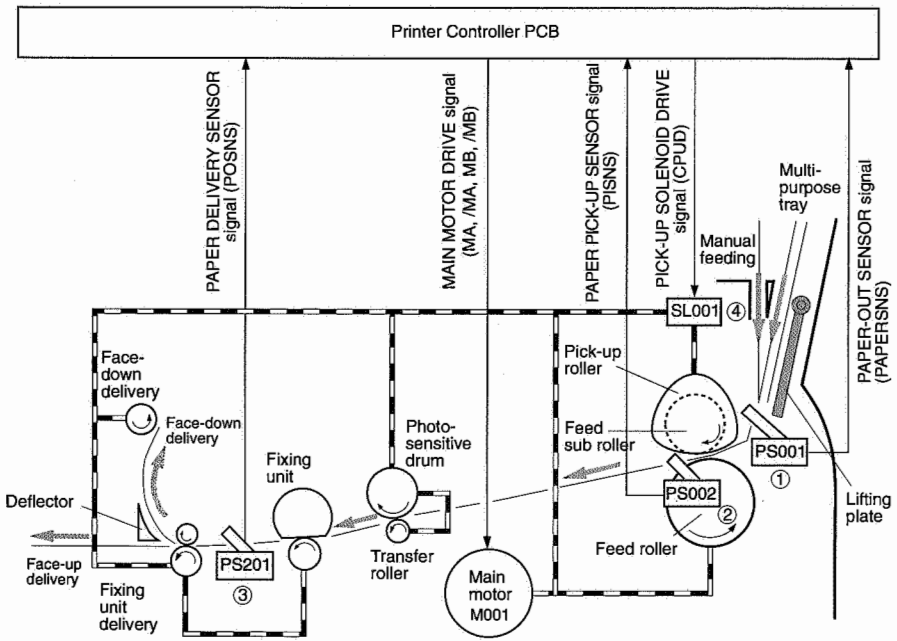
Once in the initial rotation ready mode **(Note)**, the pick-up solenoid (SL001) is turned ON for 0.5 second. Then the rotation of the main motor is transmitted to rotate the pick-up roller at which time the pick-up cam (refer to Chapter 3 page III) pushes up the lifting plate. One sheet of paper is picked up with the pick-up roller from the paper that is raised on the lifting plate, and fed into the printer. When paper is loaded in the manual feeding slot, due to the fact that it is loaded above paper in the multi-purpose tray, the pick-up roller picks up paper from the manual feeding slot.

A set period of time after the paper pick-up sensor (PS002) detects the paper, the VERTICAL SYNC signal (/TOP) is sent from the printer controller to the video controller. The /TOP signal is used to align the leading edge of the paper to that of the image on the photosensitive drum.

The paper is then passed through the transfer, separation, fixing, and delivery units to the face-up delivery slot. Two photointerrupters (PS002, PS201) along the paper transport path detect the arrival or passing of the paper.

If the paper does not reach or pass through each sensor within a set period of time, the CPU on the printer controller assesses that a jam has occurred and informs the video controller.

A small quantity of paper or curled sheets do not feed well if loaded due to the fact that paper is fed from the top of the printer. To compensate, the printer is equipped with a pick-up retry mechanism. Even if the pick-up sensor does not detect the leading edge of the paper within a set period of time after the pick-up solenoid has turned ON, it is not regarded as a jam. The pick-up operation is tried once again. If the pick-up sensor is unable to detect the leading edge of the paper within the set period of time during the second trial, a feeding delay jam is reported.



① Paper-out sensor ② Paper pick-up sensor ③ Paper delivery sensor ④ Paper pick-up solenoid

Figure 2-4-1

Note: INITIAL ROTATION READY:
The main motor is rotating and the fixing unit has entered READY mode after a set period of time.
FIXING UNIT READY:
The temperature of the fixing unit has reached its prescribed value.

B. Fixing / Delivery Unit

1. Outline

The fixing lower roller and face-up delivery roller of the fixing unit are driven by the main motor (M001). The fixing film unit includes a plate-like fixing heater for heating the fixing film. The temperature of the fixing unit is detected by the thermistor (TH701) on the fixing heater. As the temperature rises, the resistance of TH701 drops, which lowers the voltage of the FIXING HEATER TEMPERATURE DETECT signal (FSRTH). Based on the FSRTH signal voltage, the CPU (IC201) on the printer controller controls the FIXING HEATER DRIVE signal (FSRD) to bring the fixing heater temperature to its prescribed value.

The temperature of the fixing heater is controlled by the following three modes:

- Initial temperature control (see **Note 1**)
- Normal temperature control (see **Note 2**)
- Between-page temperature control (see **Note 3**)

In order to prevent uncontrolled operation of the fixing heater, the printer has the following two protective mechanisms:

- ◆ The CPU monitors the TH701 voltage, and diagnoses a fixing unit error when faulty. The CPU controls the FIXING HEATER DRIVE signal (FSRD) to cut off power to the fixing heater. Simultaneously, the CPU informs the video controller of this error.
- ◆ If the fixing heater temperature rises abnormally and the temperature fuse exceeds 180°C, the temperature fuse blows to cut off power to the fixing heater.

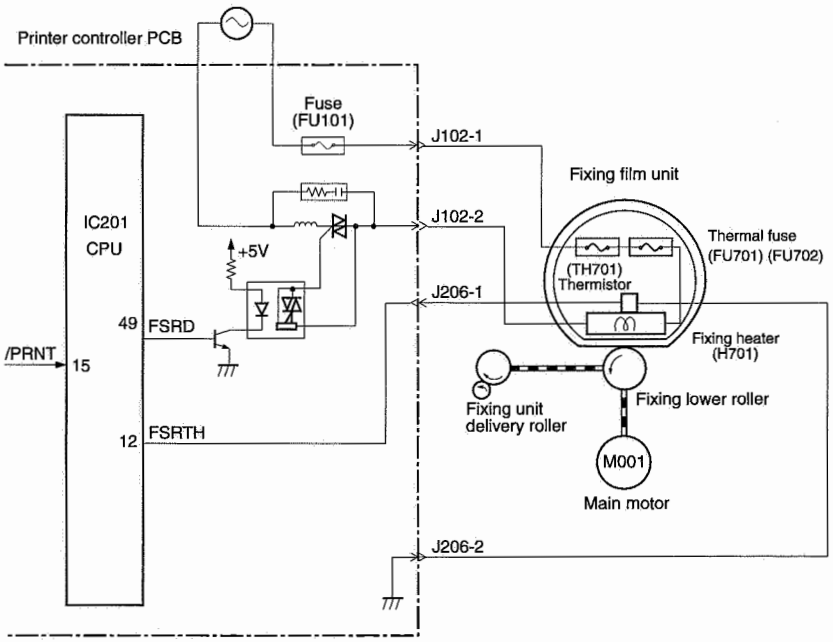


Figure 2-4-2

2. Detecting a fixing unit error

The CPU assesses that a fixing heater error has occurred when any of the following conditions are present, and informs the video controller.

a. A minimum temperature of 100°C is not detected within the set period of time after initial temperature control has started.
b. The temperature of the fixing heater exceeds 195°C for a set period of time while controlling the fixing heater temperature.
c. A minimum temperature of 20°C is not detected when the fixing heater has been ON for a set period of time while printing or when warming-up (initial detection of thermistor breakage).
d. Any temperature below 0°C is detected for a set period of time after the initial detection of thermistor breakage while the fixing heater is being controlled.
e. The temperature of the fixing heater decreases to 90°C or lower for a set period of time when the temperature of fixing heater is being controlled.

The CPU will perform the following after assessing that a fixing unit error has occurred:

1) Cut off power to the fixing heater.
2) Even while printing, it will immediately halt the main motor, scanner motor and high voltage system then put the printer into error mode.

Notes: 1. Initial temperature control

After the PRINT signal has been input to the printer controller, the temperature of the fixing heater is increased to its normal target temperature value.

2. Normal temperature control

The temperature of the fixing heater is controlled to stay at its prescribed value during the print operation.

3. Between-page temperature control

The temperature of the fixing heater is controlled at a low temperature to prevent the temperature of the non-feeding area of film unit from rising between pages.

C. Jam Detection

The following paper sensors are installed to detect the paper and to check that it is being fed correctly:

- Paper pick-up sensor (PS002)
- Paper delivery sensor (PS201)

The microcomputer (CPU) assesses that a paper jam has occurred by checking the presence of paper at each of the sensors at the preset timing in memory. If the CPU determines that a jam has occurred, it stops the print operation while simultaneously informing the video controller that a jam has occurred.

1. Pick-up delay jam

The CPU determines that a pick-up delay jam has occurred if the paper does not reach the paper pick-up sensor (PS002) within the prescribed period of time after the paper begins to feed.

2. Pick-up stationary jam

The CPU assesses that a pick-up stationary jam has occurred if the trailing edge of the paper has not reached the pick-up paper sensor (PS002) within the prescribed period of time after the leading edge has passed through PS002.

3. Delivery delay jam

The CPU assesses that a delivery delay jam has occurred if the leading edge of the paper has not reached the delivery paper sensor (PS201) within the prescribed period of time after the leading edge has passed through the paper pick-up sensor PS002. This jam detection also detects the fixing unit windup jam.

4. Delivery stationary jam

The CPU assesses that a delivery stationary jam has occurred when the paper delivery sensor PS201 detects paper at a prescribed period of time after the trailing edge has passed through the paper pick-up sensor PS002.

5. Initial residual jam

The CPU determines that an initial residual jam has occurred if either the paper pick-up (PS002) or paper delivery sensors (PS201) detect paper at a prescribed period of time after power-ON.

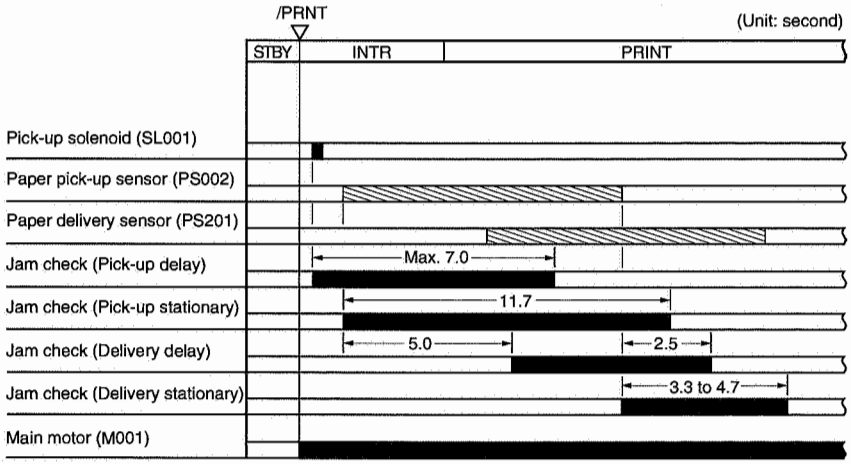


Figure 2-4-3

Notes: 1. Paper pick-up retry
During the pick-up delay jam detection (approx. 7 seconds), 3.5 seconds are the time for pick-up retry. See page 2-22.

2. Automatic delivery
After the CPU has detected that there is no residual paper in the printer during WAIT mode, if the PAPER PICK-UP SENSOR signal changes from "H" to "L" within 4.5 seconds, the CPU determines that there is paper in the printer and performs the delivery sequence (automatic delivery).

V. SYSTEM INTERFACE

A. Outline

This printer is fitted with a Centronics-standard 8-bit parallel interface connector. When printing using the Microsoft Windows Printing System the external device generates resource data corresponding to the Microsoft Windows display writing system. The resource data is then converted into dot data.

The dot data conversion is conducted in the external device (host computer) and sent to the external device via the connector mentioned above. After being output to the printer controller, it is printed on print paper in the printing environment specified by the external device.

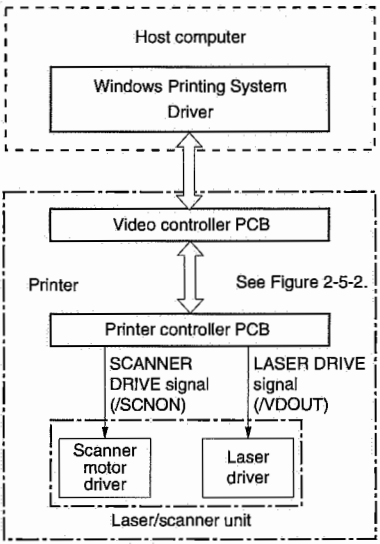


Figure 2-5-1

B. Video Interface

1. Interface signals

The following diagram describes the types of interface signals between the printer and the video controller and provides a broad outline of the operation sequence.

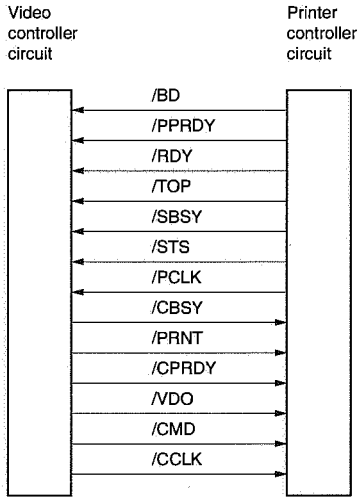


Figure 2-5-2

2. Operation

When the power is turned ON, the printer enters WAIT mode. Following this the printer controller sends a READY signal (/RDY) to the video controller to inform it that the printer is ready to print. When the /RDY signal is "L" and the data for one page becomes available, the video controller sends the PRINT signal (/PRNT) to the printer controller. Upon receiving the /PRNT signal, the printer controller starts the initial rotation (INTR) sequence.

At the end of the INTR period, the printer controller sends the VERTICAL SYNC signal (/TOP) to the video controller within a prescribed time. After receiving the HORIZONTAL SYNC signal (/BD) from the printer controller, the video controller sends VIDEO signals (/VDO) which are synchronized with the /BD and /TOP signals, to the printer controller. Based on the /VDO signals, the printer controller creates a /VDOUT signal, which turns the laser diode ON and OFF, and sends it to the laser diode.

The laser beam emitted from the laser diode by the /VDOUT signal scans via the scanning mirror, forming a latent image on the photosensitive drum. The latent image on the photosensitive drum is transferred by an electrophotographic process to paper which is delivered through the face-up delivery slot or the face-down delivery tray.

While printing a page, the printer controller checks whether or not the /PRNT signal for next page has been sent from the video controller. If no /PRNT signal has been sent, the printer terminates the PRINT sequence and initiates the last rotation (LSTR). At the end of last rotation, the printer enters the STANDBY (STBY) mode.

However, if the /PRNT signal has already been sent, the printer continues the PRINT sequence and subsequently enters the STANDBY mode following LAST ROTATION.

C. Video Controller PCB

1. Outline

The video controller receives printing data from the external device (host computer, etc.) via the interface cable. This printing information is resource data, printing data formed by PCL commands, or dot data.

Resource data and PCL command printing data is converted into dot data in the video controller.

The dot data is sent to the DC controller to control the light emission of the laser diode. The operating mode of the printer can be set in the video controller from the external device via the interface cable. Moreover, the external device can monitor the status of the printer through use of a bidirectional interface.

The major ICs within the video controller are shown in location diagram Fig. 2-5-3 and block diagram Fig. 2-5-4.

2. Functions of the blocks

a. Cell-base IC (IC1)

Major functions are as follows:

1) Controls the input/output to the DRAM on the video controller.
2) Controls the timing at which dot pattern data is sent to the printer controller.
3) Controls the video and parallel interfaces (Centronics standard).
4) Smoothens the images.

b. DRAM (IC2)

The video controller internal DRAM has max. 128K byte memory capacity and has the following function;

1) Dot data converted from image data (receival buffer).

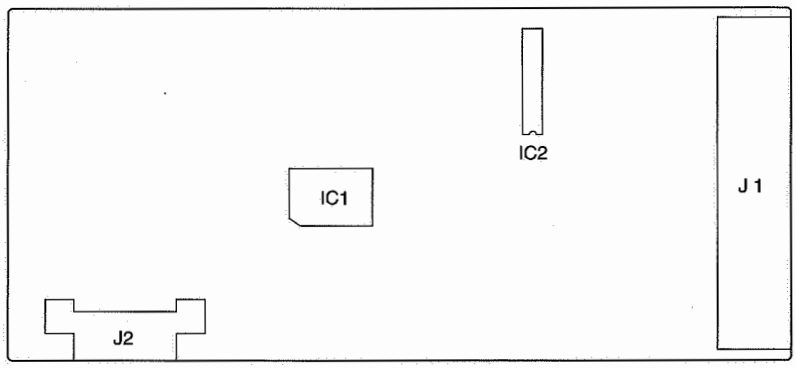


Figure 2-5-3

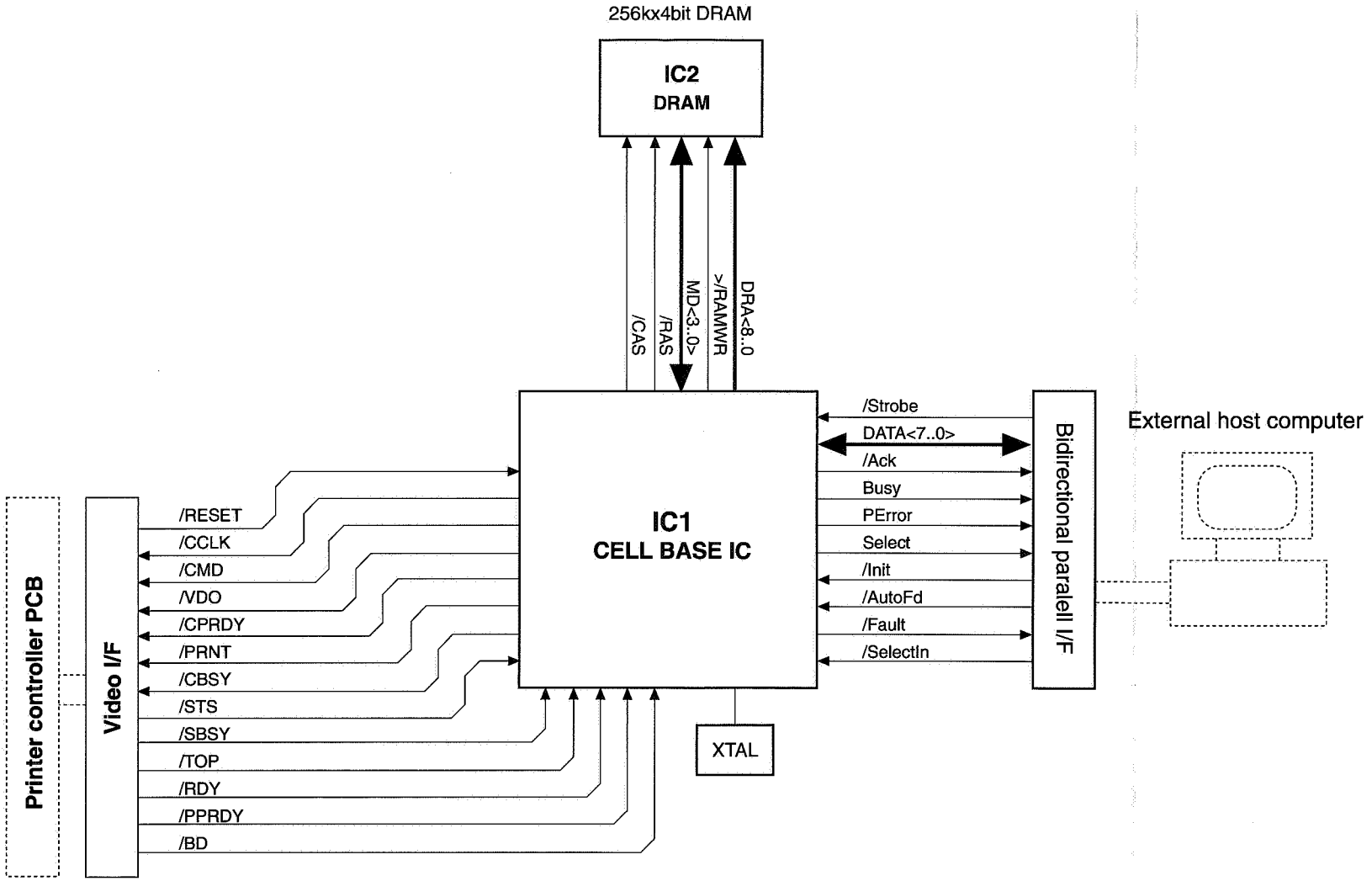

256kx4bit DRAM
IC2
DRAM
/CAS
/RAS
MD<3..0>
>/RAMWR
DRA<8..0
IC1
CELL BASE IC
XTAL
/Strobe
DATA<7..0>
/Ack
Busy
PError
Select
/Init
/AutoFd
/Fault
/SelectIn
Bidirectional paralell I/F
External host computer
Printer controller PCB
Video I/F
/RESET
/CCLK
/CMD
/VDO
/CPRDY
/PRNT
/CBSY
/STS
/SBSY
/TOP
/RDY
/PPRDY
/BD

Figure 2-5-4

D. Microsoft Windows Printing System Messages

Using the Printer Status window, the Microsoft Windows Printing System displays the status of your printing environment and current print job.

The Printer Status window displays two types of messages: information message and alerts.

1. Information message/alerts

Information message/alerts are displayed in the job information group box of the status window. See page 1-61 for detail of the status window.

When an error occurs, press the PAUSE/RESUME key to skip the error and resume printing. Error skipping may cause incorrect prints to occur.

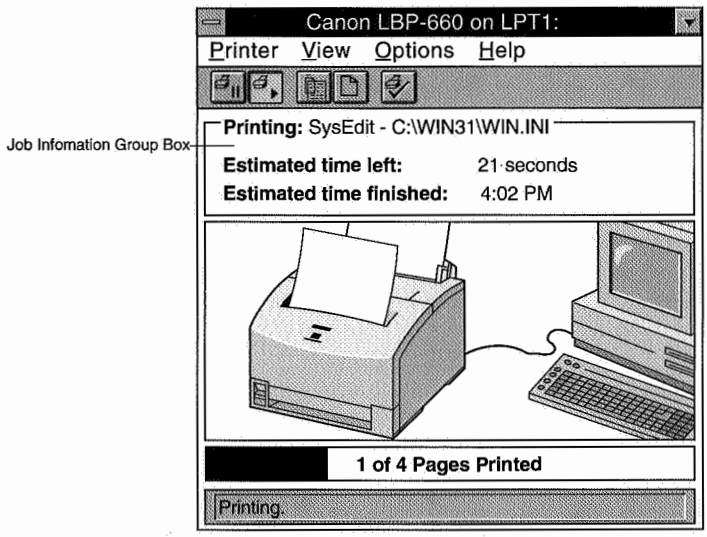

Canon LBP-660 on LPT1:
Printer View Options Help
Job Infomation Group Box
Printing: SysEdit - C:\WIN31\WIN.INI
Estimated time left: 21 seconds
Estimated time finished: 4:02 PM
1 of 4 Pages Printed
Printing.

Figure 2-5-5

a. Information message

An information message reports a condition that will not stop the print job, but should be resolved. Because these messages are for your information only, you can remove them from the Status Window by clicking the message.

<Message : Install the software for this printer (update your software)>

Description : You have connected a different printer to your system or changed the printer's setup.

Action : Reinstall the Microsoft Windows Printing System to update yore printer's configuration information.

The following messages require no action:

Printer Ready

Printing:Job Name

Printer Paused

Status Not Available

b. Alerts

Alerts identify problems that must be corrected before printing can continue. Often, these messages remind you to go something, such as when to clear jammed paper. Other times, alerts tell you what is wrong and how to fix it.

<Message : Add XX paper>

Description : No XX paper in the printer.

Action : The paper size (for example, Letter, Legal, A4) is displayed, when you add the correct paper size to the multi-purpose tray, printing will resume automatically

<Message : Add paper>

Description : The printer is out of paper in the ready state.

Action : Add paper to the multi-purpose tray. When you add paper to the multi-purpose tray, the Printer Status window message will be "Printer Ready" automatically.

<Message : Change paper to XX>

Description : You specified a paper size that is not in the multi-purpose tray.

Action : The paper size (for example, Letter, Legal, A4) is displayed. You have two choices.

- ❑ Insert the correct paper. Printing will resume automatically. The page on which the size mismatch was detected will be printed again.
- ❑ Continue printing on the current paper. Choose the Force button in the Printer Status Window.

<Message : Check printer/cable (communications error)>

Description : The computer and printer are not communicating.

Action : This message appears when the printer will not accept print data, but the print job is not lost. To correct the problem, follow the instructions in the Printer Status window.

<Message : Check cover/cartridge>

Description : The printer's front cover is open, or the EP-A cartridge is missing or not secured properly.

Action : To resume printing close the cover. If necessary, open the front cover, and verify that the EP-A toner cartridge is installed and seated properly.

<Message : Clear paper jam>

Description : Paper has jammed in the printer.
Power is turned off, cable is disconnected or cable of bad quality is being used.

Action : Follow the instructions in the Status window, or see the instructions below. Printing will resume automatically when the paper jam is fixed.

<Message : Service error>

Description : The Microsoft Windows Printing System has detected an internal problem in the printer engine.

Action : First unplug the printer, then open the front cover and remove the EP-A toner cartridge. Reinsert the cartridge properly, and use both hands to close the front cover completely. Then, plug your printer back in. If the message reappears, a serious error has occurred. For printer troubles, use the malfunction troubleshooting shown in Section VI of chapter 4.

<Message : Press F1>

Description : The printer was not able to print the job because a Microsoft Windows Printing System file was corrupted during printing.

Action : You must cancel the print job. Then, try to reprint your job.

<Message : Reduce computer use while printing!>

Description : The printer is unable to format and send the current print job fast enough to keep up with the printer engine. Or there is a problem in the parallel port setting and transfer error has occurred.

Action : Discard the last printed page and try the following solutions:

- ❑ Press the Resume button to resume printing in lowered resolution.
- ❑ Close other applications while printing, or reformat complicated pages to reduce graphics and other complex formatting.
- ❑ Change the parallel mode/port address in the BIOS setting and reinstall.
- ❑ Execute custom install and select Standard or ECP without DMA in the ECP settings dialog.

<Message : Install the software for this printer (incompatible version)>

Description : The connected printer is not compatible with the installed version of Microsoft Windows Printing System.

Action : You cannot print on this printer with the installed software.

- ❑ Find out what version of Microsoft Windows Printing System you are running from the About dialog box:
  From the Help menu of the Printer Status window, choose About the Printer Status Window.
- ❑ Restore compatibility between printer and software:
  Install the correct software for the printer (If already installed, you must select the printer as default and connect it to the proper port in the Printers dialog box) or connect the printer that came with the software.

VI. POWER SUPPLY

A. Outline

The AC power input from the AC inlet is converted to DC by the transformer and then supplied to the printer controller. The DC power provides the required +12 VDC and +5 VDC to the printer.

When the cartridge is not installed or the cartridge door is open, the door switch (SW101) is turned OFF, and the 12VA is shut off. When the 12VA is shut off, the CPU assesses that the cartridge door has been opened or that no cartridge is installed, and stops the printer.

+5 VDC is supplied to the IC on the printer controller PCB, the laser/scanner driver PCB, and the video controller PCB. Whereas +12 VDC is the power supply for driving the main motor, scanner motor, and solenoids, as well as for generating high voltage.

In +12 VDC, there is +12 VA whose supply is stopped when the front cover is opened and SW201 switches OFF and +12 VM which is constantly supplied to the scanner motor, main motor and solenoids regardless of whether SW201 is ON or OFF.

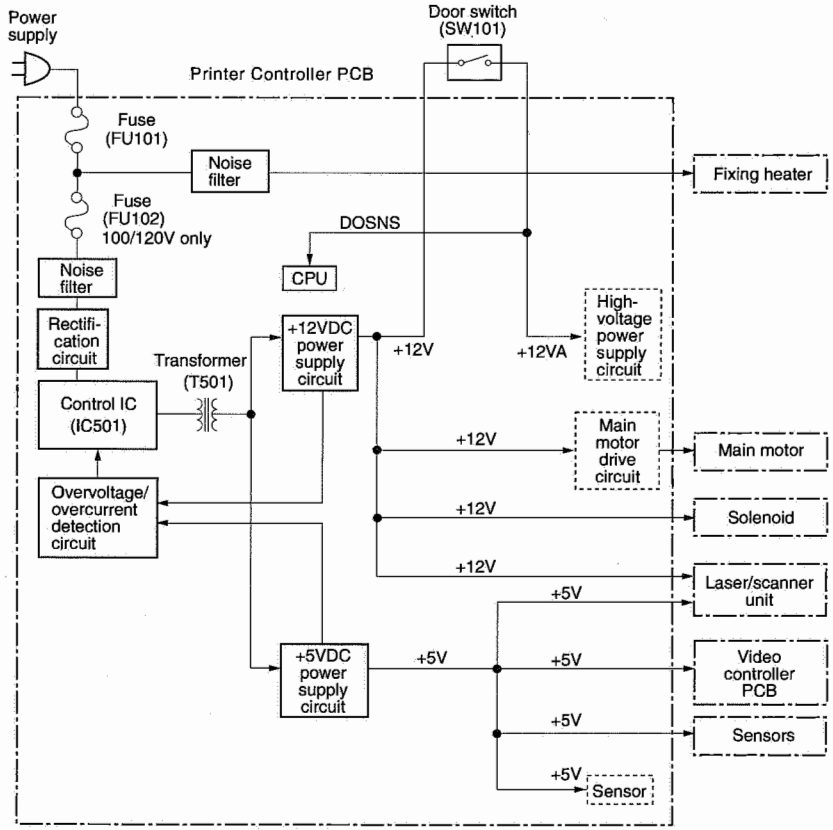


Figure 2-6-1

B. Protective Function

The +12 VDC and the +5 VDC power circuits each contain an excess current and excess voltage protection function. These circuits automatically shut off the output voltage to prevent a power circuit malfunction when excess current flows due to a short, abnormal voltage, or other troubles. If DC voltage is not output from the power circuit after the excess current or excess voltage protection functions have been activated, turn the power OFF for about 2 minutes. Repair the trouble on the load side, and turn the power ON again.

CHAPTER 3

THE MECHANICAL SYSTEM

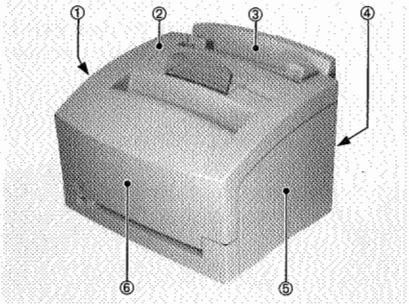
This chapter describes mechanical operation as well as disassembly and reassembly procedures of the printer. Note the following precautions during disassembly or reassembly.

1. When you remove the EP cartridge, cover the cartridge with a cloth or put it in a dark place to prevent light from affecting the drum inside the cartridge.
2. Remove the cartridge from the printer before disassembling or transporting the printer.
3. ⚠ **CAUTION:** Before servicing the printer, disconnect its power cord from the electrical outlet.
4. Assembly is the reverse of disassembly unless otherwise specified.
5. Note the lengths, diameters, and locations of screws as you remove them. When reassembling the printer, be sure to use them in their original locations.
6. Do not operate the printer with any parts removed.
7. Discharge electrical static from your body by touching the metal frame of the printer prior to installing the PCB in order to avoid causing damage by the difference in static charge at that time.

I. EXTERNALS 3-1
II. DRIVE SYSTEM 3-3
III. PAPER TRANSPORT SYSTEM . 3-4
IV. EXPOSURE SYSTEM 3-10
V. CHARGING/DEVELOPING & CLEANING SYSTEM 3-11
VI. FIXING SYSTEM 3-14
VII. ELECTRONIC COMPONENTS .. 3-17
VIII. CONNECTOR LOCATIONS 3-21

I. EXTERNALS

A. External Covers

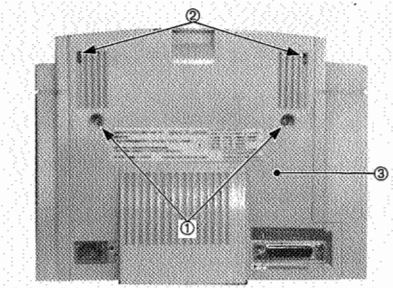


① Left cover
② Top cover
③ Multi-purpose tray unit
④ Rear cover
⑤ Right cover
⑥ Front cover

Figure 3-1-1

1. Main cover

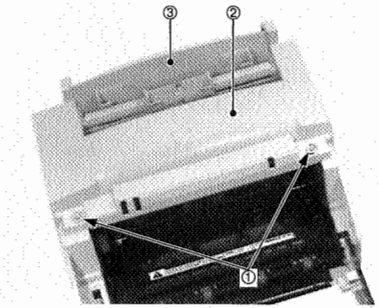
1) Open the cartridge door and remove the cartridge.
2) Remove the 2 screws, unhook the 2 claws with a slot head screwdriver and take off the rear cover.



① Screws ② Claws
③ Rear cover

Figure 3-1-2

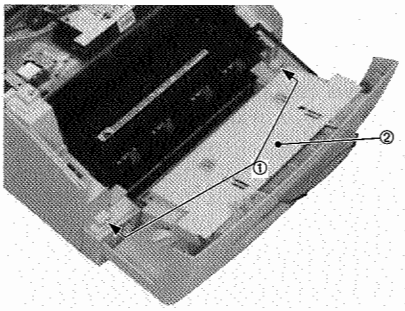
3) Remove the 2 screws and the top cover.
4) Remove the Multi-purpose tray unit.



① Screws
② Top cover
③ Multi-purpose tray unit

Figure 3-1-3

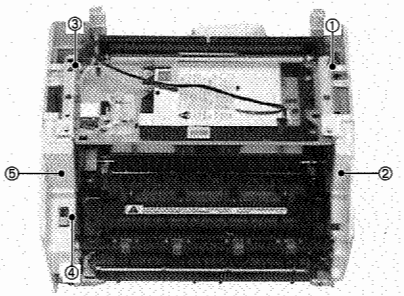
5) Remove the 2 claws and the front cover.



① Claws ② Front cover

Figure 3-1-4

6) Remove the claw and take off the left cover.
7) Remove the claw and take off the right cover while holding the lever cover down.

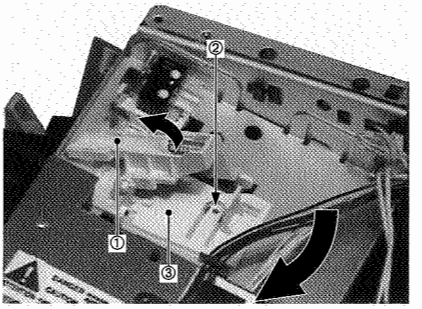


① Left cover claw ② Left cover
③ Right cover claw ④ Lever cover
⑤ Right cover

Figure 3-1-5

B. Door switch Unit

1) Take out connectors (J2) from the door switch unit.
2) While lifting the door switch lever, push the pin on the back of the door switch unit, and rotate the unit in the direction of the arrow to remove.



① Door switch lever ② Pin
③ Door switch unit

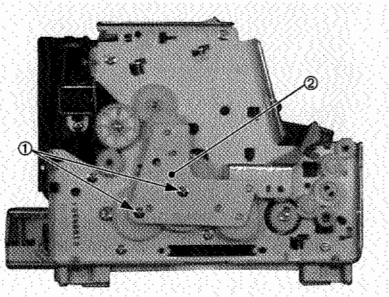
Figure 3-1-6

II. DRIVE SYSTEM

A. Drive Gears

1. Removal from the main unit

1) Remove the external covers.
2) Remove the 3 screws and take off the gear support plate.



① Screws ② Gear support plate

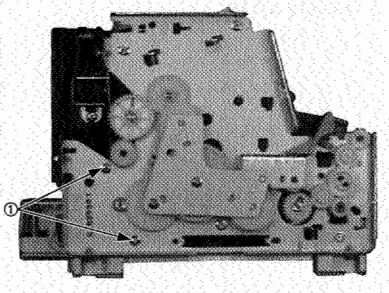
Figure 3-2-1

3) Remove the drive gears.

B. Main Motor

1. Removal from the main unit

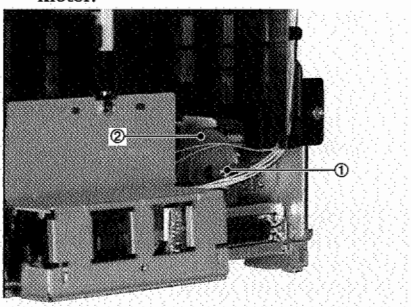
1) Remove the external covers.
2) Remove the 2 screws.



① Screws

Figure 3-2-2

3) Remove connector (J1), then the main motor.



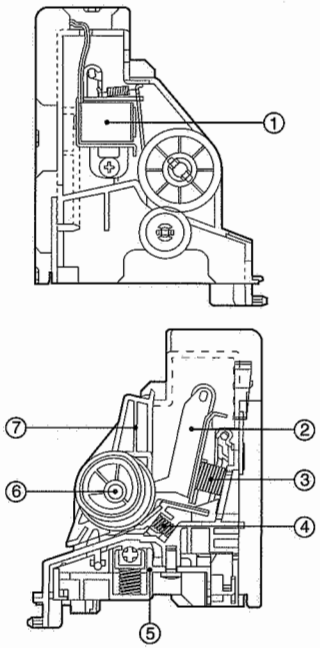
① Connector ② Main motor

Figure 3-2-3

III. PAPER TRANSPORT SYSTEM

A. Pick-up Unit

1. Configuration

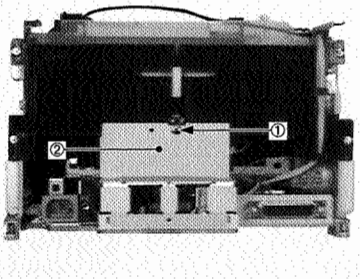


① Pick-up solenoid
② Lifting plate
③ Lifting plate spring
④ Separation pad spring
⑤ Paper feed unit
⑥ Pick-up roller unit
⑦ Feeding sub roller holder

Figure 3-3-1

2. Removal from the main unit

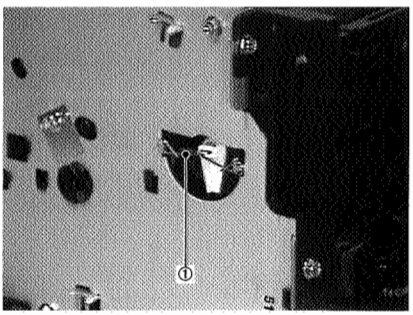
1) Remove the external covers.
2) Remove the screw and the PCB case reinforcement plate.



① Screw
② PCB case reinforcement plate

Figure 3-3-2

3) Disconnect the grounding spring on the left side of the main unit.

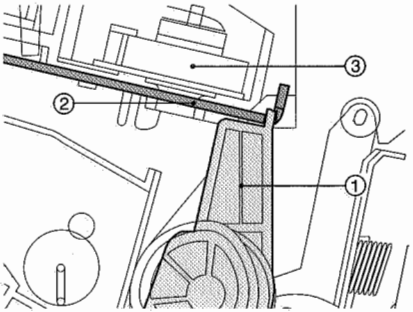


① Grounding spring

Figure 3-3-3

4) Disconnect the door switch unit and scanner unit connectors (J2, J3, J4).
5) Disconnect the connector (J5) from the paper feed unit.

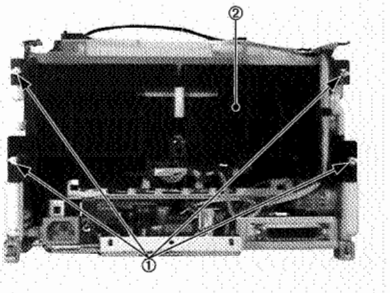
6) Disconnect the pick-up solenoid connector (J6) from the printer controller PCB.
7) Unhook the feeding sub roller holder upper catch from the upper plate.



① Feeding sub roller holder
② Upper plate
③ Laser/scanner unit

Figure 3-3-4

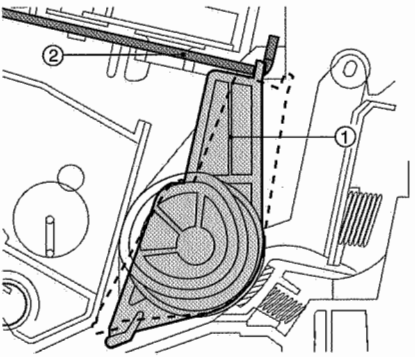
8) Remove the 4 screws and the pick-up unit.



① Screws ② Pick-up unit

Figure 3-3-5

Note: When installing the pick-up unit, ensure that the catch on the feed sub roller holder is hooked into the holes on the edge of the upper plate. (the shaded holder is correctly installed, whereas the dotted lined holder is not)



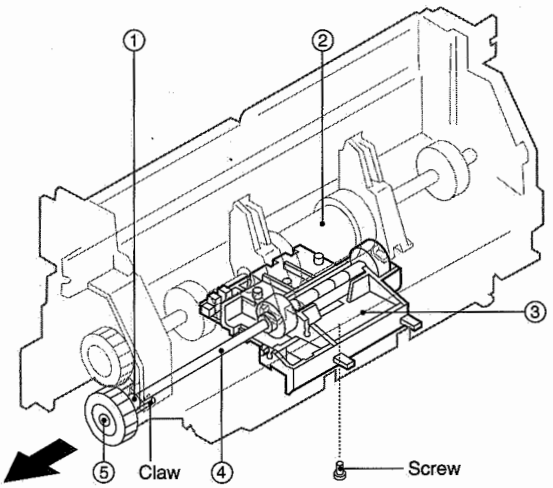
① Feeding sub roller holder
② Upper plate

Figure 3-3-6

3. Disassembly/assembly

a. Paper feed unit

1) Disconnect the paper feed bearing claw and remove the paper feed drive shaft in the direction of the arrow while holding the feed gear.
2) Remove the screw from the rear of the paper feed unit, then take out the unit.

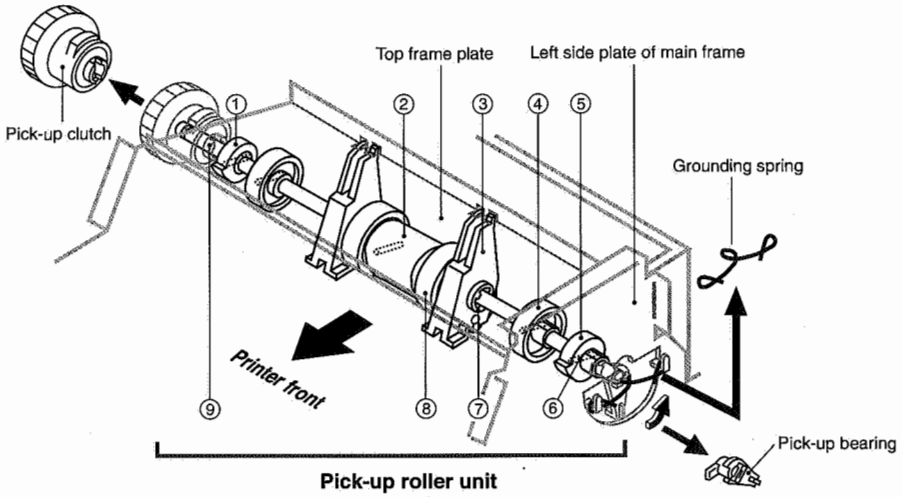


① Paper feed bearing
② Pick-up unit
③ Paper feed unit
④ Paper feed drive shaft
⑤ Paper feed gear

Figure 3-3-7

B. Pick-up Roller Unit

1. Configuration



① Pick-up cam (left) ② Pick-up roller ③ Paper feed sub roller holder (right)
④ Sub-roller ⑤ Pick-up cam (right) ⑥ Dowel pin
⑦ E-ring ⑧ Pick-up sub roller (right) ⑨ Pick-up shaft

Figure 3-3-8

2. Removal from the main unit

1) Remove the external covers.
2) Remove the grounding spring from the right side of the main unit, then turn the pick-up bearing in the direction of the arrow to remove it (see Fig. 3-3-8).
3) Disconnect the claw of the feed sub roller holder from the top frame plate (see P. 3-5).
4) Disconnect the claw of the pick-up clutch and remove the pick-up clutch.
5) Insert your hand from the front of the printer to remove the pick-up roller unit while keeping the lifting plate down and holding the feed sub roller holder.

Note: When installing the pick-up unit, ensure that the catch on the feed sub roller holder is hooked onto the upper plate (see P. 3-5 **Note**).

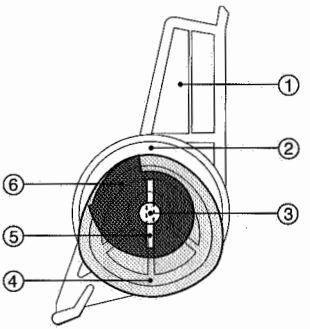
3. Assembly/reassembly

a. Pick-up roller

1) Remove the pick-up cam (right) from the shaft.
2) Disconnect the claw and remove the sub-roller from the shaft.
3) Remove the paper feed sub roller holder (right) from the shaft.
4) Remove the E-ring then take the pick-up sub roller (right) off the shaft.
5) Disconnect the claw and remove the pick-up roller from the shaft.

Notes: **1.** Be careful not to lose the dowel pins which hold the pick-up roller, paper pick-up cams and feed sub roller.

2. Position the pick-up cams (right, left) and pick-up roller as shown in the figure below.



① Feeding sub roller holder
② Pick-up sub roller
③ Pick-up shaft
④ Pick-up roller
⑤ Dowel pin
⑥ Pick-up cam

Figure 3-3-9

C. Pick-up Solenoid

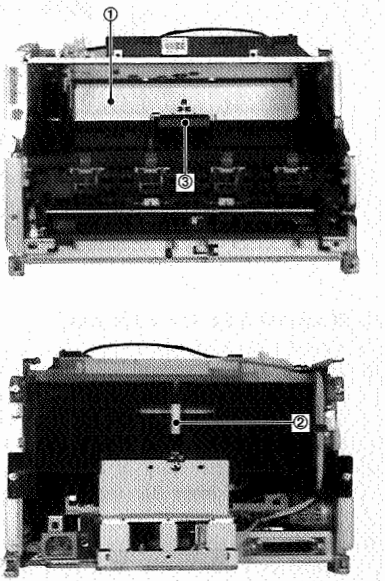
1. Removal from the main unit

1) Remove the external covers.
2) Disconnect the connector (J6) from the printer controller PCB, and remove the screw from the left side of the printer, then take out the pick-up solenoid.

D. Separation Pad

1. Removal from the main unit

1) Remove the external covers.
2) Remove the pick-up roller unit.
3) Remove the lifting plate.
4) Remove the fixed plate and take off the separation pad by sliding it up and off.



① Lifting plate ② Fixed plate
③ Separation pad

Figure 3-3-10

Note: Be careful not to lose the the springs in the lifting plate and separation pad. However, if the lifting plate spring comes off, install as shown below.

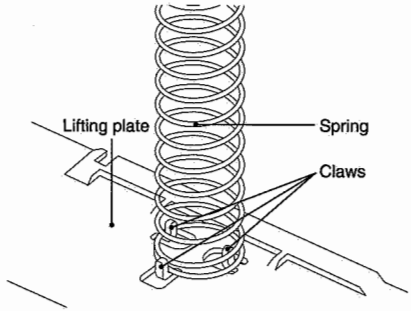


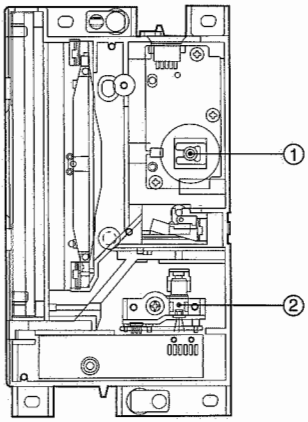
Figure 3-3-11

IV. EXPOSURE SYSTEM

A. Laser/Scanner Unit

1. Configuration

The laser/scanner unit scans the photosensitive drum with the laser beam. The laser/scanner unit configuration is shown below.

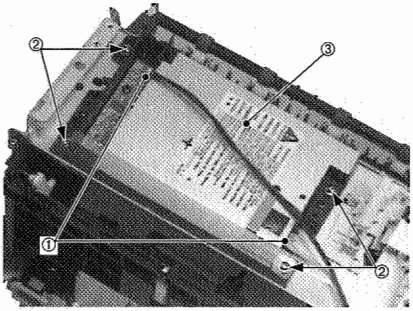


① Scanner unit ② Laser unit

Figure 3-4-1

2. Removal from the main unit

1) Remove the external covers.
2) Remove the connectors (J3, J4) from the laser/scanner unit.
3) Remove the 4 screws and lift the laser/scanner unit straight up and out.



① Connectors
② Screws
③ Laser/scanner unit

Figure 3-4-2

Note: The laser/scanner unit cannot be adjusted in the field so do not attempt to disassemble it.
Do not remove the screw shown in the figure below.

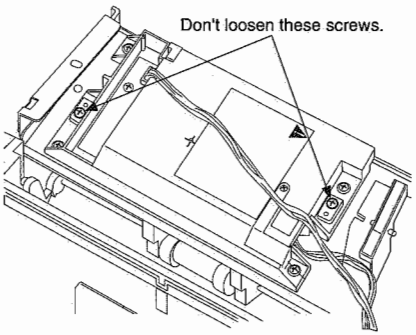


Figure 3-4-3

V. CHARGING/DEVELOPING & CLEANING SYSTEM

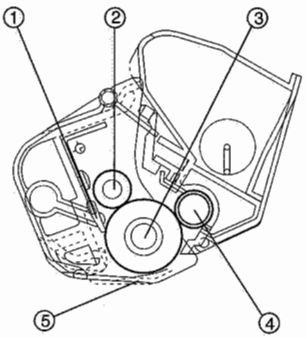
A. EP-A Cartridge

1. Configuration

The EP-A cartridge is comprised of a photosensitive drum, a primary charging roller, a developing unit and a cleaning unit etc.

While the photosensitive drum rotates within the EP-A cartridge, a visible image based on the print data is formed on its surface according to the print process.

The EP-A cartridge cannot be disassembled.



① Cleaner
② Primary charging roller
③ Photosensitive drum
④ Developing cylinder
⑤ Protective shutter

Figure 3-5-1

a. Protective shutter

If the photosensitive drum is exposed to intensive light, blank spots and black stripes may appear on prints as a result of optical memory. Therefore, the drum is protected by a protective shutter. Do not open the protective shutter unless absolutely necessary.

(The protective shutter opens automatically when an EP-A cartridge is inserted into the printer.)

2. Photosensitive Drum

As a rule, the photosensitive drum is not to be cleaned.

However, if the drum is exceptionally dirty follow the procedures below to clean it.

1) Open the cartridge door and remove the EP-A cartridge.
2) Open the protective shutter.
3) Apply toner to a flannel cloth and clean the dirty drum surface.

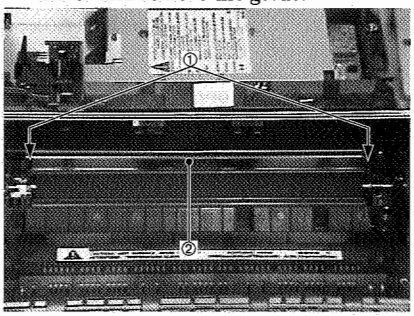
Notes: **1.** Rotate the photosensitive drum in the same direction as when the printer is in operation.
Never rotate it in the opposite direction as the plate spring used to apply a developing bias to the developing cylinder will bend and cause a contact defect.
Do not touch the photosensitive area of the drum when rotating it.

2. Use a flannel cloth for cleaning but do not 'scrub' the surface.
Do not use lint-free paper as it will damage the drum.
Never use solvents for cleaning.

3. Finish cleaning as quickly as possible to avoid exposing the drum to the light for longer than necessary, as this can cause image defects.

B. Transfer Charging Roller

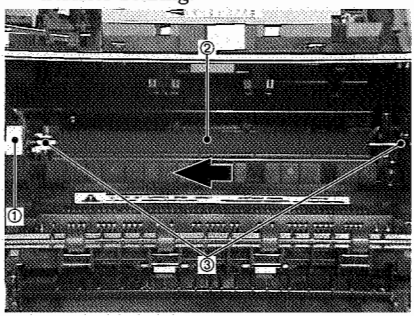
1) Open the cartridge door and remove the cartridge.
2) Unhook the 2 claws on either side of the transfer guide with a slot head screwdriver and remove the guide.



① Claws ② Transfer guide

Figure 3-5-2

3) Lift up the gear of the transfer charging roller and slide it in the direction of the arrow to remove the roller from the transfer bearing.



① Gear
② Transfer charging roller
③ Transfer bearing

Figure 3-5-3

Notes: 1. Hold the transfer charging roller shaft, not the sponge area.

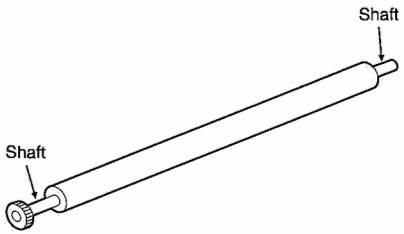


Figure 3-5-4

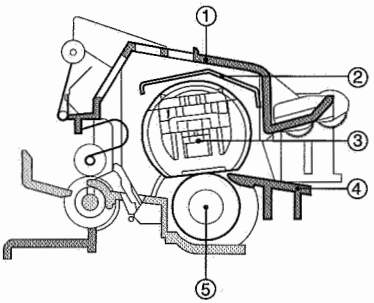
2. Use dry, lint-free paper (which produces virtually no paper dust) for cleaning the transfer charging roller. Do not use solvents.
3. Replace the transfer charging roller if you cannot remove paper dust or toner using the lint-free paper, or if the roller is deformed.

VI. FIXING SYSTEM

A. Fixing Unit

1. Configuration

The fixing unit fuses the toner onto the paper. A cross-section of the unit is shown below.



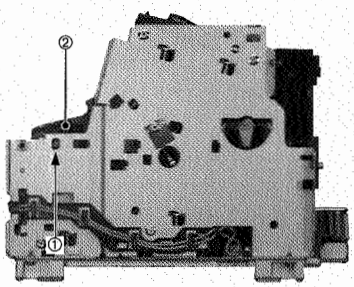
① Delivery guide unit
② Fixing pressure plate
③ Fixing film unit
④ Fixing entrance guide
⑤ Pressure

Figure 3-6-1

2. Disassembly/reassembly

a. Fixing film unit

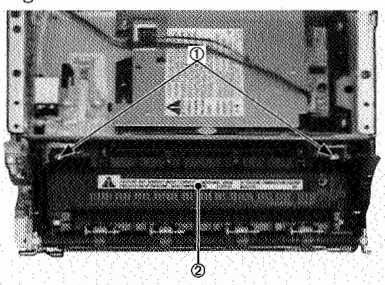
1) Remove the external covers.
2) Remove the cartridge guide by sliding it forward while pushing the cartridge guide pin on the right side of the printer.



① Cartridge guide pin
② Cartridge guide

Figure 3-6-2

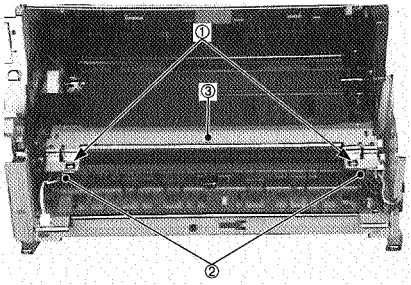
3) Remove the 2 screws and the delivery guide unit.



① Screws ② Delivery guide unit

Figure 3-6-3

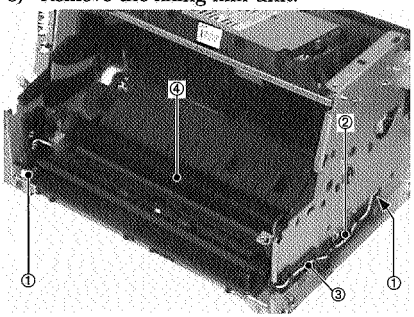
4) Remove the 2 screws, push the fixing side plate outwards to remove the fixing pressure plate.



① Screws
② Fixing side plate
③ Fixing pressure plate

Figure 3-6-4

5) Disconnect the 2 connectors and remove the cable from the cable guide.
6) Remove the fixing film unit.

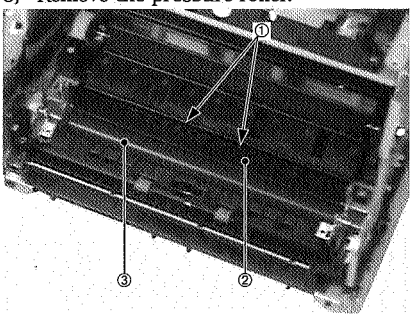


① Connectors ② Cable guide
③ Cable ④ Fixing film unit

Figure 3-6-5

b. Pressure roller

1) Remove the fixing film unit.
2) Release the 2 claws and remove the fixing entrance guide.
3) Remove the pressure roller.



① Claws
② Fixing entrance guide
③ Pressure roller

Figure 3-6-6

Notes: 1. When replacing, do not touch the surface of the fixing film.

2. When replacing the pressure roller, apply grease to the drive gear to prevent noise. Apply grease to the ground plate to enhance conductibility with the ground plate. The type of grease and its method of application are shown below.

■ are the grease application point.

Table 3-6-1

Service tool	HY9-0007	CK-8006
Amount	2 drops (about 0.1g)	about 0.1g
Application location	See Figure 3-6-7	See Figure 3-6-8

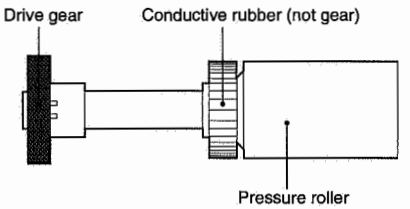


Figure 3-6-7

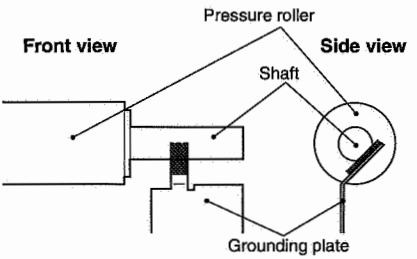
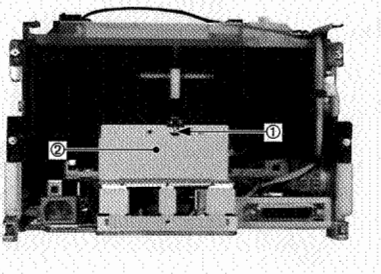


Figure 3-6-8

VII. ELECTRONIC COMPONENTS

A. Video Controller PCB

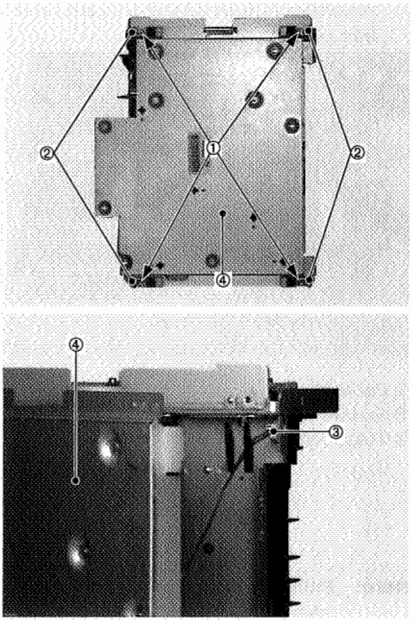
1) Remove the external covers.
2) Remove the 2 screws and take off the PCB case reinforcement plate.



① Screws
② PCB case reinforcement plate

Figure 3-7-1

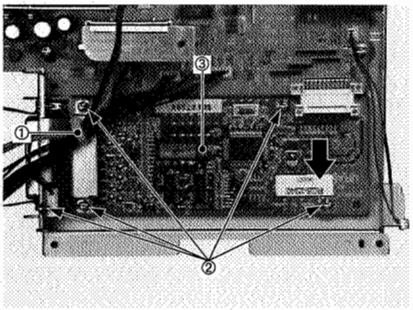
3) Disconnect the connectors (J1, J2, J3, J4, J5) from the loads, and disconnect connectors (J6, J7) from the printer controller PCB.
4) Lie the printer on its left side.
5) Remove the 4 screws and feet, and connectors at the back then take out the electrical components.



① Screws
② Feet
③ Connectors
④ Electrical components

Figure 3-7-2

6) Remove the cables from their tie.
7) Remove the 5 screws, and take the cable out of the tie. Remove the video controller PCB by sliding it in the direction of the arrow.



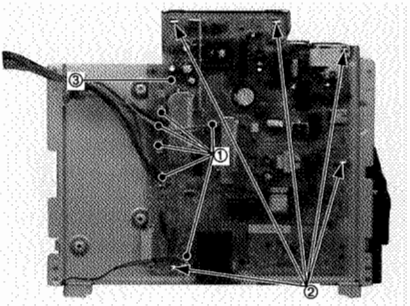
① Cable tie
② Screws
③ Video controller PCB

Figure 3-7-3

Note: Problems can occur if the cables come into contact with the heat sink or components on the PCB. When installing the PCB ensure that the cables are clipped into their ties.

B. Printer Controller PCB

1) Remove the video controller PCB (refer to P 3-17, 18).
2) Remove the connectors from the printer controller PCB.
3) Remove the 5 screws, then take out the printer controller PCB.



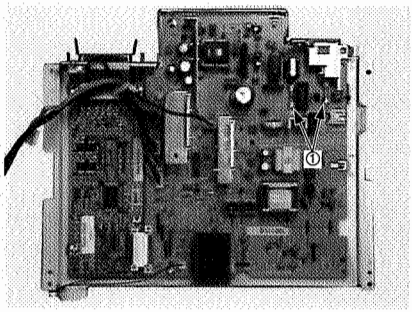
① Connectors
② Screws
③ Printer controller PCB

Figure 3-7-4

Note: An unnecessary strain on an installed video controller PCB while removing the printer controller PCB causes solder cracks etc. Be sure to remove the video controller PCB before taking out the printer PCB.

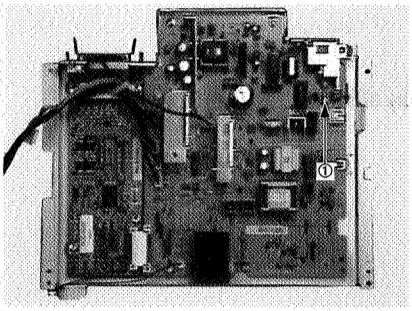
1. Fuse (FU101, FU102)

1) Remove the electrical unit.
2) Remove the fuses.



① Fuses

Figure 3-7-5a (100-120V machines)



① Fuse

Figure 3-7-5b (220-240V machines)

Note: When installing FU102 and FU101, be careful not to mistake them, and that they are installed correctly. (FU101 is only used for the 100-120V machines.)

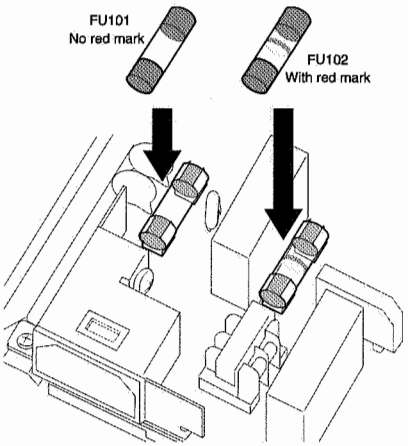


Figure 3-7-6

This page intentionally left blank

VIII. CONNECTOR LOCATIONS

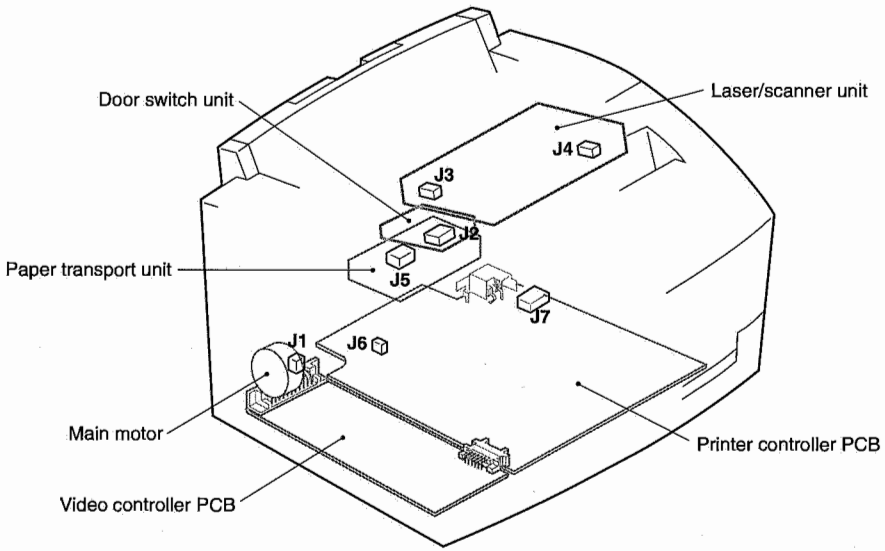


Figure 3-8-1

Table 3-8-1

Code	Name	Connection location
J1	Main motor connector	Main motor
J2	Door switch connector	Door switch unit
J3	Scanner connector 1	Laser/scanner unit
J4	Scanner connector 2	Laser/scanner unit
J5	Paper feed unit connector	Paper feed unit
J6	Pick-up solenoid connector	Printer controller PCB
J7	Fixing unit connector	Printer controller PCB

CHAPTER 4

TROUBLESHOOTING

I. MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING 4-1
II. LIST OF TOOLS 4-2
III. MEASUREMENT AND ADJUSTMENT 4-4
IV. INITIAL CHECK 4-6
V. IMAGE DEFECTS 4-7
VI. MALFUNCTION TROUBLESHOOTING 4-19
VII. PAPER TRANSPORT SYSTEM TROUBLESHOOTING 4-23
VIII. LOCATION/FUNCTION OF ELECTRICAL PARTS 4-27
IX. VARIABLE RESISTORS (VR), LEDs, CHECK PINS, JUMPERS, AND SWITCHES ON THE PCB . 4-31
X. LIST OF LUBRICANTS, CLEANERS 4-32

I. MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

A. Periodic Replacement Parts

● There are no periodic replacement parts in this printer.

Note: Periodic replacement parts must be replaced periodically to maintain a fixed level of printer performance. They must be replaced regardless of their condition (wear/damage) as they can affect the performance of the printer.

B. Expected Service Lives of Consumable Parts

● This printer does not have any consumable parts except the toner cartridge.

Note: Consumable parts may require replacement at least once due to degradation or breakage during the period of product warranty. They only need to be replaced when faulty.

C. Periodic Servicing

● There are no areas which require periodic servicing.

II. LIST OF TOOLS

A. Standard Tools

The following table lists the standard tools required for servicing this printer.

Table 4-2-1

No.	Tool name	Tool No.	Remark
1	Tool case	TKN-0001	
2	Jumper wire	TKN-0069	With a clip
3	Clearance gauge	CK-0057	0.02 to 0.3mm
4	Phillips screwdriver	CK-0101	M4, M5 Length : 363mm
5	Phillips screwdriver	CK-0104	M3, M4 Length : 155mm
6	Phillips screwdriver	CK-0105	M4, M5 Length : 191mm
7	Phillips screwdriver	CK-0106	M4, M5 Length : 85mm
8	Flat-blade screwdriver	CK-0111	
9	Precision flat-blade screwdriver set	CK-0114	Set of 6
10	Allen wrench set	CK-0151	Set of 5
11	File, fine	CK-0161	
12	Allen (hex) screwdriver	CK-0170	M4 Length : 107mm
13	Diagonal cutting pliers	CK-0201	
14	Needle-nose pliers	CK-0202	
15	Pliers	CK-0203	
16	Retaining ring pliers	CK-0205	Applied to the axis ring
17	Crimper	CK-0218	
18	Tweezers	CK-0302	
19	Ruler	CK-0303	Measure 150mm measurement
20	Soldering iron	CK-0309	100V, 30W
21	Mallet, plastic head	CK-0314	
22	Brush	CK-0315	
23	Penlight	CK-0327	
24	Plastic bottle	CK-0328	100cc
25	Solder	CK-0329	Ø1.5(mm) X 1(mm)
26	Desoldering wick	CK-0330	1.5mm
27	Lint-free paper	CK-0336	500SH/PKG
28	Soldering iron	CK-0348	240V, 30W
29	Oiler	CK-0349	30cc
30	Plastic jar	CK-0351	30cc
31	Blower brush	CK-0399	
32	Digital multimeter	CK-0552	

B. Special Tools

No special tools are required other than the standard tools for servicing the printer.

III. MEASUREMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

A. Mechanical Adjustment

1. Checking the nip width of the fixing lower roller

Although the fixing unit nip width is not designed to be adjusted, an improperly set nip can cause fixing problems.

Check the fixing unit nip width following the procedures below.

1) Prepare one or two A4 or letter sized photocopied all black copies.
2) Place the black copy face down on the multi-purpose tray of the printer.
3) Push the test print switch. (See page 4-7.)
4) Turn the power OFF when the paper begins to appear through the face-up delivery slot. Wait for about 10 seconds, open the cartridge door and lift the jam paper release lever upward and remove the jammed paper from the printer.
5) Measure the width of the toner luster area on the page and check that its measurements fall within the range shown in Table 4-3-1.

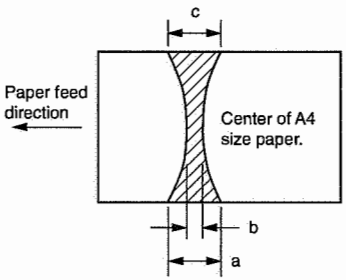


Figure 4-3-1

Table 4-3-1

	Dimensions
b	3 to 5 [mm]
|a - c|	0.5 [mm] or less
|a - b|	1.0 [mm] or less
|b - c|	1.0 [mm] or less

B. Electrical System Adjustment

This printer's electrical system does not require adjustment.

IV. INITIAL CHECK

A. Environment

Check that the following operating environment standards are met:

a. The supply voltage should be within 10 % of the rated voltage.
b. The printer should be kept on a level surface.
c. The surrounding temperature should be 10 to 32.5°C with 20 to 80 % humidity.
d. The printer should be kept away from areas which emit ammonia gases, hot and damp areas (near water faucets, boilers and humidifiers), open flames, and dusty areas.
e. Avoid areas that are directly exposed to sunlight.
   When exposure to sunlight is unavoidable, advise the customer to hang curtains.
f. Select a well ventilated location.

B. Paper

a. Is the recommended paper for this printer is being used?
   Paper that is too thick or thin is likely to cause paper jams, transfer faults, or blurring.
b. Is the paper damp?
   Use paper from newly opened packages when conducting test prints.

C. Consumable Parts

If there is a blank spot on the output image , it is most likely due to unevenly distributed toner. Shake the cartridge following the instructions on Page 1-11 to evenly distribute the toner, then make another print.

D. Other

When a printer has been kept in a cold warehouse especially during winter, and is brought into a warm room for installation, condensation will appear on various parts of the machine. This condensation can cause troubles.

Examples:

1. Condensation on the optical system (mirror, scanning mirror, lens, etc.) can cause pale output images.
2. The resistance of the photoconductive layer has been increased as the photosensitive drum is cold. This causes an output image contrast problem.
   When condensation appears, dry each part with a cloth or leave the machine unused for a few hours.
   As for the EP-A cartridge, condensation will appear when the cartridge is brought into a warm room from a cold place and unpacked. This can cause image defects.
   Advise the customer that under such conditions, the cartridges must be thoroughly acclimatized to room temperature (leave for one or two hours) before unpacking.

V. IMAGE DEFECTS

A. Test Print

This printer is capable of executing two types of test prints; engine test print and controller test print. When an image fault occurs, use the following procedure to execute a test print and determine the problem.

1. Engine test print

1) Load paper into the multi-purpose tray and turn the printer ON.
2) When the printer is in STANDBY mode, push the test print switch located behind the lower front cover on the front of the printer (See fig. 4-5-1) to make a test print.(See fig. 4-5-2)
3) Use the test print to determine the problem while referring to the troubleshooting chart on the next page.

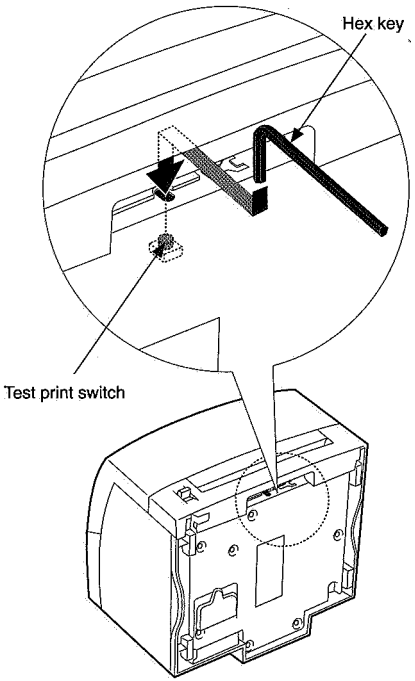


Figure 4-5-1

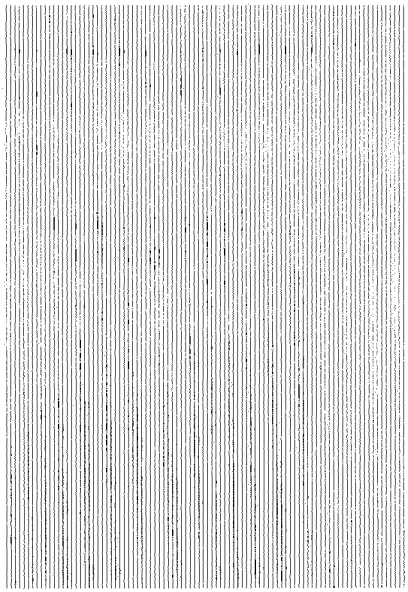


Figure 4-5-2

To continuously make test prints, keep pressing the test print switch.

Note: When making a test print, use paper with a width of B5 size (182 mm) or larger.

2. Controller test print

a. Microsoft Windows Printing System test page (1 sheet)

The information on the host computer and printer is printed on the test page. The test print procedures of the test page are as shown below.

1) Load paper into the multi-purpose tray and turn the printer ON.
2) While the printer is in the STANDBY mode, open the Printer Options dialog box in the Status Window and click the Test Page button to print a sheet of the following test pattern (see Chapter 1, Section VII).

Canon LBP-660

MICROSOFT® WINDOWS® PRINTING SYSTEM

//////// Test Page ////////

Canon LBP-660 on LPT1:

Operating System Configuration

Base OS Version	6.20
Base OS Location	High memory
Network	WFW
Network Driver Ver.	3.11.00.300
Disk Cache Type	Windows
Disk Cache Size	4096 KB
Swapfile Size	5940 KB
Swapfile Type	Permanent
File Access	32-Bit
Disk Access	32-Bit
Windows Version	3.11.00.300
Available RAM	16384 KB
User Free %	57%
GDI Free %	54%
Print Manager	Enabled

Printer Software Configuration

Compatibility Code	10106
WPS Driver Version	1.80.00.171
WPS RP Version	1.80.00.171
WPS QP Version	1.80.00.171
WPS LP Version	1.80.00.171
WPS HRE Version	1.80.00.171
WPS PSW Version	1.80.00.171
WPS VpD Version	001.003.011
Highest Resolution	600 dpi
WPS PRS	1087 KB
Metrics	2 (85%)
Printer Status Window	Bar & Animation
Play sounds	Errors Only
PSW Always on Top	Enabled
Status When Printing	Enabled

PC Configuration

System RAM	20480 KB
Processor	486
Processor Speed	33 MHz
Coprocessor	Installed
Mouse	COM1:
LPT1:	Standerd (665 K/s)
LPT2:	n/a
LPT3:	n/a

Printer Configuration

Compatibility Code	1010
Manufacturer	Canon
Model	LBP-660
Controller Version	11
MP Tray	LTR

Figure 4-5-3

b. Header Page (1 sheet)

The identification information of the printer, document title and the date and time of the print job are printed on the Header Page. The test print procedures of the Header Page are as shown below.

1) Open the Printer Options dialog box in the Printer Status Window of the host computer screen to check the Header Page check box.
2) While the printer is in the STANDBY mode, open the Printer Options dialog box in the Printer Status Window and click the Test Printer button to print a sheet of the following test pattern (see Chapter 1, Section VII).



Header Page

Canon LBP-660 on LPT1:

Job	Microsoft Word: FS.DOC
User	Kazuomi Suga
Time Started	9:55 AM
Date Started	Tuesday,November 12,1996

Figure 4-5-4

c. Trailer Page (1 sheet)

The printer setup, options, graphics setting and font and size used for the document are printed on the Trailer Page. The test print procedures of the Trailer Page are as shown below.

1) Open the Printer Options dialog box in the Setup dialog box while the printer is in the STANDBY mode to check the Trailer Page check box.
2) While the printer is in the STANDBY mode, open the Printer Options dialog box in the Printer Status Window and click the Test Printer button to print a sheet of the following test pattern (see Chapter 1, Section VII).

Canon LBP-660

MICROSOFT® WINDOWS® PRINTING SYSTEM

Trailer Page

Canon LBP-660 on LPT1:

Printing Options

Copies	1
Collated	Yes
Header Page	Yes
Trailer Page	Yes
Scaling	100%

Graphics Options

Resolution (Dots Per Inch)	300
Automatic Image Refinement	On
Halftoning Method	Deffuse
Brightness	50
Contrast	50

Fonts Used

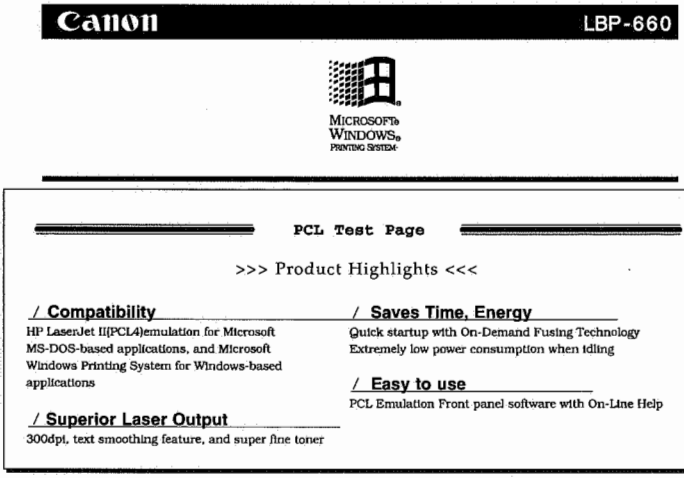
Typeface	Style	Size
Arial	Normal	10
Arial	Normal	12
Arial	Bold	18
Lucida Bright	Bold	12
Lucida Fax	Normal	10
Times New Roman	Normal	10
Times New Roman	Normal	11
Times New Roman	Normal	12
Times New Roman	Bold	14

Figure 4-5-5

d. PCL Emulation Front Panel Test Print (1 sheet)

The items set in the Emulation Front Panel Test Print dialog box are printed on the PCL Emulation Front Panel Test Print. The test print procedures of the PCL Emulation Front Panel Test Print are as shown below.

1) Load paper into the multi-purpose tray and turn the printer ON.
2) While the printer is in the STANDBY mode, click the Test Printer button in the PCL Emulation Front Panel dialog box on the host computer screen to make a page of the following test pattern (see Chapter 1, Section VII).


Canon
LBP-660
MICROSOFT®
WINDOWS®
PRINTING SYSTEM
PCL Test Page
>>> Product Highlights <<<
/ Compatibility
HP LaserJet II(PCL4)emulation for Microsoft MS-DOS-based applications, and Microsoft Windows Printing System for Windows-based applications
/ Saves Time, Energy
Quick startup with On-Demand Fusing Technology
Extremely low power consumption when idling
/ Easy to use
PCL Emulation Front panel software with On-Line Help
/ Superior Laser Output
300dpi, text smoothing feature, and super fine toner

PCL CONFIGURATION

Item	Possible Values
Copies	1...99
Orientation	Portrait, Landscape
Default Font	Courier, **Courier Bold,** Lineprinter, Post Latin, Post Latin, Post Latin, **Post Latin Bold, Post Latin Bold, Post Latin Bold,** *Post Latin Italic, Post Latin Italic,* Sans Serif, Sans Serif, Sans Serif, **Sans Serif Bold, Sans Serif Bold,** *Sans Serif Italic, Sans Serif Italic*
Symbol Set	Courier and Lineprinter, (Roman-8, ECMA-94, PC-8, PC-8 DN, 17 ISO sets, German, Spanish) Post Latin and Sans Serif (ASCII, Roman-8, ECMA-94)
Point Size	Courier: 12, Courier Bold: 12, Lineprinter: 8.5, Post Latin: 8, 10, 12, Post Latin Bold: 10, 12, 14, Post Latin Italic: 8, 10, 12, Sans Serif: 8, 10, 12, Sans Serif Bold: 10, 12, 14, Sans Serif Italic: 10, 12,
Paper Source	MP Tray
Paper Size	Letter, Legal, Executive, A4, Envelope #10, DL, C5, Monarch
Lines/Page	5...128
Auto Form Feed	Enabled, Disabled
Auto Form Feed After	10...300
Auto Cuntinue	

Post Latin is compatible with Times, and Sans Serif is compatible with Helvetica.

Microsoft, MS-DOS, Windows and Windows logo are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.
HP, LaserJet, and PCL are trademarks of Hewlett-Packard Company.
Times and Helvetica are trademarks of Linotype-Heli AG, and/or its subsidiaries.

Figure 4-5-6

B. Image Defect Samples



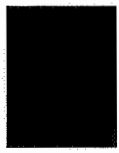
I - 1 Light



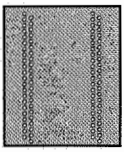
I - 2 Dark



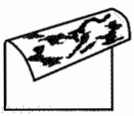
I - 3 Completely Blank



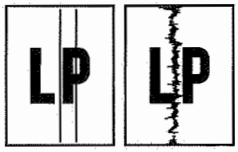
I - 4 All-Black



I - 5 Polka Dots



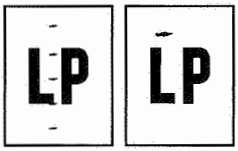
I - 6 Dirt on Back of Paper



I - 7 Black Vertical Lines



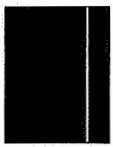
I - 8 Irregular and Smudged Black Horizontal Line



I - 9 Dirty



I - 10 Blank Spots



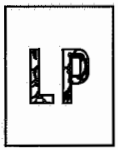
I - 11 White Vertical Lines



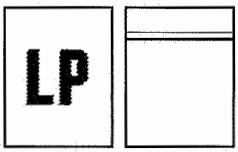
I - 12 White Horizontal Lines



I - 13 Leading Edge Skew



I - 14 Poor Fixing



I - 15 Image Distortion
I - 16 BD Failure

Figure 4-5-7

C. Image Defect Troubleshooting

I-1 Light

<Possible causes>

1. The image density is not properly adjusted.
   Action: Operate the external device to adjust the image density.

2. Lack of toner
   Action: Replace the cartridge.

3. Open the top door during printing and remove the EP-A cartridge. After opening the protective shutter of the photosensitive drum in the EP-A cartridge, check the toner image on the photosensitive drum surface. If the toner image has not sufficiently transferred to the paper, proceed to step 4. If the toner image on the photosensitive drum surface is light, go to step 7. Do not leave the protective shutter open for more than 10 seconds.

4. Paper
   Action: Replace the paper and advise the customer on the paper storage procedures.

5. Poor connection between the high-voltage and transfer charging roller shaft contacts.
   Action: Clean the high-voltage connection to ensure continuity. If the problem remains, replace any deformed or broken parts.

6. Deformation/deterioration of the transfer charging roller
   Action: Replace the transfer charging roller.

7. Poor connection between the developing bias and cartridge contact points.
   Action: If dirty, clean the connection. If the problem remains, replace any deformed or broken parts.

8. Faulty laser/scanner unit
   Action: Replace the laser/scanner unit.

9. Faulty printer controller PCB
   Action: Replace the printer controller PCB.

I-2 Dark

<Possible causes>

1. The image density is not properly adjusted.
   Action: Operate the external device to adjust the image density.

2. Poor connection between the drum grounding and cartridge contact points
   Action: If dirty, clean the connection. If the problem remains replace any deformed or broken parts.

3. Poor connection between the primary high-voltage and cartridge contacts
   Action: If dirty, clean the connection. If the problem remains replace any deformed or broken parts.

4. Faulty laser/scanner unit
   Action: Replace the laser/scanner unit.

5. Faulty printer controller PCB
   Action: Replace the printer controller PCB

I-3 Completely Blank

<Possible causes>

1. The ON/OFF claw for the front cover switch is broken.
   Action: Replace the front cover.

2. The laser shutter lever in the EP-A cartridge is broken.
   Action: Replace the cartridge.

3. Poor connection between the developing bias and cartridge contact points.
   Action: If dirty, clean the connection. If the problem remains replace any deformed or broken parts.

4. Poor connection in the door switch unit connector
   Action: Reconnect connector J001 in the door switch unit and connector J305 on the printer controller PCB.

5. Faulty door switch unit
   Action: Replace the door switch unit.

6. Faulty laser/scanner unit
   Action: Replace the laser/scanner unit.

7. Faulty printer controller PCB
   Action: Replace the printer controller PCB.

I-4 All-Black

<Possible causes>

1. Faulty EP-A cartridge
   Action: Replace the cartridge.

2. Poor connection between the primary high-voltage and cartridge contact points.
   Action: If dirty, clean the connection. If the problem remains replace any deformed or broken parts.

3. Faulty laser/scanner unit
   Action: Replace the laser/scanner unit.

4. Faulty printer controller PCB
   Action: Replace the printer controller PCB.

I-5 Polka Dots

<Possible causes>

1. Dirty static charge eliminator
   Action: Clean the static charge eliminator.

2. Poor contact between the static charge eliminator contact point and the static charge eliminator itself
   Action: If dirty, clean the connection. If the problem remains, replace any deformed or broken parts.

3. Deformation/deterioration of transfer charging roller
   Action: Replace the transfer charging roller.

I-6 Dirt on Back of Paper

<Possible causes>

1. Periodic dirt on back of printed paper. (dirt on transfer charging roller or fixing lower roller)
   Action: Refer to the instructions in Table 4-5-1 on P. 4-18. If the rollers are dirty, clean them. Replace the affected rollers if the dirt cannot be removed.

2. Dirt on feed guide or fixing unit entrance guide
   Action: Clean the dirty parts.

I-7 Black Vertical Lines

<Possible causes>

1. Vertical scratches on the photosensitive drum surface.
   Action: Replace the cartridge.

2. Dirty face-down delivery sub roller
   Action: Clean the face-down delivery sub roller.

3. Dirty fixing unit entrance guide
   Action: Clean the fixing unit entrance guide.

4. Flaw in fixing film unit
   Action: Replace the fixing film unit.

I-8 Irregular and Smudged Black Horizontal Line

<Possible causes>

1. Faulty EP-A cartridge
   Action: Replace the cartridge.

2. Dirt/deformation/wear on fixing film unit
   Action: Replace the fixing film unit.

I-9 Dirty

<Possible causes>

1. Dirty paper
   Action: Replace the paper with new paper and advise the customer on paper storage procedures.

2. Periodic dirt (dirty pick-up roller, transfer charging roller, fixing film unit, or EP-A cartridge)
   Action: Refer to the instructions in Table 4-5-1 on P. 4-18. If the rollers are dirty, clean them. Replace the affected rollers if the dirt cannot be removed.

I-10 Blank Spots

<Possible causes>

1. Not using the recommended paper
   Action: Use the recommended paper. Advise the customer to do so also.

2. Paper is moist
   Action: Replace the paper. Advise the customer to keep the paper wrapped in its wrapping paper to prevent it from moistening.

3. Deformed or dirty transfer charging roller
   Action: Replace the transfer charging roller.

4. Faulty EP-A cartridge
   Action: Replace the cartridge.

5. Poor connection between the developing bias and cartridge contact points.
   Action: If dirty, clean the connection. If the problem remains replace any deformed or broken parts.

6. Faulty printer controller PCB
   Action: Replace the printer controller PCB.

I-11 White Vertical Lines

<Possible causes>

1. Lack of toner
   Action: Remove the cartridge from the printer. Shake the cartridge as indicated in Chapter 1 and reinstall in the printer. If the problem continues to occur, replace the cartridge.

2. Vertical scratches on the photosensitive drum surface.
   Action: Replace the cartridge.

3. Foreign matter on the laser path or laser entry slot of cartridge
   Action: Remove the foreign matter.

4. Toner on the face down delivery sub roller.
   Action: Clean the face down delivery sub roller.

5. Dirt or foreign matter on fixing unit entrance guide
   Action: Clean the fixing unit entrance guide.

6. Flaws or deformation in the surface of the fixing film unit
   Action: Clean the fixing film unit.

7. Dirt on the lens or mirror in the laser/scanner unit
   Action: Replace the laser/scanner unit.

I-12 White Horizontal Lines

<Possible causes>

1. Faulty EP-A cartridge or fixing film unit
   Action: Refer to the instructions in Table 4-5-1 on P. 4-18. Replace the cartridge or the fixing film unit.

I-13 Leading edge skew

<Possible causes>

1. Appears when printing OHT (transparencies).
   Action: Loosen the bundle of the OHT before loading it. Or load 1 to 10 sheets of plain paper of the same size underneath the OHT.

2. Excessive amount of paper loaded into the multi-purpose tray
   Action: Advise the customer to load the proper amount of paper.

3. Not using the recommended paper
   Action: Use the recommended paper. Also, advise the customer to use the recommended paper.

4. Worn or dirty pick-up roller
   Action: Clean the pick-up roller. If the dirt cannot be removed, or if the pick-up roller has worn out, replace it.

5. Worn or dirty feed roller
   Action: Clean the feed roller. If the dirt cannot be removed or if the feed roller has worn out, replace it.

6. Deformation or damage of the paper feed roller drive shaft
   Action: If the paper feed roller drive shaft is deformed or damaged, replace it.

7. Paper pick-up sensor lever
   Action: If the pick-up paper sensor lever is damaged, replace it.

8. Pick-up solenoid
   Action: If the pick-up paper solenoid is damaged, replace it.

9. Paper pick-up sensor
   Action: If the pick-up paper sensor is damaged, replace it.

I-14 Poor Fixing

<Possible causes>

1. Flaws or deformation in the surface of the fixing film unit
   Action: Clean the fixing film unit. If dirt cannot be removed or if flaws or deformations are found, replace the unit.

2. Dirty fixing lower roller
   Action: Clean the fixing lower roller. If the dirt cannot be removed, replace it.

3. Nip width of fixing unit is not within specifications.
   Action: Replace the fixing unit lifting plate.

4. Deterioration of thermistor
   Action: Replace the fixing film unit.

I-15 Image Distortion

<Possible causes>

1. Laser/scanner unit connector contact failure
   Action: Reconnect connectors J801 and J803.

2. Faulty laser/scanner unit
   Action: Replace the laser/scanner unit.

3. Faulty printer controller PCB
   Action: Replace the printer controller PCB.

I-16 BD Failure (BD Error/BD Malfunction)

<Possible causes/action>

Same as described in I-15.

Table 4-5-1

Periodical dirt and spots appearing on the image

Susceptible location	Diameter (mm)	Period of the image (mm)	Phenomenon			
			Dirt	Black spots	Dirt on back of paper	Poor fixing
Transfer charging roller	16	Approx. 50		○	○	
Fixing film unit	24	Approx. 75	○			○
Fixing lower roller	20	Approx. 63			○	○
Feed roller	20	Approx. 63	○			
Photosensitive drum	24	Approx. 75	○	○		
Developing cylinder	12	Approx. 38	○	○		
Primary charging roller	12	Approx. 38	○			

VI. MALFUNCTION TROUBLESHOOTING

Note the following when performing the troubleshooting procedures shown in this section. Be sure to check connectors for faulty contacts before measuring the voltage at their designated ports. To ensure that PCBs are not damaged due to static electricity, discharge any residual static electricity by touching a metallic part of the printer before handling them. Do not disassemble the laser/scanner unit as it cannot be adjusted in the field.

M-1 AC Power Failure

<Possible causes>

1. The rated voltage is not being received at the wall socket
   Action: Inform the user that the designated socket is out of order.

2. Power cord is not firmly inserted into the printer.
   Action: Plug the power cord firmly into the printer.

3. Fuse (FU101) has blown
   Action: Replace the fuse by following the instructions in Chapter 3 on P. 3-19.

4. Faulty printer controller PCB
   Action: Replace the printer controller PCB.

M-2 DC Power Failure

<Possible causes>

1. No power being supplied to the printer
   Action: Check by referring to "M-1 AC Power failure."

2. Rush current/rush voltage detection circuit is tripped
   Action: Turn the power ON/OFF by plugging/unplugging the power cord. If this does not rectify the problem, examine the cause of tripping the rush current/rush voltage detection circuit in the power supply unit.

3. Fuse (FU102) has blown
   Action: Replace the fuse following the instructions in Chapter 3 on P. 3-19.

4. Faulty printer controller PCB
   Action: Replace the printer controller PCB.

M-3 Printer is Stopped After Mistakenly Detecting a Jam

<Possible causes>

1. Faulty paper pick-up sensor
   Action: If the paper pick-up sensor lever is damaged, replace it. If this does not rectify the problem, replace the paper pick-up sensor (PS003) itself.

2. Faulty delivery sensor spring
   Action: Check that the delivery sensor spring is correctly on, if not re-install.

3. Faulty delivery paper sensor lever
   Action: If the delivery paper sensor lever is damaged, replace it.

4. Faulty printer controller PCB
   Action: Replace the printer controller PCB.

M-4 No Pick-Up

<Possible causes>

1. Occurs when printing envelopes
   Action: Refer to P.1-3 Note:3 for details and load envelopes.

2. Faulty pick-up solenoid
   Action: Replace the pick-up solenoid.

3. Faulty paper-out sensor
   Action: If the paper-out sensor lever is damaged, replace it. If this does not rectify the problem, replace the paper-out sensor (PS002).

4. Separation pad defect
   Action: Replace the separation pad if worn.

5. Lifting plate, separation pad spring, feed spring defects
   Action: Reset if incorrectly installed. Replace if deformed or damaged.

6. Pick-up clutch defect
   Action: Replace the pick-up clutch.

7. Pick-up roller unit part defect
   Action: Replace any damaged parts.

8. Paper feed roller drive system
   Action: Replace the paper feed roller drive shaft, paper feed roller, etc. if they are damaged.

9. Faulty printer controller PCB
   Action: Replace the printer controller PCB.

M-5 Insufficient High-Voltage Power Output

<Possible causes>

1. Dirt or contact point burn on high-voltage contact ports
   Action: Clean the relevant high-voltage connection. If a connection burn has occurred, replace the high-voltage connection.

2. Faulty laser/scanner unit (Laser driver PCB)
   Action: Replace the laser/scanner unit.

3. Faulty printer controller PCB
   Action: Replace the printer controller PCB.

M-6 Main Motor Not Rotating

<Possible causes>

1. Poor contact in the main motor drive signal line connector
   Action: Reconnect connector J007 on the main motor or J401 on the printer controller PCB.

2. Faulty contact in switch/sensor unit connector
   Action: Reconnect connector J001, J002 on the switch/sensor unit and J209, J305 on the printer controller PCB.

3. Faulty switch/sensor unit
   Action: If any parts of the switch/sensor unit are damaged, replace. If not, replace the switch/sensor unit.

4. Faulty main motor
   Action: Replace the main motor.

5. Faulty printer controller PCB
   Action: Replace the printer controller PCB.

M-7 Laser Failure

<Possible causes>

1. Faulty contact in laser drive signal line connector
   Action: Reconnect connector J801 on the laser driver and J208 on the printer controller PCB.

2. Faulty laser/scanner unit (laser driver circuit failure)
   Action: Replace the laser/scanner unit.

3. Faulty printer controller PCB
   Action: Replace the printer controller PCB.

M-8 BD Failure

<Possible causes>

1. Condensation
   Action: Leave the printer on for 10 to 20 minutes.

2. Faulty BD signal line connector contact
   Action: Reconnect connector J801 on the laser driver PCB and J208 on the printer controller PCB.

3. Faulty laser/scanner unit (BD signals are not being properly output)
   Action: Replace the laser/scanner unit.

4. Faulty printer controller PCB
   Action: Replace the printer controller PCB.

M-9 Scanner Motor Failure

<Possible causes>

1. Faulty contact in the scanner motor drive line connector
   Action: Reconnect connector J802 on the scanner driver PCB and J207 on the printer controller PCB.

2. Faulty laser/scanner unit
   Action: Replace the laser/scanner unit.

3. Faulty printer controller PCB
   Action: Replace the printer controller PCB.

M-10 Fixing Unit Failure

<Possible causes>

1. Faulty contact in the fixing unit connector
   Action: Reconnect connectors J102, J704 on the fixing film unit, J206 on the printer controller PCB and J008 on the terminal connector.

2. Thermistor wire is cut
   Action: Turn the power OFF and remove the fixing unit. Measure the resistance value between connectors J008-2 (FSRTH) and J008-1 (GNDTH) on the fixing film unit side. If the resistance value is not about 440 KΩ, replace the fixing film unit.

3. Fixing heater thermal fuse
   Action: Remove the fixing unit. If the connection between connectors J102-1 and J102-2 on the fixing film unit is not satisfactory, replace the fixing film unit.

4. Faulty printer controller PCB
   Action: Replace the printer controller PCB.

VII. PAPER TRANSPORT SYSTEM TROUBLESHOOTING

A. Print Paper Jam

The paper feed system of this printer can be roughly divided into two units: the pick-up unit and the fixing/delivery unit.

Prevention measures for the more frequent paper jams are explained separately for each group.

1: Pick-up unit
2: Fixing/delivery unit

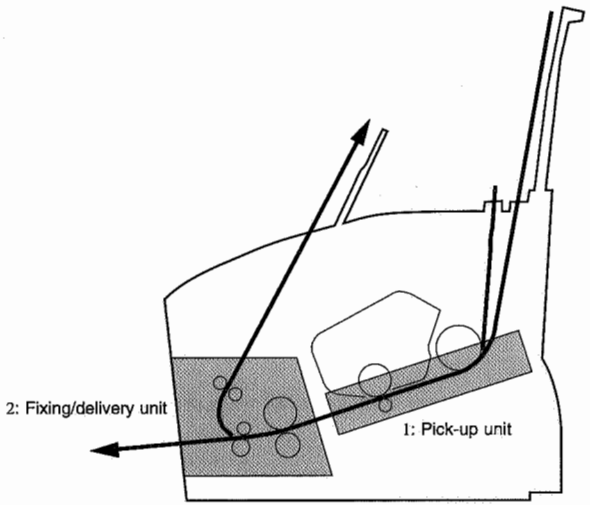


Figure 4-7-1

J-1 Pick-up Unit

<Possible causes>

1. Not using the recommended paper, or the paper is deformed (curled or wrinkled).
   Action: Replace the paper, advise the customer to use the recommended paper and to follow the correct paper storage procedure.

2. Excessive amount of paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray.
   Action: Advise the customer to load the corrected amount of paper in the multi-purpose tray.

3. Worn/deformed/dirty pick-up roller, feed roller, or separation pad
   Action: If the pick-up roller, feed roller, or separation pad is dirty, clean it. If worn or deformed, replace the relevant part.

4. Faulty pick-up solenoid
   Action: Replace the pick-up solenoid.

5. Pick-up roller does not rotate during printing
   Action: Check by referring to "M-4 No Pick-Up."

J-2 Fixing/Delivery Unit

<Possible causes>

1. More than the specified number of pages in the face down delivery tray.
   Action: Do not overload the tray with more than the regulated number of sheets.

2. Faulty delivery deflector.
   Action: Check that the delivery deflector is not worn or chipped.

3. Fixing lower roller not rotating properly
   Action: Check for any wear or chips on the gear.

4. Dirt, flaws, or toner found on the fixing unit entrance guide
   Action: Clean the guide.

5. Deformation or flaws found on the fixing film unit or fixing lower roller
   Action: Replace the fixing film unit and/or the fixing lower roller if deformed.

6. Nip width of fixing lower roller not within specifications
   Action: Replace the fixing pressure plate.

7. Delivery sensor lever in fixing unit not driving properly or is damaged
   Action: Re-set the delivery sensor lever so that it drives properly. Replace the lever if damaged.

8. Face-down delivery roller or fixing delivery roller not driving properly
   Action: Check that the gear is not worn or chipped. Replace either the face-down delivery roller or fixing delivery roller if worn.

B. Incomplete Feed

T-1 Multiple Feed

<Possible causes>

1. Not using the recommended paper
   Action: Replace the paper and advise the customer to use the recommended paper.

2. Worn separation pad surface
   Action: Replace the separation pad.

3. Faulty lifting plate, separation pad spring
   Action: Put on the spring if it has come unattached. Replace if deformed.

T-2 Wrinkles

<Possible causes>

1. Not using the recommended paper
   Action: Replace the paper and advise the customer to use the recommended paper.

2. Moist paper
   Action: Replace the paper, advise the customer on the proper storage method.

3. Faulty pick-up unit
   Action: After the paper has been picked up, open the cartridge door before the paper enters the fixing unit. If the paper is wrinkled, check the pick-up unit. If the paper is skewed, refer to "T-4 Skew Feed."

4. Dirty fixing unit entrance guide
   Action: Clean the fixing unit entrance guide.

5. Dirty fixing lower roller
   Action: Clean the fixing lower roller.

6. Worn face-down delivery roller.
   Action: Replace the roller.

7. Flawed or deformed fixing film unit
   Action: Replace the fixing film unit if flawed or deformed.

T-3 Bent Leading Edge

<Possible causes>

1. Not using the recommended paper, or paper is deformed, curled or rippled.
   Action: Replace the paper and advise the customer to use the recommended paper. In addition, advise the customer on the correct storage method.

2. Excessive amount of paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray
   Action: Advise the customer to set the proper amount of paper in the multi-purpose tray.

3. Check that the paper is not catching on something.

T-4 Skew Feed

<Possible causes>

1. Not using the recommended paper
   Action: Replace the paper and advise the customer to use the recommended paper.

2. Excessive amount of paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray or manual feeding slot
   Action: Advise the customer to load the correct amount of paper.

3. Paper is loaded incorrectly
   Action: Set the slide guide in the multi-purpose tray or manual feeding slot to the correct paper width.

4. Paper dust or dirt in the pick-up unit, or paper is caught by the rough paper path surface due to an external impact such as a hit.
   Action: Clean the relevant part(s), or replace the damaged part(s).

5. Unevenly abrased, deformed or dirty paper pick-up roller
   Action: Clean the roller if it is dirty. Replace it if abrased unevenly or deformed.

6. Flawed or deformed feed roller
   Action: If roller is flawed or deformed, replace.

VIII. LOCATION/FUNCTION OF ELECTRICAL PARTS

A. Switches/Sensors/Solenoid

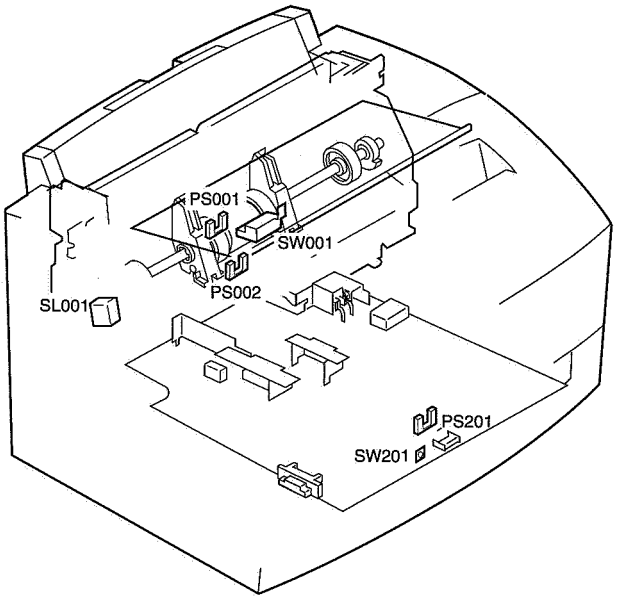


Figure 4-8-1

Table 4-8-1

Symbol	Name	Mark	Function
—o/ o—	Switch	SW101	+12VA output prohibition switch
		SW201	Test print switch
	Photointerrupter	PS001	Paper-out sensor
		PS002	Pick-up paper sensor
		PS201	Delivery paper sensor
	Solenoid	SL001	Pick-up solenoid

B. Motor/Others

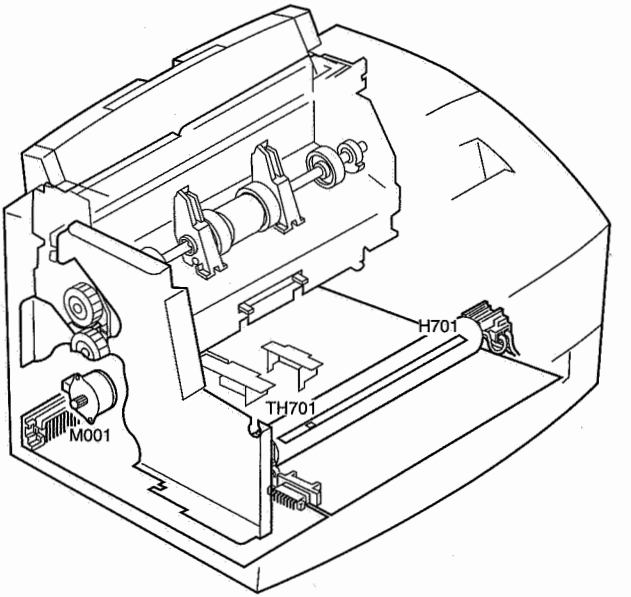


Figure 4-8-2

Table 4-8-2

Symbol	Name	Mark	Function
M	Motor	M001	For printer drive
	Fixing heater	H701	For heating the fixing film unit
	Thermistor	TH701	Fixing film surface temperature detection

C. Printing Circuit Boards

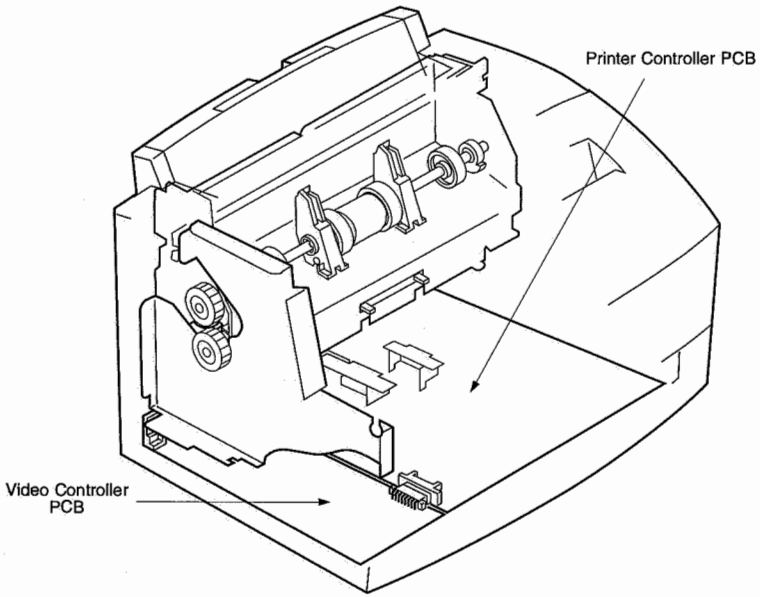


Figure 4-8-3

D. Connectors

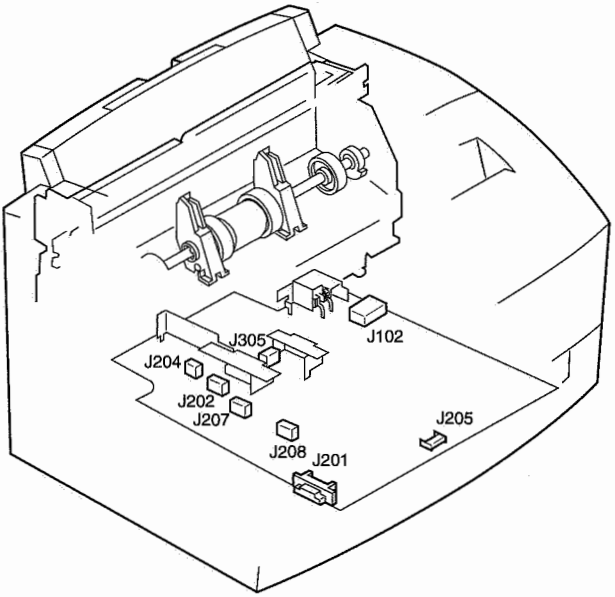


Figure 4-8-4

IX. VARIABLE RESISTORS (VR), LEDs, CHECK PINS, JUMPERS, AND SWITCHES ON THE PCB

The variable resistors (VR), LEDs, check pins, jumpers, and switches that are necessary for servicing in the field are listed below.

The VR, test pins, etc. not listed are only for factory use. As adjustment and checking of these components requires special tools and adjustment instruments, many of them require a high level of accuracy. Therefore they should not be serviced in the field.

Note: Bear in mind that because leakage current flows in some LEDs even when normal, they will emit light faintly even while turned OFF.

A. Printer Controller PCB

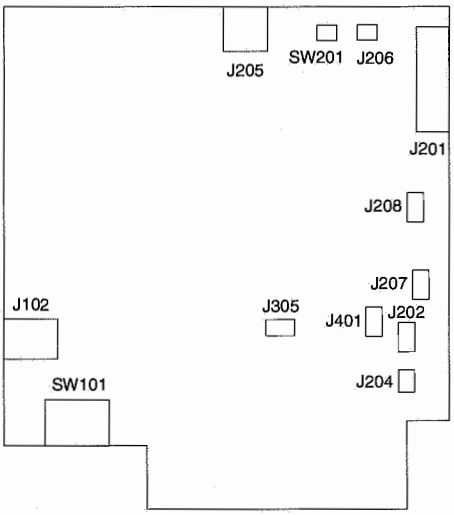


Figure 4-9-1

Table 4-9-1

SW No.	Function
SW201	Test print switch

X. LIST OF LUBRICANTS, CLEANERS

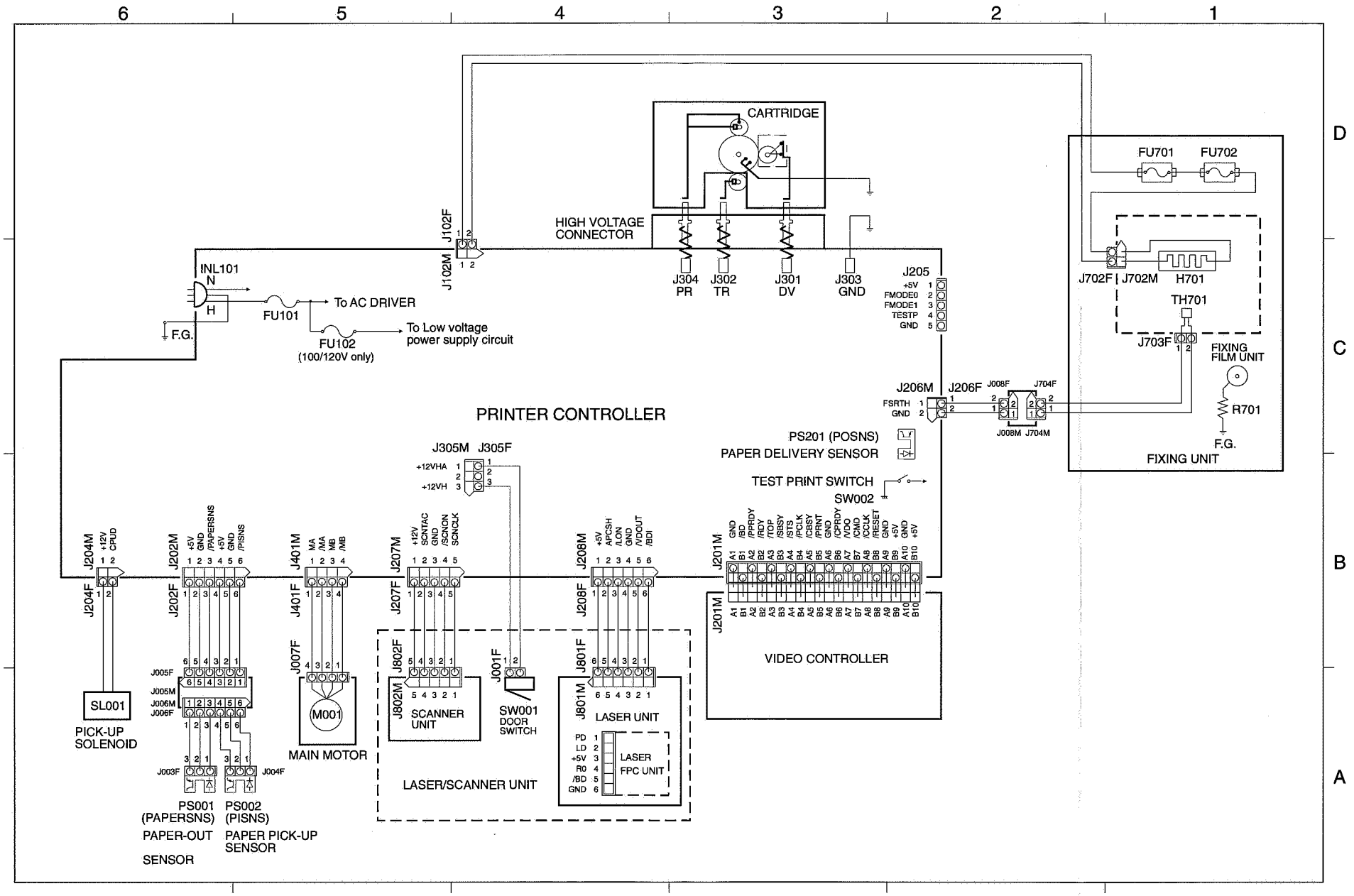
Table 4-10-1

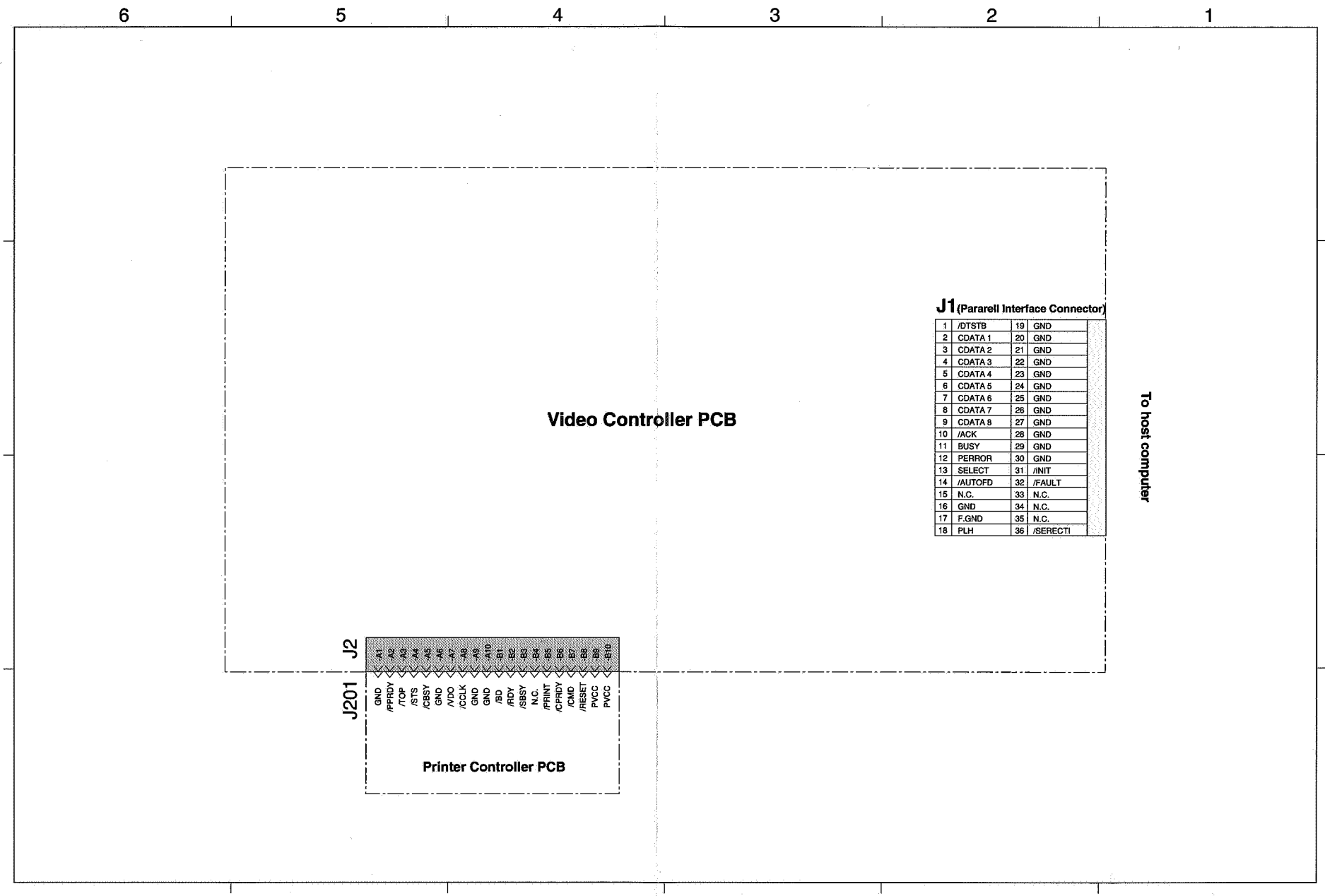
No.	Name	Components	Use	Remarks
1	Alcohol: ethyl (pure or denatured) or isopropyl (pure or denatured)	C_2H_5OH, $(CH_3)_2CHOH$	Cleaning: plastic, rubber, external parts	• Purchase locally • Flammable: keep away from flame
2	MEK (methyl ethyl ketone)	$CH_3CO\text{-}C_2H_5$	Cleaning: oil and toner stains	• Purchase locally • Highly flammable: keep away from flame
3	Lubricant	Special oil Special solid lubricating material Lithium soap	Apply to drive mechanism	• Tool No. HY9-0007 (20g tube)
4	Electricity grease	High performance grease	Apply to grounding plate	• Electricity grease • Tool No. CK-8006

APPENDIX

I. GENERAL CIRCUIT DIAGRAM A-1

II. LIST OF SIGNALS/ COMMANDS A-3


6
5
4
3
2
1
D
C
B
A
CARTRIDGE
HIGH VOLTAGE CONNECTOR
J102F
J102M
J304 PR
J302 TR
J301 DV
J303 GND
J205
+5V
FMODE0
FMODE1
TESTP
GND
INL101
N
H
F.G.
FU101
To AC DRIVER
FU102
(100/120V only)
To Low voltage power supply circuit
FU701
FU702
J702F
J702M
H701
TH701
J703F
FIXING FILM UNIT
R701
F.G.
FIXING UNIT
J206M
J206F
J008F
J704F
FSRTH
GND
J008M
J704M
PRINTER CONTROLLER
PS201 (POSNS)
PAPER DELIVERY SENSOR
TEST PRINT SWITCH
SW002
J305M
J305F
+12VHA
+12VH
J204M
J204F
J202M
J202F
J401M
J401F
J207M
J207F
J208M
J208F
J201M
J201F
VIDEO CONTROLLER
J005F
J005M
J006M
J006F
J003F
J004F
J007F
J802F
J802M
J001F
J801F
J801M
SL001
PICK-UP SOLENOID
M001
MAIN MOTOR
SCANNER UNIT
SW001
DOOR SWITCH
LASER UNIT
LASER FPC UNIT
PD
LD
+5V
RD
/BD
GND
LASER/SCANNER UNIT
PS001 (PAPERSNS)
PAPER-OUT SENSOR
PS002 (PISNS)
PAPER PICK-UP SENSOR


6
5
4
3
2
1
D
C
B
A
Video Controller PCB
J1 (Pararell Interface Connector)
1 /DTSTB 19 GND
2 CDATA 1 20 GND
3 CDATA 2 21 GND
4 CDATA 3 22 GND
5 CDATA 4 23 GND
6 CDATA 5 24 GND
7 CDATA 6 25 GND
8 CDATA 7 26 GND
9 CDATA 8 27 GND
10 /ACK 28 GND
11 BUSY 29 GND
12 PERROR 30 GND
13 SELECT 31 /INIT
14 /AUTOFD 32 /FAULT
15 N.C. 33 N.C.
16 GND 34 N.C.
17 F.GND 35 N.C.
18 PLH 36 /SERECTI
To host computer
J2
A1 A2 A3 A4 A5 A6 A7 A8 A9 A10 B1 B2 B3 B4 B5 B6 B7 B8 B9 B10
J201
GND /PPRDY /TOP /STS /CBSY GND /VDO /CCLK GND GND /BD /RDY /SBSY N.C. /PRINT /CPRDY /CMD /RESET PVCC PVCC
Printer Controller PCB

II. LIST OF SIGNALS/COMMANDS

Abbreviation	SIGNALS/COMMANDS
APCSH	APC SAMPLE HOLD signal
/BD	BEAM DETECT signal
/BDI	BD INPUT signal
/CBSY	COMMAND BUSY signal
/CCLK	CONTROLLER CLOCK signal
/CMD	COMMAND signal
/CPRDY	CONTROLLER POWER READY signal
CPUD	PICK-UP SOLENOID DRIVE signal
DOSNS	DOOR OPEN-CARTRIDGE SENSE signal
DVDCC	DEVELOPING BIAS (AC) DRIVE signal
DVFOT	DEVELOPING BIAS (DC) DRIVE signal
FSRD	FIXING HEATER DRIVE signal
FSRTH	FIXING HEATER TEMPERATURE DETECT signal
/LON	LASER ENABLE signal
MA	MAIN MOTOR DRIVE signal
/MA	MAIN MOTOR DRIVE signal
MB	MAIN MOTOR DRIVE signal
/MB	MAIN MOTOR DRIVE signal
/PAPRSNS	PAPER-OUT SENSOR signal
/PCLK	PRINTER CLOCK signal
/PISNS	PAPER PICK-UP SENSOR signal
/POSNS	PAPER DELIVERY SENSOR signal
/PPRDY	PRINTER POWER READY signal
PRACC	PRIMARY VOLTAGE (AC) DRIVE signal
PRDCC	PRIMARY VOLTAGE (DC) DRIVE signal
/PRNT	PRINT signal
/RDY	READY signal
/SBSY	STATUS BUSY signal
SCNCLK	SCANNER CLOCK signal
/SCNON	SCANNER MOTOR DRIVE signal
SCNTAC	SCANNER ROTATION signal
/STS	STATUS signal
/TOP	VERTICAL SYNC signal
TRCRNT	TRANSFER VOLTAGE FEEDBACK signal
TRNFOT	TRANSFER NEGATIVE VOLTAGE CONTROL signal
TRPWM	TRANSFER POSITIVE VOLTAGE DRIVE signal
/VDO	VIDEO signal
/VDOUT	LASER DRIVE signal

Prepared by
PERIPHERAL PRODUCTS QUALITY PLANNING DIV.
PERIPHERAL PRODUCTS TECHNICAL DOCUMENTATION DEPT.
CANON INC
Printed In Japan

REVISION 0 (FEB. 1997)
REVISION 1 (AUG. 1998)

5-1, Hakusan 7-chome, Toride-City, Ibaraki-Pref. 302-8501, Japan



The printing paper contains
70% waste paper.

Canon

PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON) 0898MI1.00 CANON INC.

LBP-660

PARTS CATALOG

REVISION 1

Canon

AUG. 1998

RY8-31AK-010

COPYRIGHT © 1998 CANON INC.

CANON LBP-660 REV.1 AUG. 1998 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

序

このパーツ・カタログは、LBP-660に対するサービス部品調達の手引として発行します。
製品に大きな変更がある場合は、改訂版のパーツ・カタログを発行しますが、その他の場合は随時新しい情報をお届けします。

キヤノン株式会社
周辺機器品質企画部
周辺機器技術資料課

PREFACE

This Parts Catalog contains listings of parts used in the LBP-660. Diagrams are provided with the listings to aid the service technician in clearly identifying the item to be orderd.

Whenever ordering parts, consult this Parts Catalog for all of the information pertaining to each item. Be sure to include in the Parts Request the full item description, the item part number, and the quantity. The parts catalog may be revised if there is significant product modification. For minor prodnct modifications, a Service Information Bulletin will be issued.

Canon Inc.

Peripheral Products Quality Planning Div.
Peripheral Products Technical Documentation Dept
5-1, Hakusan 7-chome, Toride-shi, Ibaraki 302-8501, Japan

版権所有、無断転載、引用を禁ず。

COPYRIGHT © 1998 CANON INC.

Printed in Japan
Imprimé au Japon

本マニュアルについては、機密保持等その取扱には十分注意してください。
万一取扱を誤りますと法律で処罰されることがあります。
Use of this manual should be strictly supervised to avoid disclosure of confidential information.

LIST OF ORDER AND SERIAL NUMBERS
オーダナンバー／シリアルナンバー一覧表

NAME	REMARKS	ORDER No.	SERIAL No.
LBP-660	100-120V 50/60Hz 600DPI	R72-5064-000	JHL00001-
		R72-5064-001	
	220-240V 60Hz 600DPI	R72-5058-000	KJE00001-
		R72-5058-006	
	220-240V 60Hz 600DPI	R72-5058-001	KJF00001-
		R72-5058-007	
	220-240V 60Hz 600DPI	R72-5058-002	KJG00001-
		R72-5058-008	
	220-240V 60Hz 600DPI	R72-5058-003	KJH00001-
		R72-5058-009	
	220-240V 60Hz 600DPI	R72-5058-004	KJJ00001-
		R72-5058-010	
	220-240V 60Hz 600DPI	R72-5058-005	KJL00001-
		R72-5058-011	
	100-120V 50/60Hz 600DPI	R72-5094-000	JHM00001-
		R72-5094-001	
	220-240V 60Hz 600DPI	R72-5068-000	KJK00001-
		R72-5068-001	

COPYRIGHT © 1998 CANON INC.
CANON LBP-660 REV.1 AUG. 1998 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

目　次

A.　主要部品配置図

001.　ディスクユニット

100.　外装カバー
101.　本体機械内部（1）
102.　本体機械内部（2）
103.　本体機械内部（3）
110.　電装部

260.　給紙ローラ部

310.　給紙部
320.　転写ブロック部
330.　搬送部
340.　分離ガイド部
350.　排紙部

900.　回路基板配置図

B.　部品索引表

CONTENTS

A.　ASSEMBLY LOCATION DIAGRAM

001.　DISK UNIT

100.　EXTERNAL COVERS, PANELS, ETC.
101.　INTERNAL COMPONENTS 1
102.　INTERNAL COMPONENTS 2
103.　INTERNAL COMPONENTS 3
110.　ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS ASS'Y

260.　PAPER PICK-UP ROLLER ASS'Y

310.　PAPER PICK-UP ASS'Y
320.　TRANSFER BLOCK ASS'Y
330.　FEEDER ASS'Y
340.　SEPARATION GUIDE ASS'Y
350.　DELIVERY ASS'Y

900.　PCB ASS'Y LOCATION DIAGRAM

B.　NUMERICAL INDEX

COPYRIGHT © 1998 CANON INC.
CANON LBP-660 REV.0 FEB. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

パーツカタログの見方

主要部品配置図について

部品図番号(Figure No)および各アセンブリの位置を捜すとき、主要部品配置図を用います。

図中□内は部品図名称、◯内は部品図番号を示しています。

部品番号の捜し方

どのアセンブリに使用されている部品かを主要部品配置図で調べ、その部品図番号(Figure No.)のページをめくります。

部品図の中からその部品をみつけ、そのキーNo.を部品番号リストの中から探し出せば、部品番号・部品名称を知ることができます。

注：電源電圧・周波数等の仕様が異なる場合は、同一のキーNo.に複数の部品番号が記されいるので“SERIAL NUMBER/REMARKS欄”を注意して見るようにしてください。

部品番号リストについて

部品番号リストの内容項目は次のとおりです。

(1) 部品図番号およびキーNo.
(FIGURE&KEY No.)

部品図番号は、各部品番号リスト欄の左上に示してあり、各部品図に対応しています。

また、キーNo.は、部品図中に示してある個々の部品に対応します。

(2) 部品番号(PART No.)

リストの2番目の欄には、部品番号が示してあります。

部品を発注する際は、必ずこの番号を明示してください。

NPNと記載されている部品・アセンブリには部品番号がなく、在庫もされていません。つまり供給できない部品です。

注：部品番号の末尾3桁を訂番といいます。部品改良等の目的で部品の一部が変更になった場合、訂番が変わることがあります。

これらの変更については、技術情報(Service Information)で随時連絡されますので、常にこれらの情報も注意深く読むよう心がけてください。

(3) ランク(RANK)

Nと記載されている部品はサービスパーツに設定されていますが、在庫はされていません。

注文を受けてからの受注生産になります。

(4) 使用個数(Q'TY)

4番目の使用個数欄に示してある数字は、各部品図中における各部品の使用数量を示しています。

ただし、アセンブリの使用個数は、機械1台当たりの数量を示します。

使用個数欄には数字の他に以下のアルファベット文字も表示されています。

RF……参考としてリストアップしているもの

AR……数量を限定せず、組立時に必要に応じた数量を使用するもの、および個数の明記できないもの

(5) 部品名称(DESCRIPTION)

部品発注の際、部品名称も必ず明示してください。

電気部品等の主な仕様・型番は、英文の末尾に記しているものもあります。

(6) 機体番号/備考
(SERIAL NUMBER/REMARKS)

電源電圧・周波数等の仕様の違いがある場合に、その違いを言葉あるいは機体番号の再上位桁のアルファベット(1文字、または2文字または3文字)の略号で表示しています。

略号の表示例

機体番号　ABC00001
　　└ABCのみ表示する。

COPYRIGHT © 1998 CANON INC.
CANON LBP-660 REV.0 FEB. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

また、製品の変更により部品の互換性がない場合に、その部品の適用できる機体番号を表示しています。これらの表示のないものについてはすべての機械に適用できます。

部品索引表(NUMERICAL INDEX)

部品番号の索引が巻末にあります。

部品番号がわかっていて、使用箇所を調べる場合に活用できます。

索引表の左の欄が部品番号(PART No.)、右の欄が部品図番号(FIGURE No.)とキーNo.(KEY No.)を示しています。

COPYRIGHT © 1998 CANON INC.
CANON LBP-660 REV.0 FEB. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

HOW TO USE PARTS LISTS

Assembly Location Diagrams. These diagrams show the locations of major assemblies of the machine. Their names are identified in rectangular boxes. Below each box is the number of the Figure which shows an exploded view of the assembly.

Finding a Parts Number. Refer to the Assembly Location Diagrams and find the Figure Number of the assembly of interest. Turn to the page(s), locate the part on the exploded view, and find its Key Number. Refer to the Parts List on the page facing the exploded view and find the Key Number, Part Number and quantity required for your type of machine.

Note : While looking for a Part Number, pay particular attention to the voltage listed in the SERIAL NUMBER/REMARKS columm to ensure that the Part Number selected is for your type of machine. Immediate shipping or action regarding the part depends on using its correct Part Number.

Parts List pages. The Parts List pages contain the following columns and information.

(1) Figure and Key Number column. The first column shows the Figure Number of the illustration corresponding to the Parts List, and the Key Number that identifies the part on the illustration.

(2) Part Number. The second column shows the Part Number for the part. This Number must be used when ordering replacement parts or assemblies described in the description column do not have a Part Number and are not stocked.

Note : The last three digits (suffix) of the Parts Number are called tbe Revision Number. The Revision Number is changed if the part is modified. Information regarding such changes will be provided by Service Information Bulletins. These Bulletins should be read carefully.

(3) Rank N. Parts marked"N"are service parts, but are not stock items. They are produced on a special-order basis.

(4) Quantity column. The quantity shown in this column is the number of parts used in the Figure. However, the quantity listed for an assembly indicates the number of that assembly per machine. The letters in this column indicate that the quantity of a parts is not specified, allowing the use of the number of parts needed for assembly and that the quantity cannot be mentioned clearly.

(5) Description column. The Description column lists the description that should be used when ordering the part.

(6) Serial Number/Remarks. When there are differences in the specifications of power suppply voltage, frequency, etc., the differences are described in words or indicated by one two or three letters in front of the serial number.

(Example)

Serial number ABC00001
└ This is the descriptive indicator.

If a model modified and a part is no longer interchangeable, the serial number of machines for which the part can be used is shown in this column. If there is no indication the part can be used with all models.

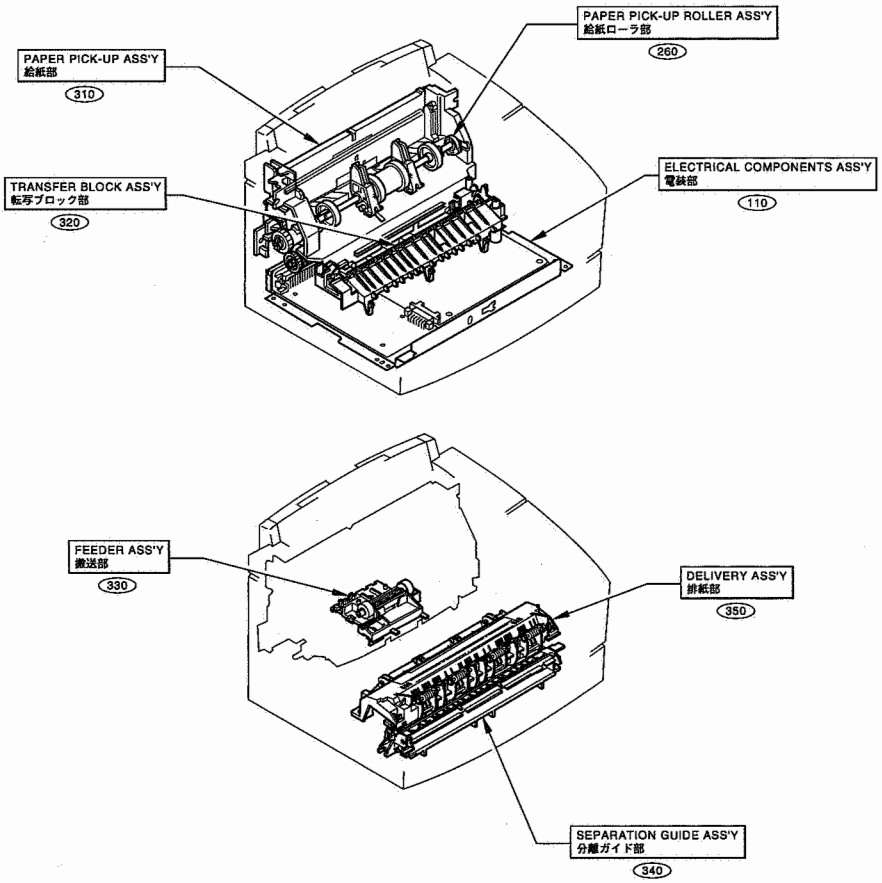
Numerical Index. There is a Numerical Index at the end of this catalog; it lists in numerical order every Part Number contained in the Parts Lists. The Numerical Index contains the following columns and information.

(1) Part Number. The first column shows the Part Number.

(2) Figure and Key Number column. The second column lists the Figure and Key Number for each occurrence of the part in the illustrations.

COPYRIGHT © 1998 CANON INC.
CANON LBP-660 REV.0 FEB. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE A ASSEMBLY LOCATION DIAGRAM
主要部品配置図



COPYRIGHT © 1998 CANON INC.

FIGURE 001 DISK UNIT
ディスク ユニット

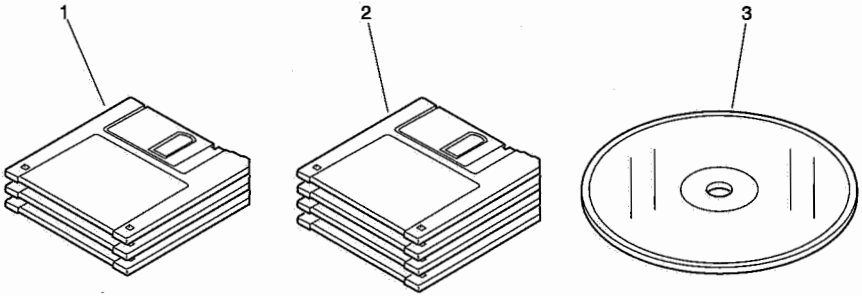
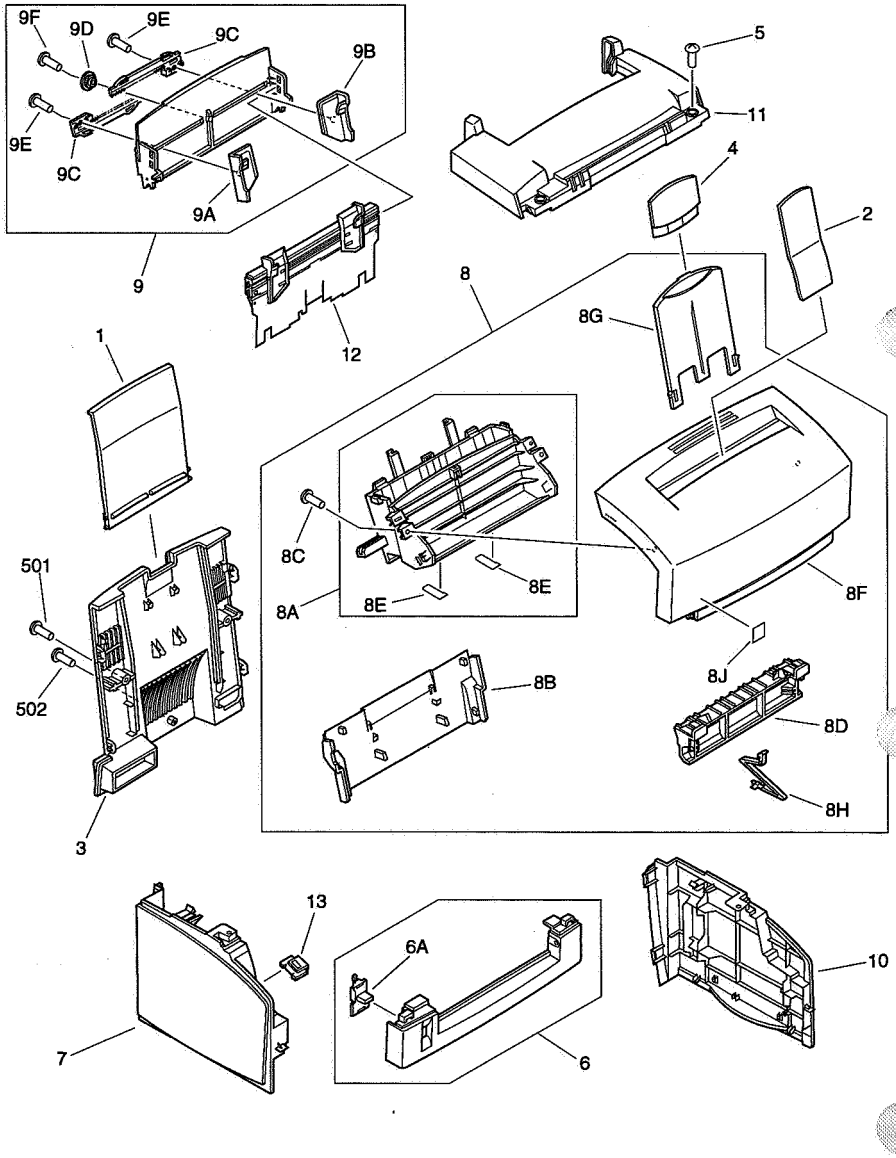


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
001 -	NPN		RF	DISK UNIT	
1	RG1-3946-000		1	3.5"FD, PRINTER DRIVER (3/SET)	ENGLISH (DEFAULT A4)
	RG1-3746-000		1	3.5"FD, PRINTER DRIVER (3/SET)	ENGLISH (DEFAULT LTR)
	RG1-3948-000		1	3.5"FD, PRINTER DRIVER (3/SET)	GERMAN
	RG1-3949-000		1	3.5"FD, PRINTER DRIVER (3/SET)	FRENCH
2	RG1-3947-000		1	3.5"FD, PRINTER DRIVER (4/SET)	ENGLISH (DEFAULT A4)
	RG1-3945-000		1	3.5"FD, PRINTER DRIVER (4/SET)	ENGLISH (DEFAULT LTR)
	RG1-3950-000		1	3.5"FD, PRINTER DRIVER (4/SET)	CHINESE
	RG1-3951-000		1	3.5"FD, PRINTER DRIVER (4/SET)	TAIWANESE
3	RG1-3929-000		1	CD-ROM, PRINTER DRIVER	EUROPE

COPYRIGHT © 1998 CANON INC.
CANON LBP-660 REV.1 AUG. 1998 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

FIGURE 100 EXTERNAL COVERS, PANELS, ETC.
外装カバー

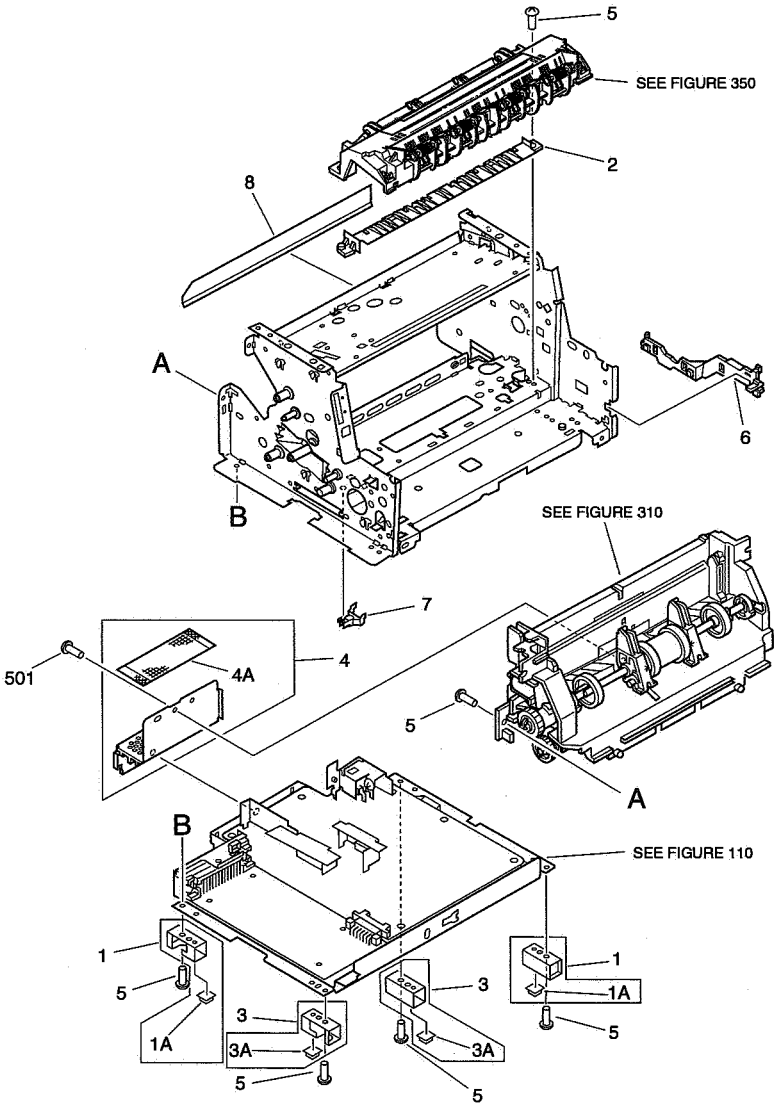


COPYRIGHT © 1998 CANON INC.
CANON LBP-660 REV.1 AUG. 1998 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
100 -	NPN		RF	EXTERNAL COVERS, PANELS, ETC.	
1	RB1-8158-000		1	TRAY, FEED, SUB, D	
2	RB1-8423-000		1	PLATE, PAPER SUPPORT	
3	RB1-8159-030		1	COVER, REAR, D	
4	RB2-2418-000		1	TRAY, LGL	
5	XA9-0724-000		AR	SCREW, M3X8	
6	RG5-2565-000		1	FRONT COVER ASS'Y	
6A	RB1-8412-000		1	LEVER, CHANGE	
7	RB1-8163-000		1	COVER, LEFT	
8	RG5-3746-030		1	CARTRIDGE COVER ASS'Y	
8A	RG5-3750-000		1	PAPER DELIVERY GUIDE ASS'Y	
8B	RB1-8414-030		1	DUCT	
8C	XA9-0691-000		2	SCREW, SELF TAPPING, M3X8	
8D	RB2-2416-000		1	GUIDE, FACE DOWN DELIVERY	
8E	RB2-2419-000		2	SHEET, FACE DOWN	
8F	RB2-2424-020		1	COVER, CARTRIDGE	
8G	RB1-8413-000		1	TRAY, PAPER DELIVERY, SUB	
8H	RB1-8415-000		1	STOPPER, CRG	
8J	RS5-8708-000		1	LABEL, "WINDOWS"	
9	RG5-2563-050		1	MULTI PURPOSE TRAY ASS'Y	
9A	RB1-8155-000		1	GUIDE, SLIDE, LEFT	
9B	RB1-8156-000		1	GUIDE, SLIDE, RIGHT	
9C	RB2-1705-000		2	RACK	
9D	RB9-0265-000		1	GEAR, 16T	
9E	FA9-2597-000		2	SCREW	
9F	XB4-7300-607		1	SCREW,TAPPING,TRUSS HEAD,M3X6	
10	RB1-8164-030		1	COVER, RIGHT	
11	RB2-2415-000		1	COVER, UPPER	
12	RG5-3756-000		1	MANUAL FEED TRAY ASS'Y	
13	RB1-8171-000		1	COVER, LEVER	
501	XB4-7401-007		2	SCREW,TAPPING,PAN HEAD,M4X10	
502	XB6-7300-807		1	SCREW, TP, M3X8	

COPYRIGHT © 1998 CANON INC.

FIGURE 101 INTERNAL COMPONENTS 1
本体機械内部（1）

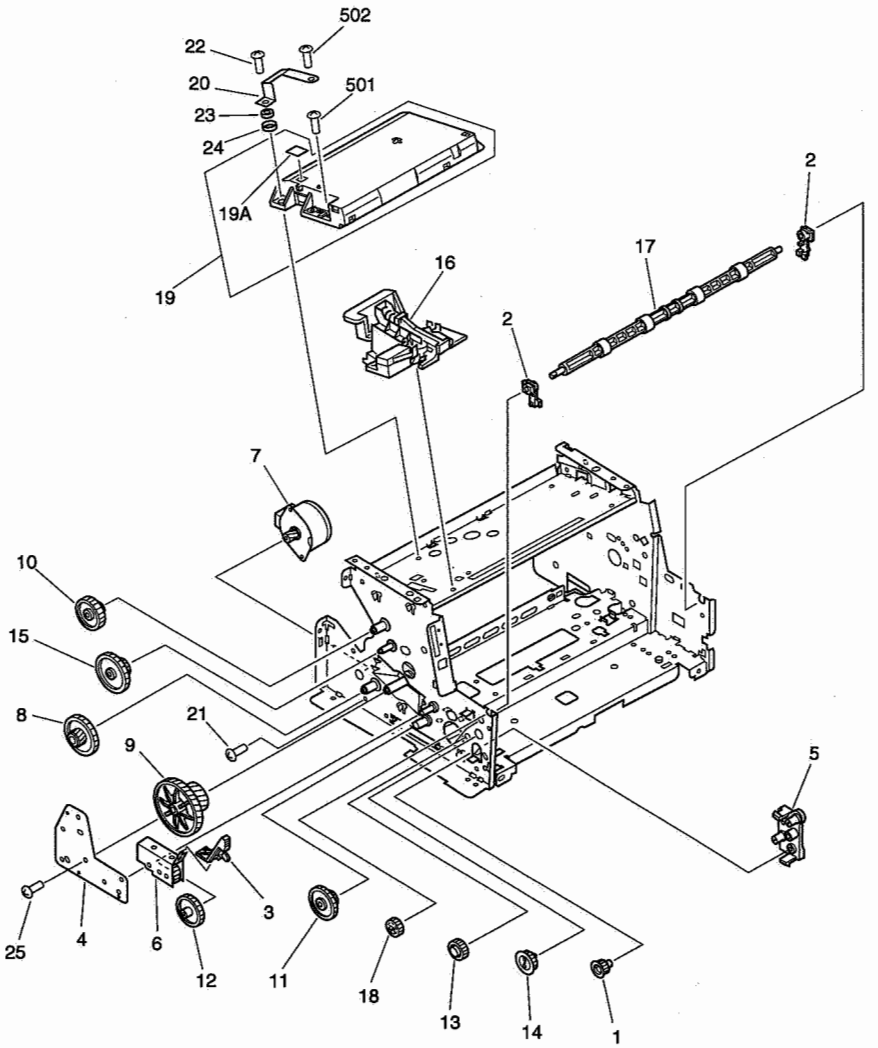


COPYRIGHT © 1998 CANON INC.
CANON LBP-660 REV.0 FEB. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
101 -	NPN		RF	INTERNAL COMPONENTS 1	
1	RF5-1707-000		2	LEG, 1	
1A	RB1-7307-000		1	FOOT	
2	RB1-7247-000		1	GUIDE, PAPER	
3	RF5-1708-000		2	LEG, 2	
3A	RB1-7307-000		1	FOOT	
4	RF5-1509-000		1	PLATE, REINFORCEMENT, CASE	
4A	RB1-7345-000		1	NET	
5	XA9-0724-000		6	SCREW, M3X8	
6	RB1-7130-020		1	GUIDE, CABLE	
7	RB1-7234-000		1	CAP	
8	RB1-7176-000		1	SHEET, GUIDE	
501	XB4-7401-007		3	SCREW,TAPPING,PAN HEAD,M4X10	

COPYRIGHT © 1998 CANON INC.

FIGURE 102 INTERNAL COMPONENTS 2
本体機械内部（2）

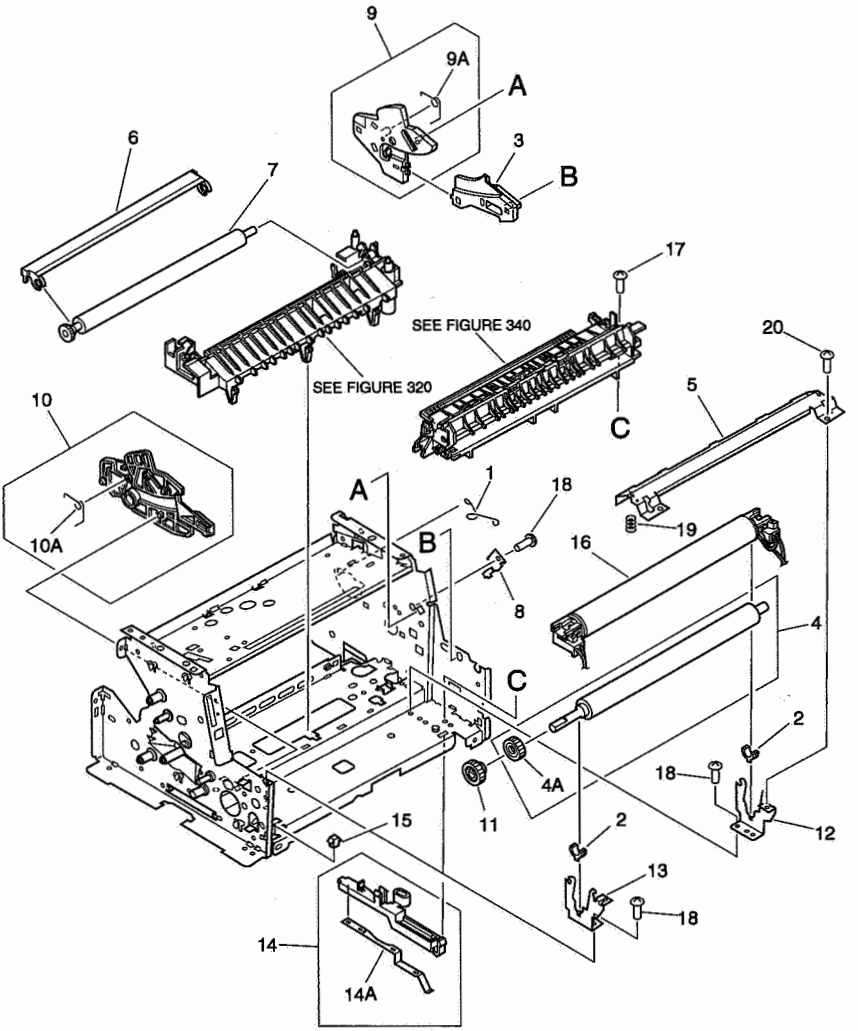


COPYRIGHT © 1998 CANON INC.
CANON LBP-660 REV.1 AUG. 1998 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
102 -	NPN		RF	INTERNAL COMPONENTS 2	
1	RS5-0798-000		1	GEAR, 15T	
2	RB1-7288-020		2	BUSHING	
3	RB1-8170-000		1	LEVER, RELEASE, D	
4	RB2-1632-000		1	PLATE, GEAR SUPPORT	
5	RB1-7107-000		1	HOLDER, GEAR	
6	RF5-1513-000		1	ARM, SWING	
7	RH7-1320-000		1	MOTOR, DC 12V 24W	
8	RS6-0380-000		1	GEAR, 23T/98T	
9	RS5-0788-000		1	GEAR, 32T/93T	
10	RS5-0789-000		1	GEAR, 37T	
11	RS5-0790-000		1	GEAR, 54T/19T	
12	RS5-0791-000		1	GEAR, 36T	
13	RS5-0793-000		2	GEAR, 22T	
14	RS5-0794-000		1	GEAR, 24T	
15	RS5-0799-000		1	GEAR, 51T/17T	
16	RG5-3453-000		1	SWITCH LEVER ASS'Y	
17	RF5-2367-000		1	ROLLER, FEEDER	
18	RS5-0797-000		1	GEAR, 18T	
19	RG5-3497-000		1	SCANNER ASS'Y	
19A	RB1-7384-000		1	SHEET, DUST COVER	
20	RB2-1714-000		1	SPRING, GROUNDING	
21	XA9-0267-000		2	SCREW, TP, M3X6	
22	XA9-0382-000		1	SCREW, TP, M3X12	
23	WE8-5192-000		1	CORE, FERRITE RING	
24	RB9-0227-000		1	SPACER	
25	XA9-0267-000		3	SCREW, TP, M3X6	
501	XB6-7300-807		3	SCREW, TP, M3X8	
502	XB4-7300-809		1	SCREW,TAPPING,TRUSS HEAD,M3X8	

COPYRIGHT © 1998 CANON INC.

FIGURE 103 INTERNAL COMPONENTS 3
本体機械内部（3）

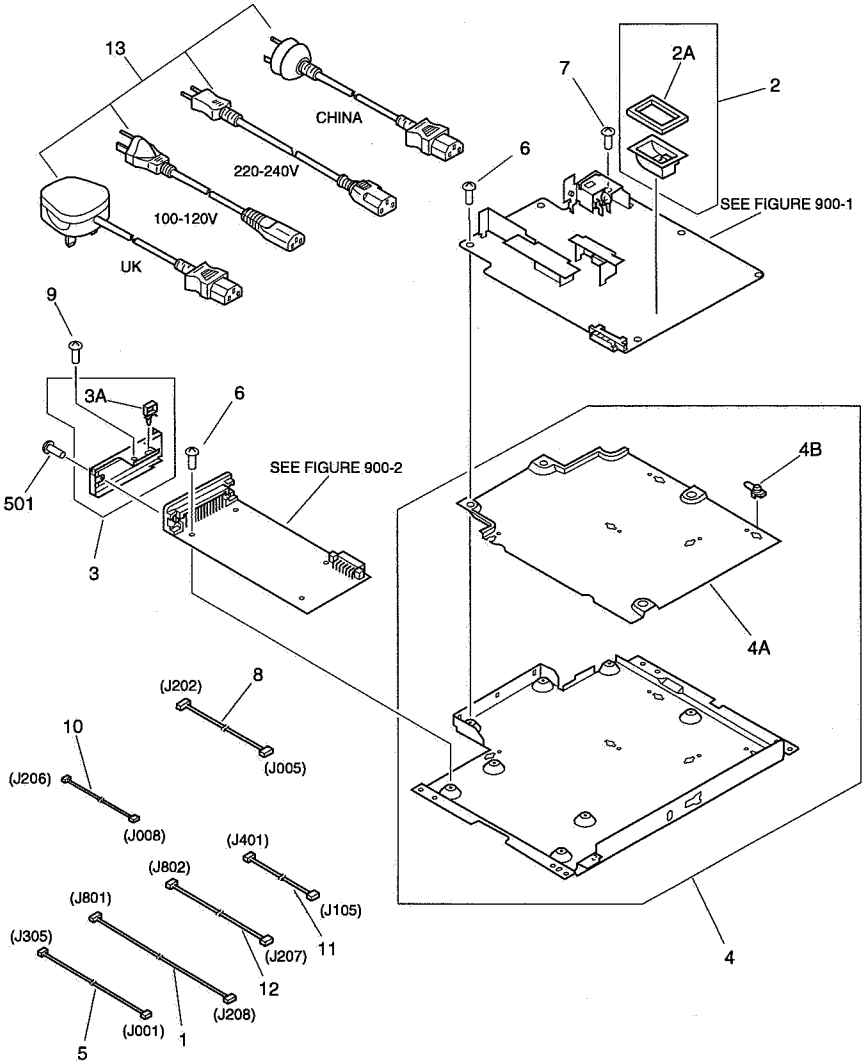


COPYRIGHT © 1998 CANON INC.
CANON LBP-660 REV.0 FEB. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
103 -	NPN		RF	INTERNAL COMPONENTS 3	
1	RB1-7223-000		1	SPRING, GROUNDING	
2	RB1-7246-000		2	BUSHING	
3	RB1-7341-030		1	GUIDE, SUB, CARTRIDGE, RIGHT	
4	RF5-2364-000		1	ROLLER, PRESSURE	
4A	RB2-1668-000		1	RUBBER, CONTINUITY	
5	RF5-1517-020		1	PLATE, PRESSURE	
6	RF5-2358-000		1	GUIDE, TRANSFER	
7	RF5-1534-000		1	ROLLER, TRANSFER	
8	RB1-7129-000		1	SPRING, GROUNDING	
9	RF5-1515-020		1	GUIDE, CARTRIDGE	
9A	RS5-2506-000		1	SPRING, TORSION	
10	RF5-1514-020		1	GUIDE, CARTRIDGE, LEFT	
10A	RS5-2506-000		1	SPRING, TORSION	
11	RS5-0796-000		1	GEAR, 27T	
12	RB1-7256-000		1	SIDE PLATE, RIGHT	
13	RB1-7255-000		1	SIDE PLATE, LEFT	
14	RF5-1533-000		1	PLATE, COMMUNITY	
14A	RB1-7238-000		1	SPRING, LEAF	
15	VS1-5057-002		1	CONNECTOR, 2P	
16	RG5-3459-040		1	FIXING ASS'Y	100-120V
	RG5-3463-000		1	FIXING ASS'Y	220-240V
17	XA9-0824-000		1	SCREW, RS, M3X10	
18	XA9-0686-000		3	SCREW, M3X6	
19	RS5-2508-000		2	SPRING, COMPRESSION	
20	XA9-0724-000		2	SCREW, M3X8	

COPYRIGHT © 1998 CANON INC.

FIGURE 110 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS ASS'Y
電装部



COPYRIGHT © 1998 CANON INC.
CANON LBP-660 REV.1 AUG. 1998 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
110 -	NPN		RF	ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS ASS'Y	
1	RG5-2035-000		1	CABLE, LASER	J208, J801
2	RF5-2382-000		1	COVER, WATERPROOF	
2A	RB1-7270-000		1	CUSHION	
3	RG5-3511-020		1	CONNECTOR SHIELD PLATE ASS'Y	
3A	WT2-0262-000		1	CLIP, CABLE	
4	RG5-2335-000		1	PRINTER CONTROLLER CASE ASS'Y	
4A	RB1-7297-000		1	SHEET, INSULATING	
4B	RB1-7303-000		5	SPACER, PCB	
5	RG5-3662-000		1	DOOR SWITCH CABLE	J001, J305
6	XA9-0890-000		8	SCREW, W/WASHER, M3X6	
7	XA9-0828-000		1	SCREW, W/STAR WASHER, M3X4	
8	RG5-2029-000		1	CABLE, PAPER PICK-UP	J005, J202
9	XA9-0267-000		1	SCREW, TP, M3X6	
10	RG5-2032-000		1	CABLE, THERMISTOR	J008, J206
11	RG5-2033-000		1	CABLE, MOTOR	J105, J401
12	RG5-3661-000		1	SCANNER CABLE	J207, J802
13	RH2-5116-000		1	CORD, POWER	220-240V
	RH2-5127-000		1	CORD, POWER	100-120V
	RH2-5230-000		1	CORD, POWER	UK
	RH2-5344-000		1	CORD, POWER	CHINA
501	XB1-1300-807		2	SCREW,MACH.,PAN HEAD,M3X8	

COPYRIGHT © 1998 CANON INC.

FIGURE 260 PAPER PICK-UP ROLLER ASS'Y
給紙ローラ部

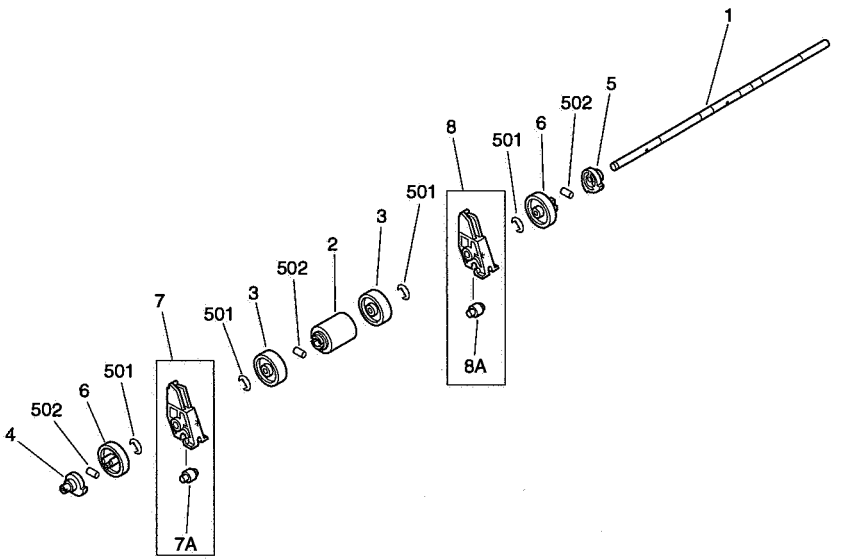
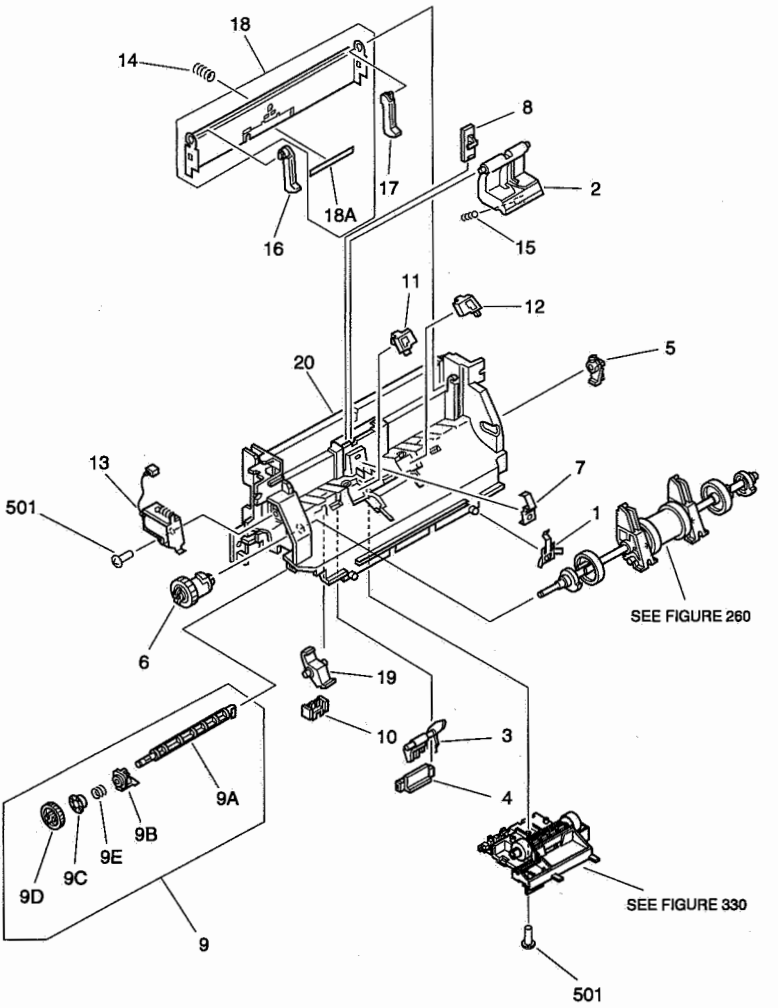


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
260 -	RG5-3486-040		1	PAPER PICK-UP ROLLER ASS'Y	
1	RB2-1707-000		1	SHAFT, PAPER PICK-UP	
2	RB2-1634-000		1	ROLLER, PAPER PICK-UP	
3	RB2-1633-000		2	ROLLER, SUB	
4	RB1-7193-000		1	CAM, LEFT	
5	RB1-7194-000		1	CAM, RIGHT	
6	RB2-1703-000		2	ROLLER, SUB	
7	RG5-3492-000		1	FEED ROLLER ASS'Y, LEFT	
7A	RB2-1701-000		1	ROLLER, FEED	
8	RG5-3493-000		1	FEED ROLLER ASS'Y, RIGHT	
8A	RB2-1701-000		1	ROLLER, FEED	
501	XD9-0131-000		4	RING, E	
502	XD9-0159-000		3	PIN,DOWEL	

COPYRIGHT © 1998 CANON INC.
CANON LBP-660 REV.1 AUG. 1998 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE 310 PAPER PICK-UP ASS'Y
給紙部



COPYRIGHT © 1998 CANON INC.
CANON LBP-660 REV.0 FEB. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
310 -	RG5-3484-070		1	PAPER PICK-UP ASS'Y	
1	RB1-7172-000		1	SPRING, GROUNDING	
2	RB1-7181-000		1	ARM, SEPARATION	
3	RB1-7182-000		1	LEVER, SENSOR	
4	RB1-7183-000		1	HOLDER, LEVER	
5	RB1-7184-000		1	BUSHING	
6	RB1-7197-020		1	CLUTCH	
7	RB1-7199-000		1	SPRING, GROUNDING	
8	RB1-7206-000		1	HOLDER, ARM	
9	RG5-1947-000		1	FEEDER DRIVE ASS'Y	
9A	RB1-7221-000		1	SHAFT, DRIVE	
9B	RB1-7222-000		1	BUSHING	
9C	RB1-7224-000		1	RATCHET	
9D	RS5-0786-000		1	GEAR, 24T	
9E	RS5-2510-000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION	
10	RB1-7220-000		2	HOLDER, STOPPER	
11	RF5-1492-000		1	PAD, LEFT	
12	RF5-1493-000		1	PAD, RIGHT	
13	RH7-5139-030		1	SOLENOID	
14	RS5-2501-000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION	
15	RS5-2502-000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION	
16	RB1-7185-000		1	ARM, PLATE, LEFT	
17	RB1-7186-000		1	ARM, PLATE, RIGHT	
18	RF5-2372-000		1	PLATE, MIDDLE	
18A	RB2-1706-000		1	SHEET, SEPARATION	
19	RB1-7219-000		2	STOPPER	
20	RB1-7177-000		1	FRAME, PAPER FEED	
501	XB4-7401-007		2	SCREW,TAPPING,PAN HEAD,M4X10	

COPYRIGHT © 1998 CANON INC.

FIGURE 320 TRANSFER BLOCK ASS'Y
転写ブロック部

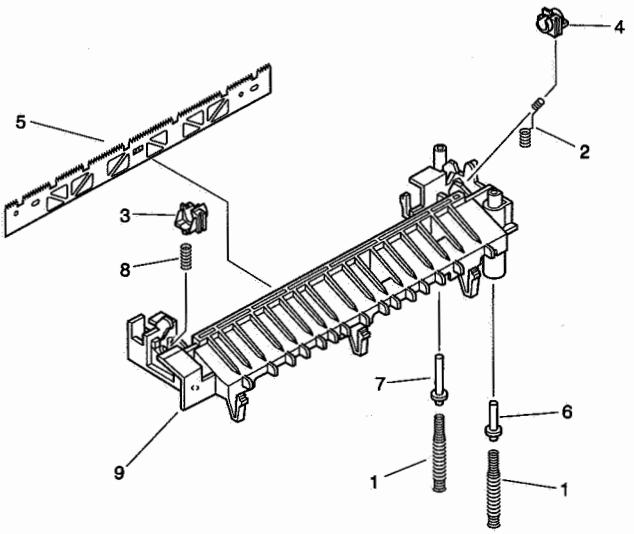


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
320 -	RG5-3452-000		1	TRANSFER BLOCK ASS'Y	
1	RS5-2512-000		2	SPRING, COMPRESSION	
2	RS5-2505-000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION	
3	RB2-1655-000		1	BUSHING	
4	RB2-1656-000		1	BUSHING	
5	RB2-1657-000		1	ELIMINATOR, STATIC CHARGE	
6	RB1-7236-000		1	PIN, CONTACT	
7	RB1-7237-000		1	PIN, CONTACT	
8	RS5-2504-000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION	
9	RB2-1654-000		1	BLOCK, TRANSFER	

COPYRIGHT © 1998 CANON INC.
CANON LBP-660 REV.0 FEB. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE 330 FEEDER ASS'Y 搬送部

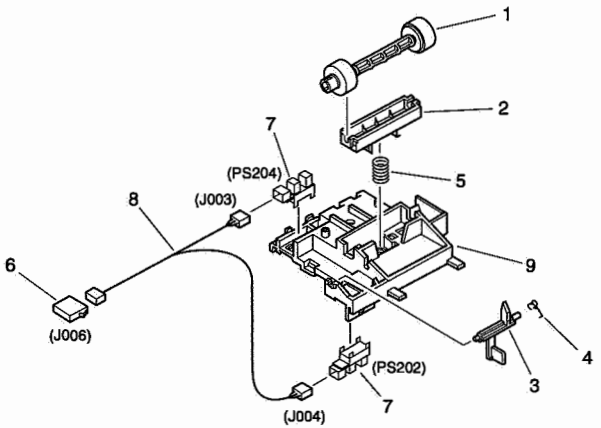


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
330 -	RG5-3485-030		1	FEEDER ASS'Y	
1	RB2-1699-000		1	ROLLER	
2	RB1-7203-000		1	ARM, PRESSURE	
3	RB2-1700-030		1	LEVER, REGISTRATION SENSOR	
4	RB1-7205-000		1	SPRING, TORSION	
5	RS5-2503-000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION	
6	VS1-5057-006		1	CONNECTOR, 6P	
7	WG8-5362-000		2	IC, TLP1241, PHOTO-INTERRUPTER	PS204, PS202
8	RG9-1946-000		1	PICK-UP SENSOR CABLE 2	J003, J004, J006
9	RB1-7200-030		1	HOLDER	

COPYRIGHT © 1998 CANON INC.

FIGURE 340 SEPARATION GUIDE ASS'Y
分離ガイド部

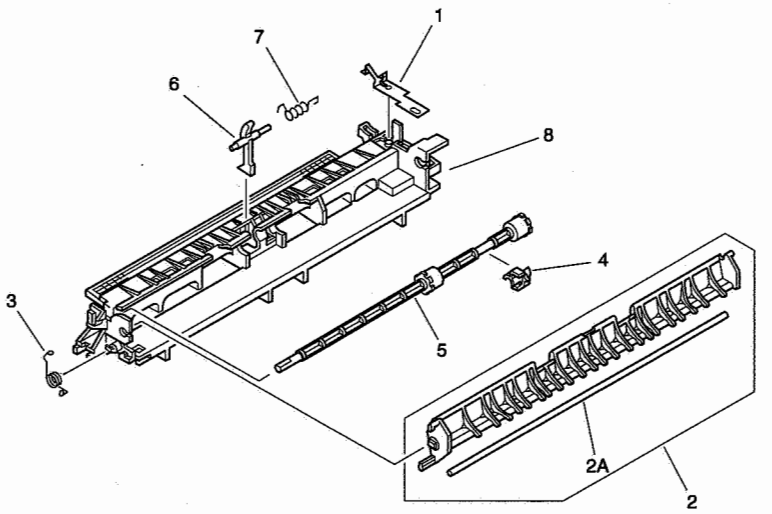


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
340 -	RG5-3475-040		1	SEPARATION GUIDE ASS'Y	
1	RB2-1691-000		1	SPRING, LEAF	
2	RG5-3476-030		1	FLAPPER	
2A	RB2-1689-000		1	ROD, REINFORCEMENT	
3	RB1-7277-000		1	SPRING, TORSION	
4	RB2-1690-000		1	BUSHING	
5	RF5-2368-000		1	ROLLER, FACE UP	
6	RB1-7293-020		1	LEVER, SENSOR	
7	RB1-7294-000		1	SPRING, TORSION	
8	RB2-1687-000		1	GUIDE, SEPARATION	

COPYRIGHT © 1998 CANON INC.
CANON LBP-660 REV.1 AUG. 1998 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE 350 DELIVERY ASS'Y
排紙部

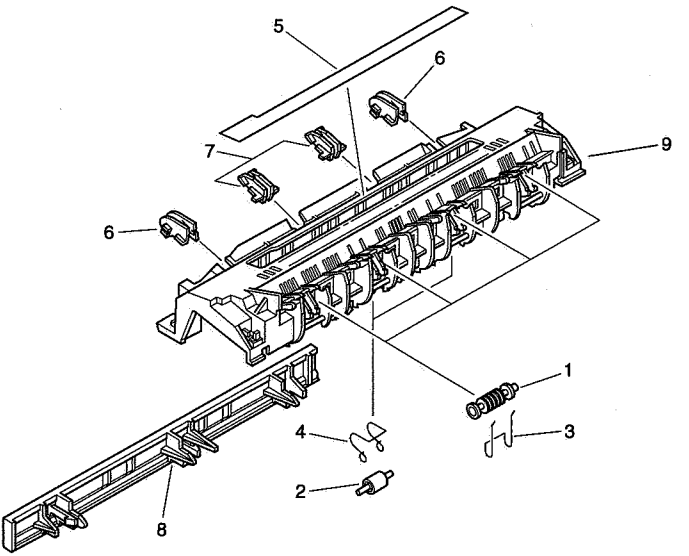


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
350 -	RG5-3474-020		1	DELIVERY ASS'Y	
1	RB1-7284-020		4	ROLLER, FACE DOWN	
2	RB2-1685-000		2	ROLLER, FACE UP	
3	RB1-7286-000		4	SPRING, WIRE	
4	RB1-7287-000		2	SPRING, WIRE	
5	RS5-8543-020		1	LABEL, "WARNING HIGH TEMP"	
6	RG5-3479-000		2	SPUR ASS'Y	
7	RG5-3478-000		2	SPUR ASS'Y	
8	RB1-7334-000		1	GUIDE, JAMMED PAPER REMOVAL	
9	RB2-1686-000		1	FRAME	

COPYRIGHT © 1998 CANON INC.

FIGURE 900 PCB ASS'Y LOCATION DIAGRAM
回路基板配置図

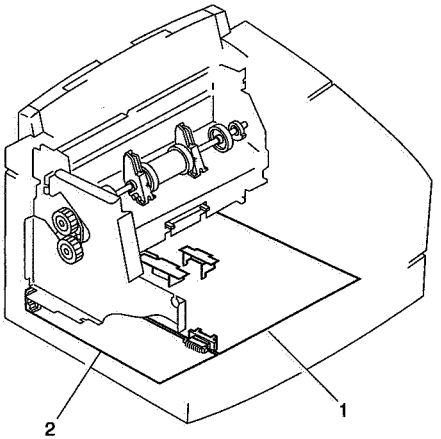


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
900 -	NPN		RF	PCB ASS'Y LOCATION DIAGRAM	
1	RG5-3740-000		1	VIDEO CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y	R72-5064
	RG5-3741-000		1	VIDEO CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y	R72-5058, R72-5068, R72-5094
2	RG5-3506-000		1	PRINTER CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y	100-120V
	RG5-3509-020		1	PRINTER CONTROLLER PCB ASS'Y	220-240V

COPYRIGHT © 1998 CANON INC.
CANON LBP-660 REV.1 AUG. 1998 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

B NUMERICAL INDEX
部品索引表

PART NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO.
FA9-2597-000	100 - 9E
RB1-7107-000	102 - 5
RB1-7129-000	103 - 8
RB1-7130-020	101 - 6
RB1-7172-000	310 - 1
RB1-7176-000	101 - 8
RB1-7177-000	310 - 20
RB1-7181-000	310 - 2
RB1-7182-000	310 - 3
RB1-7183-000	310 - 4
RB1-7184-000	310 - 5
RB1-7185-000	310 - 16
RB1-7186-000	310 - 17
RB1-7193-000	260 - 4
RB1-7194-000	280 - 5
RB1-7197-020	310 - 6
RB1-7199-000	310 - 7
RB1-7200-030	330 - 9
RB1-7203-000	330 - 2
RB1-7205-000	330 - 4
RB1-7206-000	310 - 8
RB1-7219-000	310 - 19
RB1-7220-000	310 - 10
RB1-7221-000	310 - 9A
RB1-7222-000	310 - 9B
RB1-7223-000	103 - 1
RB1-7224-000	310 - 9C
RB1-7234-000	101 - 7
RB1-7236-000	320 - 6
RB1-7237-000	320 - 7
RB1-7238-000	103 - 14A
RB1-7246-000	103 - 2
RB1-7247-000	101 - 2
RB1-7255-000	103 - 13
RB1-7256-000	103 - 12
RB1-7270-000	110 - 2A
RB1-7277-000	340 - 3
RB1-7284-020	350 - 1
RB1-7286-000	350 - 3
RB1-7287-000	350 - 4
RB1-7288-020	102 - 2
RB1-7293-020	340 - 6
RB1-7294-000	340 - 7
RB1-7297-000	110 - 4A
RB1-7303-000	110 - 4B
RB1-7307-000	101 - 1A
	101 - 3A
RB1-7334-000	350 - 8
RB1-7341-030	103 - 3
RB1-7345-000	101 - 4A
RB1-7384-000	102 - 19A
RB1-8155-000	100 - 9A
RB1-8156-000	100 - 9B
RB1-8158-000	100 - 1
RB1-8159-030	100 - 3
RB1-8163-000	100 - 7
RB1-8164-030	100 - 10
RB1-8170-000	102 - 3
RB1-8171-000	100 - 13
RB1-8412-000	100 - 8A
RB1-8413-000	100 - 8G
RB1-8414-030	100 - 8B
RB1-8415-000	100 - 8H
RB1-8423-000	100 - 2
RB2-1632-000	102 - 4
RB2-1633-000	260 - 3
RB2-1634-000	260 - 2
RB2-1654-000	320 - 9
RB2-1655-000	320 - 3
RB2-1656-000	320 - 4
RB2-1657-000	320 - 5
RB2-1668-000	103 - 4A
RB2-1685-000	350 - 2
RB2-1686-000	350 - 9
RB2-1687-000	340 - 8
RB2-1689-000	340 - 2A
RB2-1690-000	340 - 4
RB2-1691-000	340 - 1
RB2-1699-000	330 - 1
RB2-1700-030	330 - 3
RB2-1701-000	260 - 7A
	260 - 8A
RB2-1703-000	260 - 6
RB2-1705-000	100 - 9C
RB2-1706-000	310 - 18A
RB2-1707-000	260 - 1
RB2-1714-000	102 - 20
RB2-2415-000	100 - 11
RB2-2416-000	100 - 8D
RB2-2418-000	100 - 4
RB2-2419-000	100 - 8E
RB2-2424-020	100 - 8F
RB9-0227-000	102 - 24
RB9-0265-000	100 - 9D
RF5-1492-000	310 - 11
RF5-1493-000	310 - 12
RF5-1509-000	101 - 4
RF5-1513-000	102 - 6
RF5-1514-020	103 - 10
RF5-1515-020	103 - 9
RF5-1517-020	103 - 5
RF5-1533-000	103 - 14
RF5-1534-000	103 - 7
RF5-1707-000	101 - 1
RF5-1708-000	101 - 3
RF5-2358-000	103 - 6
RF5-2364-000	103 - 4
RF5-2367-000	102 - 17
RF5-2368-000	340 - 5
RF5-2372-000	310 - 18
RF5-2382-000	110 - 2
RG1-3746-000	001 - 1
RG1-3929-000	001 - 3
RG1-3945-000	001 - 2
RG1-3946-000	001 - 1
RG1-3947-000	001 - 2
RG1-3948-000	001 - 1
RG1-3949-000	001 - 1
RG1-3950-000	001 - 2
RG1-3951-000	001 - 2
RG5-1947-000	310 - 9
RG5-2029-000	110 - 8
RG5-2032-000	110 - 10
RG5-2033-000	110 - 11
RG5-2035-000	110 - 1
RG5-2335-000	110 - 4
RG5-2563-050	100 - 9
RG5-2565-000	100 - 6
RG5-3452-000	320 -
RG5-3453-000	102 - 16
RG5-3459-040	103 - 16
RG5-3463-000	103 - 16
RG5-3474-020	350 -
RG5-3475-040	340 -
RG5-3476-030	340 - 2
RG5-3478-000	350 - 7
RG5-3479-000	350 - 6
RG5-3484-070	310 -
RG5-3485-030	330 -
RG5-3486-040	260 -
RG5-3492-000	260 - 7
RG5-3493-000	260 - 8
RG5-3497-000	102 - 19
RG5-3506-000	900 - 2
RG5-3509-020	900 - 2
RG5-3511-020	110 - 3
RG5-3661-000	110 - 12
RG5-3662-000	110 - 5
RG5-3740-000	900 - 1
RG5-3741-000	900 - 1
RG5-3746-030	100 - 8
RG5-3750-000	100 - 6A
RG5-3756-000	100 - 12
RG9-1946-000	330 - 8
RH2-5116-000	110 - 13
RH2-5127-000	110 - 13
RH2-5230-000	110 - 13
RH2-5344-000	110 - 13
RH7-1320-000	102 - 7
RH7-5139-030	310 - 13
RS5-0786-000	310 - 9D
RS5-0788-000	102 - 9
RS5-0789-000	102 - 10
RS5-0790-000	102 - 11
RS5-0791-000	102 - 12
RS5-0793-000	102 - 13
RS5-0794-000	102 - 14
RS5-0796-000	103 - 11
RS5-0797-000	102 - 18
RS5-0798-000	102 - 1
RS5-0799-000	102 - 15
RS5-2501-000	310 - 14
RS5-2502-000	310 - 15
RS5-2503-000	330 - 5
RS5-2504-000	320 - 8
RS5-2505-000	320 - 2
RS5-2506-000	103 - 9A
	103 - 10A
RS5-2508-000	103 - 19
RS5-2510-000	310 - 9E
RS5-2512-000	320 - 1
RS5-8543-020	350 - 5
RS5-8708-000	100 - 8J
RS6-0380-000	102 - 8
VS1-5057-002	103 - 15
VS1-5057-006	330 - 6
WE8-5192-000	102 - 23
WG8-5362-000	330 - 7
WT2-0262-000	110 - 3A
XA9-0267-000	102 - 21
	102 - 25
	110 - 9
XA9-0382-000	102 - 22
XA9-0686-000	103 - 18
XA9-0691-000	100 - 8C
XA9-0724-000	100 - 5
	101 - 5
	103 - 20
XA9-0824-000	103 - 17
XA9-0828-000	110 - 7
XA9-0890-000	110 - 8
XB1-1300-807	110 - 501
XB4-7300-607	100 - 9F
XB4-7300-809	102 - 502
XB4-7401-007	100 - 501
	101 - 501
	310 - 501
XB6-7300-807	100 - 502
	102 - 501
XD9-0131-000	260 - 501
XD9-0159-000	260 - 502

COPYRIGHT © 1998 CANON INC.
CANON LBP-660 REV.1 AUG. 1998 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

〒302-8501
茨城県取手市白山7丁目5番地1号
キ ヤ ノ ン 株 式 会 社
周 辺 機 器 品 質 企 画 部
周 辺 機 器 技 術 資 料 課
1 9 9 7 年 2 月 初 版 発 行
1 9 9 8 年 8 月 改訂版1発行

Prepared by
Peripheral Products Quality Planning Div.
Peripheral Products Technical Documentation Dept.
CANON INC.
Printed in Japan

REVISION 0 [FEB. 1997]
REVISION 1 [AUG. 1998]

5-1, Hakusan 7-chome, Toride-shi, Ibaraki 302-8501, Japan



The printing paper contains
70% waste paper.

Canon

PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON) 0998AB1.00 CANON INC.

ENGLISH

Canon

LBP-660 LASER PRINTER

Microsoft® Windows® Printing System Guide for Microsoft® Windows NT®

IMPORTANT:
Read this guide carefully before using your printer. Save this guide for future reference.

Copyright

Copyright © 1998 Canon Inc. All rights reserved
Copyright © 1996 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved

Notice

Canon Inc. makes no warranty of any kind with regard to this material, either express or implied, except as provided herein, including without limitation thereof, warranties as to marketability, merchantability, for a particular purpose of use, or against infringement of any patent. Canon Inc. shall not be liable for any direct, incidental, or consequential damages of any nature, or losses or expenses resulting from the use of this material.
This document contains proprietary information which is protected by copyright. All right are reserved. No part of this document may be photocopied, reproduced, or translated into another language without prior written consent of Canon Inc.
The use of this document is subject to the terms of the License Agreement (Microsoft® Windows® Printing System) provided with your printer.
The information contained in this document is subject to change without notice.

Trademarks

LBP, Canon, and the Canon logo are trademarks of Canon Inc.
PCL is a trademarks of Hewlett-Packard Company.
IBM is a trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.
Microsoft, Windows, Windows NT, the Windows logo, and MS-DOS are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
NetWare® is a registered trademark and Novell is a trademark of Novell, Inc.
TrueType is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc.
Lucida is a trademark of Bigelow & Homes.
Other brand and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.
In this guide, Microsoft®, Microsoft® Windows® and Microsoft® Windows NT® are referred to as Microsoft, Microsoft Windows and Microsoft Windows NT respectively.

Conventions

This guide uses the following conventions:



Notes provide advice or suggestions to help you get the most from your printer.



Indicates that neglecting the suggested procedure or practice could result in damage to your hardware or software.

Chapter 1
Introduction

About This Guide

This Microsoft® Windows® Printing System (hereafter referred to as Microsoft Windows Printing System) Guide for Microsoft® Windows NT® (hereafter referred to as Microsoft Windows NT) describes how to install and use the Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT on a computer running Microsoft Windows NT version 4.0 (for Servers or Workstations) that is connected to a Canon LBP-660 laser printer.

This guide consists of the following chapters:

Chapter 1 Introduction 1

This chapter describes how to use this guide and the system requirements for installing the Microsoft Windows Printing System on to a PC running Microsoft Windows NT.

Chapter 2 Installing the Microsoft Windows Printing System 3

This chapter describes how to install the Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT when using the LBP-660 as a local printer and how to share an LBP-660 on a Microsoft Windows NT network.

Chapter 3 Connecting to the LBP-660 as a Network printer 10

This chapter describes how to use the LBP-660 from other computers running Microsoft Windows NT and from computers running Microsoft® Windows® (hereafter referred to as Microsoft Windows) 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 or Microsoft Windows for Workgroups.

Chapter 4 Using the Microsoft Windows Printing System 13

This chapter describes how to use the Network Status Monitor, the LBP-660 Status Window, and the Properties dialog boxes in the Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT.

Chapter 5 Troubleshooting 23

This chapter describes how to resolve problems that arise during installation of the Microsoft Windows Printing System and while you are using the Microsoft Windows Printing System on a Microsoft Windows NT network.

Appendix 26

This section of the Appendix lists the points in the LBP-660 User's Manual descriptions at which the Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT differs from the Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 and Microsoft Windows for Workgroups.

Before You Install this Software

Before you install the Microsoft Windows Printing System on your PC running Microsoft Windows NT, check that your PC meets the hardware and software requirements listed below.

- IBM-PC or compatible machine with a Pentium 90 MHz CPU or better and with Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 (for Servers or Workstations) installed.



- The Microsoft Windows Printing System for the LBP-660 described in this guide runs on Microsoft Windows NT version 4.0 for PC/AT-compatible machines. This Microsoft Windows Printing System will not run on systems running Microsoft Windows NT version 3.51 or earlier or Microsoft Windows NT for a RISC-based processor.
- If you are using a Novell NetWare® network, you cannot install this software on a NetWare® server. You cannot use this software to print from Novell Netware® clients for Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1, or Microsoft Windows for Workgroups.

- Minimum 24 MB of RAM
- Minimum 10 MB of available hard disk space
- CD-ROM drive
- Standard Centronics parallel printer port (when the LBP is connected as a local printer)
- Network interface card (when the LBP is shared on a network)

While it may be possible to install the Microsoft Windows Printing System on computers that do not meet the above requirements, Canon cannot guarantee that the software will run properly. To provide the optimum environment and obtain the best possible performance from your LBP-660, the following hardware and software is recommended:

- Pentium 166 MHz CPU or better
- Minimum 48 MB of RAM
- ECP printer port
- Sound card (required for using voice messages in the Microsoft Windows Printing System)

To share the LBP-660 across a network, one of the following network protocols must be installed:

- NetBEUI
- TCP/IP
- NWLink IPX/SPX



- To install the Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT, you must have Administrator privileges. The installation should be performed by a network administrator or printer manager with Administrator privileges.

Chapter 2
Installing the Microsoft Windows Printing System

To install the Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT, use the enclosed Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 installer disk.

Installing the Microsoft Windows Printing System for Local Printers

This section describes how to install the Microsoft Windows Printing System for using the LBP-660 as a local printer. For a description of how to connect the LBP-660 as a network printer, see "Chapter 3 Connecting to the LBP-660 as a Network printer".

Start Up the Add Printer Wizard

Use the Add Printer Wizard in Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 to install the Microsoft Windows Printing System on Microsoft Windows NT. Follow these instructions to install the software.

1. Switch on the computer to which the LBP-660 is connected and start up Microsoft Windows NT 4.0.

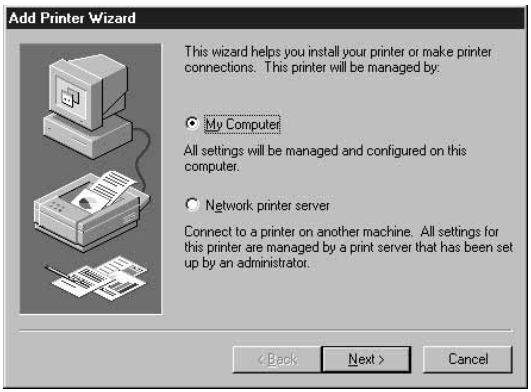
2. Log on as an Administrator.

3. Use one of the following methods to start up the Add Printer Wizard:

   a. Click on the Start button in the taskbar and move the mouse pointer to Settings in the Start menu. In the submenu that appears, click on Printers to open the Printers folder, and double-click on the Add Printer icon in the Printers folder.

   b. Double-click on the My Computer icon on the desktop to open My Computer. Then open the Printers folder and double-click on the Add Printer icon.

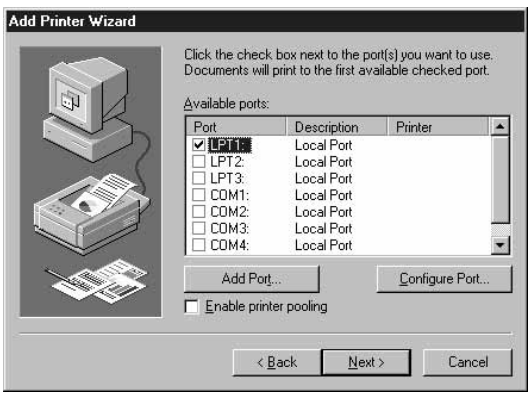
■ You see the Add Printer Wizard window for installing printer drivers.


Add Printer Wizard
This wizard helps you install your printer or make printer connections. This printer will be managed by:
My Computer
All settings will be managed and configured on this computer.
Network printer server
Connect to a printer on another machine. All settings for this printer are managed by a print server that has been set up by an administrator.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

4. Check that the My Computer option button in the Add Printer Wizard is selected and click on the Next > button.

■ The connection port selection window opens.

Selecting the Printer Port



1. Click on the checkbox for the port to which the LBP-660 is connected (usually LPT1:) to select it and then click on the Next > button.

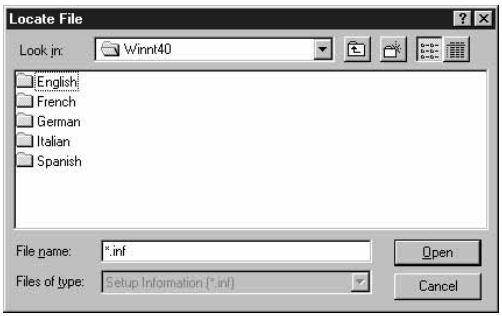
■ You can only connect the LBP-660 to an LPT (parallel) port. You will not be able to print on the LBP-660 if you select a serial port or any port other than that to which the LBP-660 is connected.

■ You see the printer model selection window, which lists the printer manufacturers and models that Microsoft Windows NT supports as standard.

2. Because the LBP-660 is not included on the list, insert the Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 installer CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive, then click the Have disk… button.

3. When the Install From Disk dialog box appears, type the drive name for the CD-ROM drive in the "Copy manufacturer's files from" text box, then click the Browse… button.

4. Double-click on the Winnt40 folder in the Locate File dialog box.
   - The folders for each language are displayed in the Locate File dialog box.



5. Double-click on the folder for the language version of Microsoft Windows NT you are using.
   - When Wpsc3nt appears in the Locate File dialog box, click the Open button.

- If there is no language folder for the language of Microsoft Windows NT you are using, select the English folder.

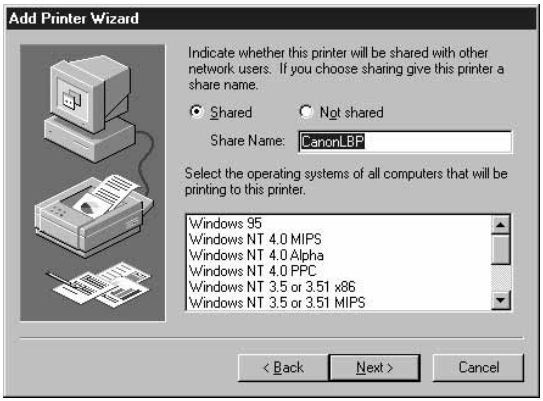
6. Click the OK button in the Install From Disk dialog box.

7. When "Canon LBP-660" appears in the Printers list in the Add Printer Wizard, click on the Next > button.
   - You see a window for naming the printer with "Canon LBP-660" displayed in the Printer Name field. If you want to change the printer name, type in a new name as instructed by the on-screen messages.

8. Click on the Next > button.
   - Next, you see the printer sharing window.

Setting Up Printer Sharing

This section describes how to specify whether or not the LBP-660 is to be shared on a network. You can also specify the printer sharing settings after you have installed the Microsoft Windows Printing System. See the section entitled "Sharing the Printer" for details.


Add Printer Wizard
Indicate whether this printer will be shared with other network users. If you choose sharing give this printer a share name.
Shared
Not shared
Share Name:
CanonLBP
Select the operating systems of all computers that will be printing to this printer.
Windows 95
Windows NT 4.0 MIPS
Windows NT 4.0 Alpha
Windows NT 4.0 PPC
Windows NT 3.5 or 3.51 x86
Windows NT 3.5 or 3.51 MIPS
< Back
Next >
Cancel

1. To share the LBP-660 on a network, select the Shared option button.

2. Click on the Next > button.
   - You see a window asking whether you want to print a test page.

Setting Up Test Page Printing

Once you have finished installing the Microsoft Windows Printing System, you can print a test page on the LBP-660.

1. To print a test page, just click on the Finish button and a test page will be printed automatically. To skip printing the test page, select the No button and then click on the Finish button.

When you click on the Finish button, the required files are copied from the installation disk to your hard disk. While copying is in progress, a message box with a progress bar appears.

When copying ends, the Canon LBP-660 icon appears in the Printers folder.
The shape of the Canon LBP-660 icon in the Printers folder differs depending on whether the printer is shared.

Next, you see the "Initializing… Please wait!" message while the Microsoft Windows Printing System starts the initialization process. During the initialization, the Microsoft Windows Printing System group is created and is added to the Start menu. The Windows Printing System window also appears on the desktop along with a shortcut icon for the Microsoft Windows Printing System group (see next page).

If you want to connect to the LBP-660 and print from a Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 or Microsoft Windows for Workgroups client that is connected to the Microsoft Windows NT network, click on the Yes button when the next dialog box appears.

If you do not want to share the LBP-660, or if all the clients are Microsoft Windows NT machines, click on the No button.


Microsoft Windows Printing System Installation
Do you want to share the WPS directory for allowing Windows95/Windows3.1 clients to print?
Yes
No

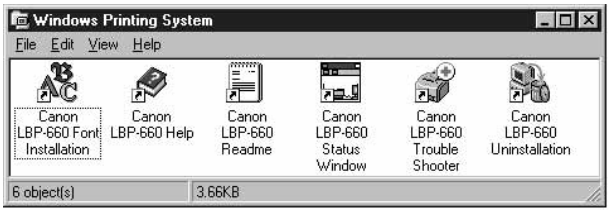
Finishing the Installation

When installation of the Microsoft Windows Printing System is finished, a confirmation message is displayed. Click on the OK button to complete the installation.

If you opted to print a test page during the printer driver installation, the test print now begins. If the entire installation was completed successfully, you will see the LBP-660 Status Window on the desktop and the test page is printed on the LBP-660. Check the test page and then click on the Yes button in the test page completion dialog box to close the dialog box.

Once installation of the Microsoft Windows Printing System ends, you can immediately start printing on the Microsoft Windows NT computer on which the LBP-660 was installed as a local printer. However, to use this computer as a print server and print from a client via the network, you must first restart Microsoft Windows NT.

The Windows Printing System group created during Microsoft Windows Printing System installation contains the 6 icons shown below.



Canon LBP-660 Font Installation
This is a utility for installing the TrueType fonts (22 Lucida TrueType fonts) on disk #3 of the Microsoft Windows 95/3.1 installer disks on Microsoft Windows NT. To install the TrueType fonts, double-click the Canon LBP-660 Font Installation icon. Then follow the instructions in the on-screen messages.

- The installed TrueType fonts will not be removed even if you use the uninstaller to uninstall the Microsoft Windows Printing System.

Canon LBP-660 Help
This displays the help for the Microsoft Windows Printing System.

Canon LBP-660 Readme
This is a text file containing additional information on the installed version of the Microsoft Windows Printing System. Read this file before you use the Microsoft Windows Printing System.

Canon LBP-660 Status Window
This icon opens the Canon LBP-660 Status Window.

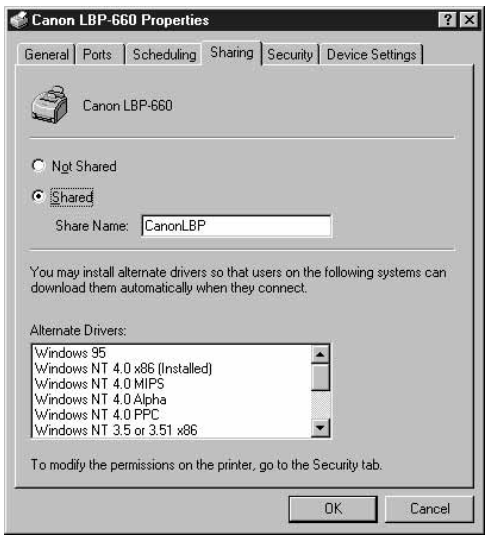
Canon LBP-660 Trouble Shooter
This is a utility for resolving problems with the Microsoft Windows Printing System. See the chapter entitled "Troubleshooting" in the User's Manual for information on using this utility.

Canon LBP-660 Uninstallation
This is a utility for uninstalling the Microsoft Windows Printing System. See the chapter entitled "Troubleshooting" in the User's Manual for information on using this utility.

Sharing the Printer

When you have finished installing the Microsoft Windows Printing System, use the Canon LBP-660 Properties dialog box to designate the LBP-660 as a shared printer.

1. Use the procedure below to open the Sharing tab in the Canon LBP-660 Properties dialog box.
   - Open the Printers folder, click the right mouse button on the LBP-660 icon and select Sharing… from the pop-up menu.



2. To share the LBP-660, click on the Shared option button.

- When you select Shared, the name shown in the Share Name text box is the first 8 characters of the printer name used at installation, excluding spaces. You can change this by typing a different name in the text box.
  If the clients sharing the printer on the network include any Microsoft Windows 3.1 or Microsoft Windows for Workgroups machines, ensure that the Share Name does not exceed 8 characters.

- If you designate the printer as a shared printer, do not select the operating system in the Alternate Drivers list at the bottom of the dialog box. The LBP-660 driver cannot be installed on systems other than Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 (x86).

3. Click on the OK button.
   - The LBP-660 is designated as a shared printer and the icon in the Printers folder changes to a shared printer icon.

Chapter 3
Connecting to the LBP-660 as a Network printer

If you designate the LBP-660 as a shared printer on the Microsoft Windows NT computer to which the LBP-660 is connected and then designate that computer as the print server, the LBP-660 can then be used not only by Microsoft Windows NT clients, but also by Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 and Microsoft Windows for Workgroups clients that are connected to the Microsoft Windows NT network.



- To use the Microsoft Windows NT computer to which the LBP-660 is connected as the print server, you must first start up the Server service on that computer. Start up the Server service before you connect the network printer.
- To connect to a Microsoft Windows NT print server from a client computer and print a document, the client must have the access privileges to connect to the server and the shared printer. If you are not sure of your access privileges, consult your network administrator.

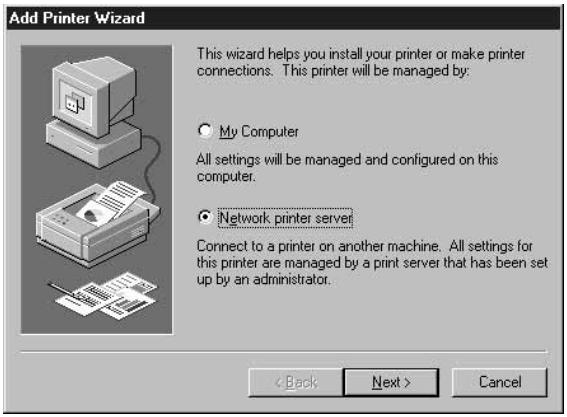
Connecting from a Microsoft Windows NT Client

If the client that is using the LBP-660 as a network printer is running Microsoft Windows NT, simply adding the printer automatically downloads and installs the printer driver and the Network Status Monitor from the print server. Administrator privileges are not needed to add the printer. Normally, anyone can do this.

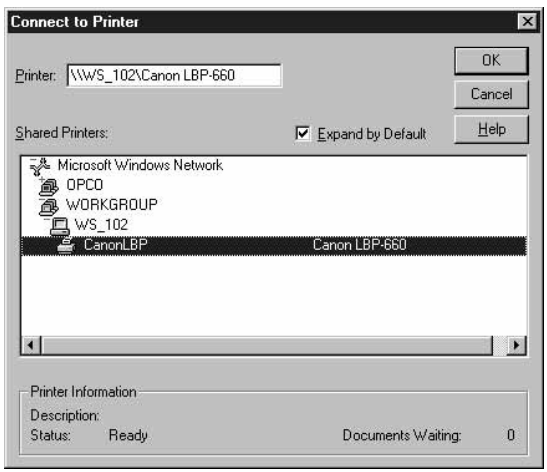
Starting Up the Add Printer Wizard

1. Switch on the client computer, start up Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 and log in.
2. Start up the Add Printer Wizard.
   - See "Chapter 2 Installing the Microsoft Windows Printing System" for information on how to start up the Add Printer Wizard.

Selecting the Network printer


Add Printer Wizard
This wizard helps you install your printer or make printer connections. This printer will be managed by:
My Computer
All settings will be managed and configured on this computer.
Network printer server
Connect to a printer on another machine. All settings for this printer are managed by a print server that has been set up by an administrator.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

1. Click on the Network printer server option button and then click on the Next > button. You see the Connect to Printer window.



2. Double-click on the print server name shown in the Shared Printers list box.
   - Double-clicking on the print server name displays a list of the shared printers connected to the print server.
3. Click on the shared printer name for the LBP-660 to which you want to connect.
   - The network path for the selected printer appears in the Printer text box.

4. Click on the OK button.
   - The LBP-660 printer driver and Network Status Monitor are downloaded from the server and installed on the client.
   - Once the software is successfully downloaded, the Canon LBP-660 icon appears in the Printers folder and the Windows Printing System group is registered in the Start menu. A shortcut to the Network Status Monitor (WpsC3Nsm.exe) is also created on the desktop.
5. Click on the Finish button in the Add Printer Wizard.

Connecting from a Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 or Microsoft Windows for Workgroups Client

To connect to the LBP-660 from a Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 or Microsoft Windows for Workgroups client via a Microsoft Windows NT print server, the LBP-660 Microsoft Windows Printing System for the respective operating system must first be installed on the client. For information on installing the Microsoft Windows Printing System on a Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 or Microsoft Windows for Workgroups client, refer to the User's Manual.

Chapter 4
Using the Microsoft Windows Printing System

The Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT is used in basically the same way as the Microsoft Windows Printing System for other versions of Microsoft Windows. Refer to "Chapter 3 Using the Microsoft Windows Printing System" in the User's Manual for an overview of the Microsoft Windows Printing System.

Microsoft Windows Printing System Dialog Boxes

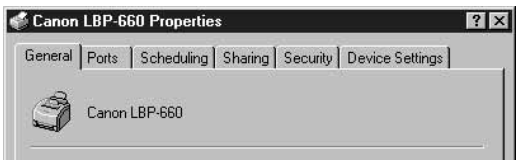
The Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT has two main dialog boxes: the Printer Properties dialog box and the Default Document Properties dialog box. Any user can open these dialog boxes and check the settings, but only users with "Full control" printer access privileges can change the settings.

Printer Properties

To view the printer properties, select Properties from the File menu in the Printers folder, or click the right mouse button on the LBP-660 icon in the Printers folder and select Properties from the pop-up menu.

The Printer Properties dialog box contains the 6 tabs described below. Because the settings in each tab are common to all Microsoft Windows NT printers, the descriptions given here simply give a general overview of the tabs along with points to note when you are using the LBP-660.

For detailed explanations of the various settings, refer to the Microsoft Windows NT manuals. You can also click on the question mark (?) in the top-right corner of the dialog box and then click on the particular setting for pop-up help on the item.



■ General Tab

The settings in this tab apply to the entire printer driver.

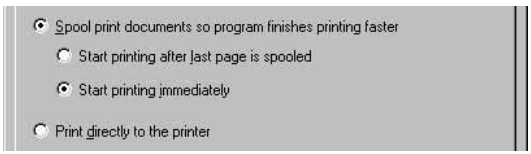
- The LBP-660 does not support separator pages. Even if you click on the Separator Page option button to setup a Separator Page, no separator page will be printed.
- Do not alter the default settings in the Print Processor dialog box that appears when you click on the Print Processor… button. If you change the Default Datatype, printing from clients that are not running Microsoft Windows NT in particular will be not be possible.
- If you want to print a test page, click on the Print Test Page button in this tab. In the Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT, the LBP-660 Status Window does not contain a Test printer button.

■ Ports Tab

Use this tab to select the port to which the LBP-660 is connected.
If you have already connected the LBP-660 and are using it, there is no need to change this setting.

■ Scheduling Tab

- Use this tab to schedule a set time for printing, to set printing priorities, and to specify the print data spooling method.
- For the LBP-660, always select the "Spool print documents so program finishes printing faster" option button. If you select the "Print directly to the printer" option, you will not be able to print from applications.


Spool print documents so program finishes printing faster
Start printing after last page is spooled
Start printing immediately
Print directly to the printer

- Select the "Start printing after last page is spooled" option or the "Start printing immediately" option as required. Note however that this option affects the operation of the progress bar in the Status Window. See the "LBP-660 Status Window" section for details.

■ Sharing Tab

This tab designates whether the LBP-660 is shared. See "Chapter 2 Installing the Microsoft Windows Printing System" for details.

■ Security Tab

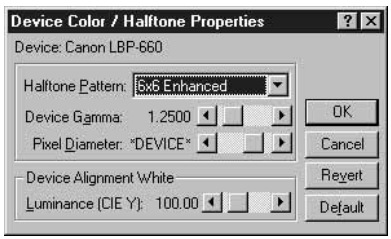
This tab sets the security for the LBP-660.
Refer to the Microsoft Windows NT manuals for information on printer security.

■ Device Settings Tab

This tab specifies how halftones are handled when you print graphics.
The LBP-660 can print using either the printer's own halftones or the Microsoft Windows NT system halftones. To select the halftones used, click on the Halftone option and then use the "Change 'Halftone' Setting" option buttons to select the halftones you want to use.



If you select "Use System Halftone", you can use the Device Color/Halftone Properties dialog box to change the system halftone settings. For information on changing the system halftones, refer to the help or the Microsoft Windows NT manuals.

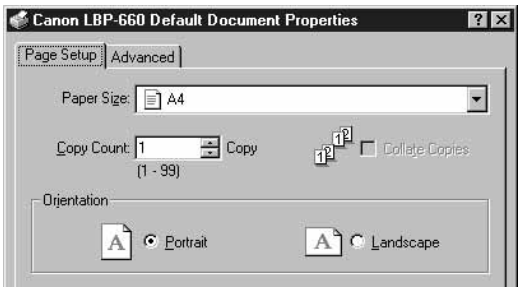


■ The operation of the Halftone Color Adjustment setting in the Document properties changes depending on the halftone handling selected here.

Default Document Properties

In the Default Document Properties dialog box, you can specify the default settings for the printing options available when you print on the LBP-660. To view the default document properties, select "Document Defaults…" from the File menu in the Printers folder, or click the right mouse button on the LBP-660 icon in the Printers folder and select "Document Defaults…" from the pop-up menu.

The Default Document Properties dialog box contains the frequently used Page Setup tab and the Advanced tab for more detailed printing options. For details of the settings, click on the question mark (?) in the top-right corner of the dialog box and then click on the particular setting to view the pop-up help on the item.



- You can also open an equivalent dialog box and specify the settings by selecting "Print" or "Page Setup" from the File menu of an application. Note however, that settings specified from an application apply only to the document you are currently creating in that application and are not reflected in the document defaults.

■ Page Setup Tab

This tab sets parameters such as the paper size, the print orientation and the number of copies.

Paper Size
Select the paper size from the drop-down list box. If you select Custom as the paper size, you must specify the paper size in the Advanced tab.

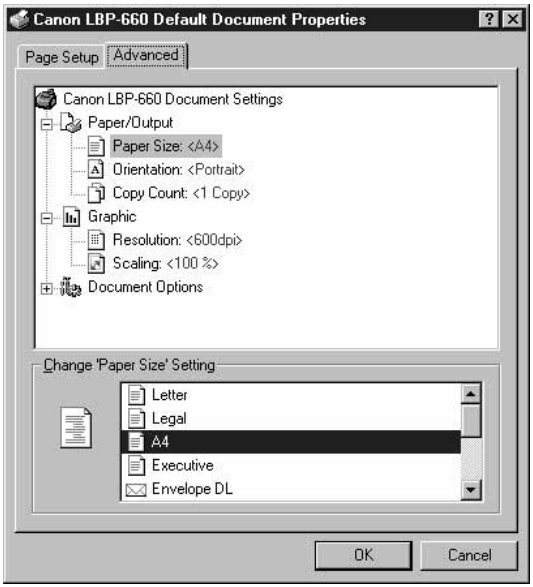
Copy Count
Type the number of copies you want to print in the Copy Count text box.

Collate Copies
If you have specified 2 or more copies in Copy Count, click in the Collate copies checkbox to print collated copies of your document.

Orientation
Use the option buttons to select the printing orientation (Portrait or Landscape).

■ Advanced Tab

The settings in the Advanced tab are grouped under Paper/Output, Graphic, and Document Options. The options in each group are listed hierarchically below the group name. The current setting for each option is shown in blue to the right of the option. If the options are not shown, click on the plus (+) symbol to the left of the group name.



If you click on the name of the option you want to change, the available settings for the option (or buttons to open other dialog boxes) appear in the bottom part of the dialog box. Select or type in the new setting. The new setting then appears in red to the right of the listed option. This red display indicates that the new setting has not yet been saved as a document default. New settings are not saved as document defaults until you click on the OK button at the bottom of the dialog box.

Paper/Output Group Settings
The Paper/Output group consists of 3 options: Paper Size, Orientation and Copy Count. These options are the same as those in the Page Setup tab described above. Changing the settings here also changes the settings in the Page Setup tab.

Graphic Group Settings
The Graphic group consists of 2 options: Resolution and Scaling.

- Resolution
  Use the "Change 'Resolution' Setting" option buttons to select the resolution at which the LBP-660 prints.
- Scaling
  Type the enlargement or reduction ratio in the "Change 'Scaling' Setting" text box. You can set a value between 10% and 200% in 1% increments.

Document Options Group Settings
The Document Options groups consists of 5 options: Halftone Color Adjustment, Automatic Image Refinement, Toner Saver, Toner Density, and Custom Paper Size.

- Halftone Color Adjustment
  Click on the Halftone Color Adjustment button to open the Halftone Color Adjustment dialog box and adjust the printer halftones.



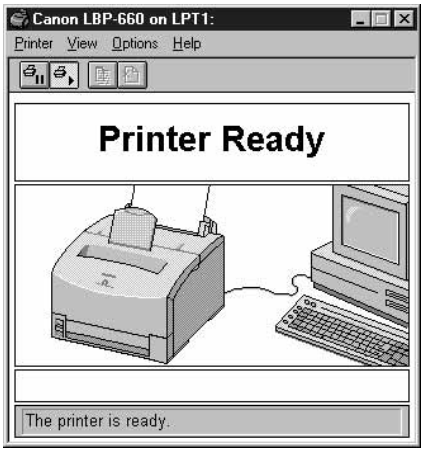
- The Halftone Color Adjustment dialog box you see here differs depending on the Device Settings tab settings in the printer properties.
  - If "Use Printer Halftone" is selected, the original LBP-660 dialog box appears in the same way as when you select the Graphics tab in the Microsoft Windows 95 Properties dialog box.
    In this dialog box, you can select the halftone representation (Smooth, Pattern 1 or Pattern 2) and adjust the Brightness and Contrast. For more information, see the section entitled "Working With Grayscale Graphics" in the User's Manual.
  - If "Use System Halftone" is selected, a grayscale chart and the Microsoft Windows NT system's Halftone Color Adjustment dialog box appears. For information on using this dialog box, use the help or refer to the Microsoft Windows NT manuals.

- Automatic Image Refinement
  Use this option to select whether the Smoothing function on the LBP-660 is switched on or off.
- Toner Saver
  Use this option to select whether the economizing function is switched on or off.
- Toner Density
  Use this option to adjust the toner used during printing to one of 5 levels. Medium is the standard density.
- Custom Paper Size
  Use this option to set the paper size when you have selected Custom in the Page Setup tab. Click on the Custom Paper Size button to view the Custom Paper Size dialog box and set the height and width of the custom paper.

Microsoft Windows NT LBP-660 Status Window

If the LBP-660 is connected to a Microsoft Windows NT computer as a local printer, the LBP-660 Status Window appears automatically when printing on the LBP-660 starts or when user intervention is required, such as when an error occurs.

You can also open the LBP-660 Status Window at any time by double-clicking on the Canon LBP-660 Status Window icon in the Windows Printing System group. You can then use the Status Window to monitor the progress of your print jobs, pause printing, resume printing, and so on.



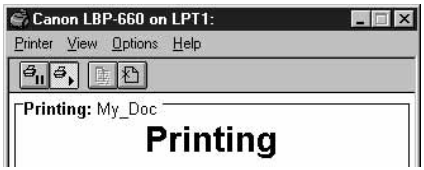
This Status Window is basically the same as the Microsoft Windows Printing System Status Window displayed in Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 and Microsoft Windows for Workgroups. Refer to the User's Manual for more information on using the Status Window.

This description covers only those operations and functions where the LBP-660 Status Window for Microsoft Windows NT differs from the Status Windows in other versions of Microsoft Windows.

- If you selected "Start printing after last page is spooled" in the Printer Properties Scheduling tab, the estimated time remaining and the estimated completion time are shown in the message area while a document is printing, and the progress bar shows the number of pages printed and the total number of pages to be printed.



- If you selected "Start printing immediately", only the "Printing" message appears in the message area, and the progress bar only indicates the number of pages printed.



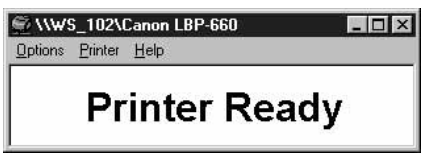
- There is no Test Printer button in the toolbar.
  To print a test page, use the Print Test Page button in the General tab in the Printer Properties dialog box.
- There is no Printer option in the Options menu. To change the toner density, open the Default Document Properties dialog box and use the Toner Density option in the Advanced tab.
- Client Operation in the Options menu allows you to select whether or not a user can pause printing, resume printing, force print or cancel printing from the Network Status Monitor on a Microsoft Windows NT client.
  The check mark to the left of the Client Operation option enables or disables the above operations from the Network Status Monitor.

LBP-660 Network Status Monitor

The LBP-660 Network Status Monitor is a function that allows a Microsoft Windows NT client connected to the network printer to check the status of the LBP-660, pause printing, resume printing, force print and cancel printing in the same way as a Status Window on the desktop. This function is only available to Microsoft Windows NT clients and cannot be used from Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 or Microsoft Windows for Workgroups.

The LBP-660 Network Status Monitor only shows the printer status as a text display and does not have an animated graphic or progress bar like the LBP-660 Status Window.

When you connect a Microsoft Windows NT client to the network printer, the Network Status Monitor is automatically installed from the print server.



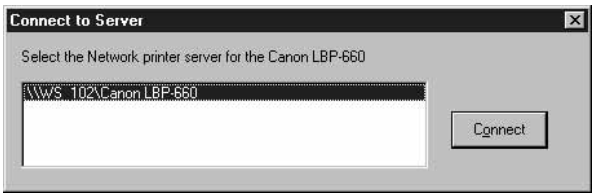
Using the LBP-660 Network Status Monitor

■ Starting Up the Network Status Monitor

You can use the following steps to start up the LBP-660 Network Status Monitor at any time:

1. Double-click on the Canon LBP-660 Network Status Monitor icon in the Windows Printing System group on the client or double-click on the Canon LBP-660 Network Status Monitor shortcut icon on the desktop.

2. When a message appears asking if you want to connect to the network printer, click on the Yes button.
   - You see the dialog box for selecting the network printer to connect.



3. Select the name of the printer you want to connect to from the list box and then click on the Connect button.
   - Once you have finished connecting to the network printer, the current printer status appears in a text box.

■ Status Options

The menu bar in the LBP-660 Network Status Monitor contains 3 menus: Options, Printer and Help.



Options Menu
Use the Options menu to specify options relating to the operation of the Network Status Monitor.

- Connect to Server
  Select this option if your connection to the network printer has dropped out for some reason or if you want to switch your connection to another network printer (LBP-660 only). You will see the same Connect to Server dialog box that appears when you start up the Network Status Monitor. Select the desired printer name and then click on the Connect button.
- Sound Option
  Use this option to select whether voice messages are used when a printer error occurs.

- The Network Status Monitor can only produce voice messages when an error occurs. If there is no sound card installed in the client computer, this option is grayed out and cannot be selected.

- Default Size
  If you have changed the display size of the Network Status Monitor, this option restores it to its original size.
- Hide Menu
  This option hides the Network Status Monitor menus. To restore the menu bar display, press **Esc** while the Network Status Monitor is the active window or double-click anywhere in the message display area.
- Always On Top
  If you select this option and place a check mark to the left of Always On Top, the Network Status Monitor is always displayed as the topmost window on the desktop.

Printer Menu

Use the Printer menu to control printer operation. Note however, that if Client Operation is not checked in the Options menu of the Status Window on the print server, the Printer menu is grayed out and printer operation cannot be controlled from a client.

For details on the Printer menu, see "Using the Printer Menu" in the User's Manual.

- Printer Menu operations still affect print jobs from other clients. When print jobs from multiple clients are spooled in the server's print queue, careless cancellation of printing can cause print jobs from other clients to be lost. Bear this in mind when cancelling printing.

Help Menu

This menu opens a dialog box that shows the Network Status Monitor's version information.

Chapter 5
Troubleshooting

This chapter describes how to resolve problems that occur while you are installing the Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT and while you are using the LBP-660 as a network printer on a Microsoft Windows NT network.

Refer to "Chapter 6 Troubleshooting" in the LBP-660 User's Manual for instructions on dealing with problems with the printer itself (paper jams, etc.), print quality defects, problems with the Microsoft Windows Printing System and the Microsoft Windows Printing System error messages.

If you are unable to determine the cause of a problem, start up the Trouble Shooter utility installed in the Windows Printing System group. The Trouble Shooter can resolve problems with the installed files or settings.

If you are still unable to resolve the problem, uninstall the Microsoft Windows Printing System on the print server, restart the server, and then install the Microsoft Windows Printing System again. To uninstall the Microsoft Windows Printing System, start up the Uninstaller utility installed in the Windows Printing System group.



- Always restart Microsoft Windows NT after you uninstall any software. If you do not restart Microsoft Windows NT, you will not be able to re-install the removed software.

Problems During Microsoft Windows Printing System Installation

Problems During Local Installation

Problem	Cause	Solution
Cannot select the My Computer button in the Add Printer Wizard.	The user installing the software does not have Administrator or Power User privileges.	Administrator privileges are needed to install the Microsoft Windows Printing System. Have someone with Administrator privileges perform the installation.
When file copying ends, an error message appears saying that Administrator privileges are required.	A user with Power User privileges attempted to install the software.	Have someone with Administrator privileges re-install the software.
An error message appears saying that a replacement installation is required.	You are performing a local installation on a computer on which the LBP-660 printer driver has already been network installed.	Perform the local installation again and select the Replace existing driver option button in the Add Printer Wizard replacement selection dialog box.

Problems During Network Installation

Problem	Cause	Solution
The name of the shared printer or print server to be connected is not shown in the Shared Printers list.	• The print server is not started up. • The printer is not set up for sharing. • You do not have the privileges required for connecting to the printer or the print server.	• Start up the print server. • Set the printer up for sharing in the Printer Properties dialog box. • Ask the network administrator to change your user privileges.

Problems During Network Printing

Problem	Cause	Solution
Cannot connect to the print server or the shared printer in the Network Status Monitor.	• The print server is not started up. • The printer is not set up for sharing. • You do not have the privileges required for connecting to the printer or the print server.	• Start up the print server. • Set the printer up for sharing in the Printer Properties dialog box. • Ask the network administrator to change your user privileges.
Cannot use the Printer menu in the Network Status Monitor.	The Client Operation option is not checked in the Options menu in the print server's Status Window.	Select the Client Operation option in the Options menu.
Cannot print on a Microsoft Windows 95/3.1 or Microsoft Windows for Workgroups print server from a Microsoft Windows NT client.	The Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT does not support Microsoft Windows 95/3.1 or Microsoft Windows for Workgroups print servers.	Use a Microsoft Windows NT print server.
Cannot print from a Microsoft Windows 95/3.1 or Microsoft Windows for Workgroups client.	• The WPS directory on the print server is not shared. • The print server's Default Datatype is not set to WPS.	• Specify sharing for the WPS directory on the print server. • Click on the Print Processor button in the General tab in the Printer Properties dialog box and select WPS as the Default Datatype.

Appendix

Comparison with Microsoft Windows Printing Systems for Other Versions of Microsoft Windows

Some of the functions in the Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 differ from those available in the Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 and Microsoft Windows for Workgroups.

Note the following points when you are reading the LBP-660 User's Manual.

During Local or Network printing with Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 and Network printing with Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 or Microsoft Windows for Workgroups

- Because PCL emulation cannot be used, you cannot print from the command prompt (Microsoft Windows NT) or the MS-DOS prompt (Microsoft Windows 95).

During Local or Network printing with Microsoft Windows NT 4.0

- You cannot use the forms overlay function.
- You cannot print a test page from the LBP-660 Status Window. Use the Print Test Page button in the General tab in the Printer Properties dialog box.
- There is no Printer Options item in the Options menu in the LBP-660 Status Window. Set the toner density in the Document Options group of the Advanced tab in the Default Document Properties dialog box.

FRANÇAIS

Canon

IMPRIMANTE LASER LBP-660

Guide de Microsoft® Windows® Printing System pour Microsoft® Windows NT®

IMPORTANT :
Lisez attentivement ce guide avant d'utiliser l'imprimante. Gardez-le à portée de main pour pouvoir le consulter facilement en cas de besoin.

Copyright

Copyright © 1998 Canon Inc. Tous droits réservés
Copyright © 1996 Microsoft Corporation. Tous droits réservés

Avertissement

Canon Inc. n'assume aucune garantie, explicite ou implicite, en rapport avec ce matériel, sauf disposition contraire du présent document, y compris, notamment, les garanties de qualité marchande, pour un usage particulier, ou les garanties relatives à la violation d'un brevet quelconque. Canon Inc. ne pourra en aucun cas être tenu responsable de tout dommage, direct ou indirect, de quelque nature que ce soit, ni de pertes ou de frais résultant de l'utilisation de ce matériel.
Ce document contient des informations qui sont la propriété de Canon et sont protégées par les lois du copyright. Tous les droits sont réservés. Aucune partie de ce document ne pourra être photocopiée, reproduite ou traduite dans une autre langue sans l'autorisation écrite préalable de Canon Inc.
L'utilisation de ce document est soumise aux conditions du contrat de licence (Microsoft® Windows® Printing System) fourni avec votre imprimante.
Les informations contenues dans ce document sont susceptibles d'être modifiées sans préavis.

Marques

LBP, Canon et le logo Canon sont des marques de Canon Inc.
PCL est une marque de Hewlett-Packard Company.
IBM est une marque de International Business Machines Corporation.
Microsoft, Windows, Windows NT, le logo Windows et MS-DOS sont des marques, déposées ou non, de Microsoft Corporation aux Etats-Unis et/ou dans d'autres pays.
NetWare® est une marque déposée et Novell est une marque de Novell, Inc.
TrueType est une marque d'Apple Computer, Inc.
Lucida est une marque de Bigelow & Homes.
Les autres marques ou noms de produits sont des marques ou des marques déposées de leurs sociétés respectives.
Dans ce guide, Microsoft®, Microsoft® Windows® et Microsoft® Windows NT® sont dénommés respectivement Microsoft, Microsoft Windows et Microsoft Windows NT.

Conventions

Ce guide utilise les pictogrammes suivants :



Les remarques fournissent des conseils ou des suggestions pour vous aider à tirer le meilleur parti de votre imprimante.



Ce pictogramme indique que le non-respect de la procédure suggérée peut provoquer des dommages au niveau du logiciel ou du matériel.

Chapitre 1
Introduction

A propos de ce guide

Le Guide de Microsoft® Windows® Printing System (dénommé Microsoft Windows Printing System dans le reste de ce document) pour Microsoft® Windows NT® (dénommé Microsoft Windows NT dans le reste de ce document) explique comment installer et utiliser Microsoft Windows Printing System pour Microsoft Windows NT, sur un ordinateur exécutant Microsoft Windows NT version 4.0 (Server ou Workstation) et connecté à une imprimante laser Canon LBP-660.

Il comprend les chapitres suivants :

Chapitre 1 Introduction 1

Ce chapitre présente le contenu de ce guide et indique la configuration système requise pour l'installation du logiciel Microsoft Windows Printing System sur un PC utilisant Microsoft Windows NT.

Chapitre 2 Installation de Microsoft Windows Printing System 3

Ce chapitre explique comment installer Microsoft Windows Printing System pour Microsoft Windows NT, lorsque vous utilisez la LBP-660 comme imprimante locale, et comment l'utiliser en tant qu'imprimante partagée sur un réseau Microsoft Windows NT.

Chapitre 3 Connexion à la LBP-660 utilisée comme imprimante réseau . 10

Ce chapitre explique comment utiliser la LBP-660 à partir d'autres ordinateurs exécutant Microsoft Windows NT et d'ordinateurs fonctionnant sous Microsoft® Windows® (dénommé Microsoft Windows dans le reste de ce document) 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 ou Microsoft Windows pour Workgroups.

Chapitre 4 Utilisation de Microsoft Windows Printing System 13

Ce chapitre explique comment utiliser le Moniteur de surveillance du réseau, la fenêtre d'état de la LBP-660 et les boîtes de dialogue des propriétés de Microsoft Windows Printing System pour Microsoft Windows NT.

Chapitre 5 Dépannage 23

Ce chapitre explique comment résoudre les problèmes pouvant se produire pendant l'installation de Microsoft Windows Printing System et pendant son utilisation sur un réseau Microsoft Windows NT.

Annexe 26

Cette section de l'Annexe présente les points du Manuel d'utilisation de la LBP-660 pour lesquels les descriptions de Microsoft Windows Printing System pour Microsoft Windows NT diffèrent de celles des versions pour Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 et Microsoft Windows pour Workgroups.

Avant d'installer ce logiciel

Avant de procéder à l'installation de Microsoft Windows Printing System sur votre PC fonctionnant sous Microsoft Windows NT, assurez-vous que celui-ci répond aux exigences de configuration mentionnées ci-dessous.

- Ordinateur IBM-PC ou compatible équipé d'un processeur Pentium 90 MHz ou supérieur et de Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 (version Server ou Workstation).



- Le logiciel Microsoft Windows Printing System pour la LBP-660 présenté dans ce guide fonctionne sous Microsoft Windows NT version 4.0 pour ordinateurs compatibles PC/AT. Cette version de Microsoft Windows Printing System ne fonctionnera pas sur des systèmes utilisant Microsoft Windows NT version 3.51 ou antérieure, ou une version de Microsoft Windows NT pour processeurs RISC.
- Si vous utilisez un réseau Novell NetWare®, vous ne pouvez pas installer ce logiciel sur un serveur NetWare®. Vous ne pouvez pas utiliser ce logiciel pour imprimer à partir de postes client Novell Netware® pour Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 ou Microsoft Windows pour Workgroups.

- Au moins 24 Mo de mémoire vive
- Au moins 10 Mo d'espace disque disponible
- Lecteur de CD-ROM
- Port d'imprimante parallèle Centronics standard (si la LBP est connectée en tant qu'imprimante locale)
- Carte d'interface réseau (si la LBP est partagée sur un réseau)

Bien qu'il soit possible d'installer Microsoft Windows Printing System sur des ordinateurs ne répondant pas aux exigences ci-dessus, Canon ne peut garantir le bon fonctionnement du logiciel dans ces cas précis. Les logiciels et matériels suivants sont recommandés afin d'optimiser les performances et l'environnement de votre LBP-660 :

- Processeur Pentium 166 MHz ou supérieur
- Au moins 48 Mo de mémoire vive
- Port d'imprimante ECP
- Carte son (nécessaire pour les messages sonores de Microsoft Windows Printing System)

L'un des protocoles réseau suivants doit être installé si vous souhaitez partager l'imprimante sur un réseau :

- NetBEUI
- TCP/IP
- NWLink IPX/SPX



- Pour installer Microsoft Windows Printing System pour Microsoft Windows NT, vous devez disposer des privilèges Administrateur. L'installation doit être effectuée par un administrateur de réseau, ou par la personne chargée de gérer les impressions et disposant des privilèges Administrateur.

Chapitre 2
Installation de Microsoft Windows Printing System

Pour installer Microsoft Windows Printing System pour Microsoft Windows NT, utilisez la disquette d'installation fournie.

Installation de Microsoft Windows Printing System pour les imprimantes locales

Cette section explique comment installer Microsoft Windows Printing System afin d'utiliser la LBP-660 en tant qu'imprimante locale. Pour savoir comment connecter la LBP-660 en tant qu'imprimante réseau, reportez-vous au chapitre 3, « Connexion à la LBP-660 utilisée comme imprimante réseau ».

Démarrage de l'Assistant d'ajout d'une imprimante

Utilisez l'Assistant d'ajout d'une imprimante de Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 pour installer Microsoft Windows Printing System sur un ordinateur utilisant ce système d'exploitation. Procédez comme suit pour installer le logiciel.

1. Mettez l'ordinateur connecté à la LBP-660 sous tension et démarrez Microsoft Windows NT 4.0.

2. Ouvrez une session en tant qu'administrateur.

3. Utilisez l'une des méthodes suivantes pour démarrer l'Assistant d'ajout d'une imprimante :

   a. Cliquez sur le bouton Démarrer dans la barre des tâches et pointez avec la souris sur Paramètres. Dans le sous-menu qui apparaît, cliquez sur Imprimantes pour ouvrir le dossier correspondant et cliquez deux fois sur l'icône Ajout d'imprimante.

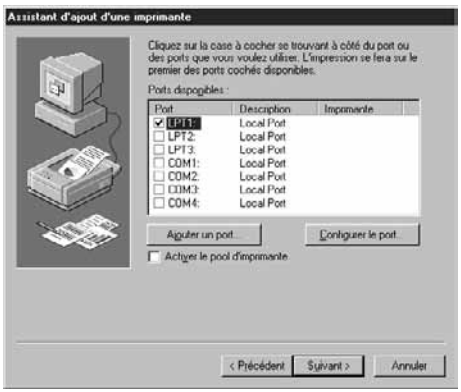
   b. Cliquez deux fois sur l'icône Poste de travail sur le bureau. Ouvrez ensuite le dossier Imprimantes et cliquez deux fois sur l'icône Ajout d'imprimante.

- La fenêtre Assistant d'ajout d'une imprimante permettant l'installation des pilotes d'imprimante s'affiche.


Assistant d'ajout d'une imprimante
Cet assistant vous aide à installer votre imprimante ou à réaliser les connexions à l'imprimante. Cette imprimante peut être gérée par :
Cet ordinateur
Tous les paramètres seront gérés et configurés sur cet ordinateur.
Serveur d'imprimante réseau
Se connecter à une imprimante sur une autre machine. Tous les paramètres pour cette imprimante seront gérés par un serveur d'impression qui a été installé par un administrateur.
< Précédent
Suivant >
Annuler

4. Assurez-vous que l'option Cet ordinateur est sélectionnée et cliquez sur le bouton Suivant >.
   - La fenêtre de sélection du port de connexion s'affiche.

Sélection du port d'imprimante


Assistant d'ajout d'une imprimante
Cliquez sur la case à cocher se trouvant à côté du port ou des ports que vous voulez utiliser. L'impression se fera sur le premier des ports cochés disponibles.
Ports disponibles :
Port
Description
Imprimante
LPT1: Local Port
LPT2: Local Port
LPT3: Local Port
COM1: Local Port
COM2: Local Port
COM3: Local Port
COM4: Local Port
Ajouter un port...
Configurer le port...
Activer le pool d'imprimante
< Précédent
Suivant >
Annuler

1. Cliquez sur la case à cocher correspondant au port auquel la LBP-660 est connectée (LPT1:, en règle générale) afin de le sélectionner, puis cliquez sur le bouton Suivant >.



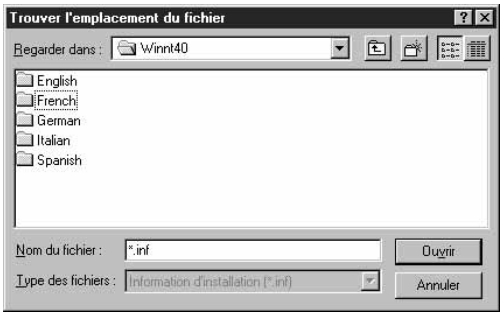
- La LBP-660 ne peut être connectée qu'à un port parallèle (LPT). Si vous sélectionnez un port série ou un port différent de celui auquel la LBP-660 est connectée, vous ne pourrez pas imprimer avec cette dernière.

   - La fenêtre de sélection du modèle d'imprimante s'affiche ensuite et présente une liste des fabricants d'imprimante et des modèles supportés en standard par Microsoft Windows NT.

2. Dans la mesure où la LBP-660 ne figure pas dans la liste, insérez le CD-ROM d'installation de Microsoft Windows Printing System pour Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 dans le lecteur de CD-ROM, puis cliquez sur le bouton Disquette fournie….

3. Lorsque la boîte de dialogue Installer à partir de la disquette apparaît, tapez le nom du lecteur de CD-ROM dans la zone de texte « Copier les fichiers constructeur à partir de », puis cliquez sur le bouton Parcourir….

4. Cliquez deux fois sur le dossier Winnt40 dans la boîte de dialogue Trouver l'emplacement du fichier.
   - Les dossiers de chaque langue s'affichent alors.



5. Cliquez deux fois sur le dossier correspondant à la langue utilisée par votre version de Microsoft Windows NT.
   - Lorsque le fichier Wpsc3nt s'affiche dans la boîte de dialogue Trouver l'emplacement du fichier, cliquez sur le bouton Ouvrir.

- Si le dossier correspondant à votre langue n'existe pas, sélectionnez le dossier English.

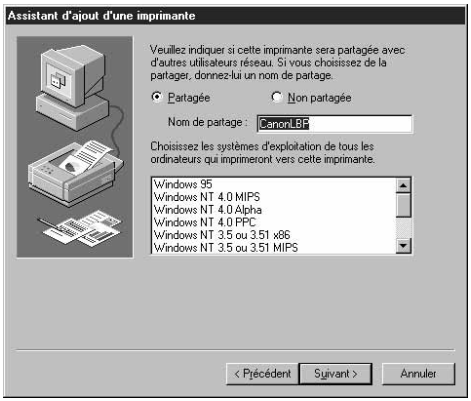
6. Cliquez sur OK dans la boîte de dialogue Installer à partir de.

7. Lorsque « Canon LBP-660 » s'affiche dans la liste des imprimantes de l'Assistant d'ajout d'une imprimante, cliquez sur le bouton Suivant >.
   - Une fenêtre permettant d'entrer un nom d'imprimante et contenant le nom « Canon LBP-660 » dans le champ Nom de l'imprimante s'affiche. Si vous souhaitez modifier le nom de l'imprimante, tapez un nouveau nom comme l'indiquent les messages affichés à l'écran.

8. Cliquez sur le bouton Suivant >.
   - La fenêtre de partage de l'imprimante s'affiche alors.

Configuration du partage de l'imprimante

Cette section explique comment spécifier si l'imprimante doit être partagée ou non sur un réseau. Vous pouvez également spécifier les paramètres de partage lorsque Microsoft Windows Printing System est installé. Pour plus d'informations, reportez-vous à la section « Partage de l'imprimante ».


Assistant d'ajout d'une imprimante
Veuillez indiquer si cette imprimante sera partagée avec d'autres utilisateurs réseau. Si vous choisissez de la partager, donnez-lui un nom de partage.
Partagée
Non partagée
Nom de partage :
CanonLBP
Choisissez les systèmes d'exploitation de tous les ordinateurs qui imprimeront vers cette imprimante.
Windows 95
Windows NT 4.0 MIPS
Windows NT 4.0 Alpha
Windows NT 4.0 PPC
Windows NT 3.5 ou 3.51 x86
Windows NT 3.5 ou 3.51 MIPS
< Précédent
Suivant >
Annuler

1. Pour partager la LBP-660 sur un réseau, sélectionner l'option Partagée.

2. Cliquez sur le bouton Suivant >.
   - Une fenêtre s'affiche et vous demande si vous souhaitez imprimer une page de test.

Configuration de l'impression d'une page de test

Lorsque vous avez terminé l'installation de Microsoft Windows Printing System, vous pouvez imprimer une page de test sur la LBP-660.

1. Pour cela, cliquez simplement sur le bouton Terminer. La page de test s'imprime automatiquement. Pour ignorer cette étape, sélectionnez Non puis cliquez sur le bouton Terminer.

Lorsque vous cliquez sur ce bouton, les fichiers nécessaires sont copiés sur votre disque dur. Pendant cette opération, une barre de progression apparaît dans une boîte de message.

Une fois la copie des fichiers terminée, l'icône de la Canon LBP-660 apparaît dans le dossier Imprimantes.
L'aspect de l'icône diffère selon que l'imprimante est partagée ou non.

Ensuite, le message « Initialisation… Veuillez patienter » s'affiche, et Microsoft Windows Printing System démarre la phase d'initialisation. Le groupe de programmes Microsoft Windows Printing System est ainsi créé et ajouté au menu Démarrer. La fenêtre Windows Printing System apparaît également sur le bureau, avec une icône de raccourci vers le groupe Microsoft Windows Printing System (voir page suivante).

Si vous souhaitez vous connecter à la LBP-660 et imprimer à partir d'un client Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 ou Microsoft Windows pour Workgroups connecté au réseau Microsoft Windows NT, cliquez sur le bouton Oui de la boîte de dialogue suivante.

Si vous ne souhaitez pas partager l'imprimante ou si tous les clients sont des ordinateurs Microsoft Windows NT, cliquez sur le bouton Non.


Installation de Microsoft Windows Printing System
Voulez-vous partager le répertoire WPS pour permettre aux clients Windows95/Windows3.1 d'imprimer ?
Oui
Non

Fin de l'installation

Lorsque l'installation de Microsoft Windows Printing System est terminée, un message de confirmation s'affiche. Cliquez sur OK pour terminer l'installation.

Si vous avez choisi d'imprimer une page de test pendant l'installation du pilote d'imprimante, son impression démarre maintenant. Si l'installation s'est déroulée correctement, la fenêtre d'état de la LBP-660 apparaît sur le bureau et la page de test s'imprime sur la LBP-660. Vérifiez la page de test et cliquez sur le bouton Oui dans la boîte de dialogue d'impression de la page de test, afin de la fermer.

Lorsque l'installation de Microsoft Windows Printing System est terminée, vous pouvez commencer à imprimer sur l'ordinateur Microsoft Windows NT sur lequel la LBP-660 a été installée comme imprimante locale. Toutefois, pour utiliser cet ordinateur comme serveur d'impression et imprimer à partir d'un poste client via le réseau, vous devez d'abord redémarrer Microsoft Windows NT.

Le groupe de programmes Windows Printing System créé lors de l'installation de Microsoft Windows Printing System contient les 6 icônes présentées ci-dessous.



Installation des polices pour la Canon LBP-660
Cet utilitaire permet d'installer, sous Microsoft Windows NT, les polices TrueType (22 polices Lucida TrueType), fournies sur la disquette n° 3 de Microsoft Windows 95/3.1. Pour installer les polices TrueType, cliquez deux fois sur l'icône Installation des polices pour la Canon LBP-660. Suivez ensuite les instructions des messages affichés à l'écran.

- Les polices TrueType installées ne seront pas supprimées, même si vous utilisez le programme de désinstallation de Microsoft Windows Printing System.

Aide Canon LBP-660
Cette icône permet d'accéder à l'aide de Microsoft Windows Printing System.

Lisezmoi Canon LBP-660
Il s'agit d'un fichier texte contenant des informations supplémentaires sur la version installée de Microsoft Windows Printing System. Lisez-le avant d'utiliser Microsoft Windows Printing System.

Fenêtre d'état Canon LBP-660
Cette icône permet d'ouvrir la fenêtre d'état de la Canon LBP-660.

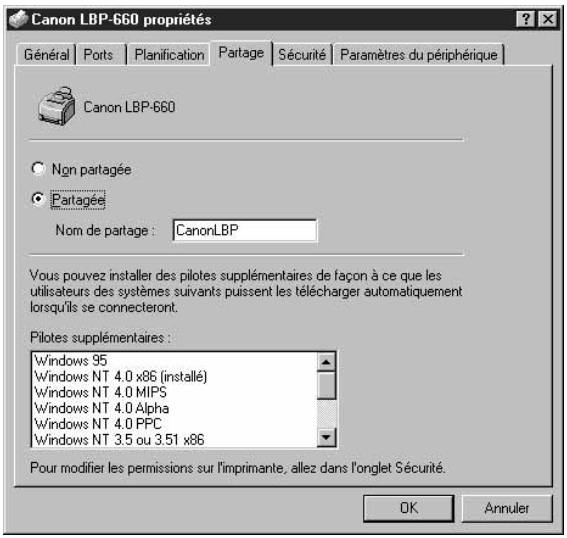
Dépanneur de la Canon LBP-660
Cet utilitaire permet de résoudre les problèmes pouvant se produire avec Microsoft Windows Printing System. Pour plus d'informations sur l'utilisation de cet utilitaire, reportez-vous au chapitre « Dépannage » du Manuel d'utilisation.

Désinstallation Canon LBP-660
Cet utilitaire permet de désinstaller Microsoft Windows Printing System. Pour plus d'informations sur l'utilisation de cet utilitaire, reportez-vous au chapitre « Dépannage » du Manuel d'utilisation.

Partage de l'imprimante

Lorsque l'installation de Microsoft Windows Printing System est terminée, utilisez la boîte de dialogue Canon LBP-660 propriétés pour définir la LBP-660 en tant qu'imprimante partagée.

1. Suivez la procédure ci-dessous pour ouvrir l'onglet Partage de la boîte de dialogue Canon LBP-660 propriétés.
   - Ouvrez le dossier Imprimantes, cliquez avec le bouton droit de la souris sur l'icône de la LBP-660 et sélectionnez Partager… dans le menu contextuel.



2. Pour partager la LBP-660, cliquez sur l'option Partagée.

- Lorsque vous sélectionnez cette option, le nom affiché dans la zone de texte Nom de partage correspond au huit premiers caractères du nom de l'imprimante spécifié à l'installation, sans les espaces. Vous pouvez le modifier en tapant un autre nom dans la zone de texte.
  Si certains des clients partageant l'imprimante sur le réseau fonctionnent sous Microsoft Windows 3.1 ou Microsoft Windows pour Workgroups, assurez-vous que le nom ne comporte pas plus de huit caractères.

- Si l'imprimante est définie comme partagée, ne sélectionnez pas de systèmes d'exploitation dans la liste Pilotes supplémentaires, en bas de la boîte de dialogue. Le pilote de la LBP-660 ne peut pas être installé sur des systèmes autres que Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 (x86).

3. Cliquez sur OK.
   - La LBP-660 est définie en tant qu'imprimante partagée et son icône est modifiée en conséquence dans le dossier Imprimantes.

Chapitre 3
Connexion à la LBP-660 utilisée comme imprimante réseau

Si vous avez spécifié la LBP-660 en tant qu'imprimante partagée sur l'ordinateur Microsoft Windows NT auquel elle est connectée, et que vous avez ensuite défini cet ordinateur comme serveur d'impression, l'imprimante peut alors être utilisée par les clients Microsoft Windows NT, mais également par les clients Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 et Microsoft Windows pour Workgroups connectés au réseau Microsoft Windows NT.



- Pour utiliser l'ordinateur Microsoft Windows NT auquel est connectée la LBP-660 comme serveur d'impression, vous devez d'abord démarrer le service Serveur sur cet ordinateur. Démarrez ce service avant de connecter l'imprimante réseau.
- Pour se connecter à un serveur d'impression Microsoft Windows NT à partir d'un ordinateur client et imprimer un document, le client doit disposer des privilèges d'accès lui permettant de se connecter au serveur et à l'imprimante partagée. Si vous ne connaissez pas vos privilèges, contactez votre administrateur de réseau.

Connexion depuis un poste client Microsoft Windows NT

Si le poste client utilisant la LBP-660 en tant qu'imprimante réseau fonctionne sous Microsoft Windows NT, il suffit d'ajouter l'imprimante pour que le pilote d'imprimante et le Moniteur de surveillance du réseau soient téléchargés et installés automatiquement à partir du serveur d'impression. Vous n'avez pas besoin des privilèges Administrateur pour ajouter l'imprimante. Normalement, n'importe qui peut effectuer cette opération.

Démarrage de l'Assistant d'ajout d'une imprimante

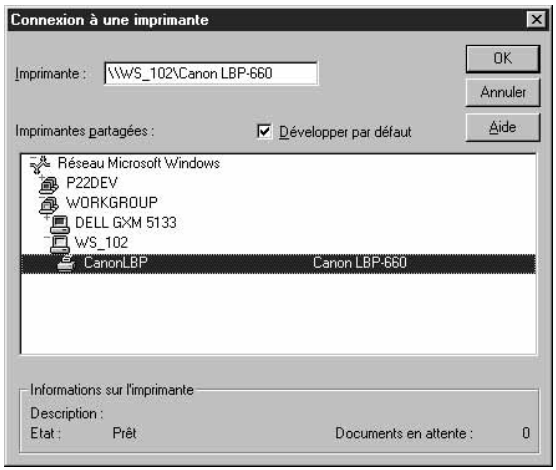
1. Mettez l'ordinateur client sous tension, démarrez Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 et connectez-vous.

2. Démarrez l'Assistant d'ajout d'une imprimante.
   - Pour plus d'informations sur le démarrage de l'Assistant d'ajout d'une imprimante, reportez-vous au chapitre 2, « Installation de Microsoft Windows Printing System ».

Sélection de l'imprimante réseau


Assistant d'ajout d'une imprimante
Cet assistant vous aide à installer votre imprimante ou à réaliser les connexions à l'imprimante. Cette imprimante peut être gérée par :
Cet ordinateur
Tous les paramètres seront gérés et configurés sur cet ordinateur.
Serveur d'imprimante réseau
Se connecter à une imprimante sur une autre machine. Tous les paramètres pour cette imprimante seront gérés par un serveur d'impression qui a été installé par un administrateur.
< Précédent
Suivant >
Annuler

1. Cliquez sur l'option Serveur d'imprimante réseau, puis sur le bouton Suivant >. La fenêtre Connexion à une imprimante s'affiche.



2. Cliquez deux fois sur le nom du serveur d'impression affiché dans le zone de liste Imprimantes partagées.
   - Cela permet d'afficher la liste des imprimantes partagées connectées au serveur d'impression.
3. Cliquez sur le nom d'imprimante partagée associé à la LBP-660 à laquelle vous souhaitez vous connecter.
   - Le chemin réseau de l'imprimante sélectionnée s'affiche dans la zone de texte Imprimante.

4. Cliquez sur OK.
   - Le pilote d'imprimante de la LBP-660 et le Moniteur de surveillance du réseau sont téléchargés à partir du serveur et installés sur le poste client.
   - Lorsque le logiciel a été correctement téléchargé, l'icône Canon LBP-660 s'affiche dans le dossier Imprimantes et le groupe de programmes Windows Printing System est copié dans le menu Démarrer. Un raccourci vers le Moniteur de surveillance du réseau (WpsC3Nsm.exe) est également créé sur le bureau.
5. Cliquez sur le bouton Terminer dans l'Assistant d'ajout d'une imprimante.

Connexion depuis un poste client utilisant Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 ou Microsoft Windows pour Workgroups

Pour se connecter à la LBP-660 depuis un poste client Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 ou Microsoft Windows pour Workgroups, via un serveur d'impression Microsoft Windows NT, les versions de Microsoft Windows Printing System pour la LBP-660 correspondant à ces systèmes d'exploitation doivent d'abord être installées sur le poste client. Pour plus d'informations sur l'installation de Microsoft Windows Printing System sur un poste client fonctionnant sous Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 ou Microsoft Windows pour Workgroups, reportez-vous au Manuel d'utilisation.

Chapitre 4
Utilisation de Microsoft Windows Printing System

L'utilisation du logiciel Microsoft Windows Printing System pour Microsoft Windows NT est pratiquement identique à celle du logiciel des autres versions de Microsoft Windows. Pour avoir une vue d'ensemble de Microsoft Windows Printing System, reportez-vous au chapitre 3, « Utilisation de Microsoft Windows Printing System », du Manuel d'utilisation.

Boîtes de dialogue de Microsoft Windows Printing System

Le logiciel Microsoft Windows Printing System pour Microsoft Windows NT comprend deux boîtes de dialogue principales : la boîte de dialogue Canon LBP-660 propriétés et la boîte Propriétés de Canon LBP-660 Document par défaut. Tous les utilisateurs peuvent ouvrir ces boîtes de dialogue, mais seuls ceux qui disposent des privilèges « Contrôle total » d'accès à l'imprimante, peuvent modifier les paramètres.

Propriétés de l'imprimante

Pour visualiser les propriétés de l'imprimante, sélectionnez Propriétés dans le menu Fichier du dossier Imprimantes, ou cliquez avec le bouton de la souris sur l'icône de la LBP-660 dans le dossier Imprimantes et cliquez sur Propriétés dans le menu contextuel.

La boîte de dialogue Canon LBP-660 propriétés comprend six onglets, décrits plus loin. Les paramètres de chaque onglet étant communs à toutes les imprimantes sous Microsoft Windows NT, les descriptions fournies dans ce chapitre proposent une vue générale des onglets, avec certains points à prendre en compte lorsque vous utilisez la LBP-660.

Pour obtenir une explication détaillée des différents paramètres, reportez-vous à la documentation de Microsoft Windows NT. Vous pouvez également cliquer sur le point d'interrogation (?) situé dans la partie supérieure droite de la boîte de dialogue, puis sur un paramètre particulier afin d'obtenir une aide contextuelle.



■ Onglet Général

Les paramètres de cet onglet s'appliquent à tout le pilote d'imprimante.

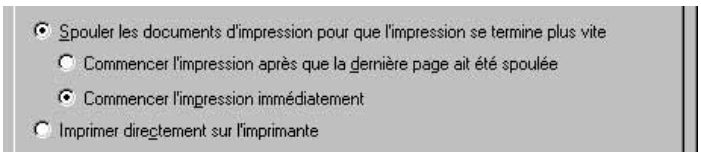
- La LBP-660 ne prend pas en charge les pages de séparation. Même si vous cliquez sur l'option Page de séparation pour en définir une, aucune page ne sera imprimée.
- Ne modifiez pas les paramètres par défaut de la boîte de dialogue Processeur d'impression qui apparaît lorsque vous cliquez sur le bouton Processeur d'impression…. Si vous modifiez le paramètre Type de données par défaut, l'impression à partir de postes client ne fonctionnant pas sous Microsoft Windows NT ne sera pas possible.
- Si vous souhaitez imprimer une page de test, cliquez sur le bouton Imprimer une page de test de cet onglet. Dans le logiciel Microsoft Windows Printing System pour Microsoft Windows NT, la fenêtre d'état de la LBP-660 ne comprend pas de bouton de test de l'imprimante.

■ Onglet Ports

Utilisez cet onglet pour sélectionner le port auquel la LBP-660 est connectée.
Si la LBP-660 est déjà connectée et que vous êtes en train de l'utiliser, il n'est pas nécessaire de modifier ce paramètre.

■ Onglet Planification

- Utilisez cet onglet pour planifier une impression, pour définir des priorités d'impression et pour spécifier la méthode de mise en file d'attente des données d'impression.
- Pour la LBP-660, sélectionnez toujours l'option « Spouler les documents d'impression pour que l'impression se termine au plus vite ». Si vous sélectionnez l'option « Imprimer directement sur l'imprimante », vous ne pourrez pas imprimer à partir des applications.


Spouler les documents d'impression pour que l'impression se termine plus vite
Commencer l'impression après que la dernière page ait été spoulée
Commencer l'impression immédiatement
Imprimer directement sur l'imprimante

- Sélectionnez l'option « Commencer l'impression après que la dernière page ait été spoulée » ou « Commencer l'impression immédiatement », si nécessaire. Notez toutefois que cette option affecte la barre de progression affichée dans la fenêtre d'état. Pour plus d'informations, reportez-vous à la section « Fenêtre d'état de la LBP-660 ».

■ Onglet Partage

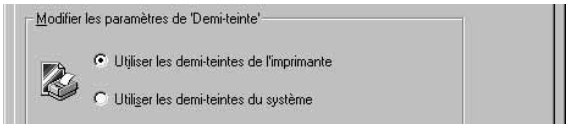
Cet onglet permet de définir si la LBP-660 est partagée ou non. Pour plus d'informations, reportez-vous au chapitre 2, « Installation de Microsoft Windows Printing System ».

■ Onglet Sécurité

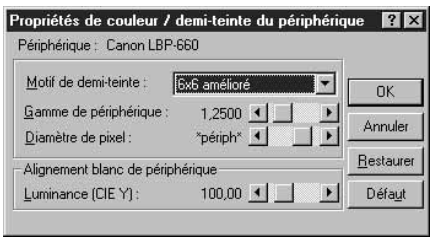
Cet onglet permet de définir les niveaux de sécurité de la LBP-660.
Pour plus d'informations sur les niveaux de sécurité de l'imprimante, reportez-vous à la documentation Microsoft Windows NT.

■ Onglet Paramètres du périphérique

Cet onglet permet de spécifier la manière dont les demi-teintes sont gérées lors de l'impression de graphiques.
La LBP-660 peut imprimer en utilisant ses propres demi-teintes ou celles du système Microsoft Windows NT. Pour sélectionner les demi-teintes utilisées, cliquez sur l'option « Demi-teinte », puis utilisez les options sous « Modifier les paramètres de 'Demi-teinte' » pour sélectionner les demi-teintes à utiliser.



Si vous sélectionnez « Utiliser les demi-teintes du système », vous pouvez utiliser la boîte de dialogue Propriétés de couleur / demi-teinte du périphérique pour modifier les paramètres de demi-teinte du système. Pour plus d'informations sur la modification des demi-teintes du système, reportez-vous à l'aide ou à la documentation de Microsoft Windows NT.

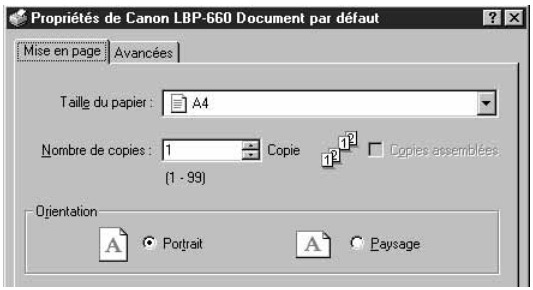


- Le fonctionnement du paramètre Réglage des couleurs en demi-teinte, dans les propriétés du document, varie selon le mode de gestion des demi-teintes sélectionné ici.

Propriétés de Canon LBP-660 Document par défaut

Dans la boîte de dialogue Propriétés de Canon LBP-660 Document par défaut, vous pouvez spécifier les options d'impression par défaut, disponibles lorsque vous imprimez avec la LBP-660. Pour visualiser les valeurs par défaut du document, sélectionnez « Valeurs par défaut du document… » dans le menu Fichier du dossier Imprimantes, ou cliquez avec le bouton droit de la souris sur l'icône de la LBP-660 dans le dossier Imprimantes et sélectionnez « Valeurs par défaut du document… » dans le menu contextuel.

La boîte de dialogue Propriétés de Canon LBP-660 Document par défaut comprend l'onglet Mise en page, fréquemment utilisé, et l'onglet Avancées permettant de définir des options plus détaillées. Pour plus d'informations sur les paramètres, cliquez sur le point d'interrogation (?) dans la partie supérieure droite de la boîte de dialogue, puis cliquez sur un paramètre particulier pour obtenir l'aide contextuelle.



- Vous pouvez également ouvrir une boîte de dialogue équivalente et spécifier les paramètres en choisissant la commande « Imprimer » ou « Mise en page » d'une application. Notez toutefois que les paramètres spécifiés à partir d'une application ne s'appliquent qu'au document créé dans cette application et ne sont pas pris en compte comme paramètres par défaut.

■ Onglet Mise en page

Cet onglet permet de définir les paramètres tels que la taille du papier, l'orientation et le nombre de copies.

Taile du papier
Sélectionnez la taille du papier dans la zone de liste déroulante. Si vous sélectionnez Util. comme taille de papier, vous devez le spécifier dans l'onglet Avancées.

Nombre de copies
Entrez le nombre de copies à imprimer dans la zone de texte Nombre de copies.

Copies assemblées
Si vous avez programmé plusieurs copies dans la zone de texte Nombre de copies, cliquez sur la case à cocher Copies assemblées pour imprimer des jeux de copies de votre document.

Orientation
Utilisez l'option Portrait ou Paysage pour sélectionner l'orientation des pages imprimées.

■ Onglet Avancées

Les paramètres de l'onglet Avancées sont regroupés sous les groupes d'options Sortie/Papier, Graphique et Document Options. Les options de chaque groupe sont présentées sous le nom de ce dernier, de façon hiérarchique. Le paramètre courant de chaque option apparaît en bleu, à droite de l'option. Si les options ne sont pas affichées, cliquez sur le signe plus (+), à gauche du nom de groupe.



Si vous cliquez sur le nom de l'option à modifier, les paramètres disponibles pour celle-ci (ou les boutons permettant d'ouvrir d'autres boîtes de dialogue) apparaissent dans la partie inférieure de la boîte de dialogue. Sélectionnez ou saisissez le nouveau paramètre. Il apparaît alors en rouge à droite de l'option. Cet affichage rouge indique que le nouveau paramètre n'a pas encore été enregistré comme valeur par défaut du document. Les nouveaux paramètres ne sont pas enregistrés comme valeurs par défaut du document tant que vous n'avez pas cliqué sur OK, en bas de la boîte de dialogue.

Paramètres du groupe Sortie/Papier
Ce groupe comprend 3 options : Taille du papier, Orientation et Nombre de copies. Ces options sont identiques à celles de l'onglet Mise en page décrit précédemment. Les paramètres modifiés ici le sont également dans l'onglet Mise en page.

Paramètres du groupe Graphique
Ce groupe comprend 2 options : Résolution et Mise à l'échelle.

- Résolution
  Utilisez les options sous « Modifier les paramètres de 'Résolution' » pour sélectionner la résolution d'impression de la LBP-660.
- Mise à l'échelle
  Entrez le taux d'agrandissement ou de réduction dans la zone de texte « Modifier les paramètres de 'Mise à l'échelle' ». Vous pouvez définir une valeur comprise entre 10 et 200 %, par pas de 1 %.

Paramètres du groupe Document Options
Ce groupe comprend 5 options : Réglage des couleurs en demi-teinte, Lissage automatique de l'image, Economiseur d'encre, Densité d'encre et Taille de papier personnalisée.

- Réglage des couleurs en demi-teinte
  Cliquez sur le bouton Réglage des couleurs en demi-teinte pour ouvrir la boîte de dialogue correspondante et régler les demi-teintes de l'imprimante.



- La boîte de dialogue Réglage des couleurs en demi-teinte affichée ici peut différer selon les paramètres que vous avez définis dans l'onglet Paramètres du périphérique des propriétés de l'imprimante.
  - Si l'option « Utiliser les demi-teintes de l'imprimante » est sélectionnée, la boîte de dialogue d'origine de la LBP-660 s'affiche comme si vous aviez sélectionné l'onglet Graphiques dans la boîte de dialogue Propriétés de Microsoft Windows 95.
    Dans cette boîte de dialogue, vous pouvez sélectionner le mode de représentation des demi-teintes (Gris lisses, Motif 1 ou Motif 2), et régler la luminosité et le contraste. Pour plus d'informations, reportez-vous à la section « Impression des graphiques en niveaux de gris » du Manuel d'utilisation.
  - Si l'option « Utiliser les demi-teintes du système » est sélectionnée, une représentation graphique des niveaux de gris et la boîte de dialogue système Réglage des couleurs en demi-teinte s'affichent. Pour plus d'informations sur l'utilisation de cette boîte de dialogue, utilisez l'aide ou reportez-vous à la documentation de Microsoft Windows NT.

- Lissage automatique de l'image
  Utilisez cette option pour activer ou désactiver la fonction de lissage de la LBP-660.
- Economiseur d'encre
  Utilisez cette option pour activer ou désactiver la fonction d'économie d'encre.
- Densité d'encre
  Utilisez cette option pour régler la quantité d'encre utilisée pendant l'impression selon l'un des 5 niveaux proposés. Le paramètre Moyenne correspond à la densité standard.
- Taille de papier personnalisée
  Utilisez cette option pour définir la taille de papier si vous avez choisi Util. dans l'onglet Mise en page. Cliquez sur le bouton Taille de papier personnalisée pour afficher la boîte de dialogue correspondante et définir la hauteur et la largeur du papier personnalisé.

Fenêtre d'état de la LBP-660 sous Microsoft Windows NT

Si la LBP-660 est connectée, en tant qu'imprimante locale, à un ordinateur Microsoft Windows NT, la fenêtre d'état correspondante s'affiche automatiquement lors d'une impression ou lorsque l'intervention de l'utilisateur est nécessaire, en cas d'erreur, par exemple.

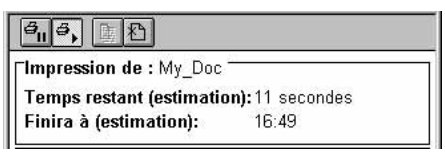
Vous pouvez également ouvrir cette fenêtre à tout moment en cliquant deux fois sur l'icône Fenêtre d'état Canon LBP-660 dans le groupe Windows Printing System. Vous pouvez alors l'utiliser pour surveiller la progression de vos tâches d'impression, suspendre et reprendre l'impression, etc.



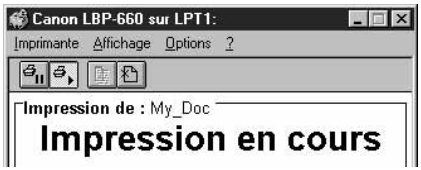
Cette fenêtre d'état est quasiment identique à celle disponible sous Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 et Microsoft Windows pour Workgroups. Pour plus d'informations sur l'utilisation de la fenêtre d'état, reportez-vous au Manuel d'utilisation.

Cette description ne couvre que les fonctions et opérations pour lesquelles la fenêtre d'état de la LBP-660 pour Microsoft Windows NT diffère de celle des autres versions de Microsoft Windows.

- Si vous avez sélectionné l'option « Commencer l'impression après que la dernière page ait été spoulée », dans l'onglet Planification de la boîte de dialogue des propriétés de l'imprimante, l'estimation du temps restant et de l'heure de fin de l'impression sont affichées dans la zone de messages, pendant l'impression du document, et la barre de progression indique le nombre de pages imprimées et le nombre total de celles à imprimer.



- Si vous avez sélectionné « Commencer l'impression immédiatement », seul le message « Impression en cours » s'affiche dans la zone de messages, et la barre de progression n'indique que le nombre de pages imprimées.



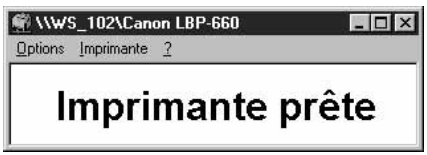
- La barre d'outils ne comporte pas de bouton de test de l'imprimante.
  Pour imprimer une page de test, utilisez le bouton Imprimer une page de test dans l'onglet Général, de la boîte de dialogue des propriétés de l'imprimante.
- Le menu Options ne contient aucune option d'impression. Pour modifier la densité d'encre, ouvrez la boîte de dialogue Valeurs par défaut du document et utilisez l'option Densité d'encre de l'onglet Avancées.
- Dans le menu Options, la commande Utilisation du client vous permet de spécifier si un utilisateur peut suspendre, reprendre, forcer ou annuler une impression à partir du Moniteur de surveillance du réseau sur un poste client Microsoft Windows NT.
  La présence ou l'absence de la coche à gauche de la commande Utilisation du client active ou désactive les opérations énumérées ci-dessus, dans le Moniteur de surveillance du réseau.

Moniteur de surveillance du réseau de la LBP-660

Le Moniteur de surveillance du réseau de la LBP-660 est une fonction permettant à un poste client Microsoft Windows NT connecté à l'imprimante réseau de vérifier l'état de la LBP-660, de suspendre, reprendre, forcer ou annuler l'impression de la même façon qu'avec la fenêtre d'état du bureau. Elle n'est disponible que pour les clients Microsoft Windows NT et ne peut pas être utilisée à partir de Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 ou Microsoft Windows pour Workgroups.

Le Moniteur de surveillance du réseau de la LBP-660 n'affiche que l'état de l'imprimante et ne possède pas d'animations graphiques ni de barre de progression comme la fenêtre d'état de la LBP-660.

Lorsque vous connectez un poste client Microsoft Windows NT à l'imprimante réseau, le Moniteur de surveillance du réseau est installé automatiquement à partir du serveur d'impression.

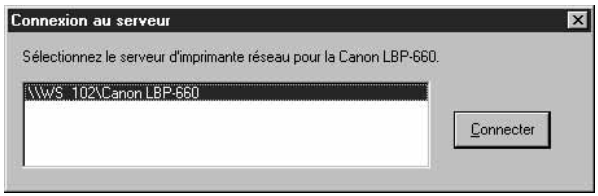


Utilisation du Moniteur de surveillance du réseau de la LBP-660

■ Démarrage du Moniteur de surveillance du réseau

Procédez comme suit pour démarrer à tout moment le Moniteur de surveillance du réseau de la LBP-660 :

1. A partir du poste client, cliquez deux fois sur l'icône Moniteur de surveillance du réseau de la Canon LBP-660 dans le groupe de programmes Windows Printing System, ou, à partir du bureau, cliquez deux fois sur l'icône de raccourci vers le Moniteur de surveillance du réseau de la Canon LBP-660.
2. Lorsque le message vous demandant si vous souhaitez vous connecter à l'imprimante réseau s'affiche, cliquez sur le bouton Oui.
   - La boîte de dialogue permettant de sélectionner l'imprimante réseau à connecter s'affiche.



3. Sélectionnez le nom de l'imprimante à laquelle vous souhaitez vous connecter dans la zone de liste, puis cliquez sur le bouton Connecter.
   - Lorsque l'opération est terminée, l'état de l'imprimante choisie apparaît dans une zone de texte.

■ Options d'état

La barre de menus du Moniteur de surveillance du réseau de la LBP-660 comprend 3 menus : Options, Imprimante et ? (Aide).



Menu Options
Utilisez ce menu pour spécifier les options relatives au fonctionnement du Moniteur de surveillance du réseau.

- Connecter au serveur
  Sélectionnez cette option si votre connexion avec l'imprimante réseau a été interrompue pour une raison quelconque ou si vous souhaitez vous connecter à une autre imprimante réseau (LBP-660 uniquement). La boîte de dialogue Connexion au serveur, qui s'affiche également au démarrage du Moniteur de surveillance du réseau, apparaît. Sélectionnez le nom d'imprimante souhaitée, puis cliquez sur le bouton Connecter.
- Sons
  Utilisez cette option pour activer les messages sonores lorsqu'une erreur se produit avec l'imprimante.

- Le Moniteur de surveillance du réseau ne peut émettre que des messages sonores en cas d'erreur. Si le poste client n'est pas équipé d'une carte son, cette option est estompée et ne peut pas être sélectionnée.

- Taille par défaut
  Si vous avez modifié le format d'affichage du Moniteur de surveillance du réseau, cette option vous permet de rétablir sa taille d'origine.
- Masquer menu
  Cette option permet de masquer les menus du Moniteur de surveillance du réseau. Pour afficher à nouveau la barre de menus, appuyer sur la touche **Echap** lorsque la fenêtre du Moniteur de surveillance du réseau est active, ou cliquez deux fois dans la zone d'affichage des messages.
- Toujours visible
  Si vous sélectionnez cette option et qu'elle apparaît avec une coche à gauche, le Moniteur de surveillance du réseau sera toujours visible au premier plan sur le bureau.

Menu Imprimante
Utilisez ce menu pour contrôler le fonctionnement de l'imprimante. Notez toutefois que si l'option Utilisation du client n'est pas cochée dans le menu Options de la fenêtre d'état sur le serveur d'impression, le menu Imprimante est estompé et le fonctionnement de l'imprimante ne peut pas être contrôlé à partir d'un poste client.

Pour plus d'informations sur le menu Imprimante, reportez-vous à la section « Utilisation du menu Imprimante » du Manuel d'utilisation.

- Les opérations du menu d'impression affectent toujours les tâches d'impression provenant des autres postes client. Lorsque des tâches d'impression provenant de plusieurs postes client sont mises en attente dans la file d'impression du serveur, l'annulation inconsidérée d'une impression peut entraîner la perte des tâches d'impression provenant d'autres postes client. Gardez cela à l'esprit lorsque vous annulez une impression.

Menu ? (Aide)
Ce menu ouvre une boîte de dialogue fournissant des informations sur la version du Moniteur de surveillance du réseau.

Chapitre 5
Dépannage

Ce chapitre explique comment résoudre les problèmes pouvant se produire pendant l'installation de Microsoft Windows Printing System pour Microsoft Windows NT et pendant l'utilisation de la LBP-660 comme imprimante réseau sur un réseau Microsoft Windows NT.

Pour obtenir des instructions sur la résolution des problèmes liés à l'imprimante (bourrages papier, etc.), à la qualité d'impression, ainsi que les problèmes liés à Microsoft Windows Printing System et à ses messages d'erreur, reportez-vous au chapitre 6, « Dépannage », du Manuel d'utilisation de la LBP-660.

Si vous ne parvenez pas à déterminer la cause d'un problème, lancez le Dépanneur dans le groupe Windows Printing System. Cet utilitaire peut résoudre les problèmes liés aux fichiers installés ou aux paramètres.

Si vous ne parvenez toujours pas à résoudre le problème, désinstallez le logiciel Microsoft Windows Printing System sur le serveur d'impression, puis réinstallez-le. Pour désinstaller Microsoft Windows Printing System, lancez l'utilitaire Désinstallation Canon LBP-660 dans le groupe Windows Printing System.



- Redémarrez toujours Microsoft Windows NT après avoir désinstallé un logiciel. Dans le cas contraire, vous ne pourrez pas réinstaller le logiciel préalablement désinstallé.

Problèmes pouvant survenir lors de l'installation de Microsoft Windows Printing System

Problèmes lors d'une installation locale

Problème	Cause	Solution
L'option Cet ordinateur ne peut pas être sélectionnée dans l'Assistant d'ajout d'une imprimante.	L'utilisateur installant le logiciel ne dispose pas des privilèges Administrateur ou Utilisateur avec pouvoir.	Les privilèges Administrateur sont nécessaires pour installer Microsoft Windows Printing System. Demandez à une personne disposant de ces privilèges d'effectuer l'installation.
Lorsque la copie des fichiers est terminée, un message d'erreur s'affiche et indique que des privilèges Administrateur sont nécessaires.	Un utilisateur ayant les privilèges Utilisateur avec pouvoir a essayé d'installer le logiciel.	Demandez à une personne disposant des privilèges Administrateur d'effectuer à nouveau l'installation.
Un message d'erreur s'affiche et indique si une installation de remplacement est nécessaire.	Vous effectuez une installation locale sur un ordinateur sur lequel le pilote d'imprimante de la LBP-660 a été installé sur le réseau.	Effectuez l'installation locale et sélectionnez l'option Remplacer le pilote existant dans la boîte de dialogue de sélection de remplacement, au niveau de la boîte de dialogue de l'Assistant d'ajout d'une imprimante.

Problèmes lors de l'installation sur le réseau

Problème	Cause	Solution
Le nom de l'imprimante partagée ou du serveur d'impression à connecter n'apparaît pas dans la liste Imprimantes partagées.	• Le serveur d'impression n'a pas démarré. • L'imprimante n'est pas configurée pour le partage.	• Démarrez le serveur d'impression. • Configurez l'imprimante pour le partage dans la boîte de dialogue des propriétés de l'imprimante.
	• Vous ne disposez pas des privilèges nécessaires pour vous connecter à l'imprimante ou au serveur d'impression.	• Demandez à l'administrateur de réseau de modifier vos privilèges utilisateur.

Problèmes pendant l'impression sur le réseau

Problème	Cause	Solution
La connexion au serveur d'impression ou à l'imprimante partagée à partir du Moniteur de surveillance du réseau est impossible.	• Le serveur d'impression n'a pas démarré. • L'imprimante n'est pas configurée pour le partage.	• Démarrez le serveur d'impression. • Configurez l'imprimante pour le partage dans la boîte de dialogue des propriétés de l'imprimante.
	• Vous ne disposez pas des privilèges nécessaires pour vous connecter à l'imprimante ou au serveur d'impression.	• Demandez à l'administrateur de réseau de modifier vos privilèges utilisateur.
Le menu Imprimante du Moniteur de surveillance du réseau n'est pas accessible.	L'option Utilisation du client n'est pas cochée dans le menu Options de la fenêtre d'état du serveur d'impression.	Sélectionnez l'option Utilisation du client dans le menu Options.
L'impression sur un serveur d'impression Microsoft Windows 95/3.1 ou Microsoft Windows pour Workgroups est impossible à partir d'un poste client sous Microsoft Windows NT.	Le logiciel Microsoft Windows Printing System pour Microsoft Windows NT ne prend pas en charge les serveurs d'impression fonctionnant sous Microsoft Windows 95/3.1 ou Microsoft Windows pour Workgroups.	Utilisez un serveur d'impression fonctionnant sous Microsoft Windows NT.
L'impression à partir d'un poste client Microsoft Windows 95/3.1 ou Microsoft Windows pour Workgroups est impossible.	• Le répertoire WPS n'est pas partagé sur le serveur d'impression. • Le type de données par défaut du serveur d'impression n'est pas défini sur WPS.	• Définissez le partage du répertoire WPS sur le serveur d'impression. • Cliquez sur le bouton Processeur d'impression dans l'onglet Général de la boîte de dialogue des propriétés de l'imprimante et sélectionnez WPS comme type de données par défaut.

Annexe

Comparaison avec les versions de Microsoft Windows Printing System disponibles pour les autres versions de Microsoft Windows

Certaines fonctions de Microsoft Windows Printing System pour Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 diffèrent de celles des versions pour Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 et Microsoft Windows pour Workgroups.

Notez les points suivants lors de la lecture du Manuel d'utilisation de la LBP-660.

Lors de l'impression locale ou en réseau sous Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 et de l'impression en réseau sous Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 ou Microsoft Windows pour Workgroups

- L'émulation PCL ne pouvant pas être utilisée, vous ne pouvez pas imprimer à partir de la ligne de commandes Microsoft Windows NT ou MS-DOS (sous Microsoft Windows 95).

Lors de l'impression locale ou en réseau sous Microsoft Windows NT 4.0

- Vous ne pouvez pas utiliser la fonction de fond de page.
- Vous ne pouvez pas imprimer une page de test à partir de la fenêtre d'état de la LBP-660. Utilisez le bouton Imprimer une page de test dans l'onglet Général de la boîte de dialogue des propriétés de l'imprimante.
- La Fenêtre d'état de la LBP-660 ne comprend pas de commande Options d'impression dans le menu Options.
  Réglez la densité d'encre avec l'option Document Options de l'onglet Avancées de la boîte de dialogue Propriétés de Canon LBP-660 Document par défaut.

Canon

DEUTSCH

LBP-660 LASER-DRUCKER

Leitfaden zum Microsoft® Windows® Printing System für Microsoft® Windows NT®

WICHTIGER HINWEIS:
Bitte lesen Sie dieses Benutzerhandbuch sorgfältig, bevor Sie den Drucker in Betrieb nehmen. Bewahren Sie das Benutzerhandbuch zu Referenzzwecken auf.

Copyright

Copyright © 1998 Canon Inc. Alle Rechte vorbehalten
Copyright © 1996 Microsoft Corporation. Alle Rechte vorbehalten

Hinweis

Mit Ausnahme der in diesem Handbuch aufgeführten Garantien übernimmt Canon Inc. keinerlei Haftung, weder Sachmängelhaftung noch gesetzliche Gewährleistung, einschließlich, ohne jegliche Einschränkungen, Gewähr für Marktgängigkeit und Eignung für einen bestimmten Zweck oder Gebrauch oder gegen Verletzung bestehender Patentrechte. Canon kann unter keinen Umständen für direkte Schäden, in ursächlichem Zusammenhang stehende Schäden oder Folgeschäden jeglicher Art oder für Verluste oder Kosten, die durch Gebrauch eines Produkts, fehlerhaft oder nicht, entstanden sind, haftbar gemacht werden.
Dieses Dokument enthält firmeneigene Informationen, die urheberrechtlich geschützt sind. Alle Rechte sind vorbehalten. Dieses Dokument darf nicht (auch nicht auszugsweise) ohne vorherige schriftliche Genehmigung durch Canon Inc. fotokopiert, vervielfältigt oder in eine andere Sprache übersetzt werden.
Die Verwendung dieses Dokumentes unterliegt der Lizenzvereinbarung (Microsoft® Windows® Printing System), die im Lieferumfang des Druckers enthalten ist.
Der Inhalt dieses Dokumentes kann ohne vorherige Ankündigung geändert werden.

Warenzeichen

LBP, Canon und das Canon-Logo sind Warenzeichen von Canon Inc.
PCL ist ein Warenzeichen der Hewlett-Packard Company.
IBM ist ein Warenzeichen der International Business Machines Corporation.
Microsoft, Windows, Windows NT, das Windows-Logo und MS-DOS sind entweder eingetragene Warenzeichen oder Warenzeichen der Microsoft Corporation in den Vereinigten Staaten und/oder in anderen Ländern.
NetWare® ist ein eingetragenes Warenzeichen und Novell ist ein Warenzeichen von Novell, Inc.
TrueType ist ein Warenzeichen der Apple Computer, Inc.
Lucida ist ein Warenzeichen von Bigelow & Homes.
Weitere Marken- und Produktnamen sind Warenzeichen oder eingetragene Warenzeichen der jeweiligen Gesellschaften.
In diesem Leitfaden wird Microsoft®, Microsoft® Windows® und Microsoft® Windows NT® als Microsoft, Microsoft Windows bzw. Microsoft Windows NT bezeichnet.

Vereinbarungen

Diesem Buch liegen die folgenden Vereinbarungen zugrunde:



Hinweise enthalten Hilfestellungen und Ratschläge zur Optimierung der Druckerperformanz.



Bitte beachten Sie, daß die vorgeschlagenen Anweisungen oder Übungen durchgeführt werden müssen, da sonst Beschädigungen an der Hardware oder Software auftreten können.

Kapitel 1
Einführung

Über diesen Leitfaden

In diesem Leitfaden zum Microsoft® Windows® Printing System (im Folgenden als Microsoft Windows Printing System bezeichnet) für Microsoft® Windows NT® (im Folgenden als Microsoft Windows NT bezeichnet) werden die nötigen Schritte zur Installation und Inbetriebnahme des Microsoft Windows Printing System für Microsoft Windows NT auf einem Computer unter Microsoft Windows NT, Version 4.0 (für Server oder Arbeitsstationen), der mit einem Canon LBP-660 Laserdrucker verbunden ist, beschrieben.

Dieses Buch enthält folgende Kapitel:

Kapitel 1 Einführung 1

In diesem Kapitel wird beschrieben, wie dieses Benutzerhandbuch zu verwenden ist, und welche Systemanforderungen bei der Installation des Microsoft Windows Printing System auf einem PC, der unter Microsoft Windows NT ausgeführt wird, bestehen.

Kapitel 2 Installation des Microsoft Windows Printing Systems 3

In diesem Kapitel wird die Installation des Microsoft Windows Printing System für Microsoft Windows NT beschrieben, wenn der LBP-660 als lokaler Drucker verwendet wird, und wie ein LBP-660 in einem Microsoft Windows NT-Netzwerk freigegeben werden kann.

Kapitel 3 Herstellen der Verbindung zum LBP-660 als Netzwerkdrucker 10

In diesem Kapitel wird beschrieben, wie der LBP-660 von anderen Computern aus verwendet werden kann, die unter Microsoft Windows NT oder Microsoft® Windows® (im Folgenden als Microsoft Windows) 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 oder Microsoft Windows für Workgroups ausgeführt werden.

Kapitel 4 Verwendung des Microsoft Windows Printing Systems 13

In diesem Kapitel wird die Verwendung des Netzwerkmonitors, des LBP-660 Statusfensters und der **Eigenschaften**-Dialogfelder des Microsoft Windows Printing System für Microsoft Windows NT beschrieben.

Kapitel 5 Fehlerbehebung 23

In diesem Kapitel wird beschrieben, wie Probleme, die während der Installation des Microsoft Windows Printing Systems und bei der Verwendung des Microsoft Windows Printing Systems in einem Microsoft Windows NT-Netzwerk auftreten, behandelt werden können.

Anhang 26

In diesem Abschnitt des Anhangs findet sich eine Liste der Beschreibungen im Benutzerhandbuch des LBP-660, bei denen sich das Microsoft Windows Printing System für Microsoft Windows NT vom Microsoft Windows Printing System für Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 und Microsoft Windows für Workgroups unterscheidet.

Vor der Installation dieser Software

Überprüfen Sie vor der Installation des Microsoft Windows Printing System auf einem Computer, der unter Microsoft Windows NT ausgeführt wird, daß der Computer den nachstehenden Hardware- und Softwarevoraussetzungen genügt.

- IBM-PC oder kompatibler Computer mit einem Pentium-Prozessor mit 90 MHz oder schneller, der unter Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 (für Server oder Arbeitsstationen) ausgeführt wird.



- Das Microsoft Windows Printing System für den LBP-660, wie in diesem Handbuch beschrieben, wird unter Microsoft Windows NT, Version 4.0 für PC/AT-kompatible Computer ausgeführt. Das Microsoft Windows Printing System für den LBP-660 kann nicht unter Microsoft Windows NT, Version 3.51 oder früher oder unter Microsoft Windows NT für einen RISC-basierten Prozessor ausgeführt werden.
- Wenn Sie in einem Novell NetWare®-Netzwerk arbeiten, können Sie diese Software nicht auf einem NetWare®-Server installieren. Sie können diese Software nicht verwenden, um von Novell Netware®-Clients für Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 oder Microsoft Windows für Workgroups aus zu drucken.

- Mindestens 24 MB RAM
- Mindestens 10 MB freier Festplattenspeicher
- CD-ROM-Laufwerk
- Paralleler Druckeranschluß (Centronics-Standard) (wenn der LBP als lokaler Drucker angeschlossen ist)
- Netzwerkadapter (wenn der LBP in einem Netz freigegeben ist)

Das Microsoft Windows Printing System kann möglicherweise auf Computern installiert werden, die den oben angegebenen Bedingungen nicht genügen; Canon übernimmt in diesem Fall keine Garantie für das einwandfreie Funktionieren der Software. Zur Optimierung der Rechnerumgebung und zur bestmöglichen Auslastung des LBP-660 wird die folgende Hardware und Software empfohlen:

- Pentium-Prozessor mit 166 MHz oder schneller
- Mindestens 48 MB RAM
- ECP-Druckeranschluß
- Soundkarte (erforderlich für die Verwendung von gesprochenen Mitteilungen des Microsoft Windows Printing Systems)

Um den LBP-660 im Netzwerk freizugeben, muß eines der folgenden Netzwerkprotokolle installiert sein:

- NetBEUI
- TCP/IP
- NWLink IPX/SPX



- Zur Installation des Microsoft Windows Printing Systems für Microsoft Windows NT müssen Sie über Administratorrechte verfügen. Die Installation sollte von einem Netzwerkadministrator oder einem Druck-Manager mit Administratorrechten durchgeführt werden.

Kapitel 2
Installation des Microsoft Windows Printing Systems

Verwenden Sie zur Installation des Microsoft Windows Printing System für Microsoft Windows NT die Installationsdiskette **Microsoft Windows Printing System für Microsoft Windows NT 4.0**.

Installation des Microsoft Windows Printing Systems für lokale Drucker

In diesem Kapitel wird die Installation des Microsoft Windows Printing Systems beschrieben, wenn der LBP-660 als lokaler Drucker verwendet wird. Eine Beschreibung des Anschlusses des LBP-660 als Netzwerkdrucker finden Sie in ”Kapitel 3 Herstellen der Verbindung zum LBP-660 als Netzwerkdrucker”.

Führen Sie den Assistenten für die Druckerinstallation aus

Verwenden Sie zur Installation des Microsoft Windows Printing Systems unter Microsoft Windows NT den **Assistenten für die Druckerinstallation** von Microsoft Windows NT 4.0. Führen Sie die Anweisungen durch, um die Software zu installieren.

1. Schalten Sie den Computer ein, an den der LBP-660 angeschlossen ist, und führen Sie Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 aus.

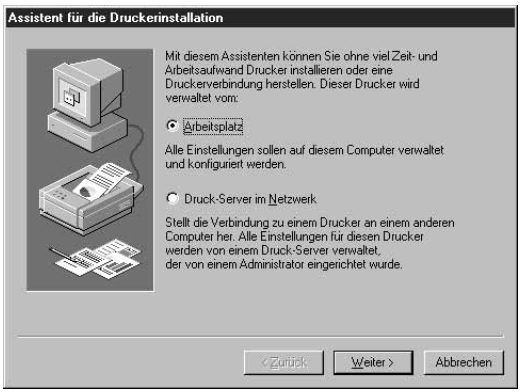
2. Melden Sie sich als Administrator an.

3. Verwenden Sie eine der folgenden Methoden, um den Assistenten für Druckerinstallation zu starten:

   a. Klicken Sie auf die Schaltfläche **Start** auf der Windows-Taskleiste, und bewegen Sie den Mauszeiger auf den Befehl **Einstellungen** im Startmenü. Klicken Sie im angezeigten Untermenü auf den Befehl **Drucker**, um den Ordner **Drucker** zu öffnen, und doppelklicken Sie anschließend auf das Symbol **Neuer Drucker** im Ordner **Drucker**.

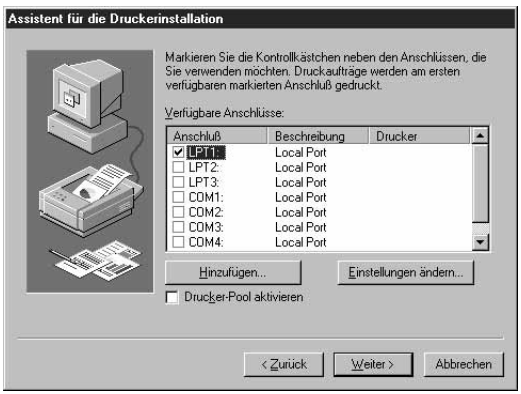
   b. Doppelklicken Sie auf dem Desktop auf das Symbol **Arbeitsplatz** um **Arbeitsplatz** zu öffnen. Öffnen Sie dann den Ordner **Drucker**, und doppelklicken Sie auf das Symbol **Neuer Drucker**.

- Das Fenster des Assistenten für die Druckerinstallation wird angezeigt, um Druckertreiber zu installieren.


Assistent für die Druckerinstallation
Mit diesem Assistenten können Sie ohne viel Zeit- und Arbeitsaufwand Drucker installieren oder eine Druckerverbindung herstellen. Dieser Drucker wird verwaltet vom:
Arbeitsplatz
Alle Einstellungen sollen auf diesem Computer verwaltet und konfiguriert werden.
Druck-Server im Netzwerk
Stellt die Verbindung zu einem Drucker an einem anderen Computer her. Alle Einstellungen für diesen Drucker werden von einem Druck-Server verwaltet, der von einem Administrator eingerichtet wurde.
< Zurück
Weiter >
Abbrechen

4. Stellen Sie sicher, daß die Optionsschaltfläche **Arbeitsplatz** aktiviert ist, und klicken Sie dann auf die Schaltfläche **Weiter** >.
   - Das Fenster zur Auswahl des Verbindungsanschlusses wird angezeigt.

Auswahl des Druckeranschlusses



1. Aktivieren Sie das Kontrollkästchen, das dem Anschluß des LBP-660 entspricht (normalerweise LPT1:), indem Sie darauf klicken, und klicken Sie dann auf die Schaltfläche **Weiter** >.



- Sie können den LBP-660 nur mit dem (parallelen) LPT-Anschluß verbinden. Sie werden mit dem LBP-660 nicht drucken können, wenn Sie mit einem seriellen Anschluß oder mit einem anderen Anschluß verbinden, mit dem der LBP-660 nicht verbunden ist.

   - Das Fenster zur Auswahl des Druckermodells wird angezeigt; die von Microsoft Windows NT standardmäßig unterstützten Druckerhersteller und -modelle sind aufgelistet.

2. Legen Sie die Installations-CD-ROM für das Microsoft Windows Printing System für Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 in das CD-Laufwerk ein und klicken Sie dann auf die Schaltfläche **Diskette…**, da der LBP-660 in der Liste nicht aufgeführt ist.

3. Wenn das Dialogfeld **Installation von Diskette** angezeigt wird, geben Sie den Laufwerksbuchstaben für das CD-Laufwerk in das Textfeld **Dateien des Herstellers kopieren von** ein, und klicken Sie dann auf die Schaltfläche **Durchsuchen…**.

4. Doppelklicken Sie auf den Ordner **Winnt40** im Feld **Suchen in:**.
   - Im Dialogfeld **Datei suchen** werden Ordner für jede Sprache angezeigt.



5. Doppelklicken Sie auf den Ordner mit der Sprachversion von Microsoft Windows NT, die auf dem Rechner installiert ist.
   - Wenn Wpsc3nt im Dialogfeld **Datei suchen** angezeigt wird, klicken Sie auf die Schaltfläche **Öffnen**.

- Wird kein Ordner mit der Sprachversion von Microsoft Windows NT, die auf dem Rechner installiert ist, angezeigt, so wählen Sie den Ordner für die Sprachversion "Englisch" aus.

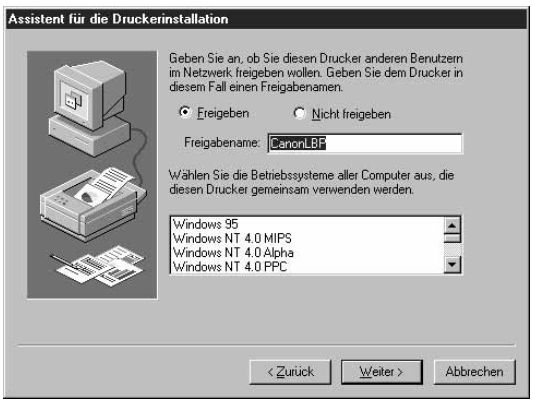
6. Klicken Sie im Dialogfeld **Installation von Diskette** auf die Schaltfläche **OK**.

7. Wenn in der Liste **Drucker** des Assistenten für die Druckerinstallation "Canon LBP-660" angezeigt wird, klicken Sie auf die Schaltfläche **Weiter** >.
   - Ein Fenster zur Benennung des Druckers wird im Feld **Druckername** "Canon LBP-660" angezeigt. Möchten Sie einen anderen Druckernamen verwenden, so geben Sie den neuen Namen entsprechend den angezeigten Hinweisen ein.

8. Klicken Sie auf die Schaltfläche **Weiter** >.
   - Anschließend wird das Fenster für die Freigabe des Druckers im Netzwerk angezeigt.

Einrichten der Druckerfreigabe

In diesem Kapitel wird beschrieben, wie festgelegt wird, ob der LBP-660 im Netzwerk gemeinsam genutzt werden kann. Sie können die Einstellungen für die Freigabe des Druckers im Netzwerk auch vornehmen, nachdem Sie das Microsoft Windows Printing System installiert haben. Genauere Information finden Sie im Abschnitt ”Gemeinsames Nutzen des Druckers”.


Assistent für die Druckerinstallation
Geben Sie an, ob Sie diesen Drucker anderen Benutzern im Netzwerk freigeben wollen. Geben Sie dem Drucker in diesem Fall einen Freigabenamen.
Freigeben
Nicht freigeben
Freigabename:
CanonLBP
Wählen Sie die Betriebssysteme aller Computer aus, die diesen Drucker gemeinsam verwenden werden.
Windows 95
Windows NT 4.0 MIPS
Windows NT 4.0 Alpha
Windows NT 4.0 PPC
< Zurück
Weiter >
Abbrechen

1. Um den LBP-660 in einem Netzwerk freizugeben, wählen Sie die Option **Freigeben**.

2. Klicken Sie auf die Schaltfläche **Weiter** >.

   - Ein Fenster wird angezeigt, in dem Sie gefragt werden, ob Sie eine Testseite drucken möchten.

Einrichten des Testseitendrucks

Ist die Installation des Windows Printing System abgeschlossen, so können Sie auf dem LBP-660 eine Testseite ausdrucken lassen.

1. Um eine Testseite zu drucken, klicken Sie auf die Schaltfläche **Fertigstellen**, und die Testseite wird automatisch gedruckt. Um die Testseite nicht zu drucken, klicken Sie auf die Schaltfläche **Nein** und dann auf die Schaltfläche **Fertigstellen**.

Wenn Sie auf die Schaltfläche **Fertigstellen** geklickt haben, werden die benötigten Dateien vom Installationslaufwerk auf die Festplatte des Rechners kopiert. Während des Kopiervorgangs wird ein Mitteilungsfeld mit einem Statusbalken angezeigt.

Ist der Kopiervorgang abgeschlossen, so wird im Ordner **Drucker** das Symbol **Canon LBP-660** angezeigt.
Je nachdem, ob der Drucker freigegeben ist, hat das Erscheinungsbild des Symbols **Canon LBP-660** eine unterschiedliche Ausprägung.

Anschließend wird während der Installation des Microsoft Windows Printing Systems die Mitteilung ”Initialisierung… Bitte warten!” angezeigt. Während der Installation wird die Microsoft Windows Printing System-Programmgruppe erstellt, und dem Startmenü hinzugefügt. Auf dem Desktop wird das Fenster des Windows Printing System geöffnet und eine Verknüpfung mit der Microsoft Windows Printing System-Programmgruppe erstellt (siehe folgende Seite).

Um eine Verbindung zum LBP-660 herzustellen und von einem Client aus zu drucken, der unter Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 oder Microsoft Windows für Workgroups ausgeführt wird, klicken Sie auf die Schaltfläche **Ja**, wenn das nächste Dialogfeld angezeigt wird.

Soll der LBP-660 nicht freigegeben werden, oder werden alle Clientcomputer unter Microsoft Windows NT ausgeführt, klicken Sie auf die Schaltfläche **Nein**.



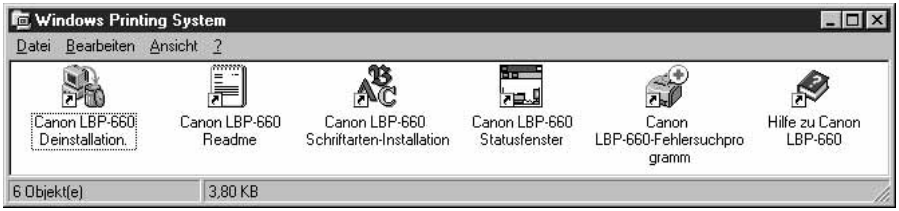
Abschließen der Installation

Ist die Installation des MicrosoftWindows Printing System abgeschlossen, wird eine Mitteilung zur Bestätigung angezeigt. Klicken Sie auf die Schaltfläche **OK**, um die Installation abzuschließen.

Wurde während der Installation des Druckertreibers die Option ausgewählt, eine Testseite ausdrucken zu lassen, so wird dieser Testdruck nun durchgeführt. Wurde die Installation erfolgreich durchgeführt, so wird auf dem Desktop das LBP-660 Statusfenster angezeigt, und eine Testseite auf dem LBP-660 gedruckt. Unterziehen Sie die Testseite einer genauen Überprüfung, und klicken Sie dann auf die Schaltfläche **Ja**, um das Dialogfeld **Testseite drucken** zu schließen.

Ist die Installation des Microsoft Windows Printing System abgeschlossen, so können Sie sofort von dem Computer aus, der unter Microsoft Windows NT ausgeführt wird und an den der LBP-660 als lokaler Drucker angeschlossen wurde, drucken. Um diesen Computer jedoch als Druck-Server im Netzwerk zu verwenden, so, daß über das Netzwerk von Client-Computern aus gedruckt werden kann, müssen sie den Computer erneut unter Microsoft Windows NT starten.

Die während der Installation des Microsoft Windows Printing Systems erstellte Programmgruppe ”Windows Printing System” enthält die nachstehend angezeigten sechs Symbole.



Canon LBP-660 Schriftarten-Installation
Dies ist ein Hilfsprogramm zur Installation der TrueType-Schriftarten (22 ”Lucida”-TrueType-Schriftarten), die sich auf der Diskette #3 der Microsoft Windows 95/3.1-Installationsdisketten für Microsoft Windows NT befinden. Zur Installation der TrueType-Schriftarten doppelklicken Sie auf das Symbol **Canon LBP-660 Schriftarten-Installation**. Folgen Sie dann den auf dem Bildschirm angezeigten Anweisungen.

- Die installierten TrueType-Schriftarten werden auch dann nicht entfernt, wenn Sie mit Hilfe des Deinstallationsprogrammes das Microsoft Windows Printing System deinstallieren.

Hilfe zu Canon LBP-660
Hiermit läßt sich die Online-Hilfe zum Microsoft Windows Printing System anzeigen.

Canon LBP-660 Readme
Dies ist eine Textdatei mit weiteren Informationen zur installierten Version des Microsoft Windows Printing Systems. Bitte lesen Sie diese Datei, bevor Sie das Microsoft Windows Printing System verwenden.

Canon LBP-660 Statusfenster
Mit diesem Symbol läßt sich das Fenster für den Druckerstatus öffnen.

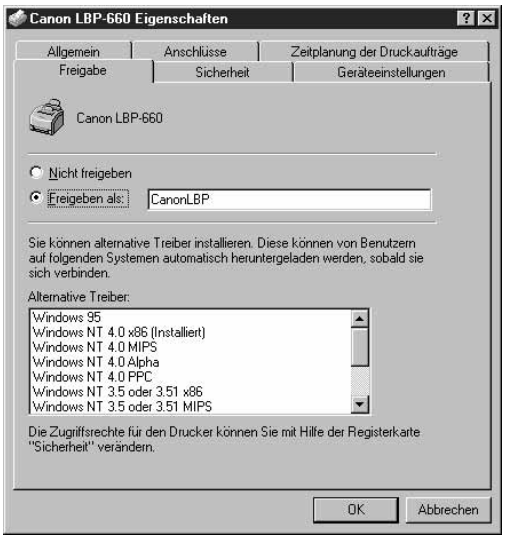
Canon LBP-660 Fehlersuchprogramm
Dies ist ein Hilfsprogramm zur Behandlung von Problemen mit dem Microsoft Windows Printing System. Weitere Informationen zur Verwendung dieses Hilfsprogrammes finden Sie im Kapitel ”Problembehandlung” im Benutzerhandbuch.

Canon LBP-660 Deinstallation
Dies ist ein Hilfsprogramm zur Deinstallation des Microsoft Windows Printing System. Weitere Informationen zur Verwendung dieses Hilfsprogrammes finden Sie im Kapitel ”Problembehandlung” im Benutzerhandbuch.

Gemeinsames Nutzen des Druckers

Ist die Installation des Windows Printing System abgeschlossen, so können Sie mit Hilfe des Dialogfeldes **Canon LBP-660 Eigenschaften** den LBP-660 freigeben.

1. Verwenden Sie die nachstehenden Anweisungen, um zur Registerkarte **Freigabe** im Dialogfeld **Canon LBP-660 Eigenschaften** zu gelangen.
   - Öffnen Sie den Ordner **Drucker**, klicken Sie mit der rechten Maustaste auf das Symbol für den LBP-660, und wählen Sie dann den Befehl **Freigabe…** aus dem Kontextmenü.



2. Um den LBP-660 im Netzwerk freizugeben, klicken Sie auf die Optionsschaltfläche **Freigeben als**.

- Wird diese Option ausgewählt, so werden im Textfeld für den Freigabenamen die ersten 8 Zeichen (ohne Leerzeichen) des Druckernamens angezeigt, den Sie bei der Installation verwendet haben. Sie können in dieses Textfeld auch einen anderen Namen eingeben.
  Wenn Clients, die unter Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 oder Microsoft Windows für Workgroups ausgeführt werden, auf den Drucker im Netzwerk zugreifen sollen, stellen Sie sicher, daß der Freigabename nicht länger als 8 Zeichen ist.

- Wird der Drucker im Netzwerk freigegeben, so wählen Sie nicht das Betriebssystem aus der Liste **Alternative Treiber** unten im Dialogfeld aus. Der Treiber für den LBP-660 kann ausschließlich unter Microsoft Windows NT, Version 4.0 (x86) installiert werden.

3. Klicken Sie auf die Schaltfläche **OK**.
   - Der LBP-660 ist jetzt freigegeben, und das Erscheinungsbild des Symbols im Ordner **Drucker** ist jetzt das für freigegebene Drucker.

Kapitel 3
Herstellen der Verbindung zum LBP-660 als Netzwerkdrucker

Wird der LBP-660 von einem Computer unter Microsoft Windows NT aus freigegeben, an den der LBP-660 angeschlossen ist, und ist dieser Computer als Druck-Server festgelegt, so kann der LBP-660 nicht nur von Microsoft Windows NT-Clients, sondern auch von Clients aus verwendet werden, die unter Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 oder Microsoft Windows für Workgroups ausgeführt werden und mit dem Microsoft Windows NT-Netzwerk verbunden sind.



- Um den Computer unter Microsoft Windows NT, an den der LBP-660 angeschlossen ist, als Druck-Server zu verwenden, muß jedoch zuerst auf diesem Computer der Serverdienst gestartet werden. Starten Sie den Serverdienst, bevor Sie eine Verbindung mit dem Drucker im Netzwerk herstellen.
- Um eine Verbindung zwischen einem Druck-Server unter Microsoft Windows NT und einem Client-Computer herzustellen, muß der Client über ausreichende Zugriffsrechte zur Verbindung mit dem Server und dem freigegebenen Drucker verfügen. Sind Sie sich nicht sicher, über welche Zugriffsrechte Sie verfügen, wenden Sie sich an Ihren Netzwerkadministrator.

Herstellen einer Verbindung von einem Client unter Microsoft Windows NT

Wenn der Client-Computer, der den LBP-660 als Drucker im Netzwerk verwendet, unter Microsoft Windows NT ausgeführt wird, genügt es, den Drucker hinzuzufügen, um den Druckertreiber vom Druck-Server aus automatisch herunterzuladen und den Druckertreiber und den Netzwerkmonitor zu installieren. Es sind keine Administratorrechte nötig, um den Drucker hinzuzufügen. Diesen Vorgang kann normalerweise jeder Benutzer durchführen.

Ausführen des Assistenten für die Druckerinstallation

1. Schalten Sie den Client-Computer ein, führen Sie Microsoft Windows NT, Version 4.0 aus, und melden Sie sich an.

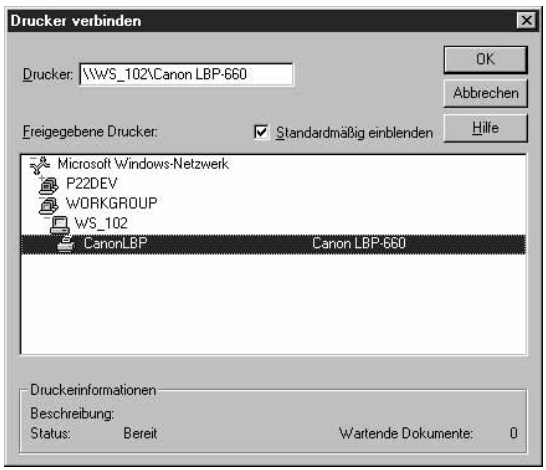
2. Führen Sie den **Assistenten für die Druckerinstallation** aus

   - Weitere Informationen dazu, wie der **Assistent für die Druckerinstallation** ausgeführt wird, finden Sie in ”Kapitel 2 Installation des Microsoft Windows Printing Systems”.

Auswahl des Druckers im Netzwerk


Assistent für die Druckerinstallation
Mit diesem Assistenten können Sie ohne viel Zeit- und Arbeitsaufwand Drucker installieren oder eine Druckerverbindung herstellen. Dieser Drucker wird verwaltet vom:
Arbeitsplatz
Alle Einstellungen sollen auf diesem Computer verwaltet und konfiguriert werden.
Druck-Server im Netzwerk
Stellt die Verbindung zu einem Drucker an einem anderen Computer her. Alle Einstellungen für diesen Drucker werden von einem Druck-Server verwaltet, der von einem Administrator eingerichtet wurde.
< Zurück
Weiter >
Abbrechen

1. Klicken Sie auf die Optionsschaltfläche **Druck-Server im Netzwerk**, und klicken Sie dann auf die Schaltfläche **Weiter** >. Das Dialogfeld **Drucker verbinden** wird angezeigt.



2. Doppelklicken Sie auf den Namen des Druck-Servers im Listenfeld **Freigegebene Drucker**.
   - Durch Doppelklicken auf den Namen des Druck-Servers wird eine Liste der freigegebenen Drucker, die an diesen Druck-Server angeschlossen sind, angezeigt.
3. Klicken Sie auf den Druckerfreigabenamen des LBP-660, zu dem die Verbindung hergestellt werden soll.
   - Der Pfad im Netzwerk des ausgewählten Druckers wird im Textfeld **Drucker** angezeigt.

4. Klicken Sie auf die Schaltfläche **OK**.

   - Der LBP-660 Druckertreiber und der Netzwerkmonitor werden automatisch vom Server heruntergeladen und auf dem Client installiert.
   - Wurde die Software erfolgreich heruntergeladen, so wird das Symbol für den Canon LBP-660 im Ordner **Drucker** angezeigt, und die Programmgruppe "Windows Printing System" wird dem Startmenü hinzugefügt. Außerdem wird eine Verknüpfung mit dem Netzwerkmonitor (WpsC3Nsm.exe) auf dem Desktop erstellt.

5. Klicken Sie im Assistenten für die Druckerinstallation auf die Schaltfläche **Fertigstellen**.

Herstellen einer Verbindung von einem Client, der unter Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 oder Microsoft Windows für Workgroups ausgeführt wird

Um eine Verbindung zum LBP-660 von einem Client aus, der unter Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 oder Microsoft Windows für Workgroups ausgeführt wird, über einen Microsoft Windows NT Druck-Server herzustellen, muß zunächst das LBP-660 Microsoft Windows Printing System für das jeweilige Betriebssystem auf dem Client installiert werden. Weitere Informationen zur Installation des Microsoft Windows Printing System auf einem Client, der unter Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 oder Microsoft Windows für Workgroups ausgeführt wird, finden sie im jeweiligen Benutzerhandbuch.

Kapitel 4
Verwendung des Microsoft Windows Printing Systems

Das Microsoft Windows Printing System für Microsoft Windows NT ist grundsätzlich genauso zu verwenden wie das Microsoft Windows Printing System für die anderen Versionen von Microsoft Windows. Einen Überblick über das Microsoft Windows Printing System finden Sie im Benutzerhandbuch in "Kapitel 3 Verwendung des Microsoft Windows Printing Systems".

Dialogfelder des Microsoft Windows Printing System

Dass Microsoft Windows Printing System für Microsoft Windows NT verfügt über zwei Haupt-Dialogfelder: die Dialogfelder **Druckername Eigenschaften** und **Eigenschaften von Druckername-Standarddokument**. Alle Benutzer können die Dialogfelder öffnen und die Einstellungen überprüfen, aber nur Benutzer mit vollen Zugriffsrechten auf den Drucker können diese Einstellungen ändern.

Druckereigenschaften

Um die Eigenschaften des Druckers anzuzeigen, wählen Sie im Ordner **Drucker** den Befehl **Eigenschaften** aus dem Menü **Datei**, oder klicken Sie mit der rechten Maustaste auf das Symbol für den LBP-660 im Ordner **Drucker**, und wählen Sie dann den Befehl **Eigenschaften** aus dem Kontextmenü.

Das Dialogfeld **Druckername Eigenschaften** enthält sechs Registerkarten, die nachstehend beschrieben werden. Da die Einstellungen auf den einzelnen Registerkarten für alle Drucker unter Microsoft Windows NT gleich sind, stellen die hier gegebenen Beschreibungen nur einen allgemeinen Überblick dar, wobei Hinweise gegeben werden bei Optionen, die bei der Verwendung des LBP-660 wichtig sind.

Detaillierte Informationen zu den verschiedenen Einstellungen entnehmen Sie bitte den Handbüchern zu Microsoft Windows NT. Sie können auch auf das Fragezeichen (**?**) in der oberen rechten Ecke des Dialogfeldes klicken, und dann auf eine Einstellung klicken, um die Popup-Hilfe für dieses Element aufzurufen.



■ Registerkarte Allgemein

Die Einstellungen auf dieser Registerkarte sind für den ganzen Druckertreiber gültig.

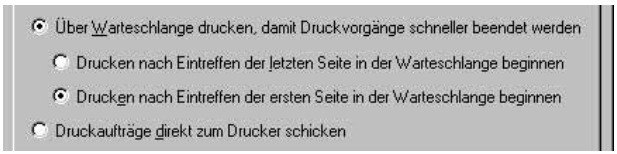
- Der LBP-660 unterstützt keine leeren Seiten. Auch wenn Sie auf die Schaltfläche **Trennseite** klicken, um Trennseiten zu verwenden, wird keine Trennseite gedruckt.
- Ändern Sie nicht die Standard-Einstellungen im Dialogfeld **Druckprozessor**, das angezeigt wird, wenn Sie auf die Schaltfläche **Druckprozessor…** klicken. Wenn Sie den Standard-Datentyp ändern, kann insbesondere von Clients, die nicht unter Microsoft Windows NT ausgeführt werden, nicht mehr gedruckt werden.
- Um eine Testseite zu drucken, klicken Sie in dieser Registerkarte auf die Schaltfläche **Testseite drucken**. Im Microsoft Windows Printing System für Microsoft Windows NT enthält das Statusfenster für den LBP-660 keine Schaltfläche zum Drucken einer Testseite.

■ Registerkarte Anschlüsse

Mit Hilfe dieser Registerkarte läßt sich der Anschluß auswählen, an den der LBP-660 angeschlossen ist.
Wenn der LBP-660 bereits angeschlossen ist und verwendet wird, so braucht diese Einstellung nicht geändert zu werden.

■ Registerkarte Zeitplanung der Druckaufträge

- Mit Hilfe dieser Registerkarte können Sie die Zeiten zur Nutzung des Druckers , die Priorität für Druckaufträge und die Methode der Abarbeitung der Druckaufträge festlegen.
- Bitte wählen Sie für den LBP-660 immer die Option **Über Warteschlange drucken, damit Druckvorgänge schneller beendet werden** aus. Wenn Sie die Option **Druckaufträge direkt zum Drucker schicken** auswählen, werden Sie nicht von Anwendungsprogrammen aus drucken können.


Über Warteschlange drucken, damit Druckvorgänge schneller beendet werden
Drucken nach Eintreffen der letzten Seite in der Warteschlange beginnen
Drucken nach Eintreffen der ersten Seite in der Warteschlange beginnen
Druckaufträge direkt zum Drucker schicken

- Wählen Sie entsprechend Ihren Wünschen eine der Optionen **Drucken nach Eintreffen der letzten Seite in der Warteschlange beginnen** oder **Drucken nach Eintreffen der ersten Seite in der Warteschlange beginnen**. Bitte beachten Sie, daß diese Auswahl Auswirkungen auf die Arbeitsweise des Fertigstellungsbalkens im Statusfenster hat. Detaillierte Information finden Sie im Abschnitt ”Canon LBP-660 Statusfenster”.

■ Registerkarte Freigabe

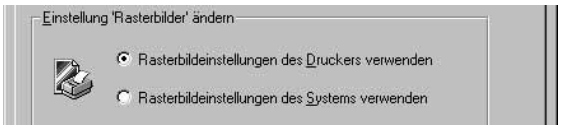
Mit dieser Registerkarte läßt sich die Freigabe des LBP-660 steuern. Detaillierte Information finden Sie in ”Kapitel 2 Installation des Microsoft Windows Printing Systems”.

■ Registerkarte Sicherheit

Mit dieser Registerkarte lassen sich die Sicherheitseinstellungen für den LBP-660 steuern. Informationen über die Sicherheitseinstellungen für Drucker finden Sie in den Handbüchern zu Microsoft Windows NT.

■ Registerkarte Geräteeinstellungen

Mit dieser Registerkarte können Sie festlegen, wie Halbtongrafiken verarbeitet werden.
Der LBP-660 kann entweder die Halbtonmethoden des Druckers oder die des Microsoft Windows NT-Systems verwenden. Um die zu verwendenden Halbtöne auszuwählen, wählen Sie die Option **Rasterbilder** aus, und klicken Sie dann auf die gewünschte Einstellung unter **Einstellung 'Rasterbilder' ändern**.



Wählen Sie die Option **Rasterbildeinstellungen des Systems verwenden**, so können Sie das Dialogfeld **Farbgerät-/Rasterbildeinstellungen** verwenden, um die Einstellungen für die Halbtonmethode des Systems zu ändern. Informationen zu Änderungen an der Halbtonmethode des Systems entnehmen Sie bitte den Handbüchern oder der Online-Hilfe zu Microsoft Windows NT.

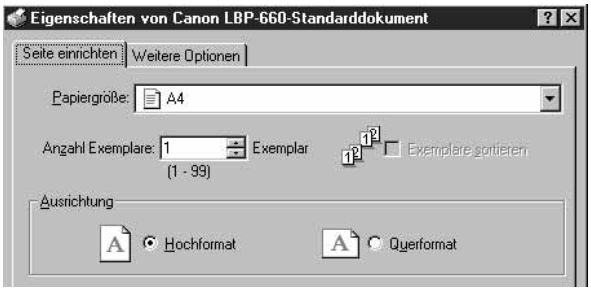


- Die in den Einstellungen für die Rasterbildeigenschaften bei den Dokumenteigenschaften zur Verfügung stehenden Operationen ändern sich je nach dem, welche Option hier ausgewählt wurde.

Eigenschaften des Standarddokumentes

In dem Dialogfeld **Eigenschaften von Druckername-Standarddokument** können die Standardeinstellungen für die beim Drucken mit dem LBP-660 zur Verfügung stehenden Optionen festgelegt werden. Wählen Sie im Ordner **Drucker** den Befehl **Standard-Dokumenteinstellungen** aus dem Menü **Datei**, oder klicken Sie mit der rechten Maustaste auf das Symbol für den LBP-660 im Ordner **Drucker**, und wählen Sie dann den Befehl **Standard-Dokumenteinstellungen** aus dem Kontextmenü um die Standard-Dokumenteinstellungen anzuzeigen.

Das Dialogfeld **Eigenschaften von Druckername-Standarddokument** umfaßt die häufig verwendete Registerkarte **Seite einrichten** sowie die Registerkarte **Weitere Optionen** für weitere Druckoptionen. Sie können auch auf das Fragezeichen (**?**) in der oberen rechten Ecke des Dialogfeldes klicken, und dann auf eine Einstellung klicken, um detaillierte Informationen für die jeweilige Einstellung über die Popup-Hilfe zu diesem Element zu erhalten.



- Sie können ein entsprechendes Dialogfeld auch über die Befehle **Seite einrichten** und **Drucken** aus dem Menü **Datei** eines Anwendungsprogrammes öffnen. Denken Sie daran, daß die in dem Anwendungsprogramm von Ihnen vorgenommenen Einstellungen nur für das aktuelle Dokument in dieser Anwendung gültig sind und keine Auswirkungen auf das Standarddokument haben.

■ Registerkarte Seite einrichten

Auf dieser Registerkarte können Parameter wie die Papiergröße, die Ausrichtung beim Drucken und die Anzahl der Exemplare festgelegt werden.

Papiergröße
Wählen Sie die Papiergröße aus dem Listenfeld aus. Wenn Sie als Papiergröße **B.def.** auswählen, geben Sie den Namen und die Größe des Papiers auf der Registerkarte **Weitere Optionen** ein.

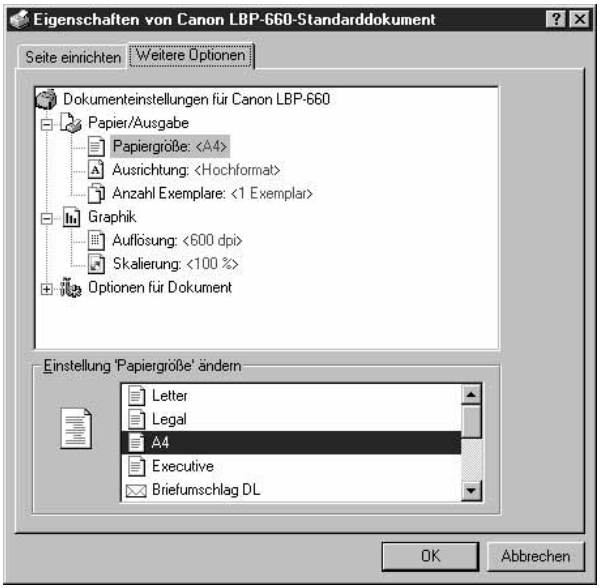
Anzahl Exemplare
Geben Sie in das Textfeld **Anzahl Exemplare** die gewünschte Anzahl der Exemplare ein.

Exemplare sortieren
Sind im Textfeld **Anzahl Exemplare** größer als 1, so können Sie durch Klicken auf die Optionsschaltfläche **Exemplare sortieren** die Exemplare sortiert ausgeben lassen.

Ausrichtung
Verwenden Sie die Optionsschaltflächen, um die Ausrichtung beim Druck festzulegen (Hochformat oder Querformat).

■ Registerkarte Weitere Optionen

Die Einstellungen für die Registerkarte **Weitere Optionen** sind unterteilt in ”Papier/Ausgabe”, ”Grafik” und ”Optionen für Dokument”. Die Optionen für jede Gruppe sind hierarchisch unter dem Gruppennamen aufgelistet. Die aktuelle Einstellung für jede Option wird jeweils rechts daneben in blauen Buchstaben angezeigt. Werden die Optionen nicht angezeigt, klicken Sie auf das Plus-Symbol (**+**) auf der linken Seite des Gruppennamens.



Durch Klicken auf den Namen derjenigen Option, die geändert werden soll, werden die zur Verfügung stehenden Einstellungen (bzw. Schaltflächen zum Öffnen weiterer Dialogfelder) unten im Dialogfeld angezeigt. Wählen Sie die neue Einstellung aus oder geben Sie sie ein. Die neue Einstellung wird dann rechts daneben in roten Buchstaben angezeigt. Diese Farbausprägung bedeutet, daß diese neue Einstellung noch nicht für das Standarddokument gespeichert wurde. Die geänderten Einstellungen werden erst dann für das Standarddokument gespeichert, wenn Sie auf die Schaltfläche **OK** unten im Dialogfeld klicken.

Einstellungen in der Gruppe ”Papier/Ausgabe”
Die Gruppe ”Papier/Ausgabe” stellt drei Optionen zur Verfügung: ”Papiergröße”, ”Ausrichtung” und ”Anzahl Exemplare”. Diese Optionen entsprechen denen im oben beschriebenen Dialogfeld **Seite einrichten**. Hier vorgenommene Änderungen der Einstellungen werden in die Registerkarte **Seite einrichten** übernommen.

Einstellungen in der Gruppe "Grafik"
Die Gruppe "Grafik" stellt zwei Optionen zur Verfügung: "Auflösung" und "Skalierung".

- "Auflösung"
  Verwenden Sie die Optionsschaltflächen unter **Einstellung 'Auflösung' ändern**, um die Druckauflösung des LBP-660 festzulegen.
- "Skalierung".
  Geben Sie in das Textfeld **Einstellung 'Skalierung' ändern** die Prozentzahl für die Vergrößerung oder Verkleinerung ein. Sie können einen Wert zwischen 10% und 200% in 1%-Schritten eingeben.

Einstellungen in der Gruppe "Optionen für Dokument"
Die Gruppe "Optionen für Dokument" stellt fünf Optionen zur Verfügung: "Farbanpassung für Rasterbilder", "Automatische Auflösungsverfeinerung", "Toner-Sparmodus", "Tonerdichte" und "Benutzerdefinierte Papiergröße".

- Farbanpassung für Rasterbilder
  Klicken Sie auf die Schaltfläche **Farbanpassung für Rasterbilder**, um das Dialogfeld **Farbanpassung für Rasterbilder** zu öffnen und die Halbtonmethoden des Druckers anzupassen.



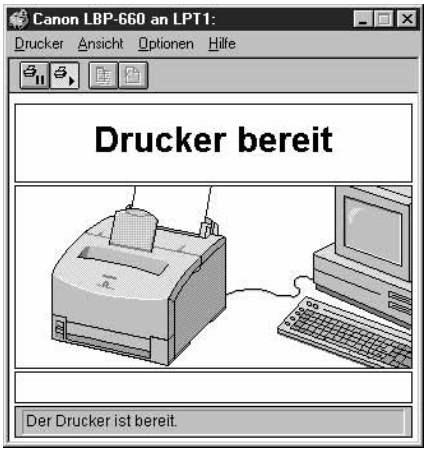
- Das angezeigte Dialogfeld hat ein unterschiedliches Erscheinungsbild, je nach dem, welche Einstellungen in der Registerkarte **Geräteeinstellungen** bei den Druckereigenschaften vorgenommen wurden.
  - Wird die Option **Rasterbildeinstellungen des Druckers verwenden** ausgewählt, so wird das Dialogfeld, das der LBP-660 zur Verfügung stellt, genau so angezeigt, als würden Sie die Registerkarte **Grafik** aus dem Eigenschaften-Dialogfeld von Microsoft Windows 95 auswählen. In diesem Dialogfeld können Sie die Halbton-Farbanpassung (Glättung, Muster 1 oder Muster 2) auswählen, und Helligkeit und Kontrast anpassen. Weitere Informationen finden Sie im Abschnitt "Arbeiten mit Graustufenbildern" des Benutzerhandbuches.
  - Wählen Sie die Option **Rasterbildeinstellungen des Systems verwenden**, so wird eine Graustufenpalette sowie das System-Dialogfeld von Microsoft Windows NT für die Rasterbildeinstellungen angezeigt. Informationen zur Verwendung dieses Dialogfeldes entnehmen Sie bitte den Handbüchern oder der Hilfe zu Microsoft Windows NT.

- Automatische Auflösungsverfeinerung
  Mit Hilfe dieser Option kann die Funktion zur Gättung des LBP-660 aktiviert und deaktiviert werden.
- Toner-Sparmodus
  Mit Hilfe dieser Option kann der Toner-Sparmodus aktiviert und deaktiviert werden.
- Tonerdichte
  Mit Hilfe dieser Option kann die Tonerdichte beim Drucken auf fünf Stufen eingestellt werden. Standardmäßig ist die Tonerdichte auf drei eingestellt.
- Benutzerdefinierte Papiergröße
  Verwenden Sie diese Option, um die Papiergröße einzustellen, wenn Sie als Papiergröße auf der Registerkarte **Seite einrichten** die Option "B.def." auswählt haben. Klicken Sie auf die Schaltfläche **Benutzerdefinierte Papiergröße**, um das Dialogfeld **Benutzerdefinierte Papiergröße** zu öffnen und die Papierhöhe und -breite einzustellen.

Microsoft Windows NT LBP-660 Statusfenster

Wenn LBP-660 als lokaler Drucker an einen Computer angeschlossen ist, der unter Microsoft Windows NT ausgeführt wird, so wird das LBP-660 Statusfenster automatisch angezeigt, wenn der Druckvorgang auf dem LBP-660 ausgeführt wird, oder wenn ein Benutzereingriff erforderlich sein sollte, beispielsweise, wenn ein Problem auftritt.

Sie können das LBP-660 Statusfenster auch jederzeit öffnen, indem Sie auf das Symbol des Canon LBP-660 Statusfensters in der Programmgruppe "Windows Printing System" doppelklicken. Sie können mit Hilfe des Statusfensters das Abarbeiten Ihrer Druckaufträge verfolgen, den Druck unterbrechen, wiederaufnehmen, usw.



Das Statusfenster entspricht dem des Microsoft Windows Printing System, wie es für Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 und Microsoft Windows für Workgroups angezeigt wird. Weitere Informationen zum Statusfenster finden Sie im Benutzerhandbuch.

In dieser Beschreibung werden nur diejenigen Operationen und Funktionen berücksichtigt, die sich im LBP-660 Statusfenster des Microsoft Windows Printing System für Microsoft Windows NT von denen der anderen Versionen von Microsoft Windows unterscheiden.

- Wurde in der Registerkarte **Zeitplanung der Druckaufträge** im Dialogfeld **Druckername Eigenschaften** die Option **Drucken nach Eintreffen der letzten Seite in der Warteschlange beginnen** aktiviert, so wird beim Drucken eines Dokumentes im Mitteilungsfeld die ungefähre Dauer bis zum Ende des Druckvorganges sowie die ungefähre Uhrzeit des Endes des Druckvorganges und die Anzahl der gedruckten Seiten und der des zu druckenden Gesamtdokumentes mit einem Fertigstellungsbalken angezeigt.



- Wurde die Option **Drucken nach Eintreffen der ersten Seite in der Warteschlange beginnen** aktiviert, so wird im Mitteilungsfeld nur die Mitteilung "Drucken" und die Anzahl der gedruckten Seiten mit einem Fertigstellungsbalken angezeigt.



- Auf der Symbolleiste befindet sich keine Schaltfläche zum Testen des Druckers. Um eine Testseite zu drucken, klicken Sie dann in der Registerkarte **Zeitplanung der Druckaufträge** im Dialogfeld **Druckername Eigenschaften** auf die Schaltfläche **Testseite drucken**.
- Der Befehl **Drucker** fehlt im Menü **Optionen**. Um die Einstellung der Tonerdichte zu ändern, klicken Sie in der Registerkarte **Weitere Optionen** im Dialogfeld **Eigenschaften von Druckername-Standarddokument** auf den Befehl **Tonerdichte**.
- Der Befehl **Client-Operationen** im Menü **Optionen** ermöglicht auszuwählen, ob der Benutzer mit Hilfe des Netzwerkmonitors auf einem Client, der unter Microsoft Windows NT ausgeführt wird, den Druckauftrag unterbrechen, wiederaufnehmen, erzwingen oder abbrechen kann. Das Häkchen links neben der Option **Client-Operation** zeigt an, ob diese Operationen im Netzwerkmonitor zur Verfügung stehen.

LBP-660-Netzwerkmonitor

Der LBP-660-Netzwerkmonitor ist eine Funktion, mit deren Hilfe wie mit dem Statusfenster auf dem Desktop von einem Client unter Microsoft Windows NT, der mit dem Drucker im Netzwerk verbunden ist, der Status des LBP-660 überprüft, der Druckauftrag unterbrochen, wiederaufgenommen, erzwungen und abgebrochen werden kann. Diese Funktion steht nur für Clients unter Microsoft Windows NT zur Verfügung, und kann unter Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 und Microsoft Windows für Workgroups nicht verwendet werden.

Der LBP-660-Netzwerkmonitor zeigt den Druckerstatus jedoch nur als Text an, und verfügt über keine bewegten Grafiken oder Fertigstellungsbalken, wie das LBP-660 Statusfenster.

Wenn Sie einen Client, der unter Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 ausgeführt wird, mit einem Drucker im Netzwerk verbinden, so wird der Netzwerkmonitor automatisch vom Server installiert.



Verwenden des LBP-660-Netzwerkmonitors

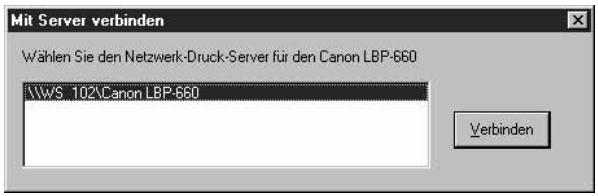
■ Ausführen des Netzwerkmonitors

Sie können mit den folgenden Schritten den Netzwerkmonitor jederzeit ausführen:

1. Doppelklicken Sie auf das Symbol des Canon LBP-660-Netzwerkmonitors in der Programmgruppe des Windows Printing System des Client-Computers oder doppelklicken Sie auf das Symbol des Canon LBP-660-Netzwerkmonitors auf dem Desktop.

2. Wenn eine Mitteilung angezeigt wird und Sie gefragt werden, ob Sie mit dem Netzwerkdrucker verbunden werden möchten, klicken Sie auf die Schaltfläche **Ja**.

   - Das Dialogfeld zur Auswahl des Druckers, mit dem Sie sich im Netzwerk verbinden möchten, wird angezeigt.



3. Wählen Sie aus dem Listenfeld den Namen des gewünschten Druckers aus, und klicken Sie dann auf die Schaltfläche **Verbinden**.

   - Ist die Verbindung zu dem Drucker im Netzwerk hergestellt, so wird der aktuelle Status des Druckers in einem Textfeld angezeigt.

■ Status-Optionen

Die Menüleiste des LBP-660-Netzwerkmonitors enthält drei Menüs: **Optionen**, **Drucker** und **Hilfe**.



Menü **Optionen**
Verwenden Sie das Menü **Optionen**, um Optionen für den Betrieb des Netzwerkmonitors festzulegen.

- Mit Server verbinden
  Mit Hilfe dieses Befehls können Sie die Verbindung wiederherstellen, wenn die Verbindung zum Drucker im Netzwerk aus beliebigen Gründen gestört war, oder wenn Sie sich mit einem anderen Drucker im netzwerk verbinden möchten nur (LBP-660). Das angezeigte Dialogfeld **Mit Server verbinden** ist dasselbe, das beim Ausführen des Netzwerkmonitors angezeigt wird. Wählen Sie den gewünschten Druckernamen aus, und klicken Sie dann auf die Schaltfläche **Verbinden**.

- Sound-Optionen
  Mit Hilfe dieser Option kann ausgewählt werden, ob gesprochene Mitteilungen verwendet werden sollen, wenn ein Problem mit dem Drucker entsteht.



- Der Netzwerkmonitor kann gesprochene Mitteilungen nur dann ausgeben, wenn ein Problem besteht. Ist auf Ihrem Computer keine Sound-Karte installiert, so wird diese Option schraffiert dargestellt und kann nicht ausgewählt werden.

- Standardgröße
  Haben Sie die Anzeigegröße des Netzwerkmonitors geändert, so können Sie mit dieser Option die ursprüngliche Größe wiederherstellen.
- Menü ausblenden
  Mit dieser Option lassen sich die Menüs des Netzwerkmonitors ausblenden. Um die Menüleiste wieder anzuzeigen, drücken Sie auf **Esc**, wenn der Netzwerkmonitor das aktive Fenster ist, oder doppelklicken Sie auf eine beliebige Stelle im Bereich zur Anzeige von Mitteilungen.
- Immer im Vordergrund
  Wenn diese Option ausgewählt ist, wird ein Häkchen links neben der Option angezeigt, und der Netzwerkmonitor wird als vorderstes Fenster auf dem Desktop angezeigt.

Menü "Drucker"
Mit Hilfe des Menüs **Drucker** läßt sich der Betrieb des Druckers steuern. Wenn im Statusfenster des Druck-Servers im Menü **Optionen** der Befehl **Client-Operation** nicht aktiviert ist, so ist das Menü **Drucker** abgeblendet dargestellt, und der Betrieb des Druckers kann nicht von einem Client gesteuert werden.

Detaillierte Informationen zum Menü **Optionen** finden Sie unter "Verwenden des Drucker-Menüs" im Benutzerhandbuch.



- Die Operationen im Menü **Drucker** gelten auch für Druckaufträge anderer Clients. Wenn Druckaufträge von mehreren Clients der Druckerwarteschlange hinzugefügt werden, so können durch unachtsames Abbrechen von Druckaufträgen auch Druckaufträge anderer Clients gelöscht werden. Denken Sie daran, wenn Sie Druckaufträge abbrechen.

Menü "Hilfe"
Mit diesem Menü wird ein Dialogfeld angezeigt, das Versionsinformationen zum Netzwerkmonitor beinhaltet.

Kapitel 5
Fehlerbehebung

In diesem Kapitel wird beschrieben, wie Probleme, die möglicherweise während der Installation des Microsoft Windows Printing Systems und bei der Verwendung des LBP-660 als Drucker in einem Microsoft Windows NT-Netz auftreten, behandelt werden können.

Anweisungen zum Umgang mit Problemen am Drucker selber (Papierstau, usw.), mit Qualitätsproblemen beim Drucken, mit Problemen im Zusammenhang mit dem Microsoft Windows Printing System und den dazu gehörenden Fehlermeldungen finden Sie im Benutzerhandbuch unter ”Kapitel 6 Problembehandlung”.

Können Sie die Ursache eines Problemes nicht ausfindig machen, so führen Sie das Fehlersuchprogramm in der Programmgruppe ”Windows Printing System” aus. Dieses Fehlersuchprogramm hilft bei der Behandlung von Problemen im Zusammenhang mit den installierten Dateien und den Einstellungen.

Läßt sich das Problem immer noch nicht beheben, so deinstallieren Sie das Microsoft Windows Printing System auf dem Druck-Server, starten den Server erneut, und installieren Sie das Microsoft Windows Printing System erneut. Führen Sie zur Deinstallation des Microsoft Windows Printing Systems das Deinstallationsprogramm in der Programmgruppe ”Windows Printing System” aus.



- Führen Sie wie immer, wenn Sie Software deinstalliert haben, Microsoft Windows NT erneut aus. Starten Sie Microsoft Windows NT nicht erneut, so können Sie die deinstallierte Software nicht erneut installieren.

Probleme während der Installation des Microsoft Windows Printing Systems

Probleme bei der Installation als lokaler Drucker

Problem	Ursache	Behandlung
Die Schaltfläche **Arbeitsplatz** kann im Assistenten für die Druckerinstallation nicht ausgewählt werden.	Der Benutzer, der die Software installiert, verfügt nicht über die erforderlichen Benutzerrechte.	Zur Installation des Microsoft Windows Printing Systems sind Administratorrechte erforderlich. Die Installation muß von einem Benutzer mit den entsprechenden Rechten durchgeführt werden.
Nach dem Kopieren der Dateien wird eine Fehlermeldung ausgegeben, daß Administratorrechte erforderlich sind.	Ein Benutzer mit weitreichenden Benutzerrechten versuchte, die Software zu installieren.	Die erneute Installation der Software muß von einem Benutzer mit Administratorrechten durchgeführt werden.
Eine Fehlermeldung wird angezeigt mit dem Hinweis, daß eine Ersatz-Installation durchgeführt werden muß.	Sie führen eine lokale Installation auf einem Computer aus, auf dem der LBP-660-Druckertreiber schon über das Netzwerk installiert wurde.	Führen Sie die lokale Installation erneut durch, und klicken Sie auf die Optionsschaltfläche **Bestehenden Treiber ersetzen** im Dialogfeld **Ersetzen der Auswahl** des Assistenten für die Druckerinstallation.

Probleme bei der Installation im Netzwerk

Problem	Ursache	Behandlung
Der Namen des gemeinsam genutzten Druckers oder des Druck-Servers, zu dem eine Verbindung hergestellt werden soll, wird in der Liste der freigegebenen Drucker nicht angezeigt.	• Der Druck-Server wurde nicht gestartet. • Der Drucker wurde nicht für gemeinsame Nutzung im Netzwerk freigegeben. • Sie verfügen nicht über die notwendigen Benutzerrechte, um eine Verbindung mit dem Drucker oder Druck-Server herzustellen.	• Starten Sie den Druck-Server. • Richten Sie die Freigabe des Druckers im Dialogfeld **Canon LBP-660 Eigenschaften** ein. • Fordern Sie den Netzwerkadministrator auf, Ihre Benutzerrechte zu ändern.

Probleme beim Drucken im Netzwerk

Problem	Ursache	Behandlung
Im Netzwerkmonitor kann die Verbindung zum Druck-Server oder zu dem freigegebenen Drucker nicht hergestellt werden.	• Der Druck-Server wurde nicht gestartet. • Der Drucker wurde nicht für gemeinsame Nutzung im Netzwerk freigegeben. • Sie verfügen nicht über die notwendigen Benutzerrechte, um eine Verbindung mit dem Drucker oder Druck-Server herzustellen.	• Starten Sie den Druck-Server. • Richten Sie die Freigabe des Druckers im Dialogfeld **Canon LBP-660 Eigenschaften** ein. • Fordern Sie den Netzwerkadministrator auf, Ihre Benutzerrechte zu ändern.
Im Netzwerkmonitor steht das Druckermenü nicht zur Verfügung.	Im Optionen-Menü des Statusfensters des Druck-Servers ist die Option **Client-Operation** nicht aktiviert.	Wählen Sie die Option **Client-Operation** im Menü **Optionen** aus.
Auf einem Druck-Server, der unter Microsoft Windows 95/3.1 oder Microsoft Windows für Workgroups ausgeführt wird, kann von einem Client unter Microsoft Windows NT aus nicht gedruckt werden.	Das Microsoft Windows Printing System für Microsoft Windows NT unterstützt keine Druck-Server, die unter Microsoft Windows 95/3.1 oder Microsoft Windows für Workgroups ausgeführt werden.	Verwenden Sie als Druck-Server einen Rechner, der unter Microsoft Windows NT ausgeführt wird.
Von einem Client, der unter Microsoft Windows 95/3.1 oder Microsoft Windows für Workgroups ausgeführt wird, kann nicht gedruckt werden.	• Das WPS-Verzeichnis auf dem Druck-Server ist nicht freigegeben. • Der Standard-Datentyp des Druck-Servers ist nicht auf WPS eingestellt.	• Geben Sie das WPS-Verzeichnis auf dem Druck-Server frei. • Klicken Sie in der Registerkarte **Allgemein** im Dialogfeld **Druckername Eigenschaften** auf die Schaltfläche **Druckprozessor**, und legen Sie WPS als Standard-Datentyp fest.

Anhang

Vergleich zu Microsoft Windows Printing Systems für andere Versionen von Microsoft Windows

Einige Funktionen von Microsoft Windows Printing System für Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 unterscheiden sich von denen, die beim Microsoft Windows Printing System für Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 oder Microsoft Windows für Workgroups zur Verfügung stehen.

Bitte beachten Sie die folgenden Punkte, wenn Sie das Benutzerhandbuch des LBP-660 lesen.

Beim Drucken unter Microsoft Windows NT auf einem lokalen Drucker oder über das Netzwerk und beim Drucken unter Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 und Microsoft Windows für Workgroups über das Netzwerk

- Da die PCL-Emulation nicht verwendet werden kann, können keine Druckbefehle über die Eingabeaufforderung (Microsoft Windows NT) oder über die MS-DOS-Eingabeaufforderung (Microsoft Windows 95) ausgeführt werden.

Beim Drucken unter Microsoft Windows NT, Version 4.0, auf einem lokalen Drucker oder über das Netzwerk

- Die Funktion zur Überlagerung von Formulardateien steht nicht zur Verfügung.
- Testseiten können nicht mit Hilfe des LBP-660 Statusfensters gedruckt werden. Klicken Sie in der Registerkarte **Allgemein** im Dialogfeld **Druckername Eigenschaften** auf die Schaltfläche **Testseite drucken**.
- Im Optionen-Menü des Statusfensters des Druck-Servers steht die Option **Drucker** nicht zur Verfügung.
  Legen Sie in der Registerkarte **Geräteeinstellungen** im Dialogfeld für die Standard-Dokumenteigenschaften die Tonerdichte fest.

Canon

ITALIANO

STAMPANTE LASER LBP-660

Guida di Microsoft® Windows® Printing System per Microsoft® Windows NT®

IMPORTANTE:
Leggere attentamente questo manuale prima di utilizzare la stampante. Conservare il manuale per farvi riferimento in futuro.

Copyright

Copyright © 1998 Canon Inc. Tutti i diritti riservati
Copyright © 1996 Microsoft Corporation. Tutti i diritti riservati.

Avvertenza

Canon Inc. non fornisce, ad eccezione di quanto qui affermato, alcuna garanzia implicita o esplicita per quanto riguarda il presente materiale, comprese senza limiti le garanzie relative alla commerciabilità o adattabilità ad un uso particolare o le garanzie contro la violazione di qualsiasi brevetto. Canon Inc. non potrà essere ritenuta responsabile di danni di qualsiasi natura - diretti, accidentali o consequenziali - o di spese o perdite di profitto conseguenti all'uso del materiale.
Questo manuale contiene informazioni protette dal copyright. Tutti i diritti sono riservati. Nessuna parte del presente manuale può essere fotocopiata, riprodotta o tradotta in un'altra lingua senza l'autorizzazione scritta di Canon Inc.
L'uso del presente documento è soggetto ai termini del Contratto d'acquisto (Microsoft® Windows® Printing System) fornito insieme alla stampante.
Le informazioni qui contenute sono soggette a modifiche senza preavviso.

Marchi di fabbrica

LBP, Canon ed il logo Canon sono marchi di fabbrica della Canon Inc.
PCL è un marchio di fabbrica della Hewlett-Packard Company.
IBM è un marchio di fabbrica della International Business Machines Corporation.
Microsoft, Windows, Windows NT, il logo Windows e MS-DOS sono marchi registrati o marchi di fabbrica della Microsoft Corporation negli Stati Uniti e/o in altri paesi.
NetWare® è un marchio registrato e Novell è un marchio di fabbrica della Novell, Inc.
TrueType è un marchio di fabbrica della Apple Computer, Inc.
Lucida è un marchio di fabbrica della Bigelow & Homes.
Gli altri marchi e nomi di prodotti sono marchi di fabbrica o marchi registrati delle rispettive società.
In questo manuale, si fa riferimento a Microsoft®, Microsoft® Windows® e Microsoft® Windows NT® rispettivamente come Microsoft, Microsoft Windows e Microsoft Windows NT.

Convenzioni

Questo manuale si avvale delle seguenti convenzioni:



Le note forniscono consigli o suggerimenti per ottimizzare le prestazioni della stampante.



Indica che ignorare le procedure o pratiche consigliate potrebbe causare danni all'hardware o al software.

Capitolo 1
Introduzione

Informazioni su questo manuale

La Guida di Microsoft® Windows® Printing System (a cui di seguito si farà riferimento come Microsoft Windows Printing System) per Microsoft® Windows NT® (a cui di seguito si farà riferimento come Microsoft Windows NT) descrive come installare ed utilizzare Microsoft Windows Printing System per Microsoft Windows NT su un computer con Microsoft Windows NT versione 4.0 (Server o Workstation) collegato ad una stampante laser Canon LBP-660.

Il manuale è composto dai seguenti capitoli:

Capitolo 1 Introduzione 1

Questo capitolo descrive come utilizzare il manuale ed i requisiti del sistema per installare Microsoft Windows Printing System su un computer con Microsoft Windows NT.

Capitolo 2 Installazione di Microsoft Windows Printing System 3

Questo capitolo descrive come installare Microsoft Windows Printing System per Microsoft Windows NT utilizzando LBP-660 come stampante locale e come condividere una stampante LBP-660 su una rete Microsoft Windows NT.

Capitolo 3 Collegamento a LBP-660 come stampante di rete 10

Questo capitolo descrive come utilizzare la stampante LBP-660 da altri computer con Microsoft Windows NT e da computer con Microsoft® Windows® (a cui di seguito si farà riferimento come Microsoft Windows) 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 o Microsoft Windows per Workgroup.

Capitolo 4 Uso di Microsoft Windows Printing System 13

Questo capitolo descrive come utilizzare il Monitor di stato sulla rete, la Finestra di stato Canon LBP-660 e le finestre di dialogo Proprietà in Microsoft Windows Printing System per Microsoft Windows NT.

Capitolo 5 Individuazione e soluzione dei problemi 23

Questo capitolo descrive come risolvere i problemi che possono sorgere durante l'installazione di Microsoft Windows Printing System e l'utilizzo di Microsoft Windows Printing System su una rete Microsoft Windows NT.

Appendice 26

Questa sezione dell'Appendice elenca i punti in cui le descrizioni contenute nel Manuale per l'Operatore di LBP-660 riguardanti Microsoft Windows Printing System per Microsoft Windows NT differiscono da quelle riguardanti Microsoft Windows Printing System per Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 e Microsoft Windows per Workgroup.

Prima di installare il software

Prima di installare Microsoft Windows Printing System su un computer con Microsoft Windows NT, verificare che il computer soddisfi i requisiti hardware e software sotto elencati.

- PC IBM o compatibili con una CPU Pentium a 90 MHz o più potente e con Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 (Server o Workstation) installato.



- Microsoft Windows Printing System per LBP-660 descritto in questo manuale viene eseguito su Microsoft Windows NT versione 4.0 per PC/AT compatibili. Microsoft Windows Printing System non può essere eseguito su sistemi con Microsoft Windows NT versione 3.51 o precedenti o Microsoft Windows NT per processore RISC.
- Se si sta utilizzando una rete Novell NetWare®, non è possibile installare questo software su un server NetWare®. Non è possibile usare questo software per stampare da client Novell Netware® per Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 o Microsoft Windows per Workgroup.

- Minimo 24 MB di RAM
- Minimo 10 MB di spazio disponibile sul disco fisso
- Unità CD-ROM
- Porta per stampante parallela Standard Centronics (quando LBP è collegata come stampante locale)
- Scheda di interfaccia di rete (quando LBP è condivisa in una rete)

Sebbene possa essere possibile installare Microsoft Windows Printing System anche su computer che non soddisfano i requisiti sopra elencati, in questo caso Canon non può garantire che il software funzionerà in modo appropriato. Al fine di creare l'ambiente ottimale ed ottenere le migliori prestazioni da LBP-660, si consiglia di soddisfare i seguenti requisiti hardware e software:

- CPU Pentium a 166 MHz o più potente
- Minimo 48 MB di RAM
- Porta stampante ECP
- Scheda sonora (richiesta per la riproduzione dei messaggi sonori di Microsoft Windows Printing System)

Per la condivisione di LBP-660 in rete, installare uno dei seguenti protocolli di rete:

- NetBEUI
- TCP/IP
- NWLink IPX/SPX



- Per installare Microsoft Windows Printing System per Microsoft Windows NT, è necessario avere i privilegi di Administrator. L'installazione deve essere effettuata da un amministratore di rete o da un responsabile per la stampa con privilegi di Administrator.

Capitolo 2
Installazione di Microsoft Windows Printing System

Per installare Microsoft Windows Printing System per Microsoft Windows NT, utilizzare il disco di installazione Microsoft Windows Printing System per Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 allegato.

Installazione di Microsoft Windows Printing System per stampanti locali

Questa sezione descrive come installare Microsoft Windows Printing System per utilizzare LBP-660 come stampante locale. Per una descrizione del collegamento di LBP-660 come stampante di rete, vedere “Capitolo 3 Collegamento a LBP-660 come stampante di rete”.

Avvio di Installazione stampante

Utilizzare Installazione stampante in Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 per installare Microsoft Windows Printing System su Microsoft Windows NT. Per installare il software, seguire le istruzioni sotto riportate.

1. Accendere il computer a cui è collegata la stampante LBP-660 e avviare Microsoft Windows NT 4.0.

2. Collegarsi come Administrator.

3. Utilizzare uno dei seguenti metodi per avviare Installazione stampante:

   a. Fare clic sul pulsante Avvio nella barra delle applicazioni e spostare il puntatore del mouse su Impostazioni nel menu Avvio. Nel sottomenu che viene visualizzato, fare clic su Stampanti per aprire la cartella Stampanti e fare doppio clic sull’icona Aggiungi stampante nella cartella Stampanti.

   b. Sul desktop, fare doppio clic sull’icona Risorse del computer. Quindi aprire la cartella Stampanti e fare doppio clic sull’icona Aggiungi stampante.

- Verrà visualizzata la finestra Installazione stampante per l'installazione dei driver di stampa.


Installazione stampante
È possibile installare o stabilire connessioni a una stampante. Questa stampante sarà gestita da:
Questo computer
Tutte le impostazioni saranno gestite e configurate da questo computer.
Server della stampante di rete
Connetti a una stampante su un altro computer. Tutte le impostazioni per questa stampante sono gestite da un server della stampante installato dall'amministratore.
< Indietro
Avanti >
Annulla

4. Verificare che il pulsante dell'opzione Questo computer sia selezionato e fare clic sul pulsante Avanti>.
   - Si apre la finestra di selezione della porta di collegamento.

Selezione della porta della stampante



1. Attivare la casella di controllo della porta a cui è collegata la stampante LBP-660 (di solito LPT1:) e fare clic sul pulsante Avanti>.



- LBP-660 può essere soltanto collegata ad una porta (parallela) LPT. Non sarà possibile stampare su LBP-660 se si seleziona una porta seriale o una qualsiasi porta diversa da quella a cui LBP-660 è collegata.

   - Verrà visualizzata la finestra di selezione del modello della stampante, che mostra un elenco dei produttori e dei modelli delle stampanti supportati da Microsoft Windows NT come standard.

2. Dal momento che LBP-660 non è inclusa nell'elenco, inserire il CD-ROM di installazione di Microsoft Windows Printing System per Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 nell'unità CD-ROM, quindi fare clic sul pulsante Disco driver….

3. Quando viene visualizzata la finestra Installa da disco, digitare il nome dell'unità CD-ROM nella casella di testo "Copia file del produttore in" e fare clic sul pulsante Sfoglia….

4. Fare doppio clic sulla cartella Winnt40 nella finestra di dialogo Posizione file.

   - Le cartelle per ogni lingua vengono visualizzate nella finestra di dialogo Posizione file.



5. Fare doppio clic sulla cartella per la versione della lingua di Microsoft Windows NT utilizzata.

   - Quando nella finestra di dialogo Posizione file viene visualizzato Wpsc3nt, fare clic sul pulsante Apri.

- Se non c'è alcuna cartella per la versione della lingua di Microsoft Windows NT utilizzata, selezionare la cartella English.

6. Fare clic sul pulsante OK nella finestra di dialogo Installa da disco.

7. Quando "Canon LBP-660" viene visualizzata nell'elenco Stampanti in Installazione stampante, fare clic sul pulsante Avanti>.

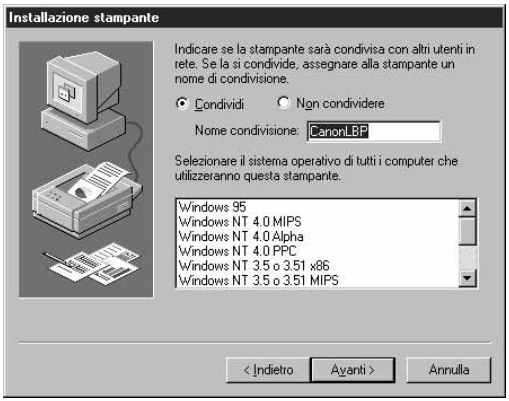
   - Comparirà una finestra per l'assegnazione del nome alla stampante in cui appare "Canon LBP-660" nel campo Nome stampante. Se si vuole modificare il nome della stampante, immettere un nuovo nome seguendo le istruzioni visualizzate sullo schermo.

8. Fare clic sul pulsante Avanti>.

   - Di seguito verrà visualizzata la finestra per la condivisione della stampante.

Impostazione della condivisione della stampante

Questa sezione descrive come specificare se la stampante LBP-660 deve essere condivisa in rete o meno. È anche possibile specificare le impostazioni per la condivisione della stampante dopo aver installato Microsoft Windows Printing System. Per i dettagli vedere la sezione intitolata “Condivisione della stampante”.


Installazione stampante
Indicare se la stampante sarà condivisa con altri utenti in rete. Se la si condivide, assegnare alla stampante un nome di condivisione.
Condividi
Non condividere
Nome condivisione:
CanonLBP
Selezionare il sistema operativo di tutti i computer che utilizzeranno questa stampante.
Windows 95
Windows NT 4.0 MIPS
Windows NT 4.0 Alpha
Windows NT 4.0 PPC
Windows NT 3.5 o 3.51 x86
Windows NT 3.5 o 3.51 MIPS
< Indietro
Avanti >
Annulla

1. Per condividere LBP-660 in rete, selezionare il pulsante corrispondente all’opzione Condividi.

2. Fare clic sul pulsante Avanti>.

   - Verrà visualizzata una finestra che richiederà se si desidera stampare una pagina di prova.

Impostazione della stampa della pagina di prova

Al termine dell’installazione di Microsoft Windows Printing System, è possibile stampare una pagina di prova su LBP-660.

1. Per stampare una pagina di prova basta fare clic sul pulsante Fine e la pagina di prova verrà stampata automaticamente. Se non si desidera stampare la pagina di prova, selezionare il pulsante No e poi fare clic su Fine.

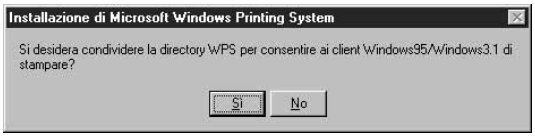
Una volta selezionato il pulsante Fine, i file richiesti vengono copiati dal disco di installazione sul disco fisso. Durante la fase di copia verrà visualizzata una casella con una barra di avanzamento.

Al termine della copia, nella cartella Stampanti comparirà l’icona della stampante Canon LBP-660.
La forma dell’icona di Canon LBP-660 nella cartella Stampanti cambia a seconda della condivisione o meno della stampante.

Quindi verrà visualizzato il messaggio “Inizializzazione in corso… attendere!” quando Microsoft Windows Printing System inizia il processo di inizializzazione. Durante l’inizializzazione, viene creato il gruppo Microsoft Windows Printing System e viene aggiunto al menu Avvio. Viene anche visualizzata la finestra di Windows Printing System sul desktop insieme a un’icona di accesso rapido al gruppo Microsoft Windows Printing System (vedere pagina successiva).

Se ci si vuole collegare a LBP-660 e stampare da un client Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 o Microsoft Windows per Workgroup collegato alla rete Microsoft Windows NT, fare clic sul pulsante Sì quando appare la successiva finestra di dialogo.

Se non si desidera condividere la stampante LBP-660 o se tutti i client sono macchine Microsoft Windows NT, fare clic sul pulsante No.


Installazione di Microsoft Windows Printing System
Si desidera condividere la directory WPS per consentire ai client Windows95/Windows3.1 di stampare?
Sì
No

Fine dell’installazione

Al termine dell’installazione di Microsoft Windows Printing System, viene visualizzato un messaggio di conferma. Fare clic sul pulsante OK per completare l’installazione.

Se durante l’installazione del driver di stampa era stata selezionata la stampa di una pagina di prova, questa inizia adesso. Se tutto il processo di installazione è stato completato con successo, sul desktop viene visualizzata la Finestra di stato Canon LBP-660 e la stampante LBP-660 stampa la pagina di prova. Controllare la pagina di prova e, nella finestra di dialogo relativa al completamento della pagina di prova, fare clic sul pulsante Sì per chiudere tale finestra.

Al termine dell’installazione di Microsoft Windows Printing System, è possibile iniziare a stampare immediatamente su un computer Microsoft Windows NT su cui LBP-660 sia stata installata come stampante locale. Tuttavia, per utilizzare questo computer come server di stampa e stampare da un client tramite la rete, bisogna prima riavviare Microsoft Windows NT.

Il gruppo Windows Printing System creato durante l'installazione di Microsoft Windows Printing System contiene le 6 icone illustrate di seguito.


Windows Printing System
File Modifica Visualizza ?
Disinstallazione di Canon LBP-660
File Readme di Canon LBP-660
Finestra di stato Canon LBP-660
Guida di Canon LBP-660
Installazione dei caratteri di Canon LBP-660
Programma di individuazione dei problemi di Canon LBP-660
Oggetti: 6
3,89 KB

Installazione dei caratteri di Canon LBP-660
E' un programma di utilità per installare i caratteri TrueType (22 caratteri Lucida TrueType) contenuti sul disco 3 dei dischi di installazione di Microsoft Windows 95/3.1 su Microsoft Windows NT. Per installare i caratteri TrueType, fare doppio clic sull'icona Installazione dei caratteri di Canon LBP-660. Quindi seguire le istruzioni riportate nei messaggi visualizzati.

- I caratteri TrueType installati non verranno rimossi neanche utilizzando il programma di disinstallazione per disinstallare Microsoft Windows Printing System.

Guida di Canon LBP-660
Visualizza la guida all'uso di Microsoft Windows Printing System.

File Readme di Canon LBP-660
E' un file di testo che contiene informazioni aggiuntive riguardanti la versione installata di Microsoft Windows Printing System. Leggere questo file prima di utilizzare Microsoft Windows Printing System.

Finestra di stato Canon LBP-660
E' un'icona che apre la Finestra di stato Canon LBP-660.

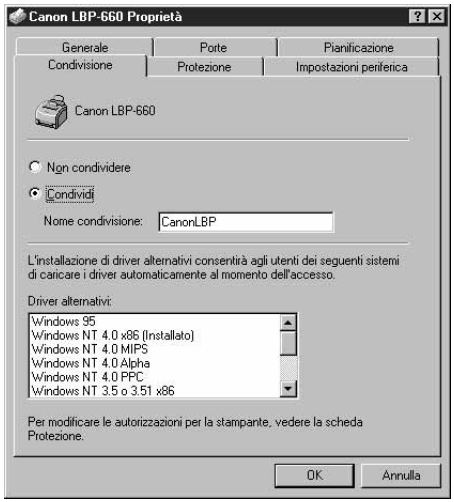
Programma di individuazione dei problemi di Canon LBP-660
E' un programma di utilità per la risoluzione dei problemi relativi a Microsoft Windows Printing System. Per ulteriori informazioni sull'uso di questo programma di utilità, vedere il capitolo intitolato "Individuazione e soluzione dei problemi" nel Manuale per l'Operatore.

Disinstallazione di Canon LBP-660
E' un programma di utilità per disinstallare Microsoft Windows Printing System. Per ulteriori informazioni sull'uso di questo programma di utilità, vedere il capitolo intitolato "Individuazione e soluzione dei problemi" nel Manuale per l'Operatore.

Condivisione della stampante

Al termine dell'installazione di Microsoft Windows Printing System, utilizzare la finestra di dialogo Proprietà per designare LBP-660 come stampante condivisa.

1. Seguire la procedura sotto riportata per aprire la scheda Condivisione nella finestra di dialogo Proprietà.
   - Aprire la cartella Stampanti, fare clic con il pulsante destro del mouse sull'icona di LBP-660 e selezionare Condivisione… dal menu che appare.



2. Per condividere la stampante LBP-660, fare clic sul pulsante relativo all'opzione Condividi.

- Una volta selezionato Condividi, il nome visualizzato nella casella di testo Nome condivisione è composto dai primi 8 caratteri del nome della stampante utilizzato durante l'installazione, esclusi gli spazi. Questo nome può essere modificato immettendo un nome diverso nella casella di testo.
  Se tra i client che condividono la stampante in rete vi sono macchine con Microsoft Windows 3.1 o Microsoft Windows per Workgroup, accertarsi che il Nome condivisione non superi gli 8 caratteri.

- Se la stampante viene designata come stampante condivisa, non selezionare il sistema operativo nell'elenco Driver alternativi, visualizzato in basso nella finestra di dialogo. Il driver di LBP-660 non può essere installato su sistemi diversi da Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 (x86).

3. Fare clic sul pulsante OK.
   - LBP-660 viene designata come stampante condivisa e l'icona nella cartella Stampanti cambia in un'icona di stampante condivisa.

Capitolo 3
Collegamento a LBP-660 come stampante di rete

Se LBP-660 viene designata come stampante condivisa sul computer Microsoft Windows NT a cui LBP-660 è collegata e quel computer viene designato come server di stampa, allora LBP-660 può essere utilizzata non solo da client Microsoft Windows NT, ma anche da client Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 e Microsoft Windows per Workgroup collegati alla rete di Microsoft Windows NT.



- Per utilizzare il computer Microsoft Windows NT a cui la stampante LBP-660 è collegata come server di stampa, prima di tutto avviare il Servizio server su quel computer. Avviare il Servizio server prima di collegare la stampante di rete.
- Per collegarsi ad un server di stampa Microsoft Windows NT da un computer client e stampare un documento, è necessario avere i privilegi di accesso per il collegamento al server e alla stampante condivisa. Se non si è sicuri dei propri privilegi di accesso, rivolgersi all'amministratore di rete.

Collegamento da un client Microsoft Windows NT

Se sul client che utilizza LBP-660 come stampante di rete è in esecuzione Microsoft Windows NT, la semplice aggiunta della stampante trasferisce ed installa automaticamente il driver di stampa ed il Monitor di stato sulla rete dal server di stampa. I privilegi di Administrator non sono necessari per l'aggiunta della stampante. Normalmente chiunque può farlo.

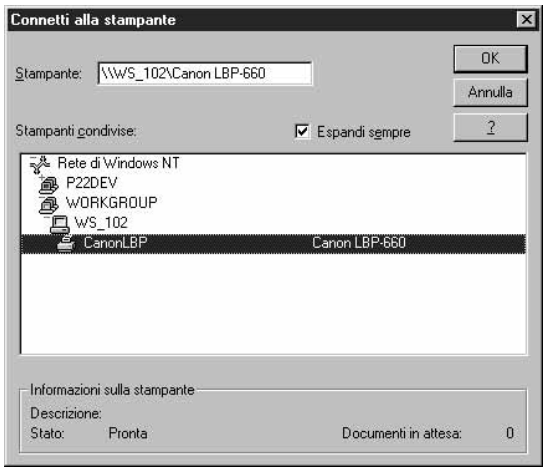
Avvio di Installazione stampante

1. Accendere il computer client, avviare Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 e collegarsi.
2. Avviare Installazione stampante, facendo doppio clic su Aggiungi stampante.
   - Per ulteriori informazioni riguardanti l'avvio di Installazione stampante, vedere "Capitolo 2 Installazione di Microsoft Windows Printing System".

Selezione della stampante di rete


Installazione stampante
È possibile installare o stabilire connessioni a una stampante. Questa stampante sarà gestita da:
Questo computer
Tutte le impostazioni saranno gestite e configurate da questo computer.
Server della stampante di rete
Connetti a una stampante su un altro computer. Tutte le impostazioni per questa stampante sono gestite da un server della stampante installato dall'amministratore.
< Indietro
Avanti >
Annulla

1. Fare clic sul pulsante relativo all'opzione Server della stampante di rete e quindi fare clic su Avanti>. Verrà visualizzata la finestra Connetti alla stampante.



2. Fare doppio clic sul nome del server di stampa visualizzato nell'elenco Stampanti condivise.
   - Facendo doppio clic sul nome del server di stampa comparirà un elenco di stampanti condivise collegate al server di stampa.
3. Fare clic sul nome della stampante condivisa per LBP-660 a cui ci si vuole collegare.
   - Il percorso di rete per la stampante selezionata viene visualizzato nella casella di testo Stampante.

4. Fare clic sul pulsante OK.
   - Il driver di stampa di LBP-660 ed il Monitor di stato sulla rete vengono trasferiti dal server e installati sul client.
   - Una volta completato con successo il trasferimento del software, l'icona di Canon LBP-660 viene visualizzata nella cartella Stampanti ed il gruppo Windows Printing System viene registrato nel menu Avvio. Sul desktop viene anche creato un collegamento al Monitor di stato sulla rete (WpsC3Nsm.exe).
5. Fare clic sul pulsante Fine in Installazione stampante.

Collegamento da un client Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 o Microsoft Windows per Workgroup

Per collegarsi a LBP-660 da un client Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 o Microsoft Windows per Workgroup tramite un server di stampa Microsoft Windows NT, è necessario prima di tutto installare sul client Microsoft Windows Printing System di LBP-660 per il rispettivo sistema operativo. Per ulteriori informazioni riguardanti l'installazione di Microsoft Windows Printing System su un client Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 o Microsoft Windows per Workgroup, fare riferimento al Manuale per l'Operatore.

Capitolo 4
Uso di Microsoft Windows Printing System

L'utilizzo di Microsoft Windows Printing System per Microsoft Windows NT è praticamente identico a quello per altre versioni di Microsoft Windows. Per informazioni generali su Microsoft Windows Printing System, fare riferimento al "Capitolo 3 Uso di Microsoft Windows Printing System" nel Manuale per l'Operatore.

Finestre di dialogo di Microsoft Windows Printing System

Microsoft Windows Printing System per Microsoft Windows NT ha due finestre di dialogo principali: Proprietà e Proprietà Documento predefinito. Qualsiasi utente può aprire queste finestre di dialogo e verificare le impostazioni, ma solo gli utenti che hanno i privilegi "controllo totale" di accesso alla stampante possono modificarle.

Proprietà della stampante

Per visualizzare le proprietà della stampante, selezionare Proprietà dal menu File nella cartella Stampanti o fare clic con il pulsante destro del mouse sull'icona LBP-660 nella cartella Stampanti e selezionare Proprietà dal menu che compare.

La finestra di dialogo Proprietà contiene le 6 schede descritte di seguito. Dal momento che le impostazioni di ciascuna scheda sono comuni a tutte le stampanti Microsoft Windows NT, le descrizioni qui fornite danno semplicemente un quadro generale delle schede e dei punti di cui tenere conto quando si utilizza la stampante LBP-660.

Per spiegazioni più dettagliate riguardo alle varie impostazioni, fare riferimento ai manuali di Microsoft Windows NT. E' anche possibile fare clic sul punto interrogativo (?) nell'angolo in alto a destra nella finestra di dialogo e fare clic sulla particolare impostazione per visualizzare la guida relativa.



■ Scheda Generale

Le impostazioni contenute in questa scheda si riferiscono all'intero driver di stampa.

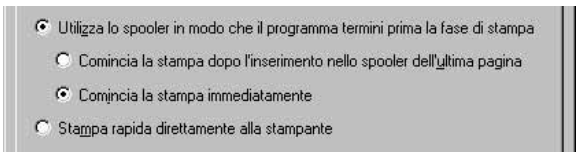
- LBP-660 non supporta l'opzione Foglio separatore. Anche se si seleziona il pulsante relativo all'opzione Foglio separatore, non verrà stampato nessun foglio.
- Non modificare le impostazioni predefinite nella finestra di dialogo Processore di stampa che compare quando si seleziona il pulsante Processore di stampa…. Se l'opzione Tipo di dati predefinito viene modificata, non sarà possibile stampare da client su cui non è in esecuzione Microsoft Windows NT.
- Se si desidera stampare una pagina di prova, fare clic sul pulsante Stampa pagina di prova in questa scheda. In Microsoft Windows Printing System per Microsoft Windows NT, la Finestra di stato Canon LBP-660 non contiene il pulsante Prova stampante.

■ Scheda Porte

Utilizzare questa scheda per selezionare la porta a cui è collegata LBP-660.
Se LBP-660 è già stata collegata e viene utilizzata, non è necessario modificare questa impostazione.

■ Scheda Pianificazione

- Utilizzare questa scheda per impostare orario di stampa, priorità di stampa e per specificare il metodo di spooling dei dati di stampa.
- Per LBP-660, selezionare sempre l'opzione "Utilizza lo spooler in modo che il programma termini prima la fase di stampa". Se si seleziona l'opzione "Stampa rapida direttamente alla stampante", non sarà possibile stampare dalle applicazioni.


Utilizza lo spooler in modo che il programma termini prima la fase di stampa
Comincia la stampa dopo l'inserimento nello spooler dell'ultima pagina
Comincia la stampa immediatamente
Stampa rapida direttamente alla stampante

- Selezionare l'opzione "Comincia la stampa dopo l'inserimento nello spooler dell'ultima pagina" o "Comincia la stampa immediatamente", come richiesto. Tuttavia va ricordato che questa opzione influisce sul funzionamento della barra di avanzamento nella Finestra di stato. Per ulteriori dettagli, vedere la sezione "Finestra di stato Canon LBP-660".

■ Scheda Condivisione

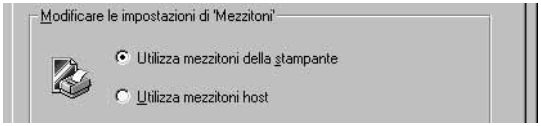
Questa scheda specifica se la stampante LBP-660 è condivisa. Per ulteriori dettagli, vedere il "Capitolo 2 Installazione di Microsoft Windows Printing System".

■ Scheda Protezione

Questa scheda imposta la protezione per la stampante LBP-660.
Per informazioni sulla protezione della stampante, fare riferimento ai manuali di Microsoft Windows NT.

■ Scheda Impostazioni periferica

Questa scheda specifica come gestire i mezzitoni durante la stampa della grafica. LBP-660 può stampare sia utilizzando i mezzitoni propri della stampante che i mezzitoni del sistema Microsoft Windows NT. Per selezionare i mezzitoni utilizzati, selezionare l'opzione Mezzitoni e utilizzare i pulsanti visualizzati nella finestra "Modificare le impostazioni di 'Mezzitoni'" per selezionare i mezzitoni desiderati.



Se si seleziona "Utilizza mezzitoni host", è possibile utilizzare la finestra di dialogo Proprietà colori / mezzitoni della periferica per modificare le impostazioni dei mezzitoni di sistema. Per ulteriori informazioni sulla modifica dei mezzitoni di sistema, fare riferimento alla guida o ai manuali di Microsoft Windows NT.



- L'impostazione di Regolazione colori mezzitoni nella finestra di dialogo Proprietà Documento predefinito (a cui si accede selezionando Impostazioni documento) cambia a seconda della gestione dei mezzitoni selezionata qui.

ITALIANO

Proprietà Documento predefinito

Nella finestra di dialogo Proprietà Documento predefinito, è possibile specificare le impostazioni predefinite per le opzioni di stampa disponibili quando si stampa su LBP-660. Per visualizzare le proprietà documento predefinito, selezionare “Impostazioni documento…” dal menu File nella cartella Stampanti o fare clic con il pulsante destro del mouse sull’icona di LBP-660 nella cartella Stampanti e selezionare “Impostazioni documento…” dal menu che compare.

La finestra di dialogo Proprietà Documento predefinito contiene le schede, frequentemente utilizzate, Impostazione pagina e Avanzate, per l’impostazione di opzioni di stampa più dettagliate. Per maggiori dettagli riguardo alle impostazioni, fare clic sul punto interrogativo (?) nell’angolo in alto a destra nella finestra di dialogo e quindi fare clic sull’impostazione specifica per visualizzare la guida relativa alla voce richiesta.



- E’ anche possibile aprire una finestra di dialogo equivalente e specificare le impostazioni selezionando “Stampa” o “Imposta pagina” dal menu File di un’applicazione. Va comunque ricordato che le impostazioni specificate da un’applicazione si riferiscono solo al documento creato al momento in quell’applicazione e non modificano le proprietà del documento predefinito.

■ Scheda Impostazione pagina

Questa scheda imposta parametri come il formato, l’orientamento della stampa e il numero delle copie.

Formato
Selezionare il formato dall’elenco. Se si seleziona Person. come formato carta, è necessario specificare il formato carta nella scheda Avanzate.

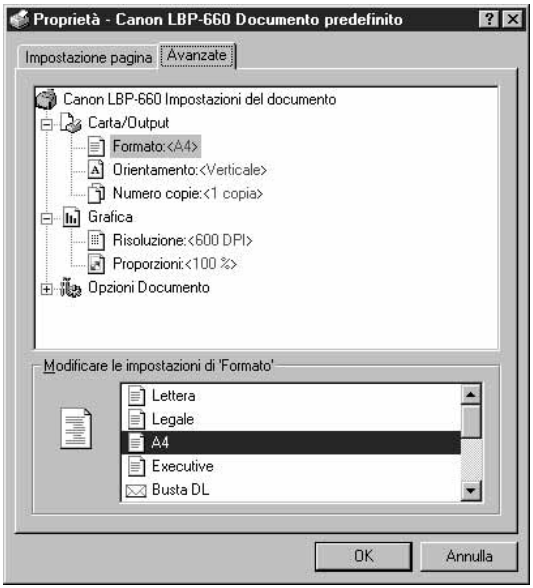
Numero copie
Nella casella di testo Numero copie, immettere il numero di copie che si desidera stampare.

Fascicola copie
Se in Numero copie sono state specificate 2 o più copie, fare clic nella casella Fascicola copie per stampare le copie fascicolate del documento.

Orientamento
Utilizzare i pulsanti delle opzioni per selezionare l’orientamento della stampa (Verticale o Orizzontale).

■ Scheda Avanzate

Le impostazioni contenute nella scheda Avanzate sono raggruppate sotto Carta/Output, Grafica e Opzioni Documento. Le opzioni di ciascun gruppo sono elencate gerarchicamente sotto il nome del gruppo. Per ogni opzione l'impostazione corrente viene mostrata in blu a destra dell'opzione. Se le opzioni non sono visualizzate, fare clic sul simbolo più (+) a sinistra del nome del gruppo.



Selezionando il nome dell'opzione che si intende modificare, in basso nella finestra di dialogo vengono visualizzate le impostazioni disponibili per quell'opzione (o i pulsanti per aprire altre finestre di dialogo). Selezionare o digitare la nuova impostazione. La nuova impostazione viene poi visualizzata in rosso a destra dell'opzione elencata. La visualizzazione in rosso indica che le nuove impostazioni non sono state ancora salvate come impostazioni predefinite del documento. Le nuove impostazioni non vengono salvate come predefinite finché non si seleziona il pulsante OK in basso nella finestra di dialogo.

Impostazioni del gruppo Carta/Output
Il gruppo Carta/Output è formato da 3 opzioni: Formato, Orientamento e Numero copie. Queste opzioni sono le stesse che sono contenute nella scheda Impostazione pagina, descritte sopra. Se si modificano queste opzioni, vengono modificate anche le opzioni nella scheda Impostazione pagina.

Impostazioni del gruppo Grafica
Il gruppo Grafica è formato da 2 opzioni: Risoluzione e Proporzioni.

- Risoluzione
  Utilizzare i tasti dell'opzione "Modificare le impostazioni di 'Risoluzione'" per selezionare la risoluzione per la stampa di LBP-660.
- Proporzioni
  Immettere il rapporto di ingrandimento o riduzione nella casella di testo "Modificare le impostazioni di 'Proporzioni'". E' possibile impostare un valore tra il 10% ed il 200% in incrementi dell'1%.

Impostazioni del gruppo Opzioni Documento
Il gruppo Opzioni Documento comprende 5 opzioni: Regolazione colori mezzitoni, Correzione automatica, Risparmio toner, Densità del toner e Formato carta personalizzato.

- Regolazione colori mezzitoni
  Fare clic sul pulsante Regolazione colori mezzitoni per aprire la finestra di dialogo corrispondente e regolare i mezzitoni della stampante.



- La finestra di dialogo Regolazione colori mezzitoni qui visualizzata cambia a seconda delle impostazioni presenti nella scheda Impostazioni periferica nella finestra Proprietà.
  - Se è selezionata l'opzione "Utilizza mezzitoni della stampante", viene visualizzata la finestra di dialogo originale di LBP-660 così come avviene quando viene selezionata la scheda Grafica nella finestra di dialogo Proprietà di Microsoft Windows 95.
    In questa finestra di dialogo, è possibile selezionare la rappresentazione dei mezzitoni (Sfumatura, Retinatura 1 o Retinatura 2) e regolare la Luminosità e il Contrasto. Per ulteriori informazioni, vedere la sezione intitolata "Gestione della grafica con scala di grigi" nel Manuale per l'Operatore.
  - Se è selezionata l'opzione "Utilizza mezzitoni host", viene visualizzata una scala di grigi e la finestra di dialogo Regolazione colori mezzitoni di Microsoft Windows NT. Per ulteriori informazioni sull'uso di questa finestra di dialogo, utilizzare la guida o fare riferimento ai manuali di Microsoft Windows NT.

- Correzione automatica
  Utilizzare questa opzione per selezionare l'attivazione o disattivazione della funzione Sfumatura di LBP-660.
- Risparmio toner
  Utilizzare questa opzione per selezionare l'attivazione o disattivazione della funzione di risparmio del toner.
- Densità del toner
  Utilizzare questa opzione per regolare su uno dei 5 livelli il toner usato durante la stampa. Media è la densità standard.
- Formato carta personalizzato
  Utilizzare questa opzione per impostare il formato della carta dopo aver selezionato Person. nella scheda Impostazione pagina. Fare clic sul pulsante Formato carta personalizzato per visualizzare la finestra di dialogo Formato carta personalizzato ed impostare l'altezza e la larghezza del foglio personalizzato.

Finestra di stato Canon LBP-660 per Microsoft Windows NT

Se LBP-660 è collegata ad un computer Microsoft Windows NT come stampante locale, la Finestra di stato Canon LBP-660 viene visualizzata automaticamente all'inizio della stampa su LBP-660 o quando è richiesto l'intervento dell'utente, ad esempio quando si verifica un errore.

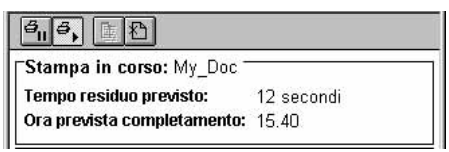
È anche possibile aprire in qualsiasi momento la Finestra di stato Canon LBP-660 facendo doppio clic sull'icona Finestra di stato Canon LBP-660 nel gruppo Windows Printing System. Si può poi usare la Finestra di stato Canon LBP-660 per controllare lo stato di avanzamento dei lavori di stampa, sospendere la stampa, riprendere la stampa ecc.



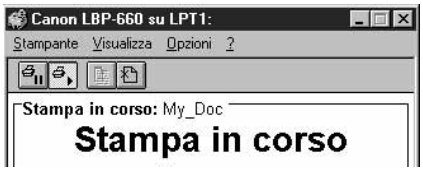
Questa Finestra di stato è praticamente identica a quella in Microsoft Windows Printing System per Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 e Microsoft Windows per Workgroup. Per ulteriori informazioni sull'uso della Finestra di stato, fare riferimento al Manuale per l'Operatore.

La presente descrizione si limita a quelle operazioni e funzioni in cui la Finestra di stato Canon LBP-660 per Microsoft Windows NT differisce dalla Finestra di stato presente in altre versioni di Microsoft Windows.

- Se l'opzione "Comincia la stampa dopo l'inserimento nello spooler dell'ultima pagina" è stata selezionata nella scheda Pianificazione nella finestra Proprietà, il tempo residuo previsto e l'ora prevista per il completamento vengono visualizzati nell'area messaggi durante la stampa del documento e la barra di avanzamento mostra il numero di pagine stampate ed il numero di pagine totali della stampa.



- Se si seleziona l'opzione "Comincia la stampa immediatamente", nell'area messaggi verrà visualizzato solo il messaggio "Stampa in corso" e la barra di avanzamento indicherà solo il numero di pagine stampate.



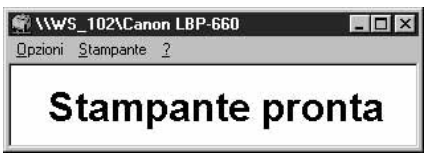
- Nella barra degli strumenti non è presente nessun pulsante Prova stampante. Per stampare una pagina di prova, utilizzare il pulsante Stampa pagina di prova nella scheda Generale, nella finestra di dialogo Proprietà.
- Nel menu Opzioni non c'è nessuna opzione Stampante. Per modificare la densità del toner, aprire la finestra di dialogo Proprietà Documento predefinito ed utilizzare l'opzione Densità del toner nella scheda Avanzate.
- La Modalità Client nel menu Opzioni permette di selezionare se un utente può sospendere la stampa, riprenderla, forzarla o annullarla dal Monitor di stato sulla rete su un client Microsoft Windows NT.
  Il segno di spunta accanto all'opzione Modalità Client abilita o disabilita le operazioni sopra descritte dal Monitor di stato sulla rete.

Monitor di stato sulla rete di LBP-660

Il Monitor di stato sulla rete di LBP-660 è una funzione che consente ad un client Microsoft Windows NT collegato alla stampante di rete di verificare lo stato di LBP-660, di sospendere, riprendere, forzare e annullare la stampa, esattamente come da una Finestra di stato sul desktop. Questa funzione è disponibile solo per i client Microsoft Windows NT e non può essere attivata da Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 o Microsoft Windows per Workgroup.

Il Monitor di stato sulla rete di LBP-660 visualizza solo lo stato della stampante come testo e non mostra una barra di avanzamento o grafica animata, come la Finestra di stato Canon LBP-660.

Collegando un client Microsoft Windows NT ad una stampante di rete, il Monitor di stato sulla rete viene automaticamente installato dal server di stampa.



Uso del Monitor di stato sulla rete di LBP-660

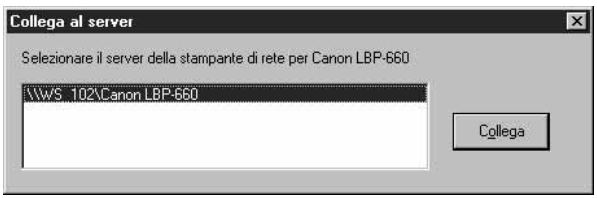
■ Avvio di Monitor di stato sulla rete

È possibile seguire la procedura sotto riportata per avviare il Monitor di stato sulla rete di LBP-660 in qualsiasi momento.

1. Fare doppio clic sull'icona Monitor di stato sulla rete di Canon LBP-660 nel gruppo Windows Printing System dal client oppure fare doppio clic sull'icona del collegamento rapido al Monitor di stato sulla rete di Canon LBP-660 dal desktop.

2. Quando viene visualizzato un messaggio che richiede se si desidera collegarsi ad una stampante di rete, fare clic sul pulsante Sì.

   - Viene visualizzata la finestra di dialogo per selezionare la stampante di rete a cui collegarsi.



3. Selezionare dall'elenco il nome della stampante a cui ci si vuole collegare e fare clic sul pulsante Collega.

   - Al termine del collegamento alla stampante di rete, in una casella di testo viene visualizzato lo stato della stampante corrente.

■ Opzioni di stato

La barra dei menu nel Monitor di stato sulla rete di LBP-660 contiene 3 menu: Opzioni, Stampante e ?.



Menu Opzioni
Utilizzare il menu Opzioni per specificare le opzioni relative alle funzioni del Monitor di stato sulla rete di LBP-660.

- Collega al server
  Selezionare questa opzione se il collegamento alla stampante di rete si interrompe per qualche ragione o se si desidera spostare il collegamento ad un'altra stampante di rete (solo LBP-660). La medesima finestra di dialogo Collega al server viene visualizzata quando si avvia il Monitor di stato sulla rete di LBP-660. Selezionare il nome della stampante desiderata e fare clic sul pulsante Collega.

- Opzione suoni
  Utilizzare questa opzione per selezionare l'eventuale utilizzo di messaggi vocali quando si verifica un errore relativo alla stampante.

- Il Monitor di stato sulla rete può solo riprodurre messaggi vocali quando si verifica un errore. Se non è stata installata una scheda sonora nel computer client, questa opzione viene visualizzata in grigio e non può essere selezionata.

- Formato predefinito
  Se il formato dello schermo del Monitor di stato sulla rete è stato modificato, questa opzione consente di riportarlo al suo formato originario.
- Nascondi menu
  Questa opzione nasconde i menu del Monitor di stato sulla rete. Per tornare a visualizzare la barra dei menu, premere **Esc** quando il Monitor di stato sulla rete è la finestra attiva o fare doppio clic in un qualsiasi punto nell'area di visualizzazione del messaggio.
- Sempre in primo piano
  Selezionando l'opzione Sempre in primo piano, il Monitor di stato sulla rete appare sempre come prima finestra sul desktop.

Menu Stampante
Utilizzare il menu Stampante per controllare le operazioni della stampante. Va tuttavia ricordato che se la Modalità Client non è selezionata nel menu Opzioni della Finestra di stato sul server di stampa, il menu Stampante appare in grigio e le operazioni della stampante non possono essere controllate da un client.

Per ulteriori dettagli riguardanti il menu Stampante, vedere "Uso del menu Stampante" nel Manuale per l'Operatore.

- Le opzioni del menu Stampante influiscono sui lavori di stampa degli altri client. Quando i lavori di stampa provenienti da diversi client vengono inviati in spool nella coda di stampa del server, l'annullamento della stampa può causare la perdita dei lavori di stampa di altri client. Tenere presente questa eventualità quando si annulla la stampa.

Menu ?
Questo menu apre una finestra di dialogo che visualizza informazioni sulla versione utilizzata del Monitor di stato sulla rete.

Capitolo 5
Individuazione e soluzione dei problemi

Questo capitolo descrive come risolvere i problemi che possono verificarsi durante l'installazione di Microsoft Windows Printing System per Microsoft Windows NT e durante l'utilizzo di LBP-660 come stampante di rete su una rete Microsoft Windows NT.

Fare riferimento al "Capitolo 6 Individuazione e soluzione dei problemi" nel Manuale per l'Operatore per istruzioni circa la risoluzione di eventuali problemi riguardanti la stampante stessa, (inceppamento carta, ecc.), difetti di qualità della stampa, problemi relativi a Microsoft Windows Printing System e ai messaggi di errore di Microsoft Windows Printing System.

Se non si è in grado di determinare la causa di un problema, avviare il Programma di individuazione dei problemi installato nel gruppo Windows Printing System. Il Programma di individuazione dei problemi può risolvere i problemi relativi ai file installati o alle impostazioni.

Se ancora non si riesce a risolvere il problema, disinstallare Microsoft Windows Printing System dal server di stampa, riavviare il server e quindi installare nuovamente Microsoft Windows Printing System. Per disinstallare Microsoft Windows Printing System, avviare il programma per la disinstallazione che si trova nel gruppo Windows Printing System.



- Dopo la disinstallazione di qualsiasi software, riavviare sempre Microsoft Windows NT. Se non si riavvia Microsoft Windows NT, non sarà possibile reinstallare il software rimosso.

ITALIANO

Problemi durante l'installazione di Microsoft Windows Printing System

Problemi durante l'installazione locale

Problema	Causa	Soluzione
Impossibile selezionare il pulsante Questo computer nella finestra Installazione stampante.	L'utente che installa il software non ha i privilegi di Administrator o di Power User.	I privilegi di Administrator sono necessari per l'installazione di Microsoft Windows Printing System. È necessario che l'installazione venga eseguita da qualcuno che disponga dei privilegi di Administrator.
Al termine della copia dei file, viene visualizzato un messaggio che informa che sono necessari i privilegi di Administrator.	Un utente con privilegi di Power User ha tentato di installare il software.	È necessario che la reinstallazione del software venga eseguita da qualcuno che disponga dei privilegi di Administrator.
Viene visualizzato un messaggio di errore che informa che è necessaria una nuova installazione.	Si sta eseguendo un'installazione locale su un computer su cui il driver di stampa LBP-660 è già stato installato in rete.	Eseguire nuovamente l'installazione locale e selezionare il pulsante relativo all'opzione Sostituisci il driver esistente nella finestra di dialogo Installazione stampante.

Problemi durante l'installazione in rete

Problema	Causa	Soluzione
Il nome della stampante condivisa o del server di stampa da collegare non viene visualizzato nell'elenco Stampanti condivise.	• Il server di stampa non è stato avviato. • La stampante non è stata configurata per la condivisione. • Non si hanno i privilegi richiesti per collegarsi alla stampante o al server di stampa.	• Avviare il server di stampa. • Impostare la stampante per la condivisione nella finestra di dialogo Proprietà. • Richiedere all'amministratore di rete di modificare i privilegi di utente.

Problemi durante la stampa in rete

Problema	Causa	Soluzione
Impossibile collegarsi al server di stampa o alla stampante condivisa nel Monitor di stato sulla rete.	• Il server di stampa non è stato avviato. • La stampante non è stata configurata per la condivisione. • Non si hanno i privilegi richiesti per collegarsi alla stampante o al server di stampa.	• Avviare il server di stampa. • Impostare la stampante per la condivisione nella finestra di dialogo Proprietà. • Richiedere all'amministratore di rete di modificare i privilegi di utente.
Impossibile utilizzare il menu Stampanti nel Monitor di stato sulla rete.	L'opzione Modalità Client non è stata selezionata nel menu Opzioni della Finestra di stato nel server di stampa.	Selezionare l'opzione Modalità Client nel menu Opzioni.
Impossibile stampare su un server di stampa Microsoft Windows 95/3.1 o Microsoft Windows per Workgroup da un client Microsoft Windows NT.	Microsoft Windows Printing System per Microsoft Windows NT non supporta i server di stampa Microsoft Windows 95/ 3.1 o Microsoft Windows per Workgroup.	Utilizzare un server di stampa Microsoft Windows NT.
Impossibile stampare da un client Microsoft Windows 95/ 3.1 o Microsoft Windows per Workgroup.	• La directory WPS sul server di stampa non è condivisa. • L'opzione Tipo di dati predefinito del server di stampa non è impostata su WPS.	• Specificare la condivisione per la directory WPS sul server di stampa. • Fare clic sul pulsante Processore di stampa nella scheda Generale nella finestra di dialogo Proprietà e selezionare WPS come Tipo di dati predefinito.

Appendice

Differenze tra Microsoft Windows Printing System di altre versioni di Microsoft Windows

Alcune delle funzioni di Microsoft Windows Printing System per Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 differiscono da quelle disponibili in Microsoft Windows Printing System per Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 e Microsoft Windows per Workgroup.

Durante la lettura del Manuale per l'Operatore di LBP-660 vanno ricordati i seguenti punti.

Durante la stampa, locale o in rete con Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 e la stampa in rete con Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 o Microsoft Windows per Workgroup

- Dal momento che non è possibile utilizzare l'emulazione PCL, non è possibile stampare dal Prompt dei comandi (Microsoft Windows NT) o dal Prompt di MS-DOS (Microsoft Windows 95).

Durante la stampa locale o in rete con Microsoft Windows NT 4.0

- E' impossibile utilizzare la funzione di sovrapposizione dei moduli.
- E' impossibile stampare la pagina di prova dalla Finestra di stato Canon LBP-660. Utilizzare il pulsante Stampa pagina di prova nella scheda Generale contenuta nella finestra di dialogo Proprietà.
- Non esiste nessuna voce Opzioni stampante nel menu Opzioni nella Finestra di stato Canon LBP-660.
  Impostare la densità del toner nel gruppo Opzioni Documento della scheda Avanzate nella finestra di dialogo Proprietà Documento predefinito.

Canon

IMPRESORA LÁSER LBP-660

ESPAÑOL

Guía de Microsoft® Windows® Printing System para Microsoft® Windows NT®

IMPORTANTE:
Lea atentamente esta guía antes de utilizar la impresora. Guárdela por si necesita consultarla más adelante.

Copyright

Copyright © 1998 Canon Inc. Reservados todos los derechos
Copyright © 1996 Microsoft Corporation. Reservados todos los derechos

Aviso

Canon Inc. no ofrece ninguna garantía de ningún tipo en relación a este material, ni expresa ni implícita, excepto la proporcionada aquí, que incluye garantías para la comercialización, para el uso particular o contra la infracción de cualquier patente, pero sin limitarse a ellas. Canon Inc. no se hace responsable de ningún daño directo, indirecto o accidental de cualquier naturaleza, ni de las pérdidas o gastos resultantes del uso de este material.
Este documento contiene información de propiedad que está protegida por derechos de autor. Están reservados todos los derechos. No se permite fotocopiar, reproducir ni traducir a otro idioma parte alguna de este documento sin el consentimiento previo y por escrito de Canon Inc.
El uso de este documento está sujeto a los términos del Contrato de Licencia (Microsoft® Windows® Printing System) que se entrega junto con la impresora.
La información contenida en este documento está sujeta a cambios sin previo aviso.

Marcas registradas

LBP, Canon y el logotipo de Canon son marcas comerciales de Canon Inc.
PCL es una marca comercial de Hewlett-Packard Company.
IBM es una marca comercial de International Business Machines Corporation.
Microsoft, Windows, Windows NT, el logotipo de Windows y MS-DOS son marcas registradas o marcas comerciales de Microsoft Corporation en los Estados Unidos y/u otros países.
NetWare® es una marca comercial registrada y Novell es una marca comercial de Novell, Inc.
TrueType es una marca comercial de Apple Computer, Inc.
Lucida es una marca comercial de Bigelow & Homes.
Otras marcas y nombres de productos son marcas comerciales o marcas comerciales registradas de sus compañías respectivas.
En esta guía se hace referencia a Microsoft®, Microsoft® Windows® y Microsoft® Windows NT® como Microsoft, Microsoft Windows y Microsoft Windows NT, respectivamente.

Convenciones

En esta guía se utilizan las convenciones siguientes:



Las Notas facilitan consejos y sugerencias para que obtenga el máximo rendimiento de su impresora.



Indica que el incumplimiento del procedimiento o de la práctica sugerida podría dañar el hardware o el software.

Capítulo 1
Introducción

Acerca de esta guía

En esta Guía de Microsoft® Windows® Printing System (en adelante, Microsoft Windows Printing System) para Microsoft® Windows NT® (en adelante, Microsoft Windows NT) se describe cómo instalar y utilizar Microsoft Windows Printing System para Microsoft Windows NT en una computadora donde se ejecute Microsoft Windows NT versión 4.0 (para servidores o estaciones de trabajo) y que esté conectada a una impresora láser Canon LBP-660.

Esta guía está compuesta por los capítulos siguientes:

Capítulo 1 Introducción 1

En este capítulo se describe cómo utilizar esta guía, así como los requisitos del sistema para instalar Microsoft Windows Printing System en un PC donde se ejecute Microsoft Windows NT.

Capítulo 2 Instalación de Microsoft Windows Printing System 3

En este capítulo se describe el procedimiento de instalación de Microsoft Windows Printing System para Microsoft Windows NT cuando se utiliza la LBP-660 como impresora local; y cómo compartir una impresora LBP-660 en una red Microsoft Windows NT.

Capítulo 3 Conexión a la LBP-660 como impresora de red 10

En este capítulo se describe la utilización de la impresora LBP-660 desde otras computadoras donde se ejecute Microsoft Windows NT, y desde otras computadoras donde se ejecute Microsoft® Windows® 95 (en adelante, Microsoft Windows), Microsoft Windows 3.1 o Microsoft Windows para Trabajo en Grupo.

Capítulo 4 Utilización de Microsoft Windows Printing System 13

En este capítulo se describe la utilización del Supervisor de estado de la red, la ventana de estado de la impresora LBP-660, y los cuadros de diálogo Propiedades de Microsoft Windows Printing System para Microsoft Windows NT.

Capítulo 5 Resolución de problemas 23

En este capítulo se describen los procedimientos para resolver los problemas que pueden surgir durante la instalación de Microsoft Windows Printing System y cuando utilice Microsoft Windows Printing System en una red Microsoft Windows NT.

Apéndice 26

En esta sección del Apéndice figuran los aspectos en los que se diferencia Microsoft Windows Printing System para Microsoft Windows NT respecto a Microsoft Windows Printing System para Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 y Microsoft Windows para Trabajo en Grupo, descritos en el Manual del usuario de la impresora LBP-660.

ESPAÑOL

Consideraciones previas a la instalación del software

Antes de instalar Microsoft Windows Printing System en un PC donde se ejecute Microsoft Windows NT, compruebe si el PC cumple los requisitos de hardware y software que se enumeran a continuación.

- PC IBM o compatible, con una CPU Pentium 90 MHz o superior y Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 (para servidores o estaciones de trabajo) instalado.



- El programa Microsoft Windows Printing System para la impresora LBP-660 que se describe en esta guía se ejecuta en Microsoft Windows NT versión 4.0 para sistemas PC/AT compatibles. Microsoft Windows Printing System no funciona en sistemas donde se ejecute Microsoft Windows NT versión 3.51 o inferior, o bien Microsoft Windows NT para procesadores basados en RISC.
- Si trabaja en una red Novell NetWare®, no puede instalar este software en un servidor NetWare®. No puede utilizar este software para imprimir desde clientes Novell Netware® para Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 o Microsoft Windows para Trabajo en Grupo.

- 24 MB de RAM como mínimo
- 10 MB de espacio libre en disco como mínimo
- Unidad de CD-ROM
- Puerto paralelo de impresora estándar Centronics (cuando la impresora LBP está conectada como una impresora local)
- Tarjeta de interfaz de red (cuando la impresora LBP está compartida en la red)

Puede instalar Microsoft Windows Printing System en computadoras que no cumplan los requisitos mencionados, pero Canon no garantiza que el funcionamiento del software en tales casos sea correcto. Para crear el entorno óptimo y obtener el máximo rendimiento posible de la impresora LBP-660, se recomienda disponer del hardware y software siguientes:

- CPU Pentium 166 MHz o superior
- 48 MB de RAM como mínimo
- Puerto de impresora ECP
- Tarjeta de sonido (necesaria para los mensajes de voz de Microsoft Windows Printing System)

Si desea compartir la impresora LBP-660 en la red, debe instalar uno de estos protocolos de red:

- NetBEUI
- TCP/IP
- NWLink IPX/SPX



- Para realizar la instalación de Microsoft Windows Printing System para Microsoft Windows NT, necesitará privilegios de Administrador. La instalación deberá llevarla a cabo un administrador de red o un gestor de impresión con privilegios de Administrador.

Capítulo 2
Instalación de Microsoft Windows Printing System

Para instalar Microsoft Windows Printing System para Microsoft Windows NT, utilice el disco de instalación Microsoft Windows Printing System para Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 adjunto.

Instalación de Microsoft Windows Printing System para impresoras locales

En esta sección se describe el procedimiento de instalación de Microsoft Windows Printing System para utilizar la LBP-660 como impresora local. Si desea una descripción acerca de la conexión de la LBP-660 como impresora de red, consulte el "Capítulo 3 Conexión a la LBP-660 como impresora de red".

Inicio del programa Agregar asistente de impresora

Utilice Agregar asistente de impresora de Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 para instalar Microsoft Windows Printing System en Microsoft Windows NT. Siga estas instrucciones para instalar el software.

1. Encienda la computadora a la que está conectada la impresora LBP-660 e inicie Microsoft Windows NT 4.0.

2. Inicie la sesión como Administrador.

3. Elija uno de estos métodos para iniciar el programa Agregar asistente de impresora:

   a. Haga clic en el botón Inicio de la barra de tareas y coloque el puntero del ratón en Configuración. En el submenú que aparece, seleccione Impresoras para abrir la carpeta del mismo nombre, y haga doble clic en el icono Agregar impresora de la carpeta Impresoras.

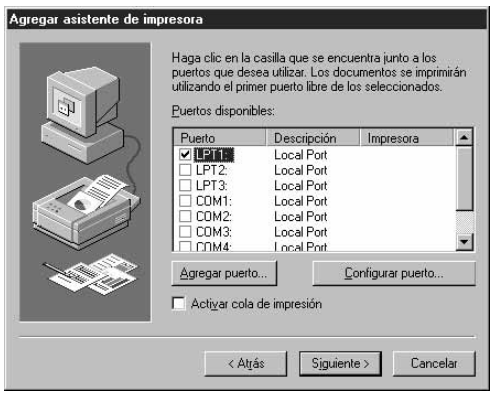
   b. Haga clic en Mi equipo en el escritorio para abrir Mi equipo. A continuación, abra la carpeta Impresoras y haga doble clic en el icono Agregar impresora.

- Aparece la ventana Agregar asistente de impresora para instalar controladores de impresión.


Agregar asistente de impresora
Este Asistente le ayuda a instalar su impresora o a establecer conexiones de impresora. Esta impresora será administrada por:
Mi equipo
Todas las configuraciones se administrarán y configurarán en este equipo.
Servidor de impresora de red
Conectarse a una impresora en otra máquina. La configuración de esta impresora se administra por un servidor de impresión que ha sido instalado por un administrador.
< Atrás
Siguiente >
Cancelar

4. Verifique que el botón de la opción Mi equipo de la ventana Agregar asistente de impresora esté seleccionado, y haga clic en el botón Siguiente >.
   - Se abrirá la ventana de selección del puerto de conexión.

Selección del puerto de la impresora



1. Haga clic en la casilla de verificación que corresponde al puerto al que la impresora LBP-660 está conectada (generalmente LPT1:) para seleccionarlo, y luego haga clic en el botón Siguiente >.



- La impresora LBP-660 sólo puede conectarse a un puerto LPT (paralelo). No podrá imprimir en la LBP-660 si selecciona un puerto serie o cualquier otro puerto que no sea el que está conectado a la impresora LBP-660.

   - Verá la ventana de selección de modelo de impresora, en la que figura una lista de fabricantes de impresoras y de modelos que Microsoft Windows NT admite como estándares.

2. La impresora LBP-660 no aparece en la lista; por ello debe insertar el CD-ROM de instalación de Microsoft Windows Printing System para Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 en la unidad de CD-ROM y a continuación hacer clic en el botón Utilizar disco….

3. Cuando aparezca el cuadro de diálogo Instalar desde disco, escriba el nombre de la unidad que corresponda a la unidad de CD-ROM en la casilla de texto "Copiar los archivos del fabricante de"; a continuación, haga clic en el botón Examinar….

4. Haga doble clic en la carpeta Winnt40 del cuadro de diálogo Ubicar archivo.
   - En dicho diálogo se muestran las carpetas correspondientes a cada idioma.



5. Haga doble clic en la carpeta que indica la versión del idioma de Microsoft Windows NT que esté utilizando.
   - Cuando aparezca Wpsc3nt en el cuadro de diálogo Ubicar archivo, haga clic en el botón Abrir.



- Si en la lista no figura la carpeta del idioma que está utilizando en Microsoft Windows NT, seleccione la carpeta que corresponda al idioma Inglés.

6. Haga clic en el botón Aceptar en el cuadro de diálogo Instalar desde disco.

7. Cuando aparezca "Canon LBP-660" en la lista Impresoras del diálogo Agregar asistente de impresora, haga clic en el botón Siguiente >.
   - Aparece una ventana que asigna el nombre "Canon LBP-660" a la impresora en el campo Nombre de impresora. Si desea modificar el nombre de la impresora, escriba el nombre nuevo tal como le indiquen los mensajes de la pantalla.

8. Haga clic en el botón Siguiente >.
   - A continuación, aparece la ventana correspondiente a los valores de compartir la impresora.

ESPAÑOL

Configuración para compartir la impresora

En esta sección se describe el procedimiento necesario para especificar si se va a compartir o no la impresora LBP-660 en una red. Los valores de compartir la impresora también pueden especificarse una vez haya instalado Microsoft Windows Printing System. Consulte la sección que lleva por título ”Compartir la impresora” si desea más información.


Agregar asistente de impresora
Indique si esta impresora va a ser compartida con otros usuarios de la red. Si desea compartirla, asígnele el nombre con el que desea compartirla.
No compartida
Compartida
Recurso compartido: CanonLBP
Seleccione el sistema operativo de todos los equipos que van a utilizar esta impresora.
Windows 95
Windows NT 4.0 MIPS
Windows NT 4.0 Alpha
Windows NT 4.0 PPC
< Atrás
Siguiente >
Cancelar

1. Para compartir la impresora LBP-660 en una red, seleccione el botón de opción Compartida.

2. Haga clic en el botón Siguiente >.

   - Aparece una ventana que le pregunta si desea imprimir una página de prueba.

Configuración para imprimir una página de prueba

Una vez terminada la instalación de Microsoft Windows Printing System, puede imprimir una página de prueba en la LBP-660.

1. Para imprimir una página de prueba, basta con hacer clic en el botón Terminar; se imprimirá una página de prueba automáticamente. Si no desea imprimirla, seleccione el botón No y luego haga clic en el botón Terminar.

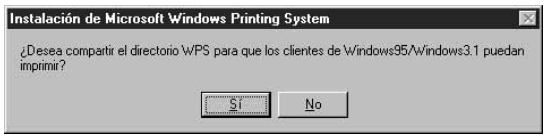
Al hacer clic en el botón Terminar, los archivos pertinentes del disco de instalación se copian en el disco duro. Durante el proceso de copia, aparece un cuadro de mensaje con una barra de progreso.

Al finalizar la copia, aparece el icono Canon LBP-660 en la carpeta Impresoras.
La forma que adopta el icono Canon LBP-660 en la carpeta Impresoras difiere según el valor especificado sobre compartir la impresora.

A continuación, verá el mensaje ”Inicializando… Por favor, espere” mientras Microsoft Windows Printing System comienza el proceso de inicialización. Durante dicho proceso, se crea el grupo Microsoft Windows Printing System y se agrega al menú Inicio. La ventana Windows Printing System también aparece en el escritorio, además de un icono de acceso directo al grupo Microsoft Windows Printing System (vea la página siguiente).

Si desea conectarse a la impresora LBP-660 e imprimir desde un cliente Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 o Microsoft Windows para Trabajo en Grupo que a su vez esté conectado a la red Microsoft Windows NT, haga clic en el botón Sí cuando aparezca el cuadro de diálogo siguiente.

Si no desea compartir la impresora LBP-660, o si todos los clientes de que dispone son máquinas Microsoft Windows NT, haga clic en el botón No.


Instalación de Microsoft Windows Printing System
¿Desea compartir el directorio WPS para que los clientes de Windows95/Windows3.1 puedan imprimir?
Sí
No

Finalización de la instalación

Cuando termina la instalación de Microsoft Windows Printing System, se visualiza un mensaje de confirmación. Haga clic en el botón Aceptar para dar por concluida la instalación.

Si durante la instalación del controlador de impresión optó por imprimir una página de prueba, se imprimirá ahora. Si el proceso completo de instalación ha sido satisfactorio, aparecerá la ventana de estado de la impresora LBP-660 en el escritorio, y la página de prueba se imprimirá en la LBP-660. Supervise la página de prueba y haga clic en el botón Sí del cuadro de diálogo de conclusión de la página de prueba para cerrarlo.

Una vez finalizada la instalación de Microsoft Windows Printing System, ya puede empezar a imprimir en la computadora Microsoft Windows NT donde se instaló la LBP-660 como impresora local. No obstante, primero deberá reiniciar Microsoft Windows NT si desea utilizar esta computadora como servidor de impresión y realizar las impresiones desde un cliente a través de la red.

El grupo Windows Printing System que se creó durante la instalación de Microsoft Windows Printing System contiene 6 iconos, que se ilustran a continuación.


Windows Printing System
Archivo Edición Ver Ayuda
Ayuda de la impresora Canon LBP-660
Desinstalación de Canon LBP-660
Instalación de fuentes de la Canon LBP-660
Readme de Canon LBP-660
Resolución de problemas de Canon LBP-660
Ventana de estado de Canon LBP-660
6 objetos
3,87KB

Instalación de fuentes de la Canon LBP-660
Es una utilidad que sirve para instalar en Microsoft Windows NT las fuentes TrueType (22 fuentes Lucida TrueType) que se encuentran en el disco #3 de los discos de instalación de Microsoft Windows 95/3.1. Para instalar las fuentes TrueType, haga doble clic en el icono Instalación de fuentes de la Canon LBP-660 y siga las instrucciones de los mensajes que aparezcan en la pantalla.

- Las fuentes TrueType que estén instaladas no se eliminarán aunque utilice el programa de desinstalación para desinstalar Microsoft Windows Printing System.

Ayuda de la impresora Canon LBP-660
Visualiza la ayuda del programa Microsoft Windows Printing System.

Readme de Canon LBP-660
Se trata de un archivo de texto que contiene información adicional sobre la versión instalada de Microsoft Windows Printing System. Lea este archivo antes de empezar a utilizar Microsoft Windows Printing System.

Ventana de estado de Canon LBP-660
Este icono abre la ventana de estado de la impresora Canon LBP-660.

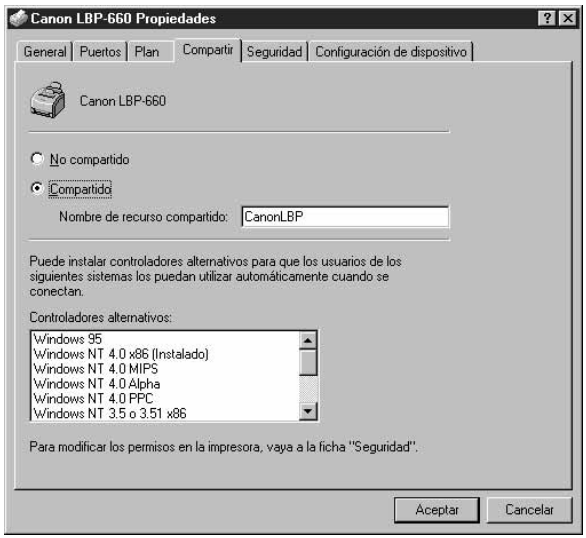
Resolución de problemas de Canon LBP-660
Es un programa de utilidad que sirve para resolver los problemas que pueden surgir en Microsoft Windows Printing System. Consulte el capítulo ”Resolución de problemas” del Manual del usuario si desea información sobre el empleo de esta utilidad.

Desinstalación de Canon LBP-660
Es un programa de utilidad que sirve para desinstalar el programa Microsoft Windows Printing System. Consulte el capítulo ”Resolución de problemas” del Manual del usuario si desea información sobre el empleo de esta utilidad.

Compartir la impresora

Cuando haya terminado de instalar Microsoft Windows Printing System, designe la LBP-660 como impresora compartida empleando para ello el cuadro de diálogo Canon LBP-660 Propiedades.

1. Siga el procedimiento que se indica a continuación para abrir la ficha Compartir del cuadro de diálogo Canon LBP-660 Propiedades.
   - Abra la carpeta Impresoras, haga clic con el botón derecho del ratón en el icono LBP-660 y seleccione Compartir… en el menú emergente.



2. Para compartir la impresora LBP-660, haga clic en el botón de opción Compartido.

- Al seleccionar Compartido, el nombre que aparece en el cuadro de texto Nombre de recurso compartido corresponde a los 8 primeros caracteres del nombre de la impresora que se utilizó en la instalación, sin incluir espacios en blanco. Puede cambiar el nombre escribiendo directamente en el cuadro de texto.
  Si entre los clientes que comparten la impresora en la red se incluye algún sistema con Microsoft Windows 3.1 o Microsoft Windows para Trabajo en Grupo, cerciórese de que el Nombre de recurso compartido no esté compuesto por más de 8 caracteres.

- Si designa la impresora como impresora compartida, no seleccione el sistema operativo en la lista de Controladores alternativos de la mitad inferior del cuadro de diálogo. El controlador LBP-660 no puede instalarse en sistemas que no sean Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 (x86).

3. Haga clic en el botón Aceptar.
   - La LBP-660 queda designada como impresora compartida y el icono que aparece en la carpeta Impresoras adopta la imagen de impresora compartida.

ESPAÑOL

Capítulo 3
Conexión a la LBP-660 como impresora de red

Si designa la impresora LBP-660 como impresora compartida en la computadora Microsoft Windows NT a la que la LBP-660 está conectada, y a continuación designa dicha computadora como servidor de impresión, no sólo los clientes Microsoft Windows NT podrán utilizar la impresora LBP-660; también podrán hacerlo los clientes Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 y Microsoft Windows para Trabajo en Grupo que estén conectados a la red Microsoft Windows NT.



- Si desea utilizar la computadora Microsoft Windows NT a la que está conectada la impresora LBP-660 como servidor de impresión, primero debe iniciar el servicio Servidor de dicha computadora. Inicie el servicio Servidor antes de conectar la impresora de red.
- Si desea conectarse a un servidor de impresión Microsoft Windows NT desde una computadora cliente e imprimir un documento, el cliente debe tener los privilegios de acceso necesarios para conectarse al servidor y a la impresora compartida. Si no sabe con seguridad cuáles son sus privilegios de acceso, consulte al administrador de la red.

Conexión desde un cliente Microsoft Windows NT

Si el cliente que está utilizando la LBP-660 como impresora de red utiliza Microsoft Windows NT, con solo agregar la impresora, se transfieren e instalan automáticamente el controlador de impresión y el Supervisor de estado de la red desde el servidor de impresión. No es necesario disponer de privilegios de Administrador para agregar la impresora. Por lo general, cualquier usuario puede efectuar este proceso.

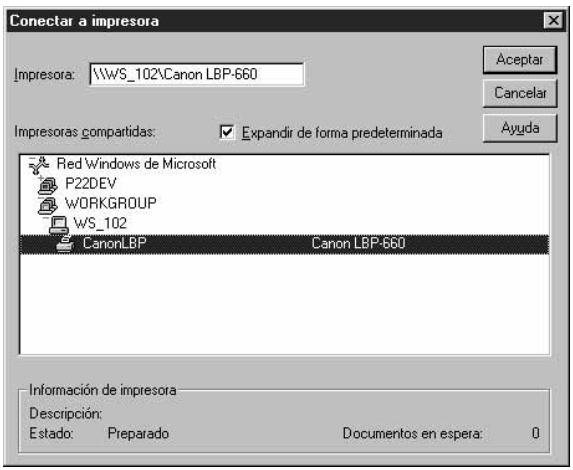
Inicio del programa Agregar asistente de impresora

1. Encienda la computadora cliente, inicie Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 e inicie la sesión.
2. Inicie el programa Agregar asistente de impresora.
   - En el ”Capítulo 2 Instalación de Microsoft Windows Printing System” encontrará información sobre cómo iniciar el programa Agregar asistente de impresora.

Selección de la impresora de red


Agregar asistente de impresora
Este Asistente le ayuda a instalar su impresora o a establecer conexiones de impresora. Esta impresora será administrada por:
Mi equipo
Todas las configuraciones se administrarán y configurarán en este equipo.
Servidor de impresora de red
Conectarse a una impresora en otra máquina. La configuración de esta impresora se administra por un servidor de impresión que ha sido instalado por un administrador.
< Atrás
Siguiente >
Cancelar

1. Haga clic en el botón de opción Servidor de impresora de red y luego en el botón Siguiente >. Aparecerá la ventana Conectar a impresora.



2. Haga doble clic en el nombre del servidor de impresión que figura en el cuadro de lista Impresoras compartidas.
   - Al hacer doble clic en el nombre del servidor de impresión, aparece una lista con las impresoras compartidas que están conectadas al servidor de impresión.
3. Haga clic en el nombre de impresora compartida que corresponda a la LBP-660 a la que desea conectarse.
   - En el cuadro de texto Impresora aparecerá la ruta de la red de la impresora seleccionada.

ESPAÑOL

4. Haga clic en el botón Aceptar.

   - A continuación, el controlador de impresión LBP-660 y el Supervisor de estado de la red se transfieren desde el servidor y se instalan en el cliente.
   - Cuando el software se haya transferido correctamente, aparecerá el icono Canon LBP-660 en la carpeta Impresoras, y el grupo Windows Printing System en el menú Inicio. También se crea en el escritorio un acceso directo al Supervisor de estado de la red (WpsC3Nsm.exe).

5. Haga clic en el botón Terminar del diálogo Agregar asistente de impresora.

Conexión desde un cliente Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 o Microsoft Windows para Trabajo en Grupo

Si desea conectarse a la LBP-660 desde un cliente Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 o Microsoft Windows para Trabajo en Grupo a través de un servidor de impresión Microsoft Windows NT, primero debe instalar en el cliente el programa LBP-660 Microsoft Windows Printing System que corresponda al sistema operativo pertinente. Si desea información sobre el procedimiento de instalación de Microsoft Windows Printing System en un cliente Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 o Microsoft Windows para Trabajo en Grupo, consulte el Manual del usuario.

Capítulo 4
Utilización de Microsoft Windows Printing System

El funcionamiento de Microsoft Windows Printing System para Microsoft Windows NT es básicamente el mismo que el de Microsoft Windows Printing System para otras versiones de Microsoft Windows. En el ”Capítulo 3 Utilización de Microsoft Windows Printing System” del Manual del usuario encontrará una descripción general de Microsoft Windows Printing System.

Cuadros de diálogo de Microsoft Windows Printing System

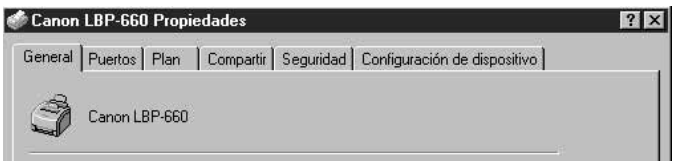
Microsoft Windows Printing System para Microsoft Windows NT tiene dos cuadros de diálogo principales: Propiedades de la impresora y Propiedades predeterminadas del documento. Cualquier usuario puede abrir estos cuadros de diálogo y comprobar sus valores, pero únicamente los usuarios que tengan privilegios de acceso ”Control total” de la impresora pueden modificarlos.

Propiedades de la impresora

Para consultar las propiedades de la impresora, seleccione Propiedades en el menú Archivo de la carpeta Impresoras, o bien haga clic con el botón derecho del ratón en el icono LBP-660 de la carpeta Impresoras y seleccione Propiedades en el menú emergente.

El cuadro de diálogo Propiedades de la impresora dispone de 6 fichas, descritas a continuación. Los valores especificados en cada ficha son comunes a todas las impresoras Microsoft Windows NT. Por ello, la descripción que se facilita aquí constituye tan solo una visión general de las fichas, y comprende algunos puntos referentes a la utilización específica de la LBP-660.

Si desea una explicación detallada de los diversos valores, consulte los manuales de Microsoft Windows NT. También puede hacer clic en el interrogante (?) situado en el ángulo superior derecho del cuadro de diálogo, y a continuación en el valor específico para que aparezca la ayuda emergente relacionada con el elemento en cuestión.



■ Ficha General

Los valores de esta ficha se aplican al controlador de impresión en su totalidad.

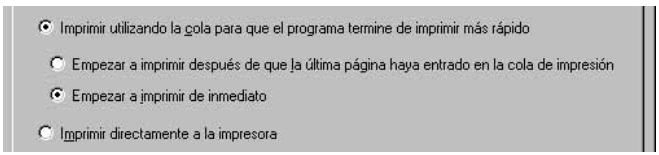
- La LBP-660 no admite páginas separadoras. Aunque haga clic en el botón de opción Página separadora para definir una página de separación, no se imprimirá ninguna página de separación.
- No modifique los valores predeterminados del cuadro de diálogo Procesador de impresión que aparece al hacer clic en el botón Procesador de impresión …. Si cambia el Tipo de datos predeterminado, no podrá imprimir específicamente desde clientes donde no se ejecute Microsoft Windows NT.
- Si desea imprimir una página de prueba, haga clic en el botón Imprimir página de prueba de esta ficha. La ventana de estado de la impresora LBP-660 no contiene, en Microsoft Windows Printing System para Microsoft Windows NT, un botón Prueba de impresión.

■ Ficha Puertos

En esta ficha puede seleccionar el puerto al que la impresora LBP-660 está conectada.
Si ya ha conectado la LBP-660 y la está utilizando, no es necesario cambiar este valor.

■ Ficha Plan

- En esta ficha puede planificar una hora específica para la impresión, definir las prioridades de impresión y especificar el método de envío de los datos de impresión a la cola de impresión.
- Cuando utilice la LBP-660, seleccione siempre el botón de opción ”Imprimir utilizando la cola para que el programa termine de imprimir más rápido”. Si, por el contrario, selecciona la opción ”Imprimir directamente a la impresora”, no podrá imprimir desde las aplicaciones.


Imprimir utilizando la cola para que el programa termine de imprimir más rápido
Empezar a imprimir después de que la última página haya entrado en la cola de impresión
Empezar a imprimir de inmediato
Imprimir directamente a la impresora

- Seleccione la opción ”Empezar a imprimir después de que la última página haya entrado en la cola de impresión” o bien ”Empezar a imprimir de inmediato”, según convenga. Observe, sin embargo, que esta opción afecta al funcionamiento de la barra de progreso de la ventana de estado. En la sección ”Ventana de estado de LBP-660” encontrará más información.

■ Ficha Compartir

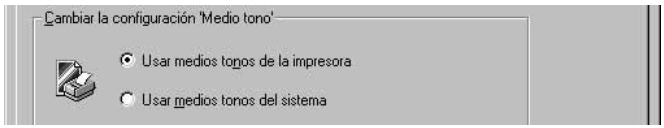
En esta ficha puede especificar si desea compartir la impresora LBP-660. El ”Capítulo 2 Instalación de Microsoft Windows Printing System” contiene más información al respecto.

■ Ficha Seguridad

En esta ficha puede definir el nivel de seguridad de la LBP-660.
Consulte los manuales de Microsoft Windows NT si desea más información sobre la seguridad de la impresora.

■ Ficha Configuración de dispositivo

En esta ficha se especifica la forma en que se manejan los medios tonos cuando se imprimen gráficos. La LBP-660 puede imprimir utilizando los valores de medios tonos propios de la impresora o bien los del sistema Microsoft Windows NT. Para seleccionar los medios tonos, haga clic en la opción Medio tono y utilice los botones de opción "Cambiar la configuración 'Medio tono'" para seleccionar los medios tonos que desea utilizar.



Si selecciona "Usar medios tonos del sistema", emplee el cuadro de diálogo Propiedades de color y medio tono del dispositivo para cambiar la configuración de medios tonos del sistema. Si desea más información sobre el procedimiento para cambiar los medios tonos del sistema, remítase a la ayuda o a los manuales de Microsoft Windows NT.



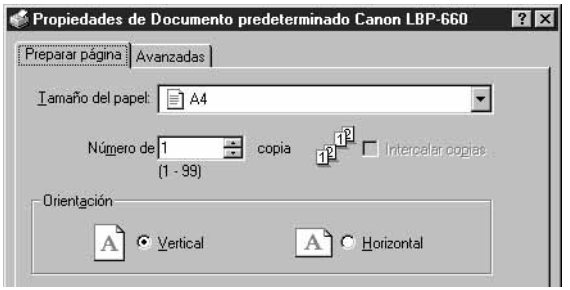
- El funcionamiento del valor Ajuste de color de medios tonos de las Propiedades del documento varía según el método de manejo de medios tonos que haya seleccionado aquí.

ESPAÑOL

Propiedades del documento predeterminado

En el cuadro de diálogo Propiedades del documento predeterminado puede especificar la configuración predeterminada de las opciones de impresión que deben estar disponibles en el momento de imprimir en la LBP-660. Para comprobar las propiedades predeterminadas de un documento, seleccione ”Valores predeterminados del documento…” en el menú Archivo de la carpeta Impresoras, o bien haga clic con el botón derecho del ratón en el icono LBP-660 de la carpeta Impresoras y seleccione ”Valores predeterminados del documento…” en el menú emergente.

El cuadro de diálogo Propiedades del documento predeterminado contiene la ficha Preparar página, de uso frecuente, y la ficha Avanzadas, con opciones de impresión más precisas. Si desea información más detallada sobre los diferentes valores, haga clic en el interrogante (?) situado en el ángulo superior derecho del cuadro de diálogo, y a continuación en el valor específico para que aparezca la ayuda emergente relacionada con el elemento en cuestión.



- También puede abrir un cuadro de diálogo equivalente y especificar los valores seleccionando ”Imprimir” o ”Preparar página” en el menú Archivo de una aplicación. Observe, sin embargo, que los valores que se especifican desde una aplicación sólo se aplican al documento que se utiliza en dicha aplicación, y no influye en la configuración predeterminada del documento.

■ Ficha Preparar página

En esta ficha se definen parámetros como el tamaño del papel, la orientación de impresión y el número de copias.

Tamaño del papel
Seleccione el tamaño del papel a partir del cuadro de lista desplegable. Si selecciona el valor ”Person.” como tamaño de papel, deberá especificar el tamaño del papel en la ficha Avanzadas.

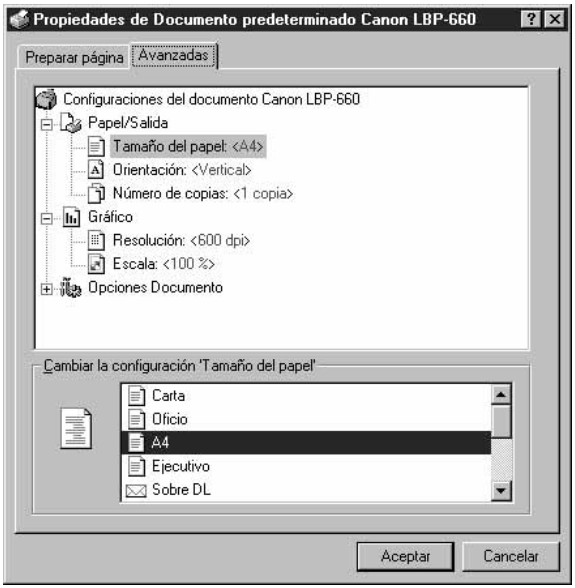
Número de copias
Escriba, en el cuadro de texto Número de copias, el número de copias que desea imprimir.

Intercalar copias
Si ha especificado 2 o más copias en el cuadro Número de copias, marque el cuadro Intercalar copias para que las copias del documento se impriman en orden.

Orientación
Utilice los botones de opción para seleccionar la orientación de impresión (Horizontal o Vertical).

■ Ficha Avanzadas

Los valores de la ficha Avanzadas están agrupados en Papel/Salida, Gráfico y Opciones Documento. Las opciones de cada grupo se enumeran debajo de cada nombre de grupo siguiendo una jerarquía. El valor vigente de cada opción se muestra de color azul a la derecha de la opción. Si las opciones no están visibles, haga clic en el símbolo más (+) situado a la izquierda del nombre del grupo.



Al hacer clic en el nombre de la opción que desea modificar, aparecerán los valores disponibles de dicha opción (o los botones que abren otros cuadros de diálogo) en la parte inferior del cuadro de diálogo. Seleccione o escriba el nuevo valor. Este nuevo valor aparecerá entonces de color rojo a la derecha de la opción de la lista. Esta presentación en rojo indica que el nuevo valor aún no se ha guardado como valor predeterminado del documento. Los valores nuevos no se guardan como valores predeterminados del documento hasta que haga clic en el botón Aceptar situado en la parte inferior del cuadro de diálogo.

Valores del grupo Papel/Salida
El grupo Papel/Salida consta de 3 opciones: Tamaño del papel, Orientación y Número de copias. Estas opciones son las mismas que las que aparecen en la ficha Preparar página descrita anteriormente. Si cambia los valores aquí, también se cambian en la ficha Preparar página.

ESPAÑOL

Valores del grupo Gráfico
El grupo Gráfico consta de 2 opciones: Resolución y Escala.

- Resolución
  Los botones de opción ”Cambiar la configuración ’Resolución’” sirven para seleccionar la resolución con la que imprime la LBP-660.
- Escala
  Escriba el porcentaje de ampliación o reducción en el cuadro de texto ”Cambiar la configuración ’Escala’”. Puede definir un valor entre 10% y 200% en incrementos del 1%.

Valores del grupo Opciones Documento
El grupo Opciones Documento consta de 5 opciones: Ajuste de color de medios tonos, Refinamiento automático de la imagen, Ahorro de tóner, Densidad del tóner y Tamaño de papel personalizado.

- Ajuste de color de medios tonos
  Haga clic en el botón Ajuste de color de medios tonos para abrir el cuadro de diálogo del mismo nombre y modificar los valores de medios tonos de la impresora.



- El cuadro de diálogo Ajuste de color de medios tonos varía según los valores definidos en la ficha Configuración de dispositivo de las propiedades de la impresora.
  - Si selecciona ”Usar medios tonos de la impresora”, el cuadro de diálogo LBP-660 original que aparece es el mismo que si seleccionara la ficha Gráficos del cuadro de diálogo Propiedades de Microsoft Windows 95.
    En este cuadro de diálogo, puede seleccionar la representación de medios tonos (Suavizado, Trama 1 o Trama 2) y los valores de Brillo y Contraste. Si desea más información, consulte la sección que lleva por título ”Trabajar con gráficos a escala de grises” del Manual del usuario.
  - Si selecciona ”Usar medios tonos del sistema”, aparece un diagrama de escala de grises y el cuadro de diálogo Ajuste de color de medios tonos del sistema de Microsoft Windows NT. Consulte la ayuda o los manuales de Microsoft Windows NT si desea más información sobre este cuadro de diálogo.

- Refinamiento automático de la imagen
  Esta opción sirve para activar o desactivar la función Suavizado en la impresora LBP-660.
- Ahorro de tóner
  Esta opción sirve para activar o desactivar la función de economización de energía.
- Densidad del tóner
  Con esta opción, puede elegir la cantidad de tóner que debe utilizarse durante la impresión. Existen 5 niveles de densidad para escoger. Medio es el valor estándar de la densidad.
- Tamaño de papel personalizado
  Con esta opción, puede definir el tamaño del papel si previamente ha seleccionado ”Person.” en la ficha Preparar página. Haga clic en el botón Tamaño de papel personalizado para abrir el cuadro de diálogo del mismo nombre y definir la altura y la anchura del papel personalizado.

Ventana de estado de la LBP-660 en Microsoft Windows NT

Si la LBP-660 está conectada a una computadora Microsoft Windows NT como impresora local, la ventana de estado de la LBP-660 aparece automáticamente en el momento en que se inicia la impresora LBP-660 o cuando se requiere la intervención del usuario, por ejemplo, al producirse un error.

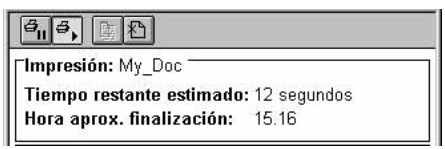
También puede abrir la ventana de estado de la LBP-660 en cualquier momento haciendo doble clic en el icono Ventana de estado de Canon LBP-660 en el grupo Windows Printing System. Utilice la ventana de estado para supervisar la evolución de los trabajos de impresión, detener o reanudar la impresión, etc.



Esta ventana de estado coincide básicamente con la ventana de estado de Microsoft Windows Printing System que se visualiza en Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 y en Microsoft Windows para Trabajo en Grupo. En el Manual del usuario encontrará más información sobre el uso de la ventana de estado.

Esta descripción comprende únicamente aquellas operaciones y funciones en que la ventana de estado de la LBP-660 para Microsoft Windows NT presenta diferencias respecto a las ventanas de estado de otras versiones de Microsoft Windows.

- Si seleccionó "Empezar a imprimir después de que la última página haya entrado en la cola de impresión" en la ficha Plan de Propiedades de la impresora, el tiempo restante estimado y la hora aproximada de finalización aparecen en el área de mensajes durante la impresión del documento, y la barra de progreso muestra el número de páginas que ya se han impreso y el número total de páginas que deben imprimirse.



ESPAÑOL

- Si seleccionó ”Empezar a imprimir de inmediato”, en el área de mensajes sólo aparece la palabra ”Imprimiendo”, y la barra de progreso indica únicamente el número de páginas que ya se han impreso.



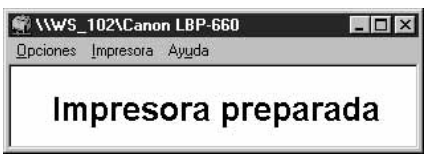
- El botón Prueba de impresión no aparece en la barra de herramientas.
  Para imprimir una página de prueba, seleccione el botón Imprimir página de prueba en la ficha General del cuadro de diálogo Propiedades de la impresora.
- La opción Impresora no aparece en el menú Opciones. Si desea cambiar la densidad del tóner, abra el cuadro de diálogo Propiedades de Documento predeterminado y utilice la opción Densidad del tóner en la ficha Avanzadas.
- La opción Operación cliente del menú Opciones sirve para que pueda definir si un usuario puede detener, reanudar, forzar o cancelar la impresión desde el Supervisor de estado de la red en un cliente Microsoft Windows NT.
  La marca de verificación que se encuentra a la izquierda de la opción Operación cliente indica si las operaciones mencionadas están habilitadas o inhabilitadas desde el Supervisor de estado de la red.

Supervisor de estado de la red de la Canon LBP-660

El Supervisor de estado de la red de la Canon LBP-660 es una función mediante la cual un cliente Microsoft Windows NT conectado a la impresora de red puede comprobar el estado de la LBP-660, y detener, reanudar, forzar y cancelar la impresión de igual forma que lo haría mediante una ventana de estado en el escritorio. Esta función sólo está disponible en clientes Microsoft Windows NT, y no puede utilizarse en Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 o Microsoft Windows para Trabajo en Grupo.

El Supervisor de estado de la red de la Canon LBP-660 sólo muestra el estado de la impresora en forma de pantalla de texto, y no dispone de gráficos animados ni de la barra de progreso propios de la ventana de estado de la LBP-660.

Cuando conecta un cliente Microsoft Windows NT a la impresora de red, el Supervisor de estado de la red se instala automáticamente desde el servidor de impresión.



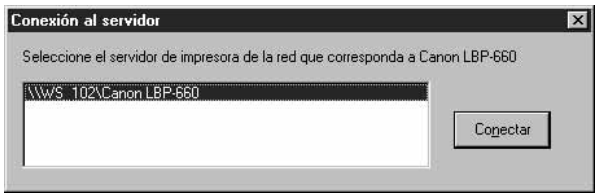
Utilización del Supervisor de estado de la red de la Canon LBP-660

■ Inicio del Supervisor de estado de la red

Siga el procedimiento descrito a continuación para iniciar el Supervisor de estado de la red de la impresora LBP-660 en cualquier momento:

1. Haga doble clic en el icono Supervisor de estado de la red de la Canon LBP-660 del grupo Windows Printing System del cliente o bien haga doble clic en el icono de acceso directo Supervisor de estado de la red de la Canon LBP-660 en el escritorio.

2. Cuando aparezca un mensaje que le pregunta si desea conectarse a la impresora de red, haga clic en el botón Sí.
   - Verá el cuadro de diálogo con el que puede elegir la impresora de red a la que conectarse.


Conexión al servidor
Seleccione el servidor de impresora de la red que corresponda a Canon LBP-660
\\WS_102\Canon LBP-660
Conectar

3. Seleccione en el cuadro de lista el nombre de la impresora a la que desea conectarse; a continuación haga clic en el botón Conectar.
   - Una vez se haya conectado a la impresora de red, el estado actual de la impresora aparece en un cuadro de texto.

■ Opciones de estado

La barra de menús del Supervisor de estado de la impresora LBP-660 contiene 3 menús: Opciones, Impresora y Ayuda.



Menú Opciones
En el menú Opciones puede especificar las opciones relacionadas con el funcionamiento del Supervisor de estado de la red.

- Conexión al servidor
  Seleccione esta opción si la conexión a la impresora de red se ha interrumpido por alguna razón o si desea establecer la conexión con otra impresora de red (sólo si es LBP-660). Verá el mismo cuadro de diálogo Conexión al servidor que aparece cuando inicia el Supervisor de estado de la red. Seleccione el nombre de la impresora que desee y haga clic en el botón Conectar.
- Opción Sonidos
  Con esta opción puede especificar si desea utilizar mensajes de voz cuando se produce un error en la impresora.

ESPAÑOL



- El Supervisor de estado de la red sólo puede generar mensajes de voz cuando surge un error. Si la computadora cliente no tiene una tarjeta de sonido instalada, esta opción aparece de color atenuado y no puede seleccionarse.

- Tamaño predeterminado
  Si en algún momento ha modificado el tamaño de la pantalla del Supervisor de estado de la red, puede restituir su tamaño original mediante esta opción.
- Ocultar menú
  Con esta opción se ocultan los menús del Supervisor de estado de la red. Para que la barra de menús vuelva a mostrarse, presione **Esc** cuando la ventana del Supervisor de estado de la red sea la ventana activa, o bien haga doble clic en una zona cualquiera del área de mensaje.
- Siempre visible
  Si esta opción está seleccionada (se indica mediante una marca de verificación a la izquierda de la misma), significa que la ventana Supervisor de estado de la red siempre se visualiza en primer plano en el escritorio.

Menú Impresora
El menú Impresora sirve para controlar el funcionamiento de la impresora. Observe, sin embargo, que si no se ha seleccionado Operación cliente en el menú Opciones de la ventana de estado en el servidor de impresión, el menú Impresora quedará de color atenuado y no podrá controlar el funcionamiento de la impresora desde un cliente.

En la sección ”Utilizar el menú Impresora” del Manual del usuario encontrará información detallada sobre el menú Impresora.



- Las operaciones especificadas en el menú Impresora afectarán, de todas formas, a los trabajos de impresión de otros clientes. Si se cancela la impresión mientras los trabajos de impresión que proceden de varios clientes se están enviando a la cola de impresión del servidor, éstos podrían llegar a perderse. Tenga presente esta posibilidad a la hora de cancelar la impresión.

Menú Ayuda
Al seleccionar este menú se abre un cuadro de diálogo que muestra información sobre la versión del Supervisor de estado de la red.

Capítulo 5
Resolución de problemas

En este capítulo se describen los procedimientos necesarios para resolver los problemas que pueden surgir en el momento de instalar Microsoft Windows Printing System para Microsoft Windows NT y durante el uso de la LBP-660 como impresora de una red Microsoft Windows NT.

Remítase al ”Capítulo 6 Resolución de problemas” del Manual del usuario de la impresora LBP-660 si desea instrucciones sobre cómo manejar los problemas de la propia impresora (atascos de papel, etc.), defectos en la calidad de impresión, problemas en Microsoft Windows Printing System y mensajes de error de Microsoft Windows Printing System.

Si no puede determinar la causa de un problema, inicie el programa de utilidad Resolución de problemas del grupo Windows Printing System. Esta utilidad puede resolver los problemas que se produzcan en los archivos instalados o en la configuración.

Si aun así no puede resolver el problema, desinstale Microsoft Windows Printing System del servidor de impresión, reinicie el servidor y vuelva a instalar Microsoft Windows Printing System. Para desinstalar Microsoft Windows Printing System, inicie la utilidad Desinstalación del grupo Windows Printing System.



- Reinicie siempre Microsoft Windows NT después de desinstalar cualquier tipo de software. Si no lo hace, no podrá volver a instalar el software que haya eliminado.

ESPAÑOL

Problemas durante la instalación de Microsoft Windows Printing System

Problemas durante la instalación local

Problema	Causa	Solución
No se puede seleccionar el botón Mi equipo en Agregar asistente de impresora.	El usuario que realiza la instalación del software no tiene privilegios de Administrador ni de Usuario avanzado.	Necesita privilegios de Administrador para instalar Microsoft Windows Printing System. Asigne un usuario que tenga privilegios de Administrador para realizar la instalación.
Cuando la copia de archivos termina, aparece un mensaje de error que indica que se precisan privilegios de Administrador.	Un usuario con privilegios de Usuario avanzado trató de instalar el software.	Asigne un usuario que tenga privilegios de Administrador para que vuelva a instalar el software.
Aparece un mensaje de error que indica que debe repetirse la instalación.	Está realizando una instalación local en una computadora en la que el controlador de la impresora LBP-660 ya está instalado en la red.	Vuelva a realizar la instalación local y seleccione el botón de opción Reemplazar el controlador existente en el cuadro de diálogo pertinente de Agregar asistente de impresora.

Problemas durante la instalación en la red

Problema	Causa	Solución
El nombre de la impresora compartida o del servidor de impresión que debe conectarse no figura en la lista de Impresoras compartidas.	• No se ha iniciado el servidor de impresión. • La impresora no está configurada para ser compartida. • No tiene los privilegios necesarios para conectarse a la impresora o al servidor de impresión.	• Inicie el servidor de impresión. • Configure la impresora de forma que pueda ser compartida; para ello utilice el cuadro de diálogo Propiedades de la impresora. • Solicite al administrador de la red que cambie sus privilegios de usuario.

Problemas durante la impresión en la red

Problema	Causa	Solución
No puede realizarse la conexión al servidor de impresión o a la impresora compartida en el Supervisor de estado de la red.	• No se ha iniciado el servidor de impresión. • La impresora no está configurada para ser compartida. • No tiene los privilegios necesarios para conectarse a la impresora o al servidor de impresión.	• Inicie el servidor de impresión. • Configure la impresora de forma que pueda ser compartida; para ello utilice el cuadro de diálogo Propiedades de la impresora. • Solicite al administrador de la red que cambie sus privilegios de usuario.
No puede utilizarse el menú Impresora en el Supervisor de estado de la red.	La opción Operación cliente del menú Opciones que pertenece a la ventana de estado del servidor de impresión no está activada.	Seleccione la opción Operación cliente en el menú Opciones.
No puede imprimirse en un servidor de impresión Microsoft Windows 95/3.1 o Microsoft Windows para Trabajo en Grupo desde un cliente Microsoft Windows NT.	Microsoft Windows Printing System para Microsoft Windows NT no admite servidores de impresión Microsoft Windows 95/ 3.1 o Microsoft Windows para Trabajo en Grupo.	Utilice un servidor de impresión Microsoft Windows NT.
No puede imprimirse desde un cliente Microsoft Windows 95/3.1 o Microsoft Windows para Trabajo en Grupo.	• El directorio WPS del servidor de impresión no está compartido. • El Tipo de datos predeterminado del servidor de impresión no está definido con el valor WPS.	• Configure el directorio WPS de forma que pueda ser compartido en el servidor de impresión. • Haga clic en el botón Procesador de impresión en la ficha General del cuadro de diálogo Propiedades de la impresora y seleccione WPS como Tipo de datos predeterminado.

ESPAÑOL

Apéndice

Comparación de Microsoft Windows Printing System en las diversas versiones de Microsoft Windows

Algunas funciones de Microsoft Windows Printing System para Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 presentan diferencias respecto a las funciones disponibles en Microsoft Windows Printing System para Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 y Microsoft Windows para Trabajo en Grupo.

Tenga presente los puntos siguientes cuando lea el Manual del usuario de la impresora LBP-660.

Durante la impresión local o en red con Microsoft Windows NT 4.0, y durante la impresión en red con Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 o Microsoft Windows para Trabajo en Grupo

- No puede imprimir desde la interfaz de comandos (Microsoft Windows NT) o desde el símbolo MS-DOS (Microsoft Windows 95) porque no se admite la emulación PCL.

Durante la impresión local o en red con Microsoft Windows NT 4.0

- No puede utilizarse la función de superposición de formularios.
- No puede imprimirse una página de prueba desde la ventana de estado de la impresora LBP-660. Seleccione el botón Imprimir página de prueba en la ficha General del cuadro de diálogo Propiedades de la impresora.
- El menú Opciones de la ventana de estado de la LBP-660 no tiene la opción Opciones de la impresora.
  Especifique la densidad del tóner en el grupo Opciones Documento en la ficha Avanzadas del cuadro de diálogo Propiedades de Documento predeterminado.

Canon

LBP-660 LASERPRINTER

Microsoft® Windows® Printing System handleiding voor Microsoft® Windows NT®

NEDERLANDS

BELANGRIJK:
Lees deze handleiding aandachtig door voordat u de printer gebruikt. Bewaar de handleiding bij uw printer.

Copyright

Copyright © 1998 Canon Inc. Alle rechten voorbehouden
Copyright © 1996 Microsoft Corporation. Alle rechten voorbehouden

Mededeling

Canon Inc. biedt ten aanzien van deze handleiding geen garantie, noch expliciet, noch impliciet, behalve zoals hierin is bepaald, inclusief zonder begrenzing daarvan, garanties in verband met de verkoopbaarheid, verhandelbaarheid, voor een bepaald gebruiksdoel of tegen inbreuken op patenten. Canon Inc. is niet aansprakelijk voor directe schade, incidentele schade of gevolgschade van welke aard dan ook, of verliezen of kosten die voortvloeien uit het gebruik van deze handleiding.
De informatie in dit document is beschermd door het auteursrecht. Alle rechten voorbehouden. Geen onderdeel van dit document mag worden gefotokopieerd, gereproduceerd of vertaald naar een andere taal zonder voorafgaande schriftelijke toestemming van Canon Inc.
Het gebruik van dit document is gebonden aan de voorwaarden zoals vermeld in de Gebruiksrechtovereenkomst (Microsoft® Windows® Printing System) die bij uw printer is geleverd.
De informatie in deze handleiding kan zonder voorafgaande kennisgeving worden gewijzigd.

Handelsmerken

LBP, Canon en het Canon-logo zijn handelsmerken van Canon Inc.
PCL is een handelsmerk van Hewlett-Packard Company.
IBM is een handelsmerk van International Business Machines Corporation.
Microsoft, Windows, Windows NT, het Windows-logo en MS-DOS zijn geregistreerde handelsmerken of handelsmerken van Microsoft Corporation in de Verenigde Staten en/of in andere landen.
NetWare® is een geregistreerd handelsmerk en Novell is een handelsmerk van Novell, Inc.
TrueType is een handelsmerk van Apple Computer, Inc.
Lucida is een handelsmerk van Bigelow & Homes.
Alle overige merk- en productnamen zijn handelsmerken of geregistreerde handelsmerken van de betreffende ondernemingen.
In deze handleiding wordt naar Microsoft®, Microsoft® Windows® en Microsoft® Windows NT® verwezen als respectievelijk Microsoft, Microsoft Windows en Microsoft Windows NT.

Symbolen

In deze handleiding worden de volgende symbolen gebruikt:



Opmerkingen bevatten tips of suggesties voor het optimaal afdrukken met de printer.



Dit symbool geeft aan dat het negeren van de voorgestelde procedure of werkwijze beschadiging van de hardware of de software tot gevolg kan hebben.

Hoofdstuk 1
Inleiding

Deze handleiding

In deze Microsoft® Windows® Printing System (hierna Microsoft Windows Printing System genoemd) handleiding voor Microsoft® Windows NT® (hierna Microsoft Windows NT genoemd) wordt beschreven hoe u het Microsoft Windows Printing System voor Microsoft Windows NT kunt installeren en gebruiken op een computer met Microsoft Windows NT versie 4.0 (voor servers of werkstations) waarop een Canon LBP-660 laserprinter is aangesloten.

Deze handleiding bevat de volgende hoofdstukken:

Hoofdstuk 1 Inleiding 1

In dit hoofdstuk wordt beschreven hoe u deze handleiding kunt gebruiken en wat de systeemvereisten zijn voor het installeren van het Microsoft Windows Printing System op een pc met Microsoft Windows NT.

Hoofdstuk 2 Het Microsoft Windows Printing System installeren 3

In dit hoofdstuk wordt uitgelegd hoe u het Microsoft Windows Printing System voor Microsoft Windows NT kunt installeren wanneer u de LBP-660 als een lokale printer gebruikt en hoe u de LBP-660 kunt delen op een Microsoft Windows NT-netwerk.

Hoofdstuk 3 Een verbinding met de LBP-660 als netwerkprinter maken 10

In dit hoofdstuk wordt beschreven hoe u een LBP-660 kunt gebruiken die is aangesloten op een andere computer met Microsoft Windows NT of op een computer met Microsoft® Windows® (hierna Microsoft Windows genoemd) 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 of Microsoft Windows voor Workgroups.

Hoofdstuk 4 Het Microsoft Windows Printing System gebruiken 13

In dit hoofdstuk wordt beschreven hoe u de Network Status Monitor, het LBP-660 Status Window en het dialoogvenster Canon LBP-660 Eigenschappen in het Microsoft Windows Printing System voor Microsoft Windows NT kunt gebruiken.

Hoofdstuk 5 Problemen oplossen 23

In dit hoofdstuk wordt aandacht besteed aan het oplossen van problemen die zich eventueel voordoen tijdens de installatie van het Microsoft Windows Printing System en tijdens het gebruik van het Microsoft Windows Printing System op een Microsoft Windows NT-netwerk.

Bijlage 26

In dit deel van de handleiding wordt vermeld op welke punten de beschrijvingen in de LBP-660 gebruikershandleiding voor het Microsoft Windows Printing System voor Microsoft Windows NT afwijken van het Microsoft Windows Printing System voor Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 en Microsoft Windows voor Workgroups.

Voordat u de software installeert

Controleer voordat u het Microsoft Windows Printing System installeert op een pc met Microsoft Windows NT of uw computer voldoet aan de volgende hardware- en softwarevereisten.

- IBM-pc of compatibele machine, met een 90 MHz Pentium-processor of hoger en Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 (voor servers of werkstations).



- Het Microsoft Windows Printing System voor de LBP-660 dat in deze handleiding wordt beschreven draait onder Microsoft Windows NT versie 4.0 voor PC/AT-compatibele machines. Dit Microsoft Windows Printing System kan niet worden gebruikt op systemen met Microsoft Windows NT versie 3.51 of ouder of Microsoft Windows NT voor een op de RISC-technologie gebaseerde processor.
- Als u een Novell NetWare®-netwerk gebruikt, kunt u deze software niet installeren op een NetWare®-server. U kunt met deze software niet afdrukken vanaf Novell Netware®-clients voor Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 of Microsoft Windows voor Workgroups.

- Ten minste 24 MB werkgeheugen (RAM)
- Ten minste 10 MB beschikbare schijfruimte
- Cd-rom-station
- Standaard Centronics parallelle printerpoort (wanneer de LBP als lokale printer is aangesloten)
- Netwerkkaart (wanneer de LBP op een netwerk wordt gedeeld)

Hoewel het wellicht mogelijk is het Microsoft Windows Printing System te installeren op computers die niet aan de bovenstaande vereisten voldoen, kan Canon niet garanderen dat de software dan ook goed werkt. Voor een optimale omgeving, waarin uw LBP-660 de beste prestaties levert, bevelen wij de volgende hardware en software aan:

- 166 MHz Pentium-processor of hoger
- Ten minste 48 MB werkgeheugen (RAM)
- ECP-printerpoort
- Geluidskaart (deze is nodig om de gesproken berichten van het Microsoft Windows Printing System te kunnen afspelen)

Als u de LBP-660 in een netwerk wilt delen, moet een van de volgende netwerkprotocollen zijn geïnstalleerd:

- NetBEUI
- TCP/IP
- NWLink IPX/SPX



- U kunt het Microsoft Windows Printing System voor Microsoft Windows NT alleen installeren als u over beheerdersrechten beschikt. De installatie moet worden uitgevoerd door een printer- of netwerkbeheerder die over beheerdersrechten beschikt.

Hoofdstuk 2
Het Microsoft Windows Printing System installeren

U kunt het Microsoft Windows Printing System voor Microsoft Windows NT installeren vanaf de bijgesloten installatiediskette met het Microsoft Windows Printing System voor Microsoft Windows NT 4.0.

Het Microsoft Windows Printing System voor een lokale printer installeren

In dit gedeelte wordt beschreven hoe u het Microsoft Windows Printing System installeert als u de LBP-660 als een lokale printer gebruikt. Voor een beschrijving van het verbinden van de LBP-660 als een netwerkprinter, zie ”Hoofdstuk 3 Een verbinding met de LBP-660 als netwerkprinter maken”.

De wizard Printer toevoegen starten

Gebruik de wizard Printer toevoegen van Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 om het Microsoft Windows Printing System te installeren onder Microsoft Windows NT. Volg de onderstaande instructies voor het installeren van de software.

1. Zet de computer aan waarop de LBP-660 is aangesloten en start Microsoft Windows NT 4.0.

2. Meld u aan als Beheerder.

3. Gebruik een van de volgende methoden om de wizard Printer toevoegen te starten:

   a. Klik op de knop Start op de taakbalk en plaats de muisaanwijzer op Instellingen in het menu Start. Klik op Printers in het vervolgmenu om de map Printers te openen en dubbelklik op het pictogram Printer toevoegen in de map Printers.

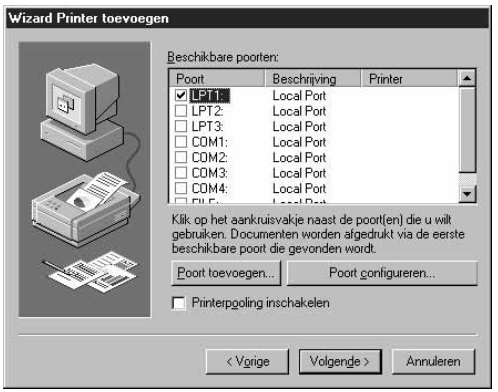
   b. Dubbelklik op het pictogram Deze computer op het bureaublad om Deze computer te openen. Open vervolgens de map Printers en dubbelklik op het pictogram Printer toevoegen.

- Het dialoogvenster Wizard Printer toevoegen wordt weergegeven. Hiermee kunt u printerstuurprogramma's installeren.


Wizard Printer toevoegen
Deze Wizard helpt u met het installeren van uw printer en met het maken verbindingen met printers. Deze printer zal worden beheerd door:
Mijn computer
Alle instellingen zullen worden beheerd en geconfigureerd op deze computer.
Netwerkafdrukserver
Verbinden met een printer of andere computer. Alle instellingen voor deze printer worden beheerd door een afdrukserver die is geïnstalleerd door een beheerder.
< Vorige
Volgende >
Annuleren

4. Zorg ervoor dat de optie Mijn computer in het venster Wizard Printer toevoegen is geselecteerd en klik op de knop Volgende >.
   - Er wordt een venster weergegeven waarin u de poort kunt selecteren waarop de printer is aangesloten.

De printerpoort selecteren



1. Klik op het aankruisvakje naast de poort waarop de LBP-660 is aangesloten (meestal LPT1:) en klik vervolgens op de knop Volgende >.



- U kunt de LBP-660 alleen aansluiten op een parallelle poort (LPT-poort). Als u een seriële poort selecteert of een poort waarop de printer niet fysiek is aangesloten, kunt u niet afdrukken met de LBP-660.

- Vervolgens wordt een venster weergegeven waarin u het printermodel kunt selecteren. In dit venster ziet u een lijst met printerfabrikanten en printermodellen die standaard door Microsoft Windows NT worden ondersteund.

2. De LBP-660 komt niet in deze lijst voor. Plaats daarom de installatie-cd-rom van het Microsoft Windows Printing System voor Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 in het cd-rom-station en klik vervolgens op de knop Diskette.

3. Wanneer het dialoogvenster Installeren van diskette wordt weergegeven, typt u de stationsaanduiding van het cd-rom-station in het tekstvak "Bestanden van fabrikant kopiëren van" en klikt u op de knop Bladeren.

4. Dubbelklik op de map Winnt40 in het dialoogvenster Bestand opsporen.

   ■ De mappen voor de beschikbare taalversies worden weergegeven in het dialoogvenster Bestand opsporen.



5. Dubbelklik op de map met de taalversie van Microsoft Windows NT die u gebruikt.

   ■ Wanneer Wpsc3nt wordt weergegeven in het dialoogvenster Bestand opsporen, klikt u op de knop Openen.

■ Als er geen map wordt weergegeven voor de taalversie van Microsoft Windows NT die u gebruikt, selecteert u de map English.

6. Klik op de knop OK in het dialoogvenster Installeren van diskette.

7. Wanneer "Canon LBP-660" wordt weergegeven in de lijst met printers in het venster Wizard Printer toevoegen, klikt u op de knop Volgende >.

   ■ Er wordt een venster weergegeven waarin u een naam aan de printer kunt toekennen. In dit venster wordt "Canon LBP-660" reeds vermeld in het veld Naam printer. Als u de printernaam wilt wijzigen, typt u een nieuwe naam aan de hand van de instructies die op het scherm worden weergegeven.

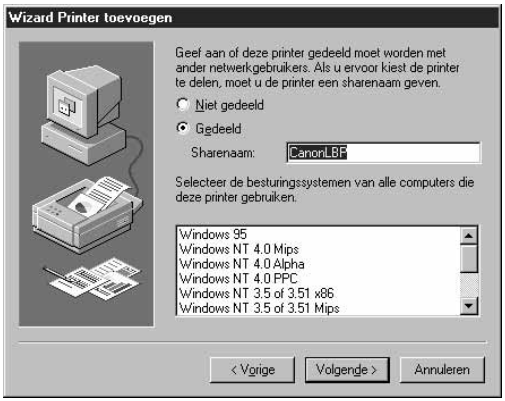
8. Klik op de knop Volgende >.

   ■ Vervolgens wordt een venster weergegeven waarin u de printer kunt delen.

NEDERLANDS

Gedeelde printers instellen

In dit gedeelte wordt beschreven hoe u kunt opgeven of de LBP-660 moet worden gedeeld op een netwerk. U kunt de instellingen voor het delen van de printer ook opgeven nadat u het Microsoft Windows Printing System hebt geïnstalleerd. Zie het gedeelte ”De printer delen” voor meer informatie.


Wizard Printer toevoegen
Geef aan of deze printer gedeeld moet worden met ander netwerkgebruikers. Als u ervoor kiest de printer te delen, moet u de printer een sharenaam geven.
Niet gedeeld
Gedeeld
Sharenaam:
CanonLBP
Selecteer de besturingssystemen van alle computers die deze printer gebruiken.
Windows 95
Windows NT 4.0 Mips
Windows NT 4.0 Alpha
Windows NT 4.0 PPC
Windows NT 3.5 of 3.51 x86
Windows NT 3.5 of 3.51 Mips
< Vorige
Volgende >
Annuleren

1. Als u de LBP-660 op een netwerk wilt delen, selecteert u de optie Gedeeld.

2. Klik op de knop Volgende >.
   - Er wordt een venster weergegeven waarin u wordt gevraagd of u een testpagina wilt afdrukken.

Het afdrukken van een testpagina instellen

Wanneer u klaar bent met het installeren van het Microsoft Windows Printing System, kunt u met de LBP-660 een testpagina afdrukken.

1. Als u een testpagina wilt afdrukken, hoeft u alleen op de knop Voltooien te klikken en wordt de testpagina vervolgens automatisch afgedrukt. Als u het afdrukken van de testpagina wilt overslaan, selecteert u eerst de knop Nee voordat u op de knop Voltooien klikt.

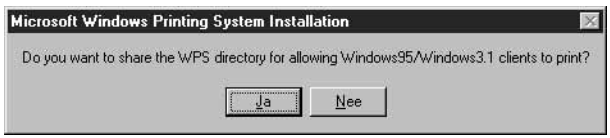
Wanneer u op de knop Voltooien klikt, worden de benodigde bestanden van de installatiediskette gekopieerd naar uw vaste schijf. Tijdens het kopiëren wordt een berichtenvenster met een voortgangsbalk weergegeven.

Wanneer het kopiëren is voltooid, wordt het pictogram Canon LBP-660 weergegeven in de map Printers.
De vorm van het pictogram Canon LBP-660 in de map Printers is voor een gedeelde printer anders dan voor een niet-gedeelde printer.

Vervolgens wordt het initialisatieproces door het Microsoft Windows Printing System gestart en wordt het bericht ”Initializing… Please wait!” weergegeven. Tijdens de initialisatie wordt de groep Microsoft Windows Printing System gemaakt en aan het menu Start toegevoegd. Verder wordt het venster Windows Printing System weergegeven op het bureaublad, samen met een snelkoppeling voor de groep Windows Printing System (zie volgende pagina).

Als u de LBP-660 wilt verbinden en tevens wilt kunnen afdrukken vanaf een Microsoft Windows 95-, Microsoft Windows 3.1- of Microsoft Windows voor Workgroups-client die is verbonden met het Microsoft Windows NT-netwerk, klikt u op de knop Ja wanneer het volgende dialoogvenster wordt weergegeven.

Als u de LBP-660 niet wilt delen of als alle clients Microsoft Windows NT-machines zijn, klikt u op de knop Nee.


Microsoft Windows Printing System Installation
Do you want to share the WPS directory for allowing Windows95/Windows3.1 clients to print?
Ja
Nee

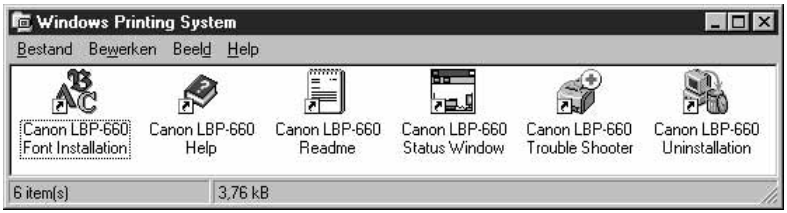
De installatie voltooien

Wanneer de installatie van het Microsoft Windows Printing System is voltooid, wordt een bevestigingsbericht weergegeven. Klik op de knop OK om de installatie te bevestigen.

Als u er tijdens de installatie van het printerstuurprogramma voor hebt gekozen een testpagina af te drukken, wordt deze nu afgedrukt. Als de volledige installatie is voltooid, wordt het LBP-660 Status Window op het bureaublad weergegeven en heeft de LBP-660 de testpagina afgedrukt. Controleer de testpagina en klik vervolgens op de knop Ja in het voltooiingsvenster van de testpagina om het venster te sluiten.

Wanneer het Microsoft Windows Printing System is geïnstalleerd, kunt u direct beginnen met afdrukken vanaf de Microsoft Windows NT-computer waarop de LBP-660 als lokale printer is geïnstalleerd. Als u deze computer echter als afdrukserver wilt gebruiken en via het netwerk wilt afdrukken vanaf een client, moet u eerst Microsoft Windows NT opnieuw starten.

De groep Windows Printing System die tijdens de installatie van het Microsoft Windows Printing System is gemaakt, bestaat uit de zes pictogrammen die hieronder zijn afgebeeld.



Canon LBP-660 Font Installation
Dit is een hulpprogramma waarmee u de TrueType-lettertypen (22 Lucida TrueType-lettertypen) op installatiediskette 3 voor Microsoft Windows 95/3.1 kunt installeren onder Microsoft Windows NT. Als u de TrueType-lettertypen wilt installeren, dubbelklikt u op het pictogram Canon LBP-660 Font Installation. Voer vervolgens de instructies uit die op het scherm worden weergegeven.

- Zelfs wanneer u de installatie van het Microsoft Windows Printing System ongedaan maakt met het programma Uninstall, worden de geïnstalleerde lettertypen niet verwijderd.

Canon LBP-660 Help
Hiermee kunt u Help-informatie weergeven voor het Microsoft Windows Printing System.

Canon LBP-660 Readme
Dit is een tekstbestand met aanvullende informatie over de geïnstalleerde versie van het Microsoft Windows Printing System. Lees dit bestand voordat u het Microsoft Windows Printing System gaat gebruiken.

Canon LBP-660 Status Window
Met dit pictogram opent u het Canon LBP-660 Status Window.

Canon LBP-660 Trouble Shooter
Dit is een hulpprogramma voor het oplossen van problemen met het Microsoft Windows Printing System. Zie het hoofdstuk ”Problemen oplossen” in de gebruikershandleiding voor informatie over het gebruik van dit hulpprogramma.

Canon LBP-660 Uninstallation
Dit is een hulpprogramma voor het ongedaan maken van de installatie van het Microsoft Windows Printing System. Zie het hoofdstuk ”Problemen oplossen” in de gebruikershandleiding voor informatie over het gebruik van dit hulpprogramma.

De printer delen

Wanneer u klaar bent met de installatie van het Microsoft Windows Printing System, kunt u de LBP-660 in het dialoogvenster Canon LBP-660 Eigenschappen toewijzen als een gedeelde printer.

1. Volg de onderstaande procedure om het tabblad Printers delen in het dialoogvenster Canon LBP-660 Eigenschappen te openen.
   - Open de map Printers, klik met de rechtermuisknop op het pictogram LBP-660 en selecteer Delen… in het snelmenu.



2. Als u de LBP-660 wilt delen, selecteert u de optie Gedeeld.

- Wanneer u Gedeeld selecteert, worden in het tekstvak Sharenaam de eerste 8 tekens weergegeven van de printernaam die bij de installatie is gebruikt, exclusief spaties. U kunt desgewenst een andere naam in het tekstvak typen.
  Als zich onder de clients die de printer op het netwerk delen ook Microsoft Windows 3.1- of Microsoft Windows voor Workgroups-machines bevinden, moet u er op letten dat de Sharenaam uit niet meer dan 8 tekens bestaat.

- Als u de printer als een gedeelde printer toewijst, moet u geen besturingssysteem selecteren in de lijst Alternatieve stuurprogramma's onderaan het dialoogvenster. Het stuurprogramma voor de LBP-660 kan niet worden geïnstalleerd op een ander systeem dan Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 (x86).

3. Klik op de knop OK.
   - De LBP-660 is nu toegewezen als een gedeelde printer en het pictogram in de map Printers verandert in het pictogram van een gedeelde printer.

NEDERLANDS

Hoofdstuk 3
Een verbinding met de LBP-660 als netwerkprinter maken

Als u de LBP-660 als een gedeelde printer toewijst op de computer met Microsoft Windows NT waarop de LBP-660 is aangesloten en vervolgens deze computer toewijst als de afdrukserver, kan de LBP-660 niet alleen door Microsoft Windows NT-clients worden gebruikt, maar ook door Microsoft Windows 95-, Microsoft Windows 3.1- en Microsoft Windows voor Workgroups-clients die zijn verbonden met het Microsoft Windows NT-netwerk.



- Als u de Microsoft Windows NT-computer waarop de LBP-660 is aangesloten als afdrukserver wilt gebruiken, moet u eerst de service Server op die computer starten. Start de service Server voordat u de netwerkprinter verbindt.
- Als u vanaf een client-computer een verbinding wilt maken met een Microsoft Windows NT-afdrukserver om een document af te drukken, moet de client toegangsrechten hebben om een verbinding te maken met de server en de gedeelde printer. Als u niet zeker weet of u deze rechten hebt, neem dan contact op met uw netwerkbeheerder.

Een verbinding maken vanaf een Microsoft Windows NT-client

Als op de client die de LBP-660 als netwerkprinter gebruikt Microsoft Windows NT wordt gebruikt, hoeft u alleen de printer toe te voegen en worden het printerstuurprogramma en de Network Status Monitor automatisch vanaf de afdrukserver gedownload en geïnstalleerd. Voor het toevoegen van de printer zijn geen beheerdersrechten vereist. Normaal gesproken kan iedereen dit doen.

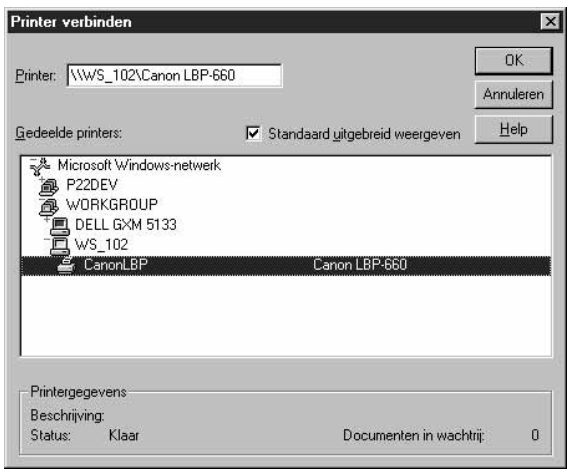
De wizard Printer toevoegen starten

1. Schakel de client-computer in, start Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 en meld u aan.
2. Start de wizard Printer toevoegen.
   - Zie ”Hoofdstuk 2 Het Microsoft Windows Printing System installeren” voor informatie over het starten van de wizard Printer toevoegen.

De netwerkprinter selecteren


Wizard Printer toevoegen
Deze Wizard helpt u met het installeren van uw printer en met het maken verbindingen met printers. Deze printer zal worden beheerd door:
Mijn computer
Alle instellingen zullen worden beheerd en geconfigureerd op deze computer.
Netwerkafdrukserver
Verbinden met een printer of andere computer. Alle instellingen voor deze printer worden beheerd door een afdrukserver die is geïnstalleerd door een beheerder.
< Vorige
Volgende >
Annuleren

1. Selecteer de optie Netwerkafdrukserver klik vervolgens op de knop Volgende >. Het dialoogvenster Printer verbinden wordt weergegeven.



2. Dubbelklik op de naam van de afdrukserver die wordt weergegeven in de keuzelijst Gedeelde printers.
   - Hierdoor wordt een lijst weergegeven met de gedeelde printers die met de afdrukserver zijn verbonden.
3. Klik op de gedeelde-printernaam voor de LBP-660 waarmee u een verbinding wilt maken.
   - Het netwerkpad voor de geselecteerde printer wordt weergegeven in het tekstvak Printer.

4. Klik op de knop OK.
   - Het printerstuurprogramma en de Network Status Monitor van de LBP-660 worden gedownload vanaf de server en geïnstalleerd op de client.
   - Nadat de software is gedownload, wordt het pictogram Canon LBP-660 weergegeven in de map Printers en wordt de groep Windows Printing System geregistreerd in het menu Start. Bovendien wordt er op het bureaublad een snelkoppeling naar de Network Status Monitor (WpsC3Nsm.exe) gemaakt.
5. Klik op de knop Voltooien in het dialoogvenster Wizard Printer toevoegen.

Een verbinding maken vanaf een Microsoft Windows 95-, Microsoft Windows 3.1- of Microsoft Windows voor Workgroups-client

Als u een verbinding wilt maken met de LBP-660 vanaf een Microsoft Windows 95-, Microsoft Windows 3.1- of Microsoft Windows voor Workgroups-client via een Microsoft Windows NT-afdrukserver, moet het LBP-660 Microsoft Windows Printing System voor het betreffende besturingssysteem zijn geïnstalleerd op de client. Informatie over het installeren van het Microsoft Windows Printing System op een Microsoft Windows 95-, Microsoft Windows 3.1- of Microsoft Windows voor Workgroups-client kunt u vinden in de gebruikershandleiding.

Hoofdstuk 4
Het Microsoft Windows Printing System gebruiken

Het Microsoft Windows Printing System voor Microsoft Windows NT wordt in principe op dezelfde manier gebruikt als het Microsoft Windows Printing System voor andere versies van Microsoft Windows. Zie ”Hoofdstuk 3 Het Microsoft Windows Printing System” in de gebruikershandleiding voor een overzicht van het Microsoft Windows Printing System.

De dialoogvensters van het Microsoft Windows Printing System

Het Microsoft Windows Printing System voor Microsoft Windows NT beschikt over twee dialoogvensters: Canon LBP-660 Eigenschappen en Eigenschappen voor Standaarddocument. Iedere gebruiker kan deze dialoogvensters openen om de instellingen te controleren, maar alleen gebruikers die zijn geautoriseerd voor ”Volledig beheer” van de printer kunnen de instellingen wijzigen.

Eigenschappen

Als u de printereigenschappen wilt bekijken, kiest u Eigenschappen in het menu Bestand in de map Printers of klikt u met de rechtermuisknop op het pictogram LBP-660 in de map Printers en kiest u Eigenschappen in het snelmenu.

Het dialoogvenster Canon LBP-660 Eigenschappen bestaat uit zes tabbladen, die hieronder worden beschreven. Aangezien de instellingen in de tabbladen voor elke Microsoft Windows NT-printer dezelfde zijn, geven de onderstaande beschrijvingen slechts een algemeen beeld van de tabbladen en wordt daarnaast gewezen op de punten die speciaal voor de LBP-660 gelden.

Voor een gedetailleerde beschrijving van de diverse instellingen verwijzen wij u naar de handboeken van Microsoft Windows NT. U kunt ook op het vraagteken (?) in de rechterbovenhoek van het dialoogvenster klikken en vervolgens op een bepaalde instelling klikken om contextgevoelige Help-informatie over die instelling weer te geven.



NEDERLANDS

■ Tabblad Algemeen

De instellingen in dit tabblad gelden voor het gehele printerstuurprogramma.

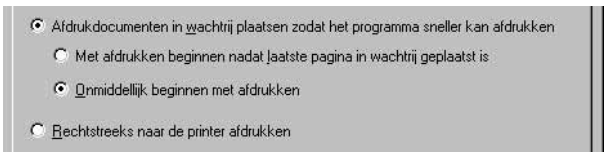
- De LBP-660 ondersteunt geen scheidingspagina's. Zelfs wanneer u op de optie Scheidingspagina klikt om een scheidingspagina in te stellen, wordt er geen scheidingspagina afgedrukt.
- De instellingen in het dialoogvenster Afdrukprocessor (dat u kunt weergeven door op de knop Afdrukprocessor… te klikken) mogen niet worden gewijzigd. Als u de instelling voor Standaard gegevenstype wijzigt, kunnen met name clients die geen Microsoft Windows NT gebruiken niet afdrukken.
- Als u een testpagina wilt afdrukken, klikt u in dit tabblad op de knop Testpagina afdrukken. Het LBP-660 Status Window in het Microsoft Windows Printing System voor Microsoft Windows NT heeft geen knop voor het testen van de printer.

■ Tabblad Poorten

Op dit tabblad kunt u de poort selecteren waarop de LBP-660 is aangesloten.
Als u de LBP-660 al hebt aangesloten en in gebruik hebt, hoeft u deze instelling niet te wijzigen.

■ Tabblad Planning

- Op dit tabblad kunt u het tijdstip instellen waarop moet worden afgedrukt, evenals de afdrukprioriteiten en de methode die moet worden gebruikt voor het verwerken van af te drukken documenten.
- Selecteer voor de LBP-660 altijd de optie "Afdrukdocumenten in wachtrij plaatsen zodat het programma sneller kan afdrukken". Als u de optie "Rechtstreeks naar de printer afdrukken" selecteert, kunt u niet afdrukken vanuit toepassingen.


Afdrukdocumenten in wachtrij plaatsen zodat het programma sneller kan afdrukken
Met afdrukken beginnen nadat laatste pagina in wachtrij geplaatst is
Onmiddellijk beginnen met afdrukken
Rechtstreeks naar de printer afdrukken

- Selecteer de optie "Met afdrukken beginnen nadat de laatste pagina in wachtrij geplaatst is" of de optie "Onmiddellijk beginnen met afdrukken". Houd er wel rekening mee dat deze optie de werking van de voortgangsbalk in het Status Window beïnvloedt. Zie het gedeelte "LBP-660 Status Window" voor meer informatie.

■ Tabblad Delen

Op dit tabblad kunt u opgeven of de LBP-660 is gedeeld. Zie "Hoofdstuk 2 Het Microsoft Windows Printing System installeren" voor meer informatie.

■ Tabblad Beveiliging

Op dit tabblad kunt u de beveiliging voor de LBP-660 instellen.
Voor informatie over de printerbeveiliging verwijzen wij u naar de handboeken van Microsoft Windows NT.

■ Tabblad Apparaatinstellingen

Op dit tabblad kunt u opgeven hoe halftonen moeten worden verwerkt bij het afdrukken van illustraties.
De LBP-660 kan zowel met de halftonen van de printer zelf als met de halftonen van Microsoft Windows NT werken. U kunt opgeven welke halftonen moeten worden gebruikt door eerst op de optie Halftone te klikken en vervolgens met een van de opties onder "'Halftone' instelling wijzigen" aan te geven welke halftonen u wilt gebruiken.



Als u "Gebruik halftone van systeem" selecteert, kunt u de instellingen voor de halftonen van het systeem wijzigen in het dialoogvenster Kleur-/halftooneigenschappen van apparaat. Voor meer informatie over het wijzigen van de halftonen van het systeem, verwijzen wij u naar de on line Help of de handboeken van Microsoft Windows NT.



- De werking van de instelling Halftone Color Adjustment van de optie Opties voor Document in het dialoogvenster Eigenschappen voor Standaarddocument, is afhankelijk van de verwerkingswijze voor halftonen die u hier selecteert.

NEDERLANDS

Eigenschappen voor Standaarddocument

In het dialoogvenster Eigenschappen voor Standaarddocument kunt u de standaardinstellingen opgeven voor de afdrukopties die beschikbaar zijn wanneer u met de LBP-660 afdrukt. Als u de standaard-documenteigenschappen wilt bekijken, kiest u "Standaardwaarden document…" in het menu Bestand in de map Printers of klikt u met de rechtermuisknop op het pictogram LBP-660 in de map Printers en kiest u "Standaardwaarden document…" in het snelmenu.

Het dialoogvenster Eigenschappen voor Standaarddocument bestaat uit het veelgebruikte tabblad Pagina-instelling en het tabblad Geavanceerd, waarin u de meer gedetailleerde afdrukopties kunt instellen. Als u meer wilt weten over een bepaalde instelling, kunt u contextgevoelige Help-informatie over die instelling weergeven door op het vraagteken (?) in de rechterbovenhoek van het dialoogvenster te klikken en vervolgens op de betreffende instelling te klikken.



- U kunt de instellingen ook opgeven door in een toepassing een overeenkomstig dialoogvenster te openen met de optie "Afdrukken" of "Pagina-instelling" in het menu Bestand. Wel is het zo dat de instellingen die u opgeeft in een toepassing alleen gelden voor het document waarin u op dat moment werkt en niet voor de standaard-documenteigenschappen.

■ Tabblad Pagina-instelling

Op dit tabblad kunt u bepaalde parameters instellen, zoals het papierformaat, de afdrukstand en het aantal afdrukken.

Papierformaat
Selecteer het gewenste papierformaat in de vervolgkeuzelijst. Als u het papierformaat Custom selecteert, moet u dit formaat specificeren op het tabblad Geavanceerd.

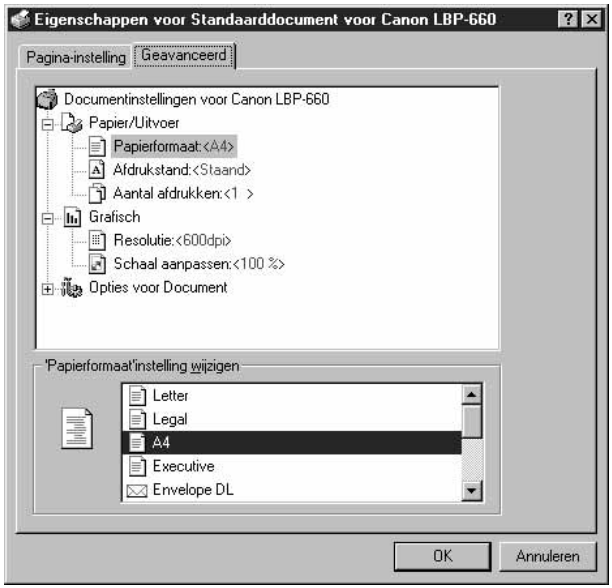
Aantal afdrukken
In het tekstvak Aantal afdrukken kunt u het aantal exemplaren opgeven dat u wilt afdrukken.

Sorteren
Als u bij Aantal afdrukken twee of meer hebt opgegeven, kunt u de afdrukken van uw document laten sorteren door op het selectievakje Sorteren te klikken.

Afdrukstand
Hier kunt u de afdrukstand selecteren (Staand of Liggend).

■ Tabblad Geavanceerd

De instellingen in het tabblad Geavanceerd zijn gegroepeerd onder Papier/Uitvoer, Grafisch en Opties voor Document. De opties voor elke groep worden onder elkaar onder de groepsnaam weergegeven. De huidige instelling voor elke optie wordt rechts naast de optie in blauw weergegeven. Als de opties niet worden weergegeven, klikt u op het plusteken (+) aan de linkerkant van de groepsnaam.



Als u klikt op de naam van de optie die u wilt wijzigen, worden in het onderste gedeelte van het dialoogvenster de beschikbare instellingen voor de optie weergegeven (of knoppen waarmee u een ander dialoogvenster kunt openen). Selecteer of typ de nieuwe instelling. De nieuwe instelling wordt vervolgens in rood weergegeven aan de rechterkant van de vermelde optie. De rode weergave geeft aan dat de nieuwe instelling nog niet is opgeslagen als een standaard-documenteigenschap. Nieuwe instellingen worden pas als eigenschappen voor standaarddocumenten opgeslagen wanneer u op de knop OK onderaan het dialoogvenster hebt geklikt.

Instellingen van de groep Papier/Uitvoer
De groep Papier/Uitvoer bestaat uit drie opties: Papierformaat, Afdrukstand en Aantal afdrukken. Deze opties zijn dezelfde als de opties in het tabblad Pagina-instelling (zie hierboven). Als u de instellingen hier aanpast, worden deze ook in het tabblad Pagina-instelling gewijzigd.

Instellingen van de groep Grafisch
De groep Grafisch bestaat uit twee opties: Resolutie en Schaal aanpassen.

- Resolutie
  Met de opties onder "'Resolutie' instelling wijzigen" kunt u de resolutie selecteren waarmee u met de LBP-660 wilt afdrukken.
- Schaal aanpassen
  Typ de vergrotings- of verkleiningsfactor in het tekstvak "'Schaal aanpassen' instelling wijzigen". U kunt een waarde opgeven tussen 10% en 200%, in stappen van 1%.

Instellingen van de groep Opties voor Document
De groep Opties voor Document bestaat uit vijf opties: Halftone Color Adjustment, Automatic Image Refinement, Toner Saver, Toner Density en Custom Paper Size.

- Halftone Color Adjustment
  Klik op de knop Halftone Color Adjustment om het dialoogvenster Halftone Color Adjustment te openen. Hierin kunt u de halftonen van de printer aanpassen.



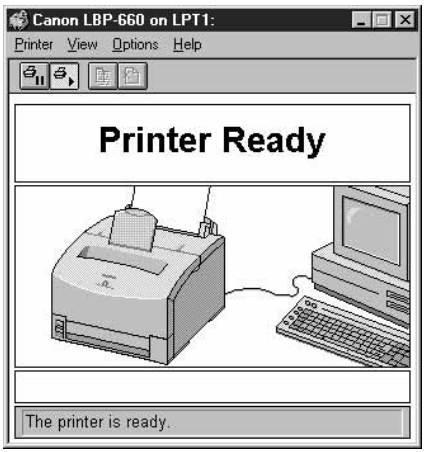
- Het ook mogelijk dat er een ander dialoogvenster wordt geopend wanneer u op deze knop klikt. Dit is afhankelijk van de instellingen in het tabblad Apparaatinstellingen van het dialoogvenster Canon LBP-660 Eigenschappen.
  - Als de optie "Gebruik halftone van printer" is geselecteerd, wordt het originele LBP-660-dialoogvenster weergegeven, dat u ook ziet wanneer u het tabblad Illustraties selecteert in het dialoogvenster Eigenschappen in Microsoft Windows 95. In dit dialoogvenster kunt u de weergave van de halftonen selecteren (Smooth, Pattern 1 of Pattern 2) en tevens de instellingen voor Brightness en Contrast opgeven. Voor meer informatie verwijzen wij u naar het gedeelte "Illustraties met grijstinten" in de gebruikershandleiding.
  - Als de optie "Gebruik halftone van systeem" is geselecteerd, worden een grijswaardendiagram en het dialoogvenster Halftoonkleur aanpassen van Microsoft Windows NT weergegeven. Voor meer informatie over het werken met dit dialoogvenster verwijzen wij u naar de on line Help of de handboeken van Microsoft Windows NT.

- Automatic Image Refinement
  Met deze optie kunt u de automatische beeldverfijning (het wegwerken van gekartelde randen) op de LBP-660 in- of uitschakelen.
- Toner Saver
  Met deze optie kunt u de spaarstand (tonerbesparing) in- of uitschakelen.
- Toner Density
  Met deze optie kunt u de tonerdichtheid opgeven; hiervoor zijn vijf niveaus beschikbaar. De standaardinstelling voor de tonerdichtheid is Medium.
- Custom Paper Size
  Deze optie gebruikt u om het papierformaat in te stellen als u Custom hebt geselecteerd op het tabblad Pagina-instelling. Klik op de knop Custom Paper Size om het dialoogvenster Custom Paper Size te openen en de hoogte en breedte van het aangepaste formaat van het papier in te stellen.

Microsoft Windows NT LBP-660 Status Window

Als de LBP-660 als lokale printer is aangesloten op een computer met Microsoft Windows NT, wordt het LBP-660 Status Window automatisch weergegeven wanneer de LBP-660 begint met afdrukken of wanneer tussenkomst van de gebruiker is vereist (bijvoorbeeld wanneer een fout is opgetreden).

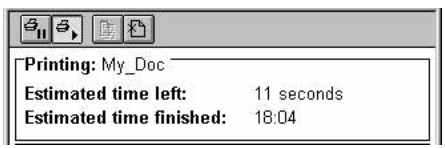
U kunt het LBP-660 Status Window ook op elk gewenst moment zelf openen door te dubbelklikken op het pictogram Canon LBP-660 Status Window in de groep Windows Printing System. In dit statusvenster kunt u de voortgang van uw afdruktaken bijhouden, het afdrukken onderbreken en voortzetten, enzovoort.



Dit venster is in principe hetzelfde als het statusvenster van het Microsoft Windows Printing System voor Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 en Microsoft Windows voor Workgroups. Meer informatie over het gebruik van het statusvenster kunt u vinden in de gebruikershandleiding.

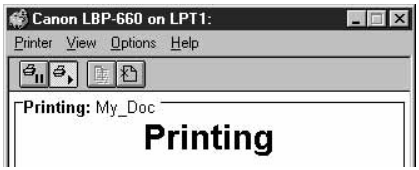
In deze handleiding worden alleen die bewerkingen en functies beschreven die in het LBP-660 Status Window voor Microsoft Windows NT anders zijn dan in het statusvenster voor andere versies van Microsoft Windows.

- Als u de optie ”Met afdrukken beginnen nadat de laatste pagina in wachtrij geplaatst is” hebt geselecteerd in het tabblad Planning van het dialoogvenster Canon LBP-660 Eigenschappen, worden tijdens het afdrukken van een document in een berichtengebied de geschatte resterende tijd weergegeven, evenals het geschatte tijdstip waarop het afdrukken is voltooid. Daarnaast ziet u in de voortgangsbalk het aantal pagina’s dat reeds is afgedrukt en het aantal pagina’s dat nog moet worden afgedrukt.



NEDERLANDS

- Als u de optie ”Onmiddellijk beginnen met afdrukken” hebt geselecteerd, wordt in het berichtengebied alleen het bericht ”Printing” weergegeven en geeft de voortgangsbalk alleen aan hoeveel pagina’s er reeds zijn afgedrukt.



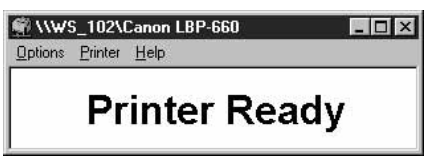
- De werkbalk bevat geen knop voor het afdrukken van een testpagina.
  Als u een testpagina wilt afdrukken, gebruikt u de knop Testpagina afdrukken op het tabblad Algemeen in het dialoogvenster Canon LBP-660 Eigenschappen.
- Het menu Options beschikt niet over de opdracht Printer. Als u de tonerdichtheid wilt aanpassen, opent u het dialoogvenster Eigenschappen voor Standaarddocument en gebruikt u de optie Toner Density van de groep Opties voor Document op het tabblad Geavanceerd.
- Met de optie Client Operation in het menu Options kunt u opgeven of een gebruiker een afdrukopdracht kan onderbreken, voortzetten, forceren of annuleren vanuit de Network Status Monitor op een Microsoft Windows NT-client.
  Als er aan de linkerkant van de optie Client Operation een vinkje wordt weergegeven, is de optie ingeschakeld en zijn de hierboven vermelde handelingen mogelijk vanuit de Network Status Monitor.

LBP-660 Network Status Monitor

De LBP-660 Network Status Monitor is een functie waarmee een Microsoft Windows NT-client die is verbonden met de netwerkprinter de status van de LBP-660 kan controleren en tevens afdrukopdrachten onderbreken, voortzetten, forceren en annuleren, op dezelfde manier als met een statusvenster op een computer waarop de LBP-660 lokaal is aangesloten. Deze functie is alleen beschikbaar voor Microsoft Windows NT-clients en kan niet worden gebruikt vanuit Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 of Microsoft Windows voor Workgroups.

In de LBP-660 Network Status Monitor wordt de printerstatus alleen weergegeven als tekst en niet in de vorm van een animatie of een voortgangsbalk, zoals in het LBP-660 Status Window.

Wanneer u een Microsoft Windows NT-client verbindt met de netwerkprinter, wordt de Network Status Monitor automatisch geïnstalleerd vanaf de afdrukserver.



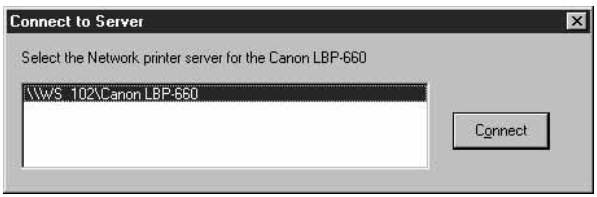
De LBP-660 Network Status Monitor gebruiken

■ De Network Status Monitor starten

U kunt op elk gewenst moment de LBP-660 Network Status Monitor starten door de volgende stappen uit te voeren:

1. Dubbelklik op het pictogram Canon LBP-660 Network Status Monitor in de groep Windows Printing System op de client of dubbelklik op de snelkoppeling Canon LBP-660 Network Status Monitor op het bureaublad.

2. Wanneer er een bericht wordt weergegeven waarin u wordt gevraagd of u een verbinding met de netwerkprinter wilt maken, klikt u op de knop Yes.
   - Vervolgens wordt er een venster weergegeven waarin u de netwerkprinter kunt selecteren waarmee u een verbinding wilt maken.



3. Selecteer de naam van de gewenste printer in de vervolgkeuzelijst en klik op de knop Connect.
   - Wanneer u de verbinding met de netwerkprinter hebt gemaakt, wordt de huidige printerstatus in een tekstvak weergegeven.

■ Statusopties

De menubalk in de LBP-660 Network Status Monitor bevat 3 menu's: Options, Printer en Help.



Het menu Options
In het menu Options kunt u de opties selecteren die betrekking hebben op de werking van de Network Status Monitor.

- Connect to Server
  Selecteer deze optie als uw verbinding met de netwerkprinter om de een of andere reden is verbroken of als u een verbinding met een andere netwerkprinter wilt maken (dit moet wel een LBP-660 zijn). Vervolgens wordt hetzelfde dialoogvenster Connect to Server weergegeven dat u ziet wanneer u de Network Status Monitor start. Selecteer de gewenste printernaam en klik op de knop Connect.
- De optie Sound
  Met deze optie kunt u opgeven of er gesproken berichten moeten worden afgespeeld wanneer er een printerfout optreedt.

NEDERLANDS

- De Network Status Monitor kan alleen gesproken berichten afspelen als er een fout optreedt. Als er in de client-computer geen geluidskaart is geïnstalleerd, is deze optie niet actief.

- Default Size
  Als u het weergaveformaat van de Network Status Monitor hebt gewijzigd, kunt u met deze optie het oorspronkelijke formaat weer herstellen.
- Hide Menu
  Met deze optie kunt u de menu's van de Network Status Monitor verbergen. Als u de menubalk vervolgens weer zichtbaar wilt maken, drukt u op **Esc** wanneer de Network Status Monitor het actieve venster is of dubbelklikt u op een willekeurige plaats in het berichtengebied.
- Always On Top
  Als u deze optie selecteert (er wordt dan links naast Always On Top een vinkje weergegeven), wordt de Network Status Monitor altijd als het bovenste venster op het bureaublad weergegeven.

Het menu Printer
Met het menu Printer kunt u de printerfuncties besturen. Houd er wel rekening mee dat dit menu niet actief is (en de printer dus niet kan worden bestuurd vanaf een client) als de optie Client Operation niet is ingeschakeld in het menu Options van het LBP-660 Status Window op de afdrukserver.

Voor meer informatie over het menu Printer, zie "Het menu Printer" in de gebruikershandleiding.

- De functies in het menu Printer zijn echter nog wel steeds van invloed op afdruktaken van andere clients. Wanneer er in de wachtrij van de server afdruktaken van meerdere clients staan, moet er voorzichtig worden omgegaan met het annuleren van afdruktaken, omdat afdruktaken van andere clients verloren kunnen gaan. Houd hier rekening mee wanneer u afdruktaken verwijdert.

Het menu Help
Als u dit menu kiest, wordt er een dialoogvenster weergegeven met informatie over de versie van de Network Status Monitor.

Hoofdstuk 5
Problemen oplossen

In dit hoofdstuk wordt beschreven hoe u problemen kunt oplossen die zich voordoen tijdens de installatie van het Microsoft Windows Printing System voor Microsoft Windows NT en tijdens het werken met de LBP-660 als netwerkprinter op een Microsoft Windows NT-netwerk.

Voor instructies voor het oplossen van problemen met de printer zelf (papierstoringen en dergelijke), de afdrukkwaliteit en het Microsoft Windows Printing System en tevens voor uitleg bij de foutberichten, verwijzen wij u naar "Hoofdstuk 6 Problemen oplossen" in de LBP-660 gebruikershandleiding.

Als u de oorzaak van een probleem niet kunt vaststellen, start dan het hulpprogramma Canon LBP-660 Trouble Shooter in de groep Windows Printing System. Het programma Trouble Shooter biedt hulp bij het oplossen van problemen met instellingen of geïnstalleerde bestanden.

Als het probleem hierna nog steeds niet is opgelost, maak dan de installatie van het Microsoft Windows Printing System op de afdrukserver ongedaan, start de server opnieuw en installeer nogmaals het Microsoft Windows Printing System. U kunt de installatie van het Microsoft Windows Printing System ongedaan maken door het hulpprogramma Uninstaller in de groep Windows Printing System te starten.



- Als u de installatie van bepaalde software ongedaan hebt gemaakt, moet u altijd Microsoft Windows NT opnieuw starten. Als u Microsoft Windows NT niet opnieuw start, kunt u de verwijderde software niet opnieuw installeren.

NEDERLANDS

Problemen tijdens de installatie van het Microsoft Windows Printing System

Problemen tijdens de installatie als lokale printer

Probleem	Oorzaak	Oplossing
Kan de knop Mijn computer in het dialoogvenster Wizard Printer toevoegen niet selecteren.	De gebruiker die de software installeert, beschikt niet over de rechten van een beheerder of hoofdgebruiker.	Voor het installeren van het Microsoft Windows Printing System zijn beheerdersrechten vereist. Laat de installatie uitvoeren door iemand die over beheerdersrechten beschikt.
Wanneer alle bestanden zijn gekopieerd, wordt het bericht weergegeven dat beheerdersrechten zijn vereist.	Een gebruiker met alleen rechten als hoofdgebruiker heeft geprobeerd de software te installeren.	Laat iemand die over beheerdersrechten beschikt de software opnieuw installeren.
Er wordt een foutbericht weergegeven met de mededeling dat een nieuwe installatie is vereist.	U voert een lokale installatie uit op een computer waarop het stuurprogramma voor de LBP-660 reeds is geïnstalleerd voor een netwerkprinter.	Voer de lokale installatie nogmaals uit en selecteer de optie Stuurprogramma vervangen in het dialoogvenster Wizard Printer toevoegen.

Problemen tijdens de installatie als netwerkprinter

Probleem	Oorzaak	Oplossing
De naam van de gedeelde printer of de afdrukserver die moet worden verbonden komt niet voor in de keuzelijst Gedeelde printers.	• De afdrukserver is niet gestart. • De printer is niet gedeeld. • U beschikt niet over de vereiste rechten voor het maken van een verbinding met de printer of de afdrukserver.	• Start de afdrukserver. • Deel de printer in het dialoogvenster Canon LBP-660 Eigenschappen. • Vraag de netwerkbeheerder of uw gebruikersrechten kunnen worden gewijzigd.

Problemen tijdens het afdrukken via het netwerk

Probleem	Oorzaak	Oplossing
Kan in de Network Status Monitor geen verbinding maken met de afdrukserver of de gedeelde printer.	• De afdrukserver is niet gestart. • De printer is niet gedeeld. • U beschikt niet over de vereiste rechten voor het maken van een verbinding met de printer of de afdrukserver.	• Start de afdrukserver. • Deel de printer in het dialoogvenster Canon LBP-660 Eigenschappen. • Vraag de netwerkbeheerder of uw gebruikersrechten kunnen worden gewijzigd.
Kan het menu Printer in de Network Status Monitor niet gebruiken.	De optie Client Operation is niet ingeschakeld in het menu Options in het LBP-660 Status Window van de afdrukserver.	Selecteer de optie Client Operation in het menu Options.
Kan vanaf een Microsoft Windows NT-client niet afdrukken op een afdrukserver onder Microsoft Windows 95/ 3.1 of Microsoft Windows voor Workgroups.	Het Microsoft Windows Printing System voor Microsoft Windows NT ondersteunt geen afdrukservers onder Microsoft Windows 95/3.1 of Microsoft Windows voor Workgroups.	Gebruik een Microsoft Windows NT-afdrukserver.
Kan niet afdrukken vanaf een Microsoft Windows 95/3.1- of Microsoft Windows voor Workgroups-client.	• De map WPS op de afdrukserver is niet gedeeld. • Het Standaard gegevenstype van de afdrukserver is niet ingesteld op WPS.	• Deel de map WPS op de afdrukserver. • Klik op de knop Afdrukserver op het tabblad Algemeen in het dialoogvenster Canon LBP-660 Eigenschappen en selecteer WPS bij Standaard gegevenstype.

Bijlage

Vergelijking met het Microsoft Windows Printing System voor andere versies van Microsoft Windows

Sommige functies in het Microsoft Windows Printing System voor Microsoft Windows NT wijken af van de functies die beschikbaar zijn in het Microsoft Windows Printing System voor Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 en Microsoft Windows voor Workgroups.

Let op de volgende punten wanneer u de LBP-660 gebruikershandleiding leest.

Tijdens lokaal afdrukken of afdrukken via het netwerk met Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 en tijdens afdrukken via het netwerk met Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 of Microsoft Windows voor Workgroups

- Aangezien u de PCL-emulatie niet kunt gebruiken, kunt u niet afdrukken vanaf de prompt (Microsoft Windows NT) of de MS-DOS-prompt (Microsoft Windows 95).

Tijdens lokaal afdrukken of afdrukken via het netwerk met Microsoft Windows NT 4.0

- U kunt de overlay-functie voor formulieren niet gebruiken.
- U kunt geen testpagina afdrukken vanuit het LBP-660 Status Window. Gebruik de knop Testpagina afdrukken op het tabblad Algemeen in het dialoogvenster Canon LBP-660 Eigenschappen.
- Er is geen menu-optie Printer Options (Afdrukopties) in het menu Options in het LBP-660 Status Window.
  Stel de tonerdichtheid in met de optie Toner Density in de groep Opties voor Document op het tabblad Geavanceerd in het dialoogvenster Eigenschappen voor Standaarddocument.

Canon

LBP-660 LASERPRINTER

Microsoft® Windows® Printing System Guide til Microsoft® Windows NT®

DANSK

VIGTIGT:
Læs denne håndbog omhyggeligt, før du bruger printeren. Gem denne håndbog til senere brug.

Copyright

Copyright © 1998 Canon Inc. Alle rettigheder forbeholdes
Copyright © 1996 Microsoft Corporation. Alle rettigheder forbeholdes

Bemærk

Canon Inc. yder ingen form for udtrykkelig eller stiltiende garanti, for så vidt angår denne brugervejlednings indhold. Canon Inc. er ikke ansvarlig for nogen direkte eller indirekte følgevirkninger af materialets anvendelse.
Dette dokument indeholder materiale, der er beskyttet af lovgivningen om copyright. Alle rettigheder forbeholdes. Dette dokument eller dele deraf må ikke fotokopieres, reproduceres eller oversættes til andre sprog uden forudgående skriftlig tilladelse fra Canon Inc.
Brugen af denne håndbog er underlagt betingelserne i licensaftalen (Microsoft® Windows® Printing System), som leveres med printeren.
Oplysninger i denne håndbog kan ændres uden varsel.

Varemærker

LBP, Canon og Canon-logoet er varemærker tilhørende Canon Inc.
PCL er et varemærke tilhørende Hewlett-Packard Company.
IBM er et varemærke tilhørende International Business Machines Corporation.
Microsoft, Windows, Windows NT, Windows-logoet og MS-DOS er enten registrerede varemærker eller varemærker tilhørende Microsoft Corporation i USA og/eller andre lande.
NetWare® er et registreret varemærke, og Novell er et varemærke tilhørende Novell, Inc.
TrueType er et varemærke tilhørende Apple Computer, Inc.
Lucida er et varemærke tilhørende Bigelow & Homes.
Andre mærker og produktnavne er varemærker eller registrerede varemærker tilhørende deres respektive ejere.
I denne håndbog omtales Microsoft®, Microsoft® Windows® og Microsoft® Windows NT® som hhv. Microsoft, Microsoft Windows og Microsoft Windows NT.

Konventioner

I denne håndbog benyttes følgende konventioner:



Bemærkninger er råd eller forslag, der hjælper dig med at udnytte printeren bedst muligt.



Betyder, at hvis du undlader at følge den anbefalede fremgangsmåde, kan hardware og software blive beskadiget.

Kapitel 1
Introduktion

Om denne håndbog

I Microsoft® Windows® Printing System (i det følgende kaldet Microsoft Windows Printing System) Guide til Microsoft® Windows NT® (i det følgende kaldet Microsoft Windows NT) beskrives, hvordan du installerer og bruger Microsoft Windows Printing System til Microsoft Windows NT på en computer med Microsoft Windows NT version 4.0 (til servere og arbejdsstationer), der er sluttet til Canon LBP-660-LASERPRINTER.

Denne håndbog består af følgende kapitler:

Kapitel 1 Introduktion 1

I dette kapitel beskrives, hvordan du bruger denne håndbog, samt systemkravene ved installation af Microsoft Windows Printing System på en PC med Microsoft Windows NT.

Kapitel 2 Installere Microsoft Windows Printing System 3

I dette kapitel beskrives, hvordan du installerer Microsoft Windows Printing System til Microsoft Windows NT, når LBP-660 bruges som en lokal printer, og hvordan du deler LBP-660 på et Microsoft Windows NT-netværk.

Kapitel 3 Forbinde LBP-660 til en netværksprinter 10

I dette kapitel beskrives, hvordan du bruger LBP-660 fra andre computere med Microsoft Windows NT eller fra computere med Microsoft® Windows® (i det følgende kaldet Microsoft Windows) 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 eller Microsoft Windows til Workgroups.

Kapitel 4 Bruge Microsoft Windows Printing System 13

I dette kapitel beskrives, hvordan du bruger Network Status Monitor, statusvinduet til LBP-660 og dialogboksen Egenskaber i Microsoft Windows Printing System til Microsoft Windows NT.

Kapitel 5 Fejlfinding 23

I dette kapitel beskrives, hvordan du løser evt. problemer under installation og brug af Microsoft Windows Printing System på et Microsoft Windows NT-netværk.

Appendiks 26

I dette afsnit af appendikset findes en liste over de punkter i brugerhåndbogen til LBP-660, hvor Microsoft Windows Printing System til Microsoft Windows NT adskiller sig fra Microsoft Windows Printing System til Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 og Microsoft Windows til Workgroups.

Før du installerer denne software

Før du installerer Microsoft Windows Printing System på en PC med Microsoft Windows NT, skal du undersøge, om computeren opfylder nedenstående krav til hardware og software.

- IBM-PC eller en kompatibel computer med en 90 MHz Pentium-processor eller en hurtigere model samt Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 (til servere og arbejdsstationer).



- Den version af Microsoft Windows Printing System til LBP-660, der beskrives i denne håndbog, kan benyttes til Microsoft Windows NT version 4.0 til PC/AT-kompatible computere. Microsoft Windows Printing System kan ikke benyttes på computere med Microsoft Windows NT version 3.51 eller tidligere versioner eller Microsoft Windows NT til computere med RISC-baserede processorer.
- Hvis du benytter et Novell NetWare®-netværk, kan du ikke installere denne software på en NetWare®-server. Du kan ikke bruge denne software til at udskrive fra Novell Netware®-klienter til Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 eller Microsoft Windows til Workgroups.

- Mindst 24 MB RAM
- Mindst 10 MB disponibel plads på harddisken
- CD-ROM-drev
- En almindelig parallel Centronics-printerport (når LBP bruges som en lokal printer)
- Netværkskort (når LBP deles på et netværk)

Selvom det kan være muligt at installere Microsoft Windows Printing System på computere, der ikke opfylder ovenstående krav, kan Canon ikke garantere, at softwaren virker korrekt. Du opnår den bedste ydeevne med LBP-660, hvis du benytter nedenstående hardware og software:

- 166 MHz Pentium-processor eller en hurtigere model
- Mindst 48 MB RAM
- ECP-printerport
- Lydkort (kræves, hvis du vil høre lydmeddelelser i Microsoft Windows Printing System)

Hvis LBP-660 skal deles på et netværk, skal følgende netværksprotokoller være installeret:

- NetBEUI
- TCP/IP
- NWLink IPX/SPX



- Du skal være netværksadministrator for at kunne installere Microsoft Windows Printing System til Microsoft Windows NT. Installationen bør udføres af en netværks-administrator med de nødvendige adgangstilladelser.

Kapitel 2
Installere Microsoft Windows Printing System

Når du skal installere Microsoft Windows Printing System til Microsoft Windows NT, skal du bruge vedlagte installationsdisk, Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT 4.0.

Installere Microsoft Windows Printing System til lokale printere

I dette afsnit beskrives, hvordan du installerer Microsoft Windows Printing System, når LBP-660 skal bruges som en lokal printer. Hvis LBP-660 skal bruges som en netværksprinter, henvises til beskrivelsen i kapitel 3, "Forbinde LBP-660 til en netværksprinter".

Start guiden Printerinstallation

Brug guiden Printerinstallation i Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 til at installere Microsoft Windows Printing System på Microsoft Windows NT. Installer softwaren på følgende måde.

1. Start den computer, som LBP-660 er tilsluttet, og start Microsoft Windows NT 4.0.
2. Log på som Administrator.
3. Brug en af følgende metoder til start af guiden Printerinstallation:
   a. Klik på knappen Start på proceslinjen, og peg på Indstillinger. Klik på Printere i den viste undermenu for at åbne mappen Printere, og dobbeltklik på ikonet Tilføj printer i mappen Printere.
   b. Dobbeltklik på ikonet Denne computer på skrivebordet. Åbn mappen Printere, og dobbeltklik på ikonet Tilføj printer.

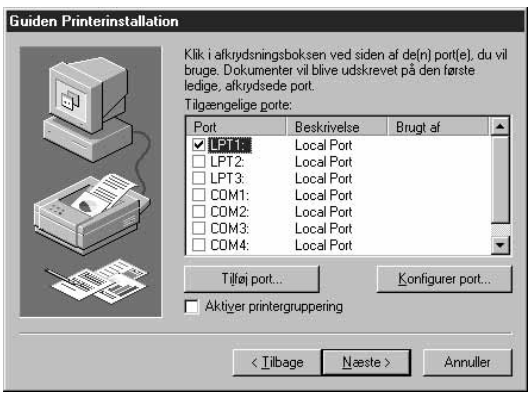
DANSK

- Derefter startes guiden Printerinstallation, hvor du kan installere printerdrivere.


Guiden Printerinstallation
Denne guide hjælper dig med at installere en printer eller foretage printertilslutningerne. Denne printer vil blive styret af:
Denne computer
Alle indstillinger vil blive kontrolleret og konfigureret på denne computer.
Netværksprinterserver
Tilslut til en printer på en anden maskine. Alle indstillinger på denne printer styres af en printerserver, der er blevet indstillet af en administrator.
< Tilbage
Næste >
Annuller

4. Klik på knappen Denne computer i guiden Printerinstallation, og klik derefter på knappen Næste >.
   - Vinduet til valg af port åbnes.

Vælge printerport



1. Klik i afkrydsningsfeltet ud for den port, som LBP-660 er tilsluttet (normalt LPT1:) for at vælge den, og klik derefter på knappen Næste >.



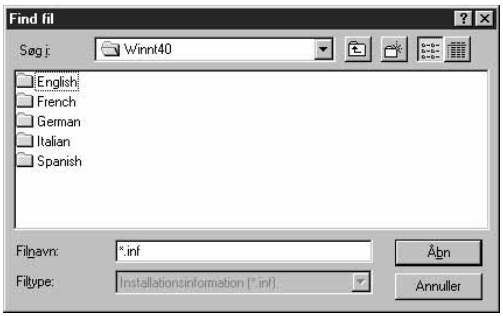
- Du kan kun slutte LBP-660 til en LPT-port (parallel). Du kan ikke udskrive til LBP-660, hvis du vælger en seriel port eller en anden port end den, som LBP-660 er tilsluttet.

   - Derefter vises vinduet til valg af printermodel. Vinduet indeholder de printerproducenter og -modeller, som Microsoft Windows NT understøtter som standard.

2. Da LBP-660 ikke findes på listen, skal du indsætte CD'en Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 i CD-ROM-drevet og klikke på knappen Har diskette….

3. Når dialogboksen Installer fra diskette vises, skal du skrive CD-ROM-drevets drevbogstav i boksen "Kopier producentens filer fra" og derefter klikke på knappen Gennemse….

4. Dobbeltklik på mappen Winnt40 i dialogboksen Find fil.
   - Mapperne til de enkelte sprog vises i dialogboksen Find fil.



5. Dobbeltklik på mappen til den sprogversion af Microsoft Windows NT, som du bruger.
   - Når Wpsc3nt vises i dialogboksen Find fil, skal du klikke på knappen Åbn.

- Hvis der ikke er nogen sprogmappe til den version af Microsoft Windows NT, som du bruger, skal du vælge mappen English.

6. Klik på knappen OK i dialogboksen Installer fra diskette.

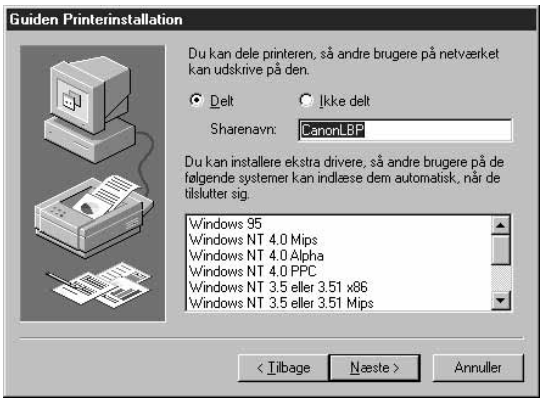
7. Når "Canon LBP-660" vises på listen Printere i guiden Printerinstallation, skal du klikke på knappen Næste >.
   - Der vises et vindue til navngivning af printeren, og "Canon LBP-660" vises i boksen Printernavn. Hvis printeren skal have et andet navn, skal du skrive navnet som beskrevet på skærmen.

8. Klik på knappen Næste >.
   - Derefter vises vinduet til printerdeling.

DANSK

Indstille printerdeling

I dette afsnit beskrives, hvordan man angiver, om LBP-660 skal deles på et netværk. Du kan også vælge indstillinger efter installation af Microsoft Windows Printing System. Der findes flere oplysninger i afsnittet ”Printerdeling”.


Guiden Printerinstallation
Du kan dele printeren, så andre brugere på netværket kan udskrive på den.
Delt
Ikke delt
Sharenavn:
CanonLBP
Du kan installere ekstra drivere, så andre brugere på de følgende systemer kan indlæse dem automatisk, når de tilslutter sig.
Windows 95
Windows NT 4.0 Mips
Windows NT 4.0 Alpha
Windows NT 4.0 PPC
Windows NT 3.5 eller 3.51 x86
Windows NT 3.5 eller 3.51 Mips
< Tilbage
Næste >
Annuller

1. Du deler LBP-660 på et netværk ved at vælge alternativknappen Delt.

2. Klik på knappen Næste >.

   - Der åbnes et vindue, og du bliver spurgt, om der skal udskrives en testside.

Før udskrivning af en testside

Når du har installeret Microsoft Windows Printing System, kan du udskrive en testside på LBP-660.

1. Du udskriver en testside ved at klikke på knappen Udfør, hvorefter siden automatisk udskrives. Hvis du ikke vil udskrive en testside, skal du klikke på knappen Nej og derefter på knappen Udfør.

Når du klikker på knappen Udfør, kopieres de nødvendige filer fra installationsdisken til harddisken. Status for kopieringen vises på skærmen under kopieringen.

Når filerne er kopieret, vises ikonet Canon LBP-660 i mappen Printere.
Ikonet Canon LBP-660 har forskelligt udseende, afhængigt af om printeren deles eller ej.

Derefter vises meddelelsen ”Initialiserer… Vent et øjeblik!”, mens Microsoft Windows Printing System starter initialiseringen. Under initialiseringen oprettes programgruppen Microsoft Windows Printing System, hvorefter den anbringes på Startmenuen. Vinduet Windows Printing System vises også på skrivebordet sammen med et genvejsikon til gruppen Microsoft Windows Printing System (se næste side).

Hvis du vil oprette forbindelse til LBP-660 og udskrive fra en Microsoft Windows 95-, Microsoft Windows 3.1- eller Microsoft Windows til Workgroups-klient, der er forbundet til Microsoft Windows NT-netværket, skal du klikke på knappen Ja, når den næste dialogboks åbnes.

Hvis du ikke vil dele LBP-660, eller hvis alle klienterne er Microsoft Windows NT-computere, skal du klikke på knappen Nej.


Microsoft Windows Printing System Installation
Do you want to share the WPS directory for allowing Windows95/Windows3.1 clients to print?
Ja
Nej

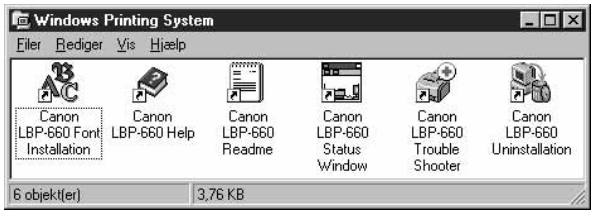
Afslutte installationen

Når installationen af Microsoft Windows Printing System er færdig, vises en meddelelse. Klik på OK for at afslutte installationen.

Hvis du valgte at udskrive en testside under installationen, udskrives den nu. Hvis installationen blev gennemført, vises statusvinduet til LBP-660 nu på skrivebordet, og testsiden udskrives på LBP-660. Undersøg testsiden, og klik derefter på knappen Ja i den viste dialogboks, hvis testsidens kvalitet er tilfredsstillende.

Når installationen af Microsoft Windows Printing System afsluttes, kan du med det samme begynde at udskrive fra den Microsoft Windows NT-computer, hvor LBP-660 blev installeret som en lokal printer. Du kan dog først bruge computeren som printserver og udskrive fra en klient via netværket, når du har genstartet Microsoft Windows NT.

Programgruppen Windows Printing System, som blev oprettet under installationen af Microsoft Windows Printing System, indeholder de seks ikoner, der vises nedenfor.



Canon LBP-660 Font Installation
Dette er et hjælpeprogram til installation af TrueType-skrifter (22 Lucida TrueType-skrifter), som ligger på installationsdiskette 3 til Microsoft Windows 95/3.1 på Microsoft Windows NT. Du installerer TrueType-skrifterne ved at dobbeltklikke på ikonet Canon LBP-660 Font Installation. Følg derefter instruktionerne på skærmen.

- De installerede TrueType-skrifter fjernes ikke, selvom du fjerner Microsoft Windows Printing System med det medfølgende program.

Canon LBP-660 Help
Åbner hjælp til Microsoft Windows Printing System.

Canon LBP-660 Readme
Et tekstdokument med ekstra oplysninger om den installerede version af Microsoft Windows Printing System. Læs dette dokument, før du bruger Microsoft Windows Printing System.

Canon LBP-660 Status Window
Dette ikon åbner statusvinduet til Canon LBP-660.

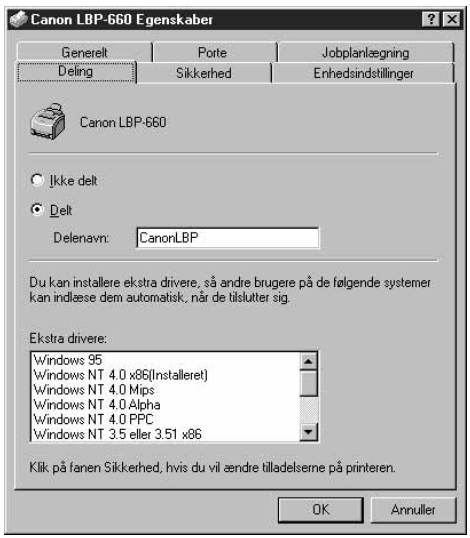
Canon LBP-660 Trouble Shooter
Et hjælpeprogram, som kan bruges ved evt. problemer med Microsoft Windows Printing System. Se kapitlet ”Fejlfinding” i brugerhåndbogen for at få vejledning i brugen af programmet.

Canon LBP-660 Uninstallation
Et hjælpeprogram til fjernelse af Microsoft Windows Printing System. Se kapitlet ”Fejlfinding” i brugerhåndbogen for at få vejledning i brugen af programmet.

Printerdeling

Når du har installeret Microsoft Windows Printing System, skal du i dialogboksen Canon LBP-660 Egenskaber vælge LBP-660 som en delt printer.

1. Brug nedenstående fremgangsmåde til at åbne fanen Deling i dialogboksen Canon LBP-660 Egenskaber.
   - Åbn mappen Printere, klik med højre musknap på ikonet LBP-660, og vælg Deling … på genvejsmenuen.



2. Du deler LBP-660 ved at klikke på alternativknappen Delt.

- Når du vælger Delt, viser navnet i boksen Delenavn de første 8 tegn (uden mellemrum) af det printernavn, der blev brugt under installationen. Du kan ændre navnet ved at skrive et andet i boksen.
  Hvis klientens indstilling af printerdeling på netværket inkluderer Microsoft Windows 3.1- eller Microsoft Windows til Workgroups-computere, skal du sikre dig, at navnet ikke er på mere end 8 tegn.

- Hvis du gør printeren til en delt printer, skal du ikke vælge operativsystemet på listen Ekstra drivere nederst i dialogboksen. LBP-660-driveren kan ikke installeres på andre systemer end Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 (x86).

3. Klik på knappen OK.
   - LBP-660 er nu en delt printer, hvilket afspejles i ikonet i mappen Printere.

DANSK

Kapitel 3
Forbinde LBP-660 til en netværksprinter

Hvis du gør LBP-660 til en delt printer på den Microsoft Windows NT-computer, som LBP-660 er tilsluttet, og derefter vælger computeren som printserver, kan LBP-660 ikke kun bruges af Microsoft Windows NT-klienter, men også af Microsoft Windows 95-, Microsoft Windows 3.1- og Microsoft Windows til Workgroups-klienter, der er forbundet til Microsoft Windows NT-netværket.

- Hvis den Microsoft Windows NT-computer, som LBP-660 er tilsluttet, skal bruges som printserver, skal du først starte serviceprogrammet Server på den pågældende computer. Start serviceprogrammet Server, før du opretter forbindelse til netværksprinteren.
- Hvis du vil oprette forbindelse til en Microsoft Windows NT-printserver fra en klientcomputer og udskrive et dokument, skal klienten have de nødvendige adgangstilladelser til at oprette forbindelse til serveren og den delte printer. Spørg netværksadministratoren, hvis du ikke kender dine adgangstilladelser.

Oprette forbindelse fra en Microsoft Windows NT-klient

Hvis den klient, der bruger LBP-660 som en netværksprinter, bruger Microsoft Windows NT, hentes og installeres printerdriveren og Network Status Monitor automatisk fra printserveren, når du tilføjer printeren. Du kan godt tilføje printeren uden at have privilegier som administrator. Normalt kan alle gøre det.

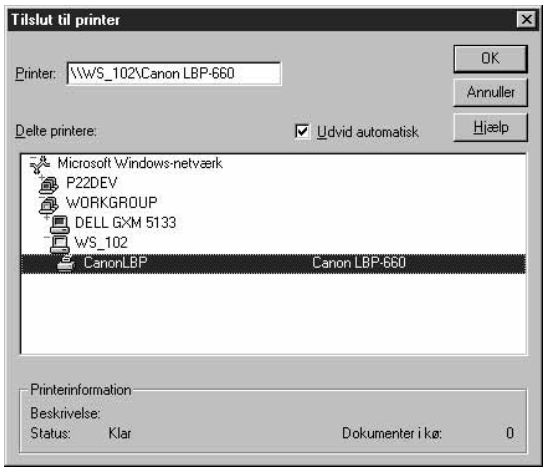
Starte guiden Printerinstallation

1. Tænd klientcomputeren, start Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 og log ind.
2. Start guiden Printerinstallation.
   - Kapitel 2, ”Installere Microsoft Windows Printing System”, indeholder oplysninger om, hvordan du starter guiden Printerinstallation.

Vælge netværksprinter


Guiden Printerinstallation
Denne guide hjælper dig med at installere en printer eller foretage printertilslutningerne. Denne printer vil blive styret af:
Denne computer
Alle indstillinger vil blive kontrolleret og konfigureret på denne computer.
Netværksprinterserver
Tilslut til en printer på en anden maskine. Alle indstillinger på denne printer styres af en printerserver, der er blevet indstillet af en administrator.
< Tilbage
Næste >
Annuller

1. Klik på alternativknappen Netværksprinterserver, og klik derefter på knappen Næste >. Nu vises vinduet Tilslut til printer.



2. Dobbeltklik på navnet på den printserver, der vises på listen Delte printere.
   - Når du dobbeltklikker på navnet på printserveren, vises der en liste over de delte printere, der er forbundet til printserveren.
3. Klik på navnet på den delte LBP-660, der skal oprettes forbindelse til.
   - Netværksstien til den valgte printer vises i boksen Printer.

4. Klik på knappen OK.
   - LBP-660-printerdriveren og Network Status Monitor hentes fra serveren og installeres på klienten.
   - Når softwaren er hentet og installeret, vises ikonet Canon LBP-660 i mappen Printere, og programgruppen Windows Printing System vises på Startmenuen. Der oprettes også en genvej til Network Status Monitor (WpsC3Nsm.exe) på skrivebordet.
5. Klik på knappen Udfør i guiden Printerinstallation.

Oprette forbindelse fra en Microsoft Windows 95-, Microsoft Windows 3.1- eller Microsoft Windows til Workgroups-klient

Hvis du vil oprette forbindelse til LBP-660 fra en Microsoft Windows 95-, Microsoft Windows 3.1- eller Microsoft Windows til Workgroups-klient via en Microsoft Windows NT-printserver, skal Microsoft Windows Printing System til det pågældende operativsystem først installeres på klienten. Brugerhåndbogen indeholder oplysninger om, hvordan du installerer Microsoft Windows Printing System på en Microsoft Windows 95-, Microsoft Windows 3.1- eller Microsoft Windows til Workgroups-klient.

Kapitel 4
Bruge Microsoft Windows Printing System

Microsoft Windows Printing System til Microsoft Windows NT bruges stort set på samme måde som Microsoft Windows Printing System til andre versioner af Microsoft Windows. I kapitel 3, "Brug af Microsoft Windows Printing System", i brugerhåndbogen findes en oversigt over Microsoft Windows Printing System.

Dialogbokse i Microsoft Windows Printing System

De to vigtigste dialogbokse i Microsoft Windows Printing System til Microsoft Windows NT er dialogboksen Printeregenskaber og dialogboksen Egenskaber for standarddokument. Alle brugere kan åbne disse dialogbokse og se indstillingerne i dem, men du kan kun ændre indstillingerne, hvis du har privilegier til "Fuld kontrol".

Printeregenskaber

Hvis du vil se printeregenskaber, skal du vælge Egenskaber på menuen Filer i mappen Printere eller klikke med højre musknap på ikonet LBP-660 i mappen Printere og vælge Egenskaber på genvejsmenuen.

Dialogboksen Printeregenskaber indeholder nedenstående 6 faner. Da indstillingerne på hver fane er fælles for alle Microsoft Windows NT-printere, gives der kun en generel oversigt over indholdet af fanebladene sammen med specielle forhold, der skal tages højde for ved brugen af LBP-660.

Du kan finde omfattende beskrivelser af de enkelte indstillinger i dokumentationen til Microsoft Windows NT. Du kan også klikke på spørgsmålstegnet (?) i øverste højre hjørne af dialogboksen og derefter klikke på den relevante indstilling for at få hjælp til emnet.



DANSK

■ Fanen Generelt

Indstillingerne på denne fane gælder hele printerdriveren.

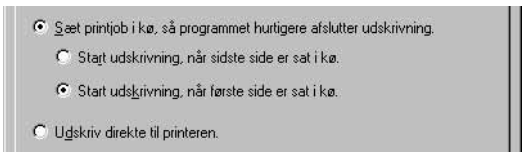
- LBP-660 understøtter ikke separatorsider. Selvom du klikker på alternativknappen Separatorside for at indstille en separatorside, udskrives den ikke.
- Du må ikke ændre standardindstillingerne i dialogboksen Udskriftsprocessor, som vises, når du klikker på knappen Udskriftsprocessor…. Hvis du ændrer standarddatatype, kan du ikke udskrive fra klienter, der ikke bruger Microsoft Windows NT.
- Hvis du vil udskrive en testside, skal du klikke på knappen Testside på denne fane. I Microsoft Windows Printing System til Microsoft Windows NT indeholder statusvinduet til LBP-660 ikke en knap til test af printeren.

■ Fanen Porte

Vælg den port, som LBP-660 er tilsluttet, på dette faneblad.
Hvis LBP-660 er tilsluttet og i brug, behøver du ikke at ændre denne indstilling.

■ Fanen Jobplanlægning

- På dette faneblad kan du planlægge, hvornår der skal udskrives, hvilke dokumenter der skal udskrives først, og du kan vælge, hvordan udskriftsdata skal sættes i kø.
- Du skal altid vælge alternativknappen ”Sæt printjob i kø, så programmet hurtigere afslutter udskrivning” til LBP-660. Hvis du vælger ”Udskriv direkte til printeren”, kan du ikke udskrive fra programmer.


Sæt printjob i kø, så programmet hurtigere afslutter udskrivning.
Start udskrivning, når sidste side er sat i kø.
Start udskrivning, når første side er sat i kø.
Udskriv direkte til printeren.

- Vælg ”Start udskrivning, når sidste side er sat i kø” eller ”Start udskrivning, når første side er sat i kø” efter behov. Bemærk dog, at denne mulighed har indflydelse på forløbslinjen i statusvinduet. Der findes flere oplysninger i afsnittet ”Statusvinduet til LBP-660”.

■ Fanen Deling

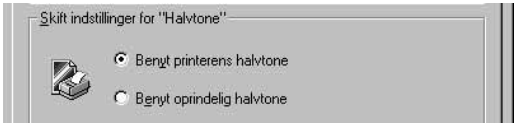
På dette faneblad bestemmes, om LBP-660 er delt. Der findes flere oplysninger i kapitel 2, ”Installere Microsoft Windows Printing System”.

■ Fanen Sikkerhed

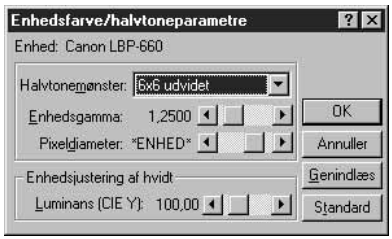
På dette faneblad vælges sikkerhedsindstillinger til LBP-660.
Der findes flere oplysninger om printersikkerhed i dokumentationen til Microsoft Windows NT.

■ Fanen Enhedsindstillinger

På dette faneblad angives, hvordan halvtoner håndteres ved udskrivning af grafik. LBP-660 kan udskrive med printerens egne halvtoner eller med halvtonerne i selve Microsoft Windows NT. Hvis du vil vælge de anvendte halvtoner, skal du klikke på Halvtone og derefter bruge alternativknapperne under "Skift indstillinger for 'Halvtone'" til at vælge de ønskede halvtoner.



Hvis du vælger "Benyt oprindelig halvtone", kan du ændre de oprindelige halvtone-indstillinger i dialogboksen Enhedsfarve/halvtoneparametre. Dokumentationen til Microsoft Windows NT indeholder oplysninger om, hvordan du ændrer de oprindelige halvtoner.



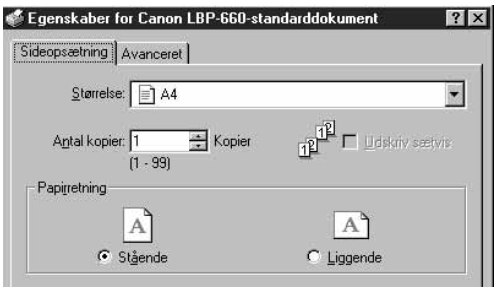
- Indstillingen af Justering af halvtonefarve i dialogboksen Dokumentegenskaber afhænger af den valgte alternativknap.

DANSK

Egenskaber for standarddokument

I dialogboksen Egenskaber for standarddokument kan du vælge standardindstillinger til udskrivning på LBP-660. Hvis du vil bruge dialogboksen Egenskaber for standarddokument, skal du vælge ”Dokumentstandarder…” på menuen Filer i mappen Printere eller klikke med højre musknap på ikonet LBP-660 i mappen Printere og vælge ”Dokumentstandarder…” på genvejsmenuen.

Dialogboksen Egenskaber for standarddokument indeholder den hyppigt brugte fane Sideopsætning og fanen Avanceret til de mere specielle muligheder. Du kan få flere oplysninger om indstillingerne på skærmen, hvis du klikker på spørgsmålstegnet (?) i øverste højre hjørne af dialogboksen og derefter klikker på en indstilling.



- Du kan også åbne en tilsvarende dialogboks og vælge indstillingerne ved at vælge ”Udskriv” eller ”Sideopsætning” på menuen Filer i et program. Bemærk dog, at de indstillinger, der vælges i et program, kun gælder det aktive dokument i det pågældende program – ikke indstillingerne i Dokumentstandarder.

■ Fanen Sideopsætning

På dette faneblad angives parametre som papirstørrelse, -retning og antal kopier.

Størrelse
Vælg papirstørrelsen på listen. Hvis du vælger Brugerdefineret, skal du angive størrelsen på fanebladet Avanceret.

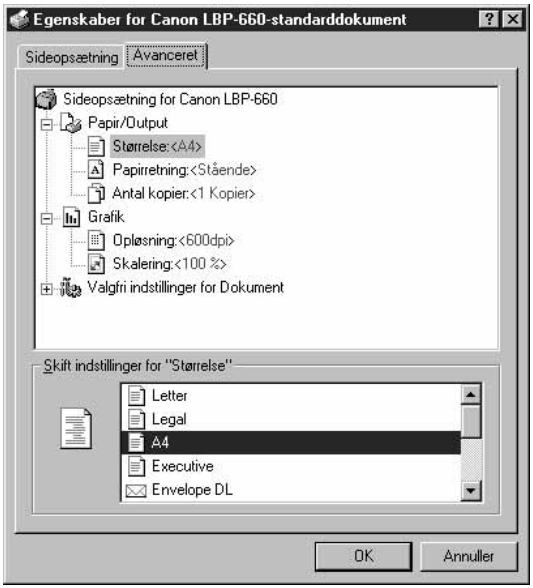
Antal kopier
Skriv det ønskede antal kopier i tekstboksen Antal kopier.

Udskriv sætvis
Hvis du har angivet to eller flere kopier i Antal kopier, skal du klikke i afkrydsningsfeltet Udskriv sætvis, hvis du vil have udskrevet dokumentet i sæt.

Papirretning
Brug alternativknapperne til at vælge Papirretning (Stående eller Liggende).

■ Fanen Avanceret

Indstillingerne på fanen Avanceret er grupperet under Papir/Output, Grafik og Valgfri indstillinger for Dokument. Mulighederne i hver gruppe er opført hierarkisk under gruppens navn. Den aktive indstilling for hver mulighed vises med blåt til højre for muligheden. Hvis mulighederne ikke vises, kan du klikke på plustegnet (+) til venstre for gruppens navn.



Når du klikker på navnet på den mulighed, du vil ændre, vises de mulige indstillinger (eller knapper til åbning af andre dialogbokse) i den nederste del af dialogboksen. Vælg eller skriv den nye indstilling. Den nye indstilling vises derefter med rødt til højre for den viste mulighed. Den røde farve betyder, at den nye indstilling endnu ikke er gemt som en dokumentstandard. Nye indstillinger gemmes først som dokumentstandarder, når du klikker på knappen OK nederst i dialogboksen.

Indstillinger til gruppen Papir/Output
Gruppen Papir/Output består af tre muligheder: Størrelse, Papirretning og Antal kopier. Mulighederne er de samme som på fanen Sideopsætning beskrevet ovenfor. Hvis du ændrer indstillinger her, ændres de også på fanebladet Sideopsætning.

Indstillinger til gruppen Grafik
Gruppen Grafik består af to muligheder: Opløsning og Skalering.

- Opløsning
  Brug alternativknapperne under "Skift indstillinger for 'Opløsning'" til at vælge den opløsning, som LBP-660 skal udskrive i.
- Skalering
  Skriv formindskelses- eller forstørrelsesprocenten i boksen "Skift indstillinger for 'Skalering'". Du kan angive værdier mellem 10% og 200% i intervaller på 1%.

Indstillinger til gruppen Valgfri indstillinger for Dokument
Gruppen Valgfri indstillinger for Dokument består af fem muligheder: Halftone Color Adjustment, Automatic Image Refinement, Toner Saver, Toner Density, og Custom Paper Size.

- Justering af halvtonefarve
  Klik på knappen Halftone Color Adjustment for at åbne dialogboksen Halftone Color Adjustment og justere printerens halvtoner.



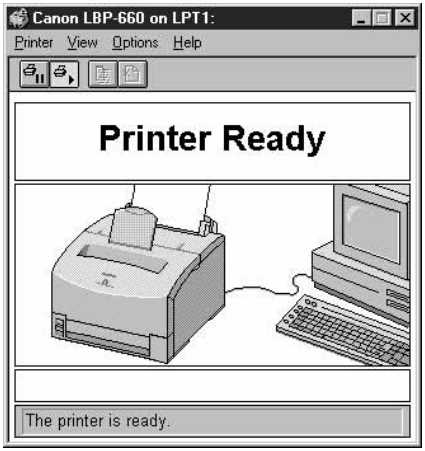
- Indholdet af dialogboksen Halftone Color Adjustment afhænger af indstillingerne på fanebladet Enhedsindstillinger i Printeregenskaber.
  - Hvis "Benyt printerens halvtone" er valgt, vises den originale LBP-660-dialogboks på samme måde, som hvis du vælger fanen Grafik i dialogboksen Egenskaber i Microsoft Windows 95.
    I denne dialogboks kan du vælge halvtoneindstillinger (Smooth, Pattern 1 eller Pattern 2) og indstillinger af Brightness og Contrast. Du kan få flere oplysninger i afsnittet "Gråtonegrafik" i brugerhåndbogen.
  - Hvis "Benyt oprindelig halvtone" er valgt, vises et gråtonediagram og dialogboksen Justering af halvtonefarve i Microsoft Windows NT. Dokumentationen til Microsoft Windows NT indeholder oplysninger om brugen af denne dialogboks.

- Automatic Image Refinement
  Brug denne mulighed til at slå funktionen Smoothing på LBP-660 til og fra
- Toner Saver
  Brug denne mulighed til at vælge, om sparefunktionen skal slås til eller fra.
- Toner Density
  Brug denne mulighed til at justere den mængde toner, der bruges under udskrivning, til et af fem niveauer. Medium er standard.
- Custom Paper Size
  Brug denne mulighed til at indstille papirstørrelse, når der er valgt Brugerdefineret på fanebladet Sideopsætning. Når du klikker på knappen Custom Paper Size, åbnes dialogboksen Custom Paper Size, hvor du kan indstille højden og bredden på den brugerdefinerede papirstørrelse.

Statusvinduet til LBP-660 i Microsoft Windows NT

Hvis LBP-660 er sluttet til en Microsoft Windows NT-computer som en lokal printer, vises statusvinduet til LBP-660 automatisk, når udskrivningen på LBP-660 starter, eller hvis brugerindgriben er nødvendigt, f.eks. hvis der opstår en fejl.

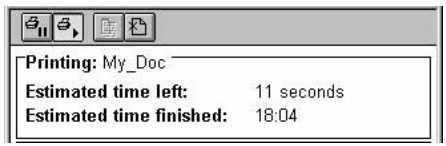
Du kan altid åbne statusvinduet til LBP-660 ved at dobbeltklikke på ikonet Canon LBP-660 Status Window i gruppen Windows Printing System. Du kan derefter bruge statusvinduet til at overvåge udskriftsjob, holde pause under udskrivning, genoptage udskrivning osv.



Statusvinduet er i det store hele det samme statusvindue, som vises under Microsoft Windows Printing System i Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 og Microsoft Windows til Workgroups. Der findes flere oplysninger om brugen af statusvinduet i brugerhåndbogen.

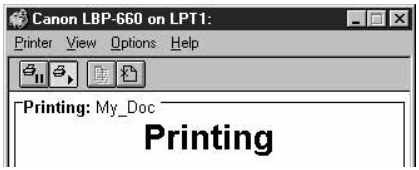
Denne beskrivelse dækker kun de funktioner, hvor statusvinduet til LBP-660 til Microsoft Windows NT er anderledes end statusvinduet i andre versioner af Microsoft Windows.

- Hvis du valgte "Start udskrivning, når sidste side er sat i kø" i Printeregenskaber på fanebladet Jobplanlægning, vises den forventede resttid og den forventede samlede tid i meddelelsesområdet, når et dokument udskrives, og forløbslinjen viser det antal sider, der udskrives, samt det totale antal sider.



DANSK

- Hvis du valgte ”Start udskrivning, når første side er sat i kø”, er det kun meddelelsen ”Printing”, der vises i meddelelsesområdet, og forløbslinjen viser kun det antal sider, der er udskrevet.



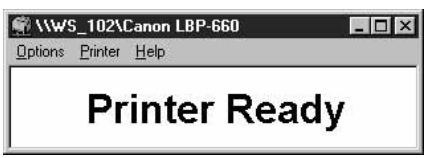
- Knappen Test Printer findes ikke på værktøjslinjen.
  Hvis du vil udskrive en testside, skal du brugen knappen Udskriv testside på fanebladet Generelt i dialogboksen Printeregenskaber.
- Kommandoen Printer findes ikke på menuen Options. Hvis du vil ændre tonertæthed, skal du åbne dialogboksen Egenskaber for standarddokument og bruge muligheden Toner Density på fanebladet Avanceret.
- Med Client Operation på menuen Options kan du vælge, om udskrivningen skal kunne afbrydes, genoptages eller annulleres fra Network Status Monitor eller en Microsoft Windows NT-klient.
  Hakket til venstre for kommandoen Client Operation slår ovennævnte muligheder til og fra i Network Status Monitor.

LBP-660 Network Status Monitor

LBP-660 Network Status Monitor er en funktion, der tilllader en Microsoft Windows NT-klient, der er sluttet til netværksprinteren, at undersøge status for LBP-660, holde pause i udskrivning, genoptage udskrivning, gennemtvinge udskrivning eller annullere udskrivning på samme måde som i statusvinduet på skrivebordet. Denne funktion kan kun bruges af Microsoft Windows NT-klienter og kan ikke bruges fra Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 eller Microsoft Windows til Workgroups.

LBP-660 Network Status Monitor viser kun printerstatus som tekst og indeholder ikke animeret grafik eller en forløbslinje som statusvinduet til LBP-660.

Når du slutter en Microsoft Windows NT-klient til netværksprinteren, installeres Network Status Monitor automatisk fra printserveren.



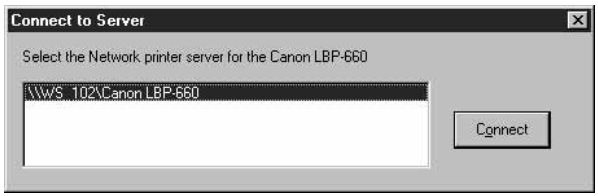
Bruge LBP-660 Network Status Monitor

■ Starte Network Status Monitor

Du kan altid starte LBP-660 Network Status Monitor ved at følge nedenstående fremgangsmåde:

1. Dobbeltklik på ikonet Canon LBP-660 Network Status Monitor i gruppen Windows Printing System på klienten, eller dobbeltklik på ikonet Canon LBP-660 Network Status Monitor på skrivebordet.

2. Når der vises en meddelelse, og du bliver spurgt, om du vil oprette forbindelse til netværksprinteren, skal du klikke på Yes.
   - Der vises en dialogboks, hvor du skal vælge den pågældende netværksprinter.



3. Vælg den ønskede printer på listen, og klik på knappen Connect.
   - Når der er oprettet forbindelse til netværksprinteren, vises den aktuelle printerstatus i en tekstboks.

■ Status Options

Menulinien i LBP-660 Network Status Monitor indeholder tre menuer: Options, Printer og Help.



Menuen Options
Brug menuen Options til at angive muligheder i forbindelsen med brugen af Network Status Monitor.

- Connect to Server
  Vælg denne mulighed, hvis forbindelsen til netværksprinteren er gået tabt, eller hvis du vil skifte til en anden netværksprinter (kun LBP-660). Dialogboksen Connect to Server vises. Det er den samme dialogboks, som vises, når du starter Network Status Monitor. Vælg det ønskede printernavn, og klik derefter på knappen Connect.
- Sound Option
  Brug denne mulighed til at vælge, om meddelelser skal læses op, når der opstår en printerfejl.

DANSK

- Network Status Monitor kan kun frembringe talte meddelelser, når der sker en fejl. Hvis der ikke er installeret et lydkort i klientcomputeren, er muligheden nedtonet og kan ikke vælges.

- Default Size
  Hvis du har ændret størrelse på Network Status Monitor, kan du give det originalstørrelsen tilbage med denne mulighed.
- Hide Menu
  Med denne mulighed skjules menuerne i Network Status Monitor. Hvis du vil se menuerne igen, skal du trykke på **Esc**, mens Network Status Monitor er det aktive vindue eller dobbeltklikke et tilfældigt sted i meddelelsesområdet.
- Always On Top
  Hvis du vælger denne mulighed og anbringer et hak til venstre for Always On Top, vises Network Status Monitor altid som det forreste vindue på skrivebordet.

Menuen Printer
Brug menuen Printer til at kontrollere driften af printeren. Bemærk dog, at hvis Client Operation ikke er valgt på menuen Options i statusvinduet på printserveren, er menuen Printer nedtonet, og printerens drift kan ikke kontrolleres fra en klient.

Der er flere oplysninger om menuen Printer i afsnittet ”Brug af menuen Printer” i brugerhåndbogen.

- Mulighederne på menuen Printer har stadig indflydelse på evt. udskriftsjob fra andre klienter. Når udskriftsjob fra flere klienter anbringes i serverens printkø, kan tilfældig annullering af udskrivning forårsage, at udskriftsjob fra andre klienter går tabt. Vær opmærksom på dette, hvis du annullerer udskrivningen.

Menuen Help
Fra denne menu åbnes en dialogboks, der viser versionsoplysninger om Network Status Monitor.

Kapitel 5
Fejlfinding

I dette kapitel beskrives, hvordan du løser problemer, der opstår ved installation af Microsoft Windows Printing System til Microsoft Windows NT og ved brug af LBP-660 som netværksprinter på et Microsoft Windows NT-netværk.

I kapitel 6, "Fejlfinding", i håndbogen til LBP-660 findes der oplysninger om, hvordan du løser problemer med selve printeren (papirstop osv.), med udskriftskvaliteten, med Microsoft Windows Printing System samt en beskrivelse af fejlmeddelelserne fra Microsoft Windows Printing System.

Hvis du ikke kan finde årsagen til et problem, kan du starte hjælpeprogrammet Trouble Shooter i programgruppen Windows Printing System. Trouble Shooter kan løse evt. problemer med installerede filer og indstillinger.

Hvis du stadig ikke kan løse et problem, skal du fjerne Microsoft Windows Printing System på printserveren, genstarte serveren og derefter installere Microsoft Windows Printing System igen. Du kan fjerne Microsoft Windows Printing System ved at starte programmet Uninstaller i Windows Printing System-gruppen.



- Du skal altid genstarte Microsoft Windows NT, når du har fjernet software. Hvis du ikke genstarter Microsoft Windows NT, kan du ikke geninstallere den software, du har fjernet.

DANSK

Problemer ved installation af Microsoft Windows Printing System

Problemer ved lokal installation

Problem	Årsag	Løsning
Knappen Denne computer i guiden Printerinstallation er nedtonet.	Brugeren har ikke privilegier som administrator eller superbruger.	Du skal have privilegier som administrator, før du kan installere Microsoft Windows Printing System. Bed en administrator om at udføre installationen.
Når kopieringen af filer er færdig, vises der en meddelelse om, at du skal have privilegier som administrator.	En bruger med priviliegier som superbruger har forsøgt at installere softwaren.	Bed en administrator om at udføre installationen.
Der vises en meddelelse om, at der kræves en ny installation.	Du udfører en lokal installation på en computer, hvor printerdriveren til LBP-660 allerede er installeret via netværket.	Gentag den lokale installation, og klik på Erstat nuværende driver i guiden Printer-installation.

Problemer ved netværksinstallation

Problem	Årsag	Løsning
Navnet på den delte printer eller printserver, der skal tilsluttes, vises ikke på listen Delte printere.	• Printserveren er ikke startet. • Printeren er ikke delt. • Du har ikke de nødvendige privilegier til at tilslutte printeren eller print-serveren.	• Start printserveren. • Indstil printeren til deling i dialogboksen Printer-egenskaber. • Bed netværksadmini-stratoren om at ændre dine brugerprivilegier.

Problemer ved udskrivning via netværk

Problem	Årsag	Løsning
Der kan ikke oprettes forbindelse til printserveren eller den delte printer i Network Status Monitor.	• Printserveren er ikke startet. • Printeren er ikke delt. • Du har ikke de nødvendige privilegier til at benytte printeren eller printserveren.	• Start printserveren. • Indstil printeren til deling i dialogboksen Printeregenskaber. • Bed netværksadministratoren om at ændre dine brugerprivilegier.
Printermenuen i Network Status Monitor kan ikke benyttes.	Muligheden Client Operation er ikke valgt på menuen Options i printserverens statusvindue.	Vælg muligheden Client Operation på menuen Options.
Der kan ikke udskrives via en printserver til Microsoft Windows 95/3.1 eller Microsoft Windows til Workgroups fra en Microsoft Windows NT-klient.	Microsoft Windows Printing System til Microsoft Windows NT understøtter printservere til Microsoft Windows 95/3.1 og Microsoft Windows til Workgroups.	Brug en Microsoft Windows NT-printserver.
Der kan ikke udskrives fra en Microsoft Windows 95-/3.1- eller Microsoft Windows til Workgroups-klient.	• WPS-biblioteket på printserveren er ikke delt. • Printserverens standarddatatype er ikke indstillet til WPS.	• Indstil WPS-biblioteket på printserveren til deling. • Klik på knappen Udskriftsprocessor på fanen Generelt i dialogboksen Printeregenskaber, og vælg WPS som standarddatatype.

DANSK

Appendiks

Sammenligning med andre versioner af Microsoft Windows Printing System

Nogle af funktionerne i Microsoft Windows Printing System til Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 er ikke de samme som i Microsoft Windows Printing System til Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 og Microsoft Windows til Workgroups.

Vær specielt opmærksom på følgende, når du læser håndbogen til LBP-660.

Ved lokal udskrivning eller udskrivning via netværk med Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 og ved udskrivning via netværk fra Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 eller Microsoft Windows til Workgroups

- Der kan ikke benyttes PCL-emulering. Derfor kan du ikke udskrive fra kommandoprompten (Microsoft Windows NT) eller MS-DOS-prompten (Microsoft Windows 95).

Ved lokal udskrivning eller udskrivning via netværk med Microsoft Windows NT 4.0

- Du kan ikke benytte funktionen til udskrivning af overligger.
- Du kan ikke udskrive en testside fra statusvinduet til LBP-660. Brug knappen Udskriv testside på fanen Generelt i dialogboksen Printeregenskaber.
- Kommandoen Printer Options findes ikke på menuen Options i statusvinduet til LBP-660.
  Indstil tonertætheden med mulighederne under Valgten indstillinger for Dokument på fanen Avanceret i dialogboksen Egenskaber for standarddokument.

Canon

LBP-660 LASER PRINTER

Microsoft® Windows® Printing System Guide for Microsoft® Windows NT®

NORSK

VIKTIG:
Les denne veiledningen nøye før du bruker skriveren. Ta vare på denne veiledningen for senere bruk.

Copyright

Copyright © 1998 Canon Inc. Med enerett
Copyright © 1996 Microsoft Corporation. Alle rettigheter forbeholdes

Merknad

Canon Inc. gir ingen garantier når det gjelder bruk av dette materialet, verken direkte eller indirekte, bortsett fra det som er spesielt nevnt her. Dette gjelder uten begrensninger markeds- og handelsevne, spesielle bruksformål eller brudd på patenter. Canon Inc. er ikke ansvarlig for noen direkte, tilfeldige eller indirekte skader av noe slag, eller tap eller utgifter som er forårsaket av bruk av dette materialet.
Dette dokumentet inneholder informasjon som er opphavsrettslig beskyttet. Alle rettigheter forbeholdes. Ingen del av dette dokumentet kan kopieres, reproduseres eller oversettes til andre språk uten skriftlig godkjennelse fra Canon Inc.
Dette dokumentet skal brukes i henhold til betingelsene i lisensavtalen (Microsoft® Windows® Printing System) som fulgte med skriveren.
Informasjonen i dette dokumentet kan endres uten varsel.

Varemerker

LBP, Canon og Canon-logoen er varemerker for Canon Inc.
PCL er et varemerke for Hewlett-Packard Company.
IBM er et varemerke for International Business Machines Corporation.
Microsoft, Windows, Windows NT, Windows-logoen og MS-DOS er enten registrerte varemerker eller varemerker for Microsoft Corporation i USA og/eller andre land.
NetWare® er et registrert varemerke, og Novell er et varemerke for Novell, Inc.
TrueType er et varemerke for Apple Computer, Inc.
Lucida er et varemerke for Bigelow & Homes.
Andre merker og produktnavn er varemerker eller registrerte varemerker for sine respektive selskaper.
I denne veiledningen henviser vi til Microsoft®, Microsoft® Windows® og Microsoft® Windows NT® henholdsvis som Microsoft, Microsoft Windows og Microsoft Windows NT.

Symboler

I denne veiledningen bruker vi følgende symboler:



Dette symbolet indikerer at her får du råd eller forslag om hvordan du får best mulig utbytte av skriveren.



Dette symbolet indikerer at dette er en framgangsmåte eller bruksmåte som bør følges for å unngå at maskinvare eller programvare blir skadet.

Kapittel 1
Innledning

Om denne veiledningen

Microsoft® Windows® Printing System (heretter kalt Microsoft Windows Printing System) Guide for Microsoft® Windows NT® (heretter kalt Microsoft Windows NT) forklarer hvordan man installerer og bruker Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT på en maskin som kjører Microsoft Windows NT versjon 4.0 (for servere eller arbeidsstasjoner) som er koblet til en Canon LBP-660-laserskriver.

Denne veiledningen inneholder følgende kapitler:

Kapittel 1 Innledning 1

Dette kapitlet forklarer hvordan du bruker denne veiledningen og systemkravene for installering av Microsoft Windows Printing System på en PC som kjører Microsoft Windows NT.

Kapittel 2 Installere Microsoft Windows Printing System 3

Dette kapitlet forklarer hvordan du installerer Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT når du bruker LBP-660 som lokal skriver, og hvordan du deler en LBP-660-skriver i et Microsoft Windows NT-nettverk.

Kapittel 3 Koble deg til LBP-660 når den brukes som nettverksskriver ... 10

Dette kapitlet forklarer hvordan du bruker LBP-660 fra andre maskiner som kjører Microsoft Windows NT og fra maskiner som kjører Microsoft® Windows® (heretter kalt Microsoft Windows) 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 eller Microsoft Windows for Workgroups.

Kapittel 4 Bruke Microsoft Windows Printing System 13

Dette kapitlet forklarer hvordan du bruker Network Status Monitor, statusvinduet for LBP-660 og dialogboksen Egenskaper i Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT.

Kapittel 5 Feilsøking 23

Dette kapitlet forklarer hvordan du løser problemer som oppstår under installeringen av Microsoft Windows Printing System og når du bruker Microsoft Windows Printing System i et Microsoft Windows NT-nettverk.

Tillegg 26

Denne delen av tillegget inneholder informasjon hentet fra brukerhåndboken for LBP-660 som forklarer forskjellen mellom Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT og Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 og Microsoft Windows for Workgroups.

Før du installerer programvaren

Før du installerer Microsoft Windows Printing System på en PC som kjører Microsoft Windows NT, bør du kontrollere at maskinen tilfredsstiller systemkravene som er beskrevet nedenfor.

- IBM-PC eller kompatibel maskin med en Pentium-prosessor på 90 MHz eller bedre og som har Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 (for servere og arbeidsstasjoner) installert.



- Microsoft Windows Printing System for skriveren LBP-660 som beskrives i denne veiledningen brukes med Microsoft Windows NT versjon 4.0 for PC/AT-kompatible maskiner. Microsoft Windows Printing System kan ikke brukes på maskiner som kjører Microsoft Windows NT versjon 3.51 eller tidligere eller Microsoft Windows NT for RISC-baserte prosessorer.
- Hvis du bruker et Novell NetWare®-nettverk, kan du ikke installere denne programvaren på en NetWare®-server. Du kan ikke bruke denne programvaren til å skrive ut fra Novell Netware®-klienter for Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 eller Microsoft Windows for Workgroups.

- Minst 24 MB RAM
- Minst 10 MB ledig plass på harddisken
- CD-ROM-stasjon
- Parallell skriverutgang fra Standard Centronics (når LBP er koblet til en lokal skriver)
- Nettverkskort (når LBP brukes i et nettverk)

Selv om det er mulig å installere Microsoft Windows Printing System på maskiner som ikke møter kravene ovenfor, kan ikke Canon garantere at programvaren vil virke på riktig måte. For at du skal få et optimalt miljø og best mulig ytelse med din nye LBP-660, anbefaler vi at du bruker følgende program- og maskinvare:

- Pentium 166 MHz-prosessor eller raskere
- Minst 48 MB RAM
- ECP-skriverutgang
- Lydkort (kreves hvis du vil bruke talemeldingsfunksjonen i Microsoft Windows Printing System)

Hvis du vil bruke LBP-660 i et nettverk, må du først installere en av nettverksprotokollene nedenfor:

- NetBEUI
- TCP/IP
- NWLink IPX/SPX



- Du må ha tilgang som systemansvarlig hvis du skal installere Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT. Installeringen bør utføres av en nettverksansvarlig eller skriveransvarlig som har tilgang som systemansvarlig.

Kapittel 2
Installere Microsoft Windows Printing System

Når du skal installere Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT, bruker du den vedlagte installeringsdisketten for Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT 4.0.

Installere Microsoft Windows Printing System for lokale skrivere

Denne delen forklarer hvordan du installerer Microsoft Windows Printing System når du bruker LBP-660 som lokal skriver. Se kapittel 3, ”Koble deg til LBP-660 når den brukes som nettverksskriver” hvis du vil vite hvordan du installerer LBP-660 som nettverksskriver.

Starte veiviseren for skriverinstallasjon

Bruk veiviseren for skriverinstallasjon i Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 når du skal installere Microsoft Windows Printing System på et system som kjører Microsoft Windows NT. Gjør følgende når du installerer programvaren.

1. Slå på maskinen som LBP-660 er koblet til, og start Microsoft Windows NT 4.0.

2. Logg deg på som systemansvarlig.

3. Følg en av disse framgangsmåtene for å starte veiviseren for skriverinstallasjon:

   a. Klikk på Start på oppgavelinjen og flytt musepekeren til Innstillinger. I undermenyen som da vises, klikker du på Skrivere for å åpne mappen Skrivere og dobbeltklikker på symbolet Legg til skriver i mappen Skrivere.

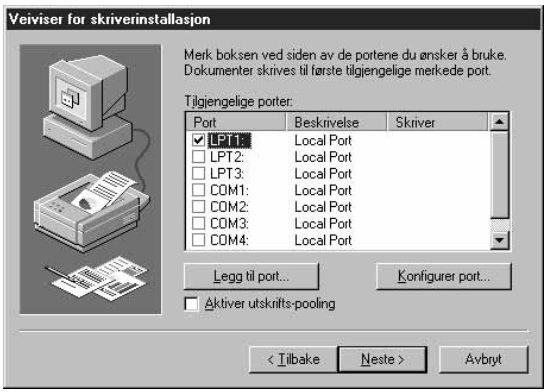
   b. Dobbeltklikk på ikonet for Min datamaskin på skrivebordet for å åpne Min datamaskin. Deretter åpner du mappen Skrivere og dobbeltklikker på symbolet for Legg til skriver.

- Nå vises vinduet Veiviser for skriverinstallasjon som brukes til installering av skriverdrivere.


Veiviser for skriverinstallasjon
Veiviseren hjelper deg til å installere skriveren eller å gjøre skrivertilkoblinger. Denne skriveren skal administreres av:
Min datamaskin
Alle innstillinger blir administrert og konfigurert på denne maskinen.
Skriverserver for nettverket
Koble til en skriver fra en annen maskin. Alle innstillingene for denne skriveren blir styrt av en skriverserver som er satt opp av en administrator.
< Tilbake
Neste >
Avbryt

4. Kontroller at du har valgt Min datamaskin i dialogboksen Veiviser for skriverinstallasjon, og klikk på Neste >.
   - Vinduet for valg av port vises.

Velge skriverport



1. Merk av boksen ved siden av porten som LBP-660 er koblet til (vanligvis LPT1:), og klikk på Neste >



- Skriveren LBP-660 kan kun kobles til en LPT-parallellport. Du vil ikke kunne skrive ut på LBP-660 hvis du velger en seriell port eller annen port som LBP-660 ikke er koblet til.

- Det vises et vindu som inneholder navn på forskjellige skrivere samt en liste over produsenter av skrivere og modeller som Microsoft Windows NT støtter som standard.

2. Siden LBP-660 ikke vises på listen, må du sette inn installerings-CD-ROM-platen for Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 i CD-ROM-stasjonen og deretter klikke på knappen Har diskett…

3. Når dialogboksen Installer fra diskett vises, skriver du inn navnet på CD-ROM-stasjonen i tekstboksen ”Kopier produsentens filer fra”, deretter klikker du på knappen Bla gjennom….

4. Dobbeltklikk på mappen Winnt40 i dialogboksen Filplassering.
   - Mappene for de forskjellige språkene vises i dialogboksen Filplassering.



5. Dobbeltklikk på mappen for den språkversjonen av Microsoft Windows NT du bruker.
   - Når Wpsc3nt vises i dialogboksen Filplassering, klikker du på Åpne-knappen.

- Hvis det ikke finnes en mappe for den språkversjonen av Microsoft Windows NT du bruker, velger du mappen English.

6. Klikk på OK-knappen i dialogboksen Installer fra diskett.

7. Når ”Canon LBP-660” vises i listen over skrivere i veiviseren for skriverinstallasjon, klikker du på Neste >.
   - Du vil se et vindu der du kan angi navn. ”Canon LBP-660” vises allerede i navnefeltet. Hvis du vil endre navnet på skriveren, skriver du inn et annet navn (følg instruksjonene på skjermen).

8. Klikk på Neste >.
   - Deretter åpnes vinduet for deling av skriverressurser.

NORSK

Innstillinger for deling av skriverressurser

Denne delen forklarer hvordan du angir om LBP-660 skal deles med andre nettverksbrukere eller ikke. Du kan også angi innstillinger for deling av skriverressurser etter at du har installert Microsoft Windows Printing System. Se avsnittet ”Dele skriveren” hvis du vil ha mer informasjon.


Veiviser for skriverinstallasjon
Angi om denne skriveren skal deles med andre nettverksbrukere. Hvis du velger å dele skriveren må du gi den et ressursnavn.
Delt
Ikke delt
Navn på delt ressurs:
CanonLBP
Velg operativsystemene til alle maskinene som skal dele denne skriveren.
Windows 95
Windows NT 4.0 Mips
Windows NT 4.0 Alpha
Windows NT 4.0 PPC
Windows NT 3.5 eller 3.51 x86
Windows NT 3.5 eller 3.51 Mips
< Tilbake
Neste >
Avbryt

1. Hvis du vil at LBP-660 skal deles med andre nettverksbrukere, velger du Delt.

2. Klikk på Neste >.
   - Du vil nå se et vindu der du blir spurt om du vil skrive ut en testside.

Innstillinger for utskrift av testsider

Når du er ferdig med å installere Microsoft Windows Printing System, kan du skrive ut en testside på LBP-660.

1. Hvis du vil skrive ut en testside, klikker du bare på Fullfør, så skrives en testside ut automatisk. Hvis du ikke vil skrive ut en testside, velger du Nei og klikker deretter på Fullfør.

Når du klikker på Fullfør, kopieres de nødvendige filene fra installeringsdisketten til harddisken. Under kopieringen vises en meldingsboks med en indikatorlinje over hvor langt prosessen har kommet.

Når kopieringen er avsluttet, vises Canon LBP-660-ikonet i mappen Skrivere.
Canon LBP-660-ikonet i mappen Skrivere varierer, avhengig av om skriveren er delt eller ikke.

Deretter ser du meldingen ”Initializing… Please wait!” mens Microsoft Windows Printing System starter initialiseringsprosessen. Under initialiseringen opprettes gruppen Microsoft Windows Printing System og legges til Start-menyen. Vinduet Windows Printing System vises også på skrivebordet, i tillegg til snarveisikonet for gruppen Microsoft Windows Printing System (se neste side).

Hvis du vil koble deg til LBP-660-skriveren og skrive ut fra en Microsoft Windows 95-, Microsoft Windows 3.1- eller Microsoft Windows for Workgroups-klient som er koblet til et Microsoft Windows NT-nettverk, klikker på Ja når neste dialogboks vises.

Hvis du ikke vil at LBP-660 skal brukes av andre nettverksbrukere, eller hvis alle klientene er Microsoft Windows NT-maskiner, klikker du på Nei.


Microsoft Windows Printing System Installation
Do you want to share the WPS directory for allowing Windows95/Windows3.1 clients to print?
Ja
Nei

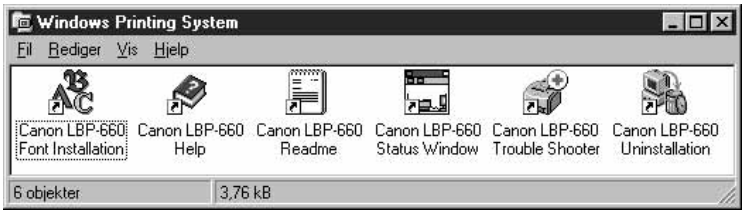
Fullføre installeringen

Når installeringen av Microsoft Windows Printing System er fullført, vises en melding som bekrefter dette. Klikk på OK for å fullføre installeringen.

Hvis du valgte å skrive ut en testside under installeringen av skriverdriveren, vil denne siden nå skrives ut. Hvis hele installeringen var vellykket, vil du nå se statusvinduet for LBP-660 på skrivebordet og testsiden skrives ut på LBP-660. Kontroller testsiden, og klikk på Ja i dialogboksen for prøveutskrift for å lukke dialogboksen.

Så fort installeringen av Microsoft Windows Printing System er fullført, kan du begynne å skrive ut fra den Microsoft Windows NT-maskinen som har angitt LBP-660 som lokal skriver. Hvis du imidlertid skal bruke denne maskinen som en skriverserver og skrive ut fra en klient via et nettverk, må du først starte Microsoft Windows NT på nytt.

Windows Printing System-gruppen som ble opprettet under installeringen av Microsoft Windows Printing System inneholder de seks ikonene som vises nedenfor.



Canon LBP-660 Font Installation
Dette er et verktøy for installering av TrueType-skriftene (22 Lucida TrueType-skrifter) på diskett #3 av installeringsdiskettene for Microsoft Windows 95/3.1 på Microsoft Windows NT. Dobbeltklikk på ikonet for LBP-660 Font Installation når du skal installere TrueType-skriftene. Deretter følger du veiledningen på skjermen.

- De installerte TrueType-skriftene vil ikke bli fjernet selv om du bruker avinstalleringsfunksjonen til å avinstallere Microsoft Windows Printing System.

Canon LBP-660 Help
Hvis du klikker på dette ikonet, vises hjelpefunksjonen for Microsoft Windows Printing System.

Canon LBP-660 Readme
Dette er en tekstfil som inneholder tilleggsinformasjon om den installerte versjonen av Microsoft Windows Printing System. Les denne filen før du bruker Microsoft Windows Printing System.

Canon LBP-660 Status Window
Hvis du klikker på dette ikonet, åpnes statusvinduet for Canon LBP-660.

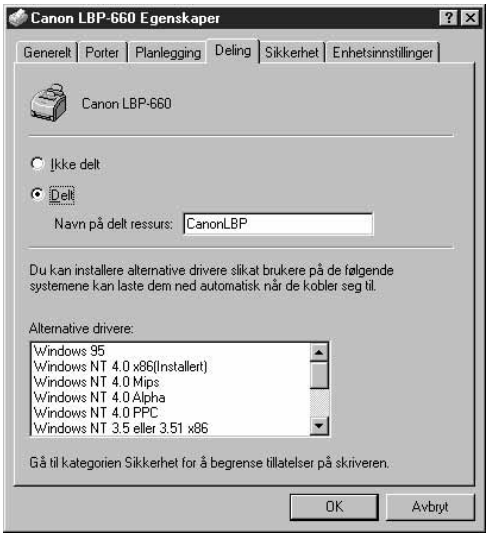
Canon LBP-660 Trouble Shooter
Dette er et verktøy som brukes til å løse problemer med Microsoft Windows Printing System. Se kapitlet ”Feilsøking” i brukerhåndboken hvis du vil ha informasjon om hvordan du bruker dette verktøyet.

Canon LBP-660 Uninstallation
Dette er et verktøy som brukes til å avinstallere Microsoft Windows Printing System. Se kapitlet ”Feilsøking” i brukerhåndboken hvis du vil ha informasjon om hvordan du bruker dette verktøyet.

Dele skriveren

Når du er ferdig med å installere Microsoft Windows Printing System, bruker du dialogboksen Canon LBP-660 Egenskaper for å angi LBP-660 som en delt skriverressurs.

1. Følg framgangsmåten nedenfor for å åpne kategorien Deling i dialogboksen Canon LBP-660 Egenskaper.
   - Åpne mappen Skrivere, klikk på LBP-660-ikonet med høyre museknapp og velg Deling … fra rullegardinmenyen.



2. Hvis du vil angi LBP-660 som en delt skriverressurs, klikker du på alternativet Delt.

- Hvis du velger Delt, vises de åtte første tegnene i navnet på den skriveren som ble angitt under installeringen (uten mellomrom). Dette kan du endre ved å skrive inn et nytt navn i tekstfeltet.
  Hvis enkelte av klientene som deler skriveren med andre nettverksbrukere, er Microsoft Windows 3.1- eller Microsoft Windows for Workgroups-maskiner, må du kontrollere at navnet på den delte ressursen ikke inneholder mer enn åtte tegn.

- Hvis du angir skriveren som en delt skriverressurs, kan du ikke velge operativsystem under Alternative drivere nederst i dialogboksen. LBP-660-driveren kan ikke installeres på andre systemer enn Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 (x86).

3. Klikk på OK.
   - LBP-660 er nå angitt som en delt skriverressurs. Ikonet i mappen Skrivere endres til et delt skriverressurs-ikon.

NORSK

Kapittel 3
Koble deg til LBP-660 når den brukes som nettverksskriver

Hvis du angir LBP-660 som en delt skriverressurs på Microsoft Windows NT-maskinen som LBP-660 er koblet til og deretter angir den maskinen som skriverserver, kan LBP-660 ikke bare brukes av Microsoft Windows NT-klienter, men også av Microsoft Windows 95-, Microsoft Windows 3.1- og Microsoft Windows for Workgroups-klienter som er koblet til Microsoft Windows NT-nettverket.



- Hvis du vil bruke Microsoft Windows NT-maskinen som LBP-660 er koblet til som skriverserver, må du først starte serverfunksjonen på den maskinen. Start serverfunksjonen før du kobler deg til nettverksskriveren.
- Hvis du vil koble deg til en Microsoft Windows NT-skriverserver fra en klientmaskin og skrive ut et dokument, må klienten ha tilgang til å kunne kobles til serveren og den delte skriverressursen. Hvis du ikke er sikker på hvilket tilgangsnivå du har, bør du kontakte nettverksansvarlig.

Tilkobling fra en Microsoft Windows NT-klient

Hvis klienten som bruker LBP-660 som nettverksskriver, kjører Microsoft Windows NT, vil du automatisk laste ned og installere skriverdriveren og Network Status Monitor fra skriverserveren ved å legge til skriveren. Du trenger ikke tilgang som systemansvarlig for å legge til skriveren. Hvem som helst skal kunne gjøre dette.

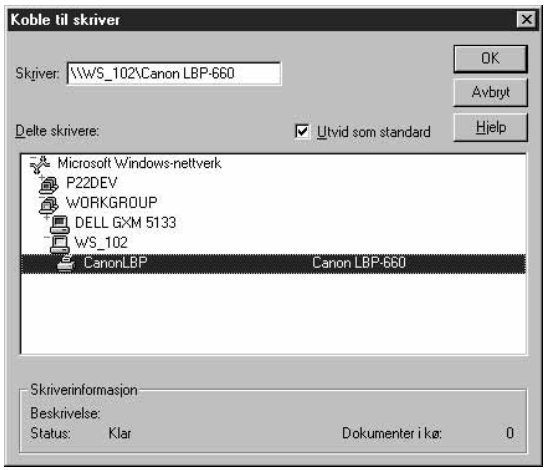
Starte veiviseren for skriverinstallasjon

1. Slå på klientmaskinen, start Microsoft Windows NT 4.0, og logg deg på.
2. Start veiviseren for skriverinstallasjon
   - Se kapittel 2 ”Installere Microsoft Windows Printing System” hvis du vil ha informasjon om hvordan du starter veiviseren for skriverinstallasjon.

Velge nettverksskriver


Veiviser for skriverinstallasjon
Veiviseren hjelper deg til å installere skriveren eller å gjøre skrivertilkoblinger. Denne skriveren skal administreres av:
Min datamaskin
Alle innstillinger blir administrert og konfigurert på denne maskinen.
Skriverserver for nettverket
Koble til en skriver fra en annen maskin. Alle innstillingene for denne skriveren blir styrt av en skriverserver som er satt opp av en administrator.
< Tilbake
Neste >
Avbryt

1. Klikk på knappen Skriverserver for nettverket, deretter på Neste >. Vinduet Koble til skriver vises.



2. Dobbeltklikk på navnet på den delte skriveren som vises under Delte skrivere.
   - Når du dobbeltklikker på navnet på skriverserveren, vises en liste over de delte skriverne som er koblet til skriverserveren.
3. Klikk på navnet for den delte LBP-660-skriveren du ønsker å koble deg til.
   - Nettverksbanen for den angitte skriveren vises i tekstboksen Skriver.

NORSK

4. Klikk på OK.
   - Skriverdriveren for LBP-660 og Network Status Monitor lastes ned fra serveren og installeres på klienten.
   - Når programvaren er ferdig nedlastet, vises Canon LBP-660-ikonet i mappen Skrivere og gruppen Windows Printing System registreres i Start-menyen. Det opprettes også en snarvei til Network Status Monitor (WpsC3Nsm.exe) på skrivebordet.
5. Klikk på Fullfør i vinduet Veiviser for skriverinstallasjon.

Koble deg til fra en Microsoft Windows 95-, Microsoft Windows 3.1- eller Microsoft Windows for Workgroups-klient

Hvis du skal koble deg til LBP-660 fra en Microsoft Windows 95-, Microsoft Windows 3.1- eller Microsoft Windows for Workgroups-klient via en Microsoft Windows NT-skriverserver, må LBP-660 Microsoft Windows Printing System for det respektive operativsystemet først være installert på klienten. Slå opp i brukerhåndboken hvis du vil ha mer informasjon om hvordan du installerer Microsoft Windows Printing System på en Microsoft Windows 95-, Microsoft Windows 3.1- eller Microsoft Windows for Workgroups-klient.

Kapittel 4
Bruke Microsoft Windows Printing System

Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT brukes hovedsakelig på samme måte som Microsoft Windows Printing System for andre versjoner av Microsoft Windows. Se kapittel 3, ”Bruk av Microsoft Windows Printing System”, i brukerhåndboken hvis du vil ha en oversikt over Microsoft Windows Printing System.

Dialogbokser i Microsoft Windows Printing System

Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT inneholder to hoveddialogbokser: dialogboksen Egenskaper og dialogboksen Egenskaper for standarddokument. Alle brukere kan åpne disse dialogboksene og kontrollere innstillingene, men bare brukere som har skrivertilgangen ”Alle tillatelser” kan endre innstillingene.

Egenskaper

Hvis du vil vise skriveregenskapene, velger du Egenskaper fra Fil-menyen i mappen Skrivere eller klikker på LBP-660-ikonet med høyre museknapp i mappen Skrivere og velger Egenskaper fra hurtigmenyen.

Dialogboksen for angivelse av egenskaper for skriveren inneholder de seks kategoriene som er beskrevet nedenfor. Siden innstillingene for hver kategori er lik for alle Microsoft Windows NT-skrivere, vil informasjonen som gis her kun være en generell oversikt over kategoriene, i tillegg til informasjon om hva du bør passe på når du bruker LBP-660.

Se brukerhåndbøkene for Microsoft Windows NT hvis du vil ha mer informasjon om de forskjellige innstillingene. Du kan i tillegg klikke på spørsmålstegnet (?) øverst i høyre hjørne av dialogboksen og deretter klikke på den aktuelle innstillingen for å få hurtighjelp om akkurat det emnet.



NORSK

■ Kategorien Generelt

Innstillingene i denne kategorien gjelder hele skriverdriveren.

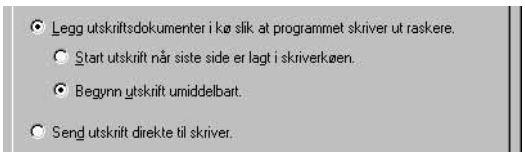
- LBP-660 støtter ikke skillesider. Det vil ikke skrives ut noen skilleside, selv om du angir dette valget under Skilleside.
- Du må ikke endre innstillingene i dialogboksen Utskriftsprosessor som vises når du klikker på knappen Skriverprosessor…. Hvis du endrer Standard datatype, vil det ikke være mulig å skrive ut fra klienter som ikke kjører Microsoft Windows NT.
- Hvis du vil skrive ut en testside, klikker du på knappen Skriv ut testside i denne kategorien. I Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT inneholder ikke statusvinduet for LBP-660 en knapp for utskrift av testside.

■ Kategorien Porter

Bruk denne kategorien for å angi hvilken port LBP-660 skal kobles til.
Hvis du allerede har koblet til LBP-660 og bruker den, trenger du ikke å endre denne innstillingen.

■ Kategorien Planlegging

- Bruk denne kategorien for å angi tidspunkt for utskriften, for å angi utskriftsprioritet og for å angi framgangsmåte for plassering av data i skriverkø.
- Ved bruk av LBP-660, bør du alltid velge ”Legg utskriftsdokumenter i kø slik at programmet skriver ut raskere”. Hvis du velger ”Send utskrift direkte til skriver”, vil du ikke kunne skrive ut fra programmer.


Legg utskriftsdokumenter i kø slik at programmet skriver ut raskere.
Start utskrift når siste side er lagt i skriverkøen.
Begynn utskrift umiddelbart.
Send utskrift direkte til skriver.

- Velg ”Start utskrift når siste side er lagt i skriverkøen” eller ”Begynn utskrift umiddelbart”, avhengig av hva du ønsker. Legg imidlertid merke til at dette valget påvirker indikatorlinjen i statusvinduet. Se avsnittet ”Statusvindu for LBP-660” hvis du ønsker mer informasjon.

■ Kategorien Deling

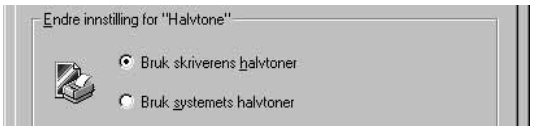
I denne kategorien angir du om LBP-660 skal deles eller ikke. Se kapittel 2, ”Installere Microsoft Windows Printing System”, hvis du vil ha mer informasjon.

■ Kategorien Sikkerhet

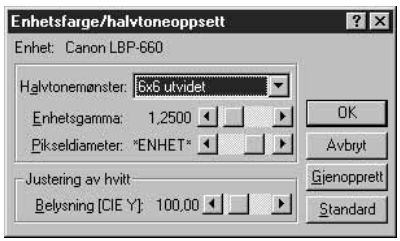
I denne kategorien angir du sikkerhetsnivået for LBP-660.
Slå opp i brukerhåndbøkene for Microsoft Windows NT hvis du vil ha mer informasjon om sikkerhet og skrivere.

■ Kategorien Enhetsinnstillinger

I denne kategorien angir du hvordan halvtoner (rastre) behandles når du skriver ut grafikk. LBP-660 kan skrive ut enten ved å bruke sine egne halvtoner eller halvtonene i Microsoft Windows NT. Når du skal angi hvilke halvtoner som skal brukes, klikker du på Halvtone og bruker "Endre innstilling for Halvtone" for å angi hvilke halvtoner du ønsker å bruke.



Hvis du velger "Bruk systemets halvtoner", kan du bruke dialogboksen Enhetsfarge/ halvtoneoppsett til å endre halvtoneinnstillingene for systemet. Se i brukerhåndbøkene eller hjelpefunksjonen for Microsoft Windows NT hvis du vil ha mer informasjon om hvordan du endrer halvtonene for systemet.



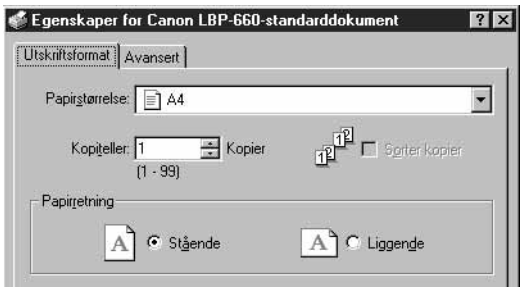
- Hvordan du bruker justeringsfunksjonen for halvtoner under dokumentegenskaper, varierer, avhengig av hvilken behandlingsmåte du valgte for halvtonene.

NORSK

Egenskaper for standarddokument

Du angir standardinnstillinger for de utskriftsalternativene som er tilgjengelige når du skriver ut på LBP-660, i dialogboksen Egenskaper for standarddokument. Hvis du vil vise egenskapene for standarddokumentet, velger du ”Dokumentstandarder…” fra Fil-menyen i mappen Skrivere, eller klikker på LBP-660-ikonet med høyre museknapp i mappen Skrivere og velger ”Dokumentstandarder…” fra hurtigmenyen.

Dialogboksen Egenskaper for standarddokument inneholder kategorien Utskriftsformat som brukes ofte samt kategorien Avansert som inneholder mer informasjon om de forskjellige utskriftsalternativene. Klikk på spørsmålstegnet (?) øverst i høyre hjørne i dialogboksen, deretter på den aktuelle innstillingen for å vise hurtighjelp om akkurat det emnet hvis du vil ha mer informasjon om de ulike innstillingene.



- Du kan også åpne en tilsvarende dialogboks og angi innstillingene ved å velge ”Skriv ut” eller ”Utskriftsformat” fra Fil-menyen i programmet du bruker. Legg imidlertid merke til at innstillingene som er angitt i et program, bare gjelder dokumentet du holder på å opprette i det programmet, ikke dokumentstandardene.

■ Kategorien Utskriftsformat

I denne kategorien angis parametere som for eksempel papirstørrelse, papirretning og antall kopier.

Papirstørrelse
Velg papirstørrelse fra rullegardinmenyen. Hvis du velger Egendefinert størrelse under papirstørrelse, må du først angi papirstørrelse i kategorien Avansert.

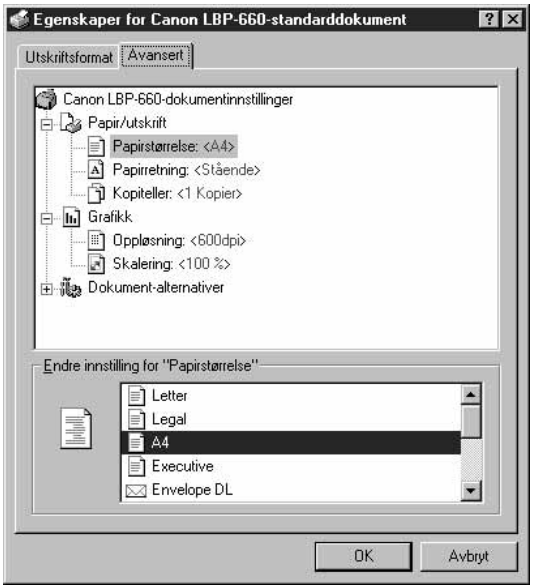
Kopiteller
Skriv inn hvor mange kopier du vil skal skrives ut, i tekstfeltet Kopiteller.

Sorter kopier
Hvis du har angitt to eller flere kopier under Kopiteller, merker du av for Sorter kopier for å sortere kopiene som skrives ut.

Papirretning
Angi hvilken papirretning du vil bruke (Stående eller Liggende).

■ Kategorien Avansert

Innstillingene under kategorien Avansert er delt inn under Papir/utskrift, Grafikk og Dokument-alternativer. Alternativene under de forskjellige gruppene vises i rekkefølge under gruppenavnet. Gjeldende innstilling for hvert alternativ vises i blått til høyre for alternativet. Hvis valgene ikke vises, klikker du på plussymbolet (+) til venstre for gruppenavnet.



Hvis du klikker på navnet på det alternativet du ønsker å endre, vil innstillingene som er tilgjengelige for det valget (eller knappene som brukes til å åpne andre dialogbokser) vises i den nederste delen av dialogboksen. Angi eller skriv inn den nye innstillingen. Den nye innstillingen vises nå i rødt til høyre for det aktuelle alternativet. Rødfargen betyr at den nye innstillingen ennå ikke er lagret som standard. Nye innstillinger lagres ikke som dokumentstandarder før du klikker på OK nederst i dialogboksen.

Innstillinger for Papir/utskrift
Gruppen Papir/utskrift består i tre alternativer: Papirstørrelse, Papirretning og Kopiteller. Dette er de samme alternativene som i kategorien Utskriftsformat som er beskrevet ovenfor. Hvis du endrer disse innstillingene, endrer du også innstillingene i kategorien Utskriftsformat.

Innstillinger for gruppen Grafikk
Gruppen Grafikk består av to alternativer: Oppløsning og Skalering.

- Oppløsning
  Bruk knappen Endre innstilling for ”Oppløsning” for å angi hvilken oppløsning LBP-660 skal skrive ut med.
- Skalering
  Skriv inn verdien for forstørringen eller forminskingen i tekstfeltet Endre innstilling for ”Skalering”. Du kan angi en verdi mellom 10 og 200 %, i trinn på 1 %.

Innstillinger for gruppen Dokument-alternativer
Gruppen Dokument-alternativer består i fem alternativer: Halftone Color Adjustment, Automatic Image Refinement, Toner Saver, Toner Density og Custom Paper Size.

- Halftone Color Adjustment
  Klikk på knappen Halftone Color Adjustment for å åpne dialogboksen Halftone Color Adjustment og juster skriverens halvtoner.



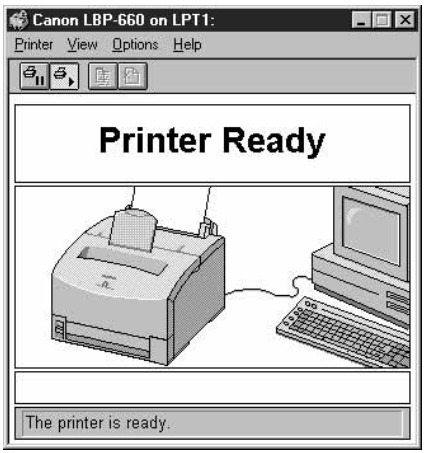
- Hvilken dialogboks for justering av halvtonefarger som vises her, avhenger av hva som ble angitt i kategorien Enhetsinnstillinger under skriveregenskaper.
  - Hvis du har valgt ”Bruk skriverens halvtoner”, vil den opprinnelige LBP-660-dialogboksen vises på samme måte som når du velger kategorien Grafikk i dialogboksen Egenskaper for Microsoft Windows 95.
    I denne dialogboksen angir du hvor mye av hver halvtone som skal brukes (Smooth, Pattern 1 eller Pattern 2) og justerer Brightness og Contrast. Se avsnittet ”Arbeide med grafikk i gråtoner” i brukerhåndboken hvis du vil vite mer om dette.
  - Hvis du valgte ”Bruk systemets halvtoner”, vises et diagram med gråtoner, samtidig som dialogboksen Justering av halvtonefarge i Microsoft Windows NT vises. Hvis du vil ha mer informasjon om hvordan du bruker denne dialogboksen, bør du bruke hjelpefunksjonen eller lese i brukerhåndbøkene for Microsoft Windows NT.

- Automatic Image Refinement
  Bruk dette alternativet til å angi om utjevningsfunksjonen i LBP-660 skal være av/på.
- Toner Saver
  Bruk dette alternativet til å velge om denne sparefunksjonen skal være av/på.
- Toner Density
  Bruk dette alternativet til å justere hvor mye toner som brukes under skriving (fem nivåer å velge mellom). Medium er standardverdi for tetthet.
- Custom Paper Size
  Bruk dette alternativet for å angi papirstørrelse når du har valgt Egendefinert i kategorien Utskriftsformat. Klikk på knappen Custom Paper Size for å vise dialogboksen Custom Paper Size og still inn høyde og bredde for den egendefinerte papirstørrelsen.

Statusvinduet for Microsoft Windows NT LBP-660

Hvis LBP-660 er koblet til en Microsoft Windows NT-maskin som lokal skriver, vises statusvinduet for LBP-660 automatisk når du begynner å skrive ut på LBP-660 eller når det kreves intervensjon, for eksempel når det oppstår feil.

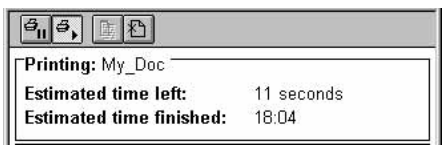
Du kan åpne statusvinduet for LBP-660 når som helst ved å dobbeltklikke på statusvinduikonet for Canon LBP-660 i gruppen Windows Printing System. Statusvinduet kan brukes til å kontrollere hvor langt en utskrift har kommet, stanse en utskrift, fortsette å skrive ut og så videre.



Dette statusvinduet er hovedsakelig det samme som statusvinduet for Microsoft Windows Printing System som vises i Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 og Microsoft Windows for Workgroups. Se brukerhåndboken hvis du vil ha mer informasjon om hvordan du bruker statusvinduet.

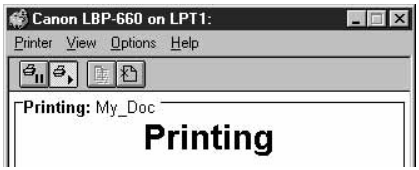
Denne forklaringen gjelder kun framgangsmåtene og funksjonene når statusvinduet for LBP-660 for Windows for Microsoft Windows NT er forskjellig fra statusvinduet i andre versjoner av Microsoft Windows.

- Hvis du har valgt ”Start utskrift når siste side er lagt i skriverkøen” under skriveregenskaper i kategorien Planlegging, vises informasjonen om den antatte tiden som gjenstår og den antatte tiden som har gått, i meldingsområdet mens skriving pågår, i tillegg til en statuslinje som forteller hvor mange sider som er skrevet ut, og hvor mange sider som skal skrives ut totalt.



NORSK

- Hvis du valgte ”Begynn utskrift umiddelbart”, vises bare meldingen ”Printing” i meldingsfeltet, og indikatorlinjen viser bare hvor mange sider som er skrevet ut.



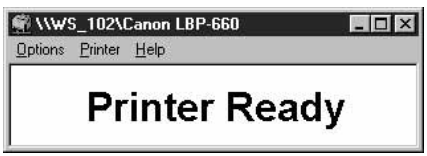
- Det finnes ingen knapp for prøveutskrift på verktøylinjen.
  Når du vil skrive ut en testside, bruker du knappen Testside i dialogboksen Egenskaper for skriver i kategorien Generelt.
- Options-menyen inneholder ikke et alternativ som heter Printer. Hvis du vil endre tonertettheten, åpner du dialogboksen Egenskaper for standarddokument og bruker alternativet Toner Density i kategorien Avansert.
- Hvis du velger Client Operation fra Options-menyen, kan du bestemme om en viss bruker kan stanse en utskrift, fortsette en utskrift, foreta tvungen utskrift eller avbryte en utskrift fra Network Status Monitor på en Microsoft Windows NT-klient.
  Krysset til venstre for Client Operation avgjør om handlingene ovenfor skal kunne styres fra Network Status Monitor eller ikke.

LBP-660 Network Status Monitor

LBP-660 Network Status Monitor er en funksjon som gjør at en Microsoft Windows NT-klient som er koblet til en nettverksskriver, kan kontrollere hvilken status LBP-660 har, stanse en utskrift, fortsette en utskrift, foreta en tvungen utskrift og avbryte en utskrift på samme måte som statusvinduet på skrivebordet. Denne funksjonen er kun tilgjengelig for Microsoft Windows NT-klienter og kan ikke brukes i Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 eller Microsoft Windows for Workgroups.

LBP-660 Network Status Monitor viser bare informasjon om utskriftsjobben som tekst og har verken animert grafikk eller en indikatorlinje som statusvinduet for LBP-660.

Når du kobler en Microsoft Windows NT-klient til en nettverksskriver, installeres Network Status Monitor automatisk fra skriverserveren.



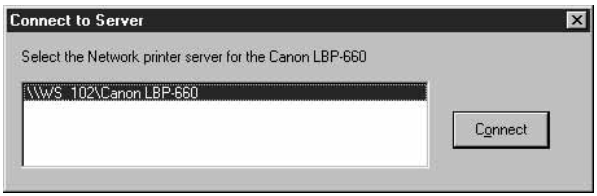
Bruke LBP-660 Network Status Monitor

■ Starte Network Status Monitor

Du kan bruke følgende framgangsmåte for å starte LBP-660 Network Status Monitor når som helst:

1. Dobbeltklikk på ikonet for Canon LBP-660 Network Status Monitor i gruppen Windows Printing System på klienten eller dobbeltklikk på snarveisikonet for Canon LBP-660 Network Status Monitor på skrivebordet.

2. Når det vises en melding som spør om du vil koble deg til nettverksskriveren, klikker du på Yes.
   - Deretter åpnes dialogboksen der du angir hvilken skriver som skal kobles til.



3. Velg navnet på skriveren du vil koble deg til fra listen, og klikk deretter på Connect.
   - Når du er ferdig med å koble deg til nettverksskriveren, vises nåværende status for skriveren i tekstfeltet.

■ Status - alternativer

Menylinjen i LBP-660 Network Status Monitor inneholder tre menyer: Options, Printer og Help.



Options-menyen
Bruk Options-menyen til å angi alternativer som gjelder Network Status Monitor.

- Connect to Server
  Velg dette alternativet hvis tilkoblingen til nettverksskriveren på en eller annen måte er brutt eller hvis du vil koble deg til en annen nettverksskriver (gjelder kun LBP-660). Du vil se den samme Connect to Server-dialogboksen som vises når du starter Network Status Monitor. Velg den skriveren du vil koble deg til, og klikk på Connect.
- Sound
  Bruk dette alternativet til å velge om det skal brukes talemeldinger når det oppstår feil under utskriftsprosessen.

NORSK

- Network Status Monitor kan bare gi talemeldinger når det oppstår feil. Hvis det ikke er installert lydkort på klientmaskinen, vil dette alternativet være utilgjengelig (vises i grått).

- Default Size
  Hvis du har endret skjermstørrelse for Network Status Monitor, vil dette alternativet gjenopprettete den opprinnelige størrelsen.
- Hide Menu
  Hvis du velger dette alternativet, skjules menyene i Network Status Monitor. Hvis du vil at menylinjen skal vises, trykker du på **Esc** mens Network Status Monitor er det aktive vinduet, eller dobbeltklikker hvor som helst i meldingsområdet.
- Always On Top
  Hvis du velger dette alternativet og plasserer et avkrysningsmerke til venstre for Always On Top, vises Network Status Monitor alltid som det øverste vinduet på skrivebordet.

Printer-menyen
Bruk Printer-menyen til å styre utskriftsfunksjonen. Legg imidlertid merke til at hvis du ikke har krysset av for Client Operation i Options-menyen i statusvinduet på skriverserveren, vises Printer-menyen som utilgjengelig, og du kan ikke styre utskriftsfunksjonen fra klienten.

Se ”Bruke Skriver-menyen” i brukerhåndboken hvis du vil ha flere detaljer om Printer-menyen.

- Innstillinger du foretar i Printer-menyen vil fremdeles påvirke utskriftsjobber fra andre klienter. Når utskriftsjobber fra forskjellige klienter legges i kø for skriverserveren, kan uforsiktig avbryting av utskrift føre til at jobber fra andre klienter blir borte. Husk dette når du avbryter en utskrift.

Help-menyen
Denne menyen åpner en dialogboks som viser versjonsinformasjonen for Network Status Monitor.

Kapittel 5
Feilsøking

Dette kapitlet forklarer hvordan du løser problemer som oppstår når du installerer Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT og når du bruker LBP-660 som nettverksskriver i et Microsoft Windows NT-nettverk.

Se kapittel 6, "Feilsøking" i brukerhåndboken for LBP-660 hvis du vil ha informasjon om hvordan du går fram for å løse problemer som oppstår med selve skriveren (papirstopp osv.), problemer med utskriftskvaliteten, problemer med Microsoft Windows Printing System og feilmeldinger i Microsoft Windows Printing System.

Hvis du ikke klarer å finne ut hva som forårsaker problemet, benytter du feilsøkingsverktøyet som er installert i gruppen Windows Printing System. Feilsøkingsfunksjonen kan løse problemer med installerte filer eller innstillinger.

Hvis du fremdeles ikke klarer å løse problemet, må du avinstallere Microsoft Windows Printing System på skriverserveren, starte serveren på nytt og installere Microsoft Windows Printing System igjen. Når du skal avinstallere Microsoft Windows Printing System, starter du avinstalleringsverktøyet som er installert i gruppen Windows Printing System.



- Du bør starte Microsoft Windows NT på nytt hver gang du har avinstallert programvare. Hvis du ikke starter Microsoft Windows NT på nytt, vil du ikke være i stand til å installere den avinstallerte programvaren på nytt.

NORSK

Problemer under installeringen av Microsoft Windows Printing System

Problemer under lokal installering

Problem	Årsak	Løsning
Får ikke valgt Min datamaskin i veiviseren for skriverinstallasjon.	Brukeren som installerer programvaren, har ikke tilgang som systemansvarlig eller priviligert bruker.	Du trenger tilgang som systemansvarlig for å installere Microsoft Windows Printing System. Få noen med tilgang som systemansvarlig til å installere programvaren på nytt.
Når filkopieringen er over, vises en feilmelding som sier at du trenger tilgang som systemansvarlig.	En bruker med tilgangsrettigheter som priviligert bruker prøvde å installere programvaren.	Få noen med tilgangsrettigheter som systemansvarlig til å installere programvaren på nytt.
Det vises en feilmelding som sier at du må installere på nytt.	Du foretar en lokal installering på en maskin som allerede har angitt LBP-660 som nettverksskriver.	Foreta den lokale installeringen på nytt, og velg knappen Erstatt eksisterende driver under erstatningsvalg i veiviseren for skriverinstallasjon.

Problemer under nettverksinstallering

Problem	Årsak	Løsning
Navnet på den delte skriveren eller skriverserveren som skal kobles til, vises ikke i listen under Navn på delt ressurs.	• Skriverserveren er ikke startet. • Skriveren er ikke angitt som delt skriverressurs. • Du har ikke det tilgangsnivået som kreves for å kunne koble deg til skriveren eller skriverserveren.	• Start skriverserveren. • Velg alternativet Delt i dialogboksen Egenskaper. • Be den nettverksansvarlige om å endre tilgangsnivået ditt.

Problemer under nettverksutskrift

Problem	Årsak	Løsning
Får ikke koblet meg til skriverserveren eller den delte skriveren i Network Status Monitor.	• Skriverserveren er ikke startet. • Skriveren er ikke angitt som en delt skriverressurs. • Du har ikke det tilgangsnivået som kreves for å koble deg til skriveren eller skriverserveren.	• Start skriverserveren. • Velg alternativet Delt i dialogboksen Skriveregenskaper. • Be den nettverksansvarlige om å endre tilgangsnivået ditt.
Får ikke brukt Printer-menyen i Network Status Monitor.	Du har ikke krysset av for alternativet Client Operation i Options-menyen i statusvinduet for skriverserveren.	Velg Client Operation fra Options-menyen.
Får ikke skrevet ut på en Microsoft Windows 95/3.1- eller Microsoft Windows for Workgroups-skriverserver fra en Microsoft Windows NT-klient.	Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT støtter ikke Microsoft Windows 95/3.1- eller Microsoft Windows for Workgroups-skriverservere.	Bruk en Microsoft Windows NT-skriverserver.
Får ikke skrevet ut fra en Microsoft Windows 95/3.1- eller Microsoft Windows for Workgroups-klient.	• WPS-katalogen på skriverserveren deles ikke. • Skriverserverens standard datatype er ikke stilt inn for WPS.	• Angi at WPS-katalogen skal deles, på skriverserveren. • Klikk på knappen Skriverprosessor i kategorien Generelt i dialogboksen Egenskaper, og velg WPS som standard datatype.

NORSK

Tillegg

Sammenligne med Microsoft Windows Printing Systems for andre versjoner av Microsoft Windows

Noen av funksjonene i Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 er annerledes enn dem som finnes i Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 og Microsoft Windows for Workgroups.

Legg merke til følgende når du leser brukerhåndboken for LBP-660.

Under lokal utskrift eller nettverksutskrift med Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 og nettverksutskrift med Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 eller Microsoft Windows for Workgroups

- Siden PCL-emulering ikke kan brukes, kan du ikke skrive ut fra kommandolinjen (Microsoft Windows NT) eller MS-DOS-ledetekst (Microsoft Windows 95).

Under lokal utskrift eller nettverksutskrift med Microsoft Windows NT 4.0

- Du kan ikke bruke overlappingsfunksjonen.
- Du kan ikke skrive ut en testside fra statusvinduet for LBP-660. Bruk knappen Skriv ut testside i kategorien Generelt i dialogboksen Egenskaper.
- Det finnes ingen Printer-valg i Options-menyen i statusvinduet for LBP-660. Angi tonertetthet i gruppen for dokumentalternativer i kategorien Avansert i dialogboksen Egenskaper for standarddokument.

Canon

LBP-660-LASERKIRJOITIN

Microsoft® Windows® Printing System -opas
Microsoft® Windows NT -käyttöjärjestelmään®

TÄRKEÄÄ:
Lue tämä opas huolellisesti ennen kirjoittimen käyttöä. Säilytä opas myöhempää tarvetta varten.

SUOMI

Tekijänoikeudet

Copyright © 1998 Canon Inc. Kaikki oikeudet pidätetään.
Copyright © 1996 Microsoft Corporation. Kaikki oikeudet pidätetään.

Huomautus

Canon Inc. ei anna tälle julkaisulle, tässä asiakirjassa ilmoitettua takuuta lukuun ottamatta, minkäänlaista suoraa tai epäsuoraa takuuta, ei myöskään sellaista, joka koskisi markkinoitavuutta, myyntikelpoisuutta tai sopivuutta tiettyyn tarkoitukseen tai mahdollisuutta rikkoa jotakin patenttia. Canon Inc. ei ole vastuussa mistään suorista, välillisistä tai seurannaisvahingoista, tappioista eikä kuluista, jotka saattavat aiheutua tämän julkaisun käytöstä.
Tässä julkaisussa on tekijänoikeuksin suojattuja tietoja. Kaikki oikeudet pidätetään. Tätä julkaisua ei saa osittainkaan kopioida, jäljentää tai kääntää toiselle kielelle ilman Canon Inc:n ennalta antamaa kirjallista lupaa.
Kirjoittimen mukana toimitetun Microsoft® Windows® Printing Systemin käyttöoikeussopimuksen ehdot koskevat myös tätä julkaisua.
Tässä julkaisussa olevia tietoja voidaan muuttaa ilman ennakkoilmoitusta.

Tavaramerkit

LBP, Canon ja Canon-logo ovat Canon Inc:n tavaramerkkejä.
PCL on Hewlett-Packard Companyn tavaramerkki.
IBM on International Business Machines Corporationin tavaramerkki.
Microsoft, Windows, Windows NT, Windows-logo ja MS-DOS ovat Microsoft Corporationin rekisteröityjä tavaramerkkejä tai tavaramerkkejä Yhdysvalloissa ja/tai muissa maissa.
NetWare® on Novell, Inc:n rekisteröity tavaramerkki, ja Novell on sen tavaramerkki.
TrueType on Apple Computer, Inc:n tavaramerkki.
Lucida on Bigelow & Homesin tavaramerkki.
Muut malli- ja tuotenimet ovat omistajayritystensä tavaramerkkejä tai rekisteröityjä tavaramerkkejä.
Tässä käyttöoppaassa Microsoft®-yrityksestä, Microsoft® Windows®- ja Microsoft® Windows NT® -käyttöjärjestelmistä käytetään nimiä Microsoft, Microsoft Windows ja Microsoft Windows NT.

Merkintätapoja

Tässä oppaassa käytetään seuraavia merkintätapoja:



Huomautukset sisältävät ohjeita tai ehdotuksia, joiden mukaan voidaan parhaiten käyttää hyväksi kirjoittimen toimintoja.



Varoittaa tilanteesta, jossa laitteisto tai ohjelmisto voi vahingoittua, jos ehdotettua toimenpidettä ei tehdä tai ohjetta ei noudateta.

Luku 1
Johdanto

Tietoja tästä käyttöoppaasta

Tämä Microsoft® Windows® Printing Systemin (jäljempänä Microsoft Windows Printing System) käyttöopas Microsoft® Windows NT®:lle (jäljempänä Microsoft Windows NT) sisältää ohjeet Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT:n asentamisesta ja käyttämisestä tietokoneessa, jonka käyttöjärjestelmä on Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 (Server tai Workstation) ja joka on kytketty Canon LBP-660 -laserkirjoittimeen.

Tässä käyttöoppaassa on seuraavat luvut:

Luku 1 Johdanto 1

Tässä luvussa kuvataan käyttöoppaan käyttämistä ja vaatimuksia, jotka Microsoft Windows NT:tä käyttävän tietokoneen on täytettävä, jotta Microsoft Windows Printing System voitaisiin asentaa siihen.

Luku 2 Microsoft Windows Printing Systemin asentaminen 3

Tässä luvussa kuvataan Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT:n asentamista, kun LBP-660 toimii paikalliskirjoittimena, sekä LBP-660:n jakamista muiden käyttäjien kanssa Microsoft Windows NT -verkossa.

Luku 3 Yhteys verkkokirjoittimena toimivaan LBP-660:een 10

Tässä luvussa kuvataan LBP-660:n ohjaamista toisilla tietokoneilla, joiden käyttöjärjestelmä on Microsoft Windows NT, Microsoft® Windows® (jäljempänä Microsoft Windows) 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 tai Microsoft Työryhmä-Windows.

Luku 4 Microsoft Windows Printing Systemin käyttö 13

Tässä luvussa kuvataan Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT:n Network Status Monitoria, LBP-660-tilaikkunaa ja Ominaisuudet-valintaikkunaa.

Luku 5 Vianmääritys 23

Tässä luvussa kuvataan sellaisten ongelmien ratkaisemista, joita saattaa ilmetä asennettaessa Microsoft Windows Printing Systemiä tai käytettäessä Microsoft Windows Printing Systemiä Microsoft Windows NT -verkossa.

Liite 26

Liite sisältää luettelon niistä LBP-660:n käyttöoppaan kuvauksista, joissa Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT eroaa Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows 95:stä, Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows 3.1:stä ja Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows for Workgroupsista.

SUOMI

Ennen tämän ohjelmiston asentamista

Ennen kuin asennat Microsoft Windows Printing Systemin tietokoneeseen, jonka käyttöjärjestelmä on Microsoft Windows NT, tarkista, että tietokone täyttää seuraavat laitteisto- ja ohjelmistovaatimukset.

- IBM PC tai yhteensopiva, jossa on 90 MHz:n Pentium-prosessori tai tehokkaampi ja Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 (Server tai Workstation)



- Tässä käyttöoppaassa kuvattu LBP-660:n Microsoft Windows Printing System toimii PC/AT-yhteensopivien tietokoneiden Microsoft Windows NT 4.0:ssa. Tämä Microsoft Windows Printing System ei toimi järjestelmässä, jossa on Windows NT 3.51 tai sitä vanhempi versio tai RISC-prosessorille suunniteltu Microsoft Windows NT.
- Jos käytät Novell NetWare® -verkkoa, et voi asentaa tätä ohjelmistoa NetWare®-palvelimeen. Et voi tulostaa tällä ohjelmistolla Novell Netware® -asiakastietokoneesta, jossa on Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 tai Microsoft Työryhmä-Windows.

- Vähintään 24 megatavua RAM-muistia
- Vähintään 10 megatavua vapaata kiintolevytilaa
- CD-levyasema
- Standardin mukainen Centronics-rinnakkaisportti (kun LBP-660 on kytketty paikalliskirjoittimeksi)
- Verkkokortti (kun LBP-660 jaetaan verkon kautta)

Microsoft Windows Printing System on ehkä mahdollista asentaa tietokoneeseen, joka ei täytä edellä kuvattuja vaatimuksia, mutta Canon ei voi taata, että ohjelmisto toimii moitteettomasti. Jotta käyttöympäristö olisi ihanteellinen ja LBP-660 toimisi mahdollisimman tehokkaasti, seuraavat laitteet ja ohjelmat ovat suositeltavia:

- 166 MHz:n Pentium-prosessori tai tehokkaampi
- Vähintään 48 megatavua RAM-muistia
- ECP-kirjoitinportti
- Äänikortti (tarvitaan Microsoft Windows Printing Systemin puhuttujen sanomien kuuntelemista varten)

Jos LBP-660 on tarkoitus jakaa verkon kautta, yhden seuraavista verkkoprotokollista on oltava asennettu:

- NetBEUI
- TCP/IP
- NWLink IPX/SPX



- Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT:n asentamiseen tarvitaan pääkäyttäjän oikeudet. Asentaminen pitäisi jättää verkon pääkäyttäjän tai muun pääkäyttäjän oikeudet omistavan henkilön tehtäväksi.

Luku 2
Microsoft Windows Printing Systemin asentaminen

Kun asennat Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT:n, käytä oheista Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 -asennuslevyä.

Microsoft Windows Printing Systemin asentaminen paikalliskirjoitinta varten

Tässä jaksossa kuvataan Microsoft Windows Printing Systemin asentamista, kun LBP-660:n on tarkoitus toimia paikalliskirjoittimena. LBP-660:n kytkemistä verkkokirjoittimeksi kuvataan luvussa 3, ”Yhteys verkkokirjoittimena toimivaan LBP-660:een”.

Ohjatun kirjoittimen asennuksen käynnistäminen

Asenna Windows Printing System for Microsoft NT käyttämällä Microsoft Windows NT 4.0:n ohjattua kirjoittimen asennusta. Asenna ohjelmisto seuraavien ohjeiden mukaisesti.

1. Käynnistä tietokone, johon LBP-660 on kytketty, ja käynnistä Microsoft Windows NT 4.0.

2. Kirjaudu tietokoneeseen pääkäyttäjänä.

3. Käynnistä ohjattu kirjoittimen asennus toisella seuraavista menetelmistä:

   a. Napsauta tehtäväpalkin Käynnistä-painiketta ja valitse Käynnistä-valikosta Asetukset. Valitse esiin tulevasta alivalikosta Kirjoittimet, jotta Kirjoittimet-kansio avautuu, ja napsauta kahdesti sen Lisää kirjoitin -kuvaketta.

   b. Napsauta kahdesti työpöydän Oma tietokone -kuvaketta, jotta Oma tietokone -kansio avautuu. Avaa sitten Kirjoittimet-kansio ja napsauta kahdesti Lisää kirjoitin -kuvaketta.

SUOMI

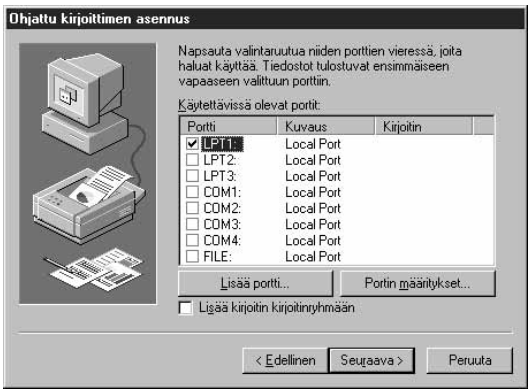
■ Näet Ohjattu kirjoittimen asennus -ikkunan, jonka avulla asennetaan kirjoitinohjaimia.


Ohjattu kirjoittimen asennus
Tämän ohjatun toiminnon avulla voit asentaa kirjoittimen ja muodostaa yhteyksiä. Tätä kirjoitinta hallitsee:
Oma tietokone
Kaikkia asetuksia hallitaan ja muokataan tästä tietokoneesta.
Verkkokirjoitinpalvelin
Liitä kirjoitin toiseen tietokoneeseen. Kaikkia asetuksia hallitsee järjestelmänvalvojan määrittämä kirjoitinpalvelin.
< Edellinen
Seuraava >
Peruuta

4. Tarkista, että valintaikkunassa on valittu Oma tietokone -valintanappi, ja napsauta Seuraava > -painiketta.

■ Kirjoitinportin valintaikkuna tulee esiin.

Kirjoitinportin valitseminen



1. Napsauta sen portin valintaruutua, johon LBP-660 on kytketty (yleensä LPT1:), ja sitten Seuraava > -painiketta.

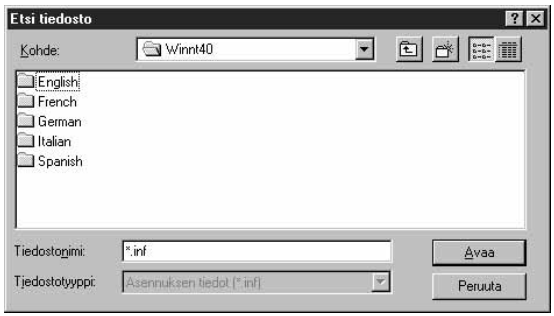
■ Voit kytkeä LBP-660:n vain rinnakkaisporttiin (LPT). Et voi tulostaa LBP-660:llä, jos valitset sarjaportin tai muun portin kuin sen, johon LBP-660 on kytketty.

■ Näet valintaikkunan, jossa on lueteltu kirjoittimien valmistajat ja mallit, joita Microsoft Windows NT tukee ilman lisäohjelmia.

2. Koska LBP-660 puuttuu luettelosta, aseta Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 -asennuslevy CD-levyasemaan ja napsauta Levy…-painiketta.

3. Kun Asenna levykkeeltä -valintaikkuna tulee esiin, kirjoita CD-levyaseman tunnus Valmistajan tiedoston sijainti -tekstiruutuun ja napsauta Selaa … -painiketta.

4. Napsauta kahdesti Winnt40-kansiota Etsi tiedosto -valintaikkunassa.
   - Erikieliset kansiot näkyvät valintaikkunan luettelossa.



5. Napsauta kahdesti kansiota, jonka kieli on sama kuin käyttämäsi Windows NT:n kieli.
   - Kun Etsi tiedosto -valintaikkunassa näkyy tiedosto Wpsc3nt, napsauta Avaa-painiketta.

- Ellei käyttämäsi Microsoft Windows NT:n kieltä vastaavaa kansiota ole, valitse English-kansio.

6. Napsauta Asenna levykkeeltä -valintaikkunan OK-painiketta.

7. Kun Ohjattu kirjoittimen asennus -valintaikkunan Kirjoittimet-luettelossa näkyy ”Canon LBP-660”, napsauta Seuraava > -painiketta.
   - Näet ikkunan, jonka Kirjoittimen nimi -ruudussa lukee ”Canon LBP-660”. Jos haluat vaihtaa kirjoittimen nimen, kirjoita uusi nimi valintaikkunassa näkyvien ohjeiden mukaisesti.

8. Napsauta Seuraava > -painiketta.
   - Seuraavaksi näet valintaikkunan, jossa voit jakaa kirjoittimen muiden käyttäjien kanssa.

SUOMI

Kirjoittimen jakaminen

Tässä jaksossa kuvataan, miten LBP-660 muutetaan jaetuksi verkkokirjoittimeksi. Voit määrittää kirjoittimen jakoasetukset myös asennettuasi Microsoft Windows Printing Systemin. Lisätietoja on jäljempänä kohdassa ”Kirjoittimen jakaminen”.


Ohjattu kirjoittimen asennus
Voit jakaa kirjoittimesi, jolloin myös verkon muut käyttäjät voivat tulostaa sille. Jos haluat jakaa kirjoittimen, anna sille nimi jakamista varten.
Ei jaettu
Jaettu
Jaettu nimellä:
CanonLBP
Valitse kaikkien kirjoittimelle tulostavien tietokoneiden käyttöjärjestelmät:
Windows 95
Windows NT 4.0 MIPS
Windows NT 4.0 Alpha
Windows NT 4.0 PPC
Windows NT 3.5 tai 3.51 x86
Windows NT 3.5 tai 3.51 MIPS
< Edellinen
Seuraava >
Peruuta

1. Jos haluat jakaa LBP-660:n verkon muiden käyttäjien kanssa, napsauta Jaettu-valintanappia.

2. Napsauta Seuraava > -painiketta.
   - Näyttöön tulee valintaikkuna, jossa kysytään, haluatko tulostaa testisivun.

Testisivun tulostaminen

Kun olet asentanut Microsoft Windows Printing Systemin, voit tulostaa LBP-660:llä testisivun.

1. Jos haluat tulostaa testisivun, napsauta Valmis-painiketta, jotta testisivu tulostuu automaattisesti. Jos haluat jättää testisivun tulostamatta, napsauta Ei-painiketta ja sitten Valmis-painiketta.

Kun napsautat Valmis-painiketta, tarvittavat tiedostot kopioituvat asennuslevyltä kiintolevylle. Kopioimisen aikana näytössä on ilmoitusikkuna, joka sisältää tilanneilmaisimen.

Kopioimisen päätyttyä Kirjoittimet-kansiossa näkyy Canon LBP-660 -kuvake. Kirjoittimet-kansiossa olevan Canon LBP-660 -kuvakkeen muoto vaihtelee sen mukaan, onko kirjoitin jaettu vai ei.

Kun Microsoft Windows Printing Systemin alustaminen alkaa, näyttöön tulee ilmoitus ”Initializing… Please wait!”. Alustamisen aikana ohjelmisto muodostaa Microsoft Windows Printing System -ryhmän ja lisää sen Käynnistä-valikkoon. Työpöydälle ilmestyy Windows Printing Systemin ikkuna sekä Windows Printing System -ryhmän pikakuvake (katso seuraavaa sivua).

Jos haluat avata yhteyden LBP-660:een ja tulostaa Microsoft Windows 95:tä, Microsoft Windows 3.1:tä tai Microsoft Työryhmä-Windowsia käyttävästä asiakastietokoneesta, joka on yhteydessä Microsoft Windows NT -verkkoon, napsauta seuraavan valintaikkunan Kyllä-painiketta.

Jos et halua jakaa LBP-660:tä tai jos kaikissa asiakastietokoneissa on Microsoft Windows NT, napsauta Ei-painiketta.


Microsoft Windows Printing System Installation
Do you want to share the WPS directory for allowing Windows95/Windows3.1 clients to print?
Kyllä
Ei

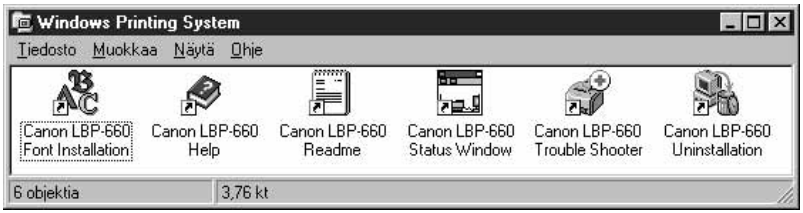
Asennuksen päättäminen

Kun Microsoft Windows Printing System on asennettu, näyttöön tulee vahvistusilmoitus. Päätä asentaminen napsauttamalla OK-painiketta.

Jos valitsit kirjoitinohjainta asennettaessa testisivun tulostamisen, se alkaa nyt. Jos asentaminen onnistui, työpöydälle tulee esiin LBP-660-tilaikkuna ja LBP-660 tulostaa testisivun. Tarkista testisivu ja sulje testisivun tulostamista koskeva valintaikkuna napsauttamalla sen Kyllä-painiketta.

Kun Microsoft Windows Printing Systemin asentaminen on päättynyt, voit alkaa heti tulostaa Microsoft Windows NT -tietokoneella, johon LBP-660 on kytketty paikalliskirjoittimeksi. Jos taas haluat tietokoneen toimivan tulostuspalvelimena ja haluat tulostaa asiakastietokoneesta verkon kautta, sinun on ensin käynnistettävä Microsoft Windows NT uudelleen.

Windows Printing Systemiä asennettaessa luotu Microsoft Windows Printing System -ryhmä sisältää kuusi alla esitettyä kuvaketta.



Canon LBP-660 Font Installation
Tämä on apuohjelma, jolla asennetaan TrueType-fontit (22 Lucida-fonttia) Microsoft Windows 95/3.1 -asennuslevykkeeltä 3 Microsoft Windows NT:hen. Jos haluat asentaa TrueType-fontit, napsauta kahdesti Canon LBP-660 Font Installation -kuvaketta. Noudata sitten näyttöön tulevia ohjeita.

- Asennetut TrueType-fontit eivät häviä, vaikka poistaisit Microsoft Windows Printing Systemin Uninstallation-ohjelmalla.

Canon LBP-660 Help
Tämä näyttää Microsoft Windows Printing Systemin ohjeen.

Canon LBP-660 Readme
Tämä on tekstitiedosto, jossa on lisätietoja Microsoft Windows Printing Systemin asennetusta versiosta. Lue tiedosto ennen kuin alat käyttää Microsoft Windows Printing Systemiä.

Canon LBP-660 Status Window
Tämä avaa Canon LBP-660 -tilaikkunan.

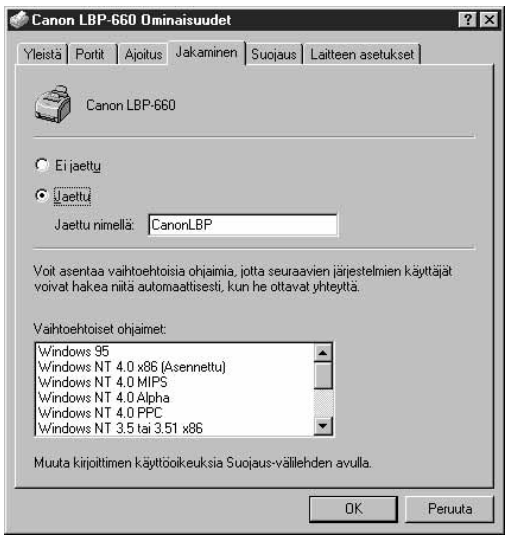
Canon LBP-660 Trouble Shooter
Tämä on apuohjelma Microsoft Windows Printing Systemissä ilmenevien ongelmien ratkaisemista varten. Katso käyttöoppaan luvusta ”Vianmääritys”, miten tätä apuohjelmaa käytetään.

Canon LBP-660 Uninstallation
Tämä on apuohjelma, jolla Microsoft Windows Printing System poistetaan. Katso käyttöoppaan luvusta ”Vianmääritys”, miten tätä apuohjelmaa käytetään.

Kirjoittimen jakaminen

Kun olet asentanut Microsoft Windows Printing Systemin, määritä LBP-660 jaetuksi kirjoittimeksi Canon LBP-660 Ominaisuudet -valintaikkunan avulla.

1. Avaa Canon LBP-660 Ominaisuudet -valintaikkunan Jakaminen-välilehti alla kuvatulla tavalla.
   - Avaa Kirjoittimet-kansio, napsauta LBP-660-kuvaketta hiiren oikealla painikkeella ja valitse ponnahdusvalikosta Jakaminen….



2. Jos haluat jakaa LBP-660:n verkossa, napsauta Jaettu-valintanappia.



- Kun valitset Jaettu, Jaettu nimellä -tekstiruutuun ilmestyy kahdeksan ensimmäistä merkkiä (ilman välilyöntejä) nimestä, jonka annoit kirjoittimelle asentaessasi sen. Voit kirjoittaa tekstiruutuun jonkin toisen nimen.
  Jos kirjoittimen jakavilla verkkokäyttäjillä on Microsoft Windows 3.1 tai Microsoft Työryhmä-Windows, varmista, että nimessä on enintään kahdeksan merkkiä.



- Jos teet kirjoittimesta jaetun, älä valitse käyttöjärjestelmää valintaikkunan alaosassa olevasta Vaihtoehtoiset ohjaimet -luettelosta. LBP-660-ohjain voidaan asentaa ainoastaan Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 -järjestelmään (x86-prosessori).

3. Napsauta OK-painiketta.
   - LBP-660 on nyt määritetty jaetuksi kirjoittimeksi, ja Kirjoittimet-kansiossa näkyvä kuvake muuttuu jaetun kirjoittimen kuvakkeeksi.

Luku 3
Yhteys verkkokirjoittimena toimivaan LBP-660:een

Jos määrität LBP-660:n jaetuksi kirjoittimeksi Microsoft Windows NT:tä käyttävässä tietokoneessa, johon LBP-660 on kytketty, ja sitten määrität kyseisen tietokoneen tulostuspalvelimeksi, LBP-660 on Microsoft Windows NT -asiakkaiden lisäksi sellaisten Microsoft Windows 95-, Microsoft Windows 3.1- ja Microsoft Työryhmä-Windows -asiakkaiden käytettävissä, joilla on yhteys Microsoft Windows NT -verkkoon.



- Jos Microsoft Windows NT:tä käyttävän tietokoneen, johon LBP-660 on kytketty, pitää toimia tulostuspalvelimena, sinun pitää käynnistää sen Server-palvelu. Käynnistä palvelu ennen kuin kytket verkkokirjoittimen.
- Jos haluat ottaa yhteyden Microsoft Windows NT -tulostuspalvelimeen asiakastietokoneesta ja tulostaa asiakirjan, asiakastietokoneella on oltava käyttöoikeudet palvelimeen ja jaettuun kirjoittimeen. Jos et ole varma käyttöoikeuksistasi, kysy neuvoa verkon pääkäyttäjältä.

Yhteys Microsoft Windows NT -asiakastietokoneesta

Jos LBP-660:tä käyttävässä asiakastietokoneessa on Microsoft Windows NT, sinun pitää vain lisätä kirjoitin, niin järjestelmä automaattisesti lataa ja asentaa kirjoitinohjaimen ja Network Status Monitorin tulostuspalvelimesta. Kirjoittimen lisäämiseen ei tarvita pääkäyttäjän oikeuksia. Kuka tahansa voi lisätä kirjoittimen.

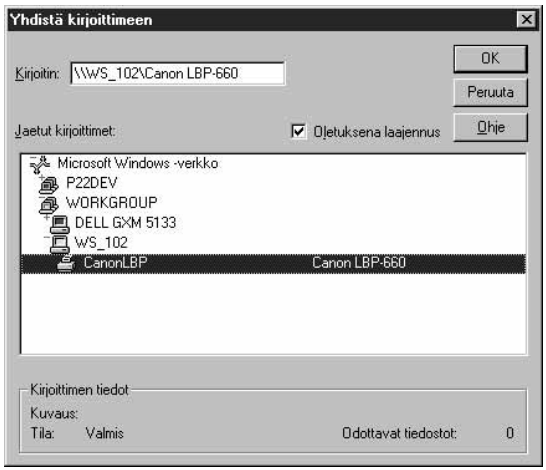
Ohjatun kirjoittimen asennuksen käynnistäminen

1. Käynnistä asiakastietokone ja Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 ja kirjaudu siihen.
2. Käynnistä ohjattu kirjoittimen asennus.
   - Katso luvusta 2, ”Microsoft Windows Printing Systemin asentaminen”, miten ohjattu kirjoittimen asennus käynnistetään.

Verkkokirjoittimen valitseminen


Ohjattu kirjoittimen asennus
Tämän ohjatun toiminnon avulla voit asentaa kirjoittimen ja muodostaa yhteyksiä. Tätä kirjoitinta hallitsee:
Oma tietokone
Kaikkia asetuksia hallitaan ja muokataan tästä tietokoneesta.
Verkkokirjoitinpalvelin
Liitä kirjoitin toiseen tietokoneeseen. Kaikkia asetuksia hallitsee järjestelmänvalvojan määrittämä kirjoitinpalvelin.
< Edellinen
Seuraava >
Peruuta

1. Napsauta Verkkokirjoitinpalvelin-valintanappia ja sitten Seuraava > -painiketta. Yhdistä kirjoittimeen -valintaikkuna tulee esiin.



2. Napsauta kahdesti Jaetut kirjoittimet -luettelossa näkyvää tulostuspalvelimen nimeä.
   - Kun napsautat kahdesti tulostuspalvelimen nimeä, näet palvelimeen kytkettyjen jaettujen kirjoittimien luettelon.
3. Napsauta LBP-660:lle annettua jaetun kirjoittimen nimeä.
   - Valitun kirjoittimen verkkopolku ilmestyy Kirjoitin-tekstiruutuun.

SUOMI

4. Napsauta OK-painiketta.

   - Järjestelmä lataa LBP-660-kirjoitinohjaimen ja Network Status Monitorin palvelimesta ja asentaa ne asiakastietokoneeseen.
   - Kun ohjelmisto on ladattu, Canon LBP-660 -kuvake ilmestyy Kirjoittimet-kansioon ja Windows Printing System -ryhmä Käynnistys-valikkoon. Työpöydälle tulee myös Network Status Monitorin (WpsC3Nsm.exe) pikakuvake.

5. Napsauta Ohjattu kirjoittimen asennus -valintaikkunan Valmis-painiketta.

Yhteys Microsoft Windows 95-, Microsoft Windows 3.1- tai Microsoft Työryhmä-Windows -asiakastietokoneesta

Jos haluat ottaa yhteyden LBP-660:een Microsoft Windows 95-, Microsoft Windows 3.1- tai Microsoft Työryhmä-Windows -asiakastietokoneesta Microsoft Windows NT -tulostuspalvelimen kautta, sinun pitää ensin asentaa asiakastietokoneeseen sen käyttöjärjestelmälle sopiva LBP-660 Microsoft Windows Printing System. Käyttöoppaassa on tietoja Microsoft Windows Printing Systemin asentamisesta Microsoft Windows 95:een, Microsoft Windows 3.1:een tai Microsoft Työryhmä-Windowsiin.

Luku 4
Microsoft Windows Printing Systemin käyttö

Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT:tä käytetään periaatteessa samalla tavoin kuin muille Microsoft Windows -käyttöjärjestelmille suunniteltuja Microsoft Windows Printing Systemeitä. Käyttöoppaan luvussa 3, ”Microsoft Windows Printing Systemin käyttö”, on Microsoft Windows Printing Systemin yleiskuvaus.

Microsoft Windows Printing Systemin valintaikkunat

Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT:ssä on kaksi päävalintaikkunaa: Kirjoittimen ominaisuudet ja Ominaisuudet: Oletusasiakirja. Kuka tahansa käyttäjä voi avata nämä valintaikkunat ja tarkastaa asetukset, mutta vain kaikki oikeudet omistavat käyttäjät voivat muuttaa asetuksia.

Kirjoittimen ominaisuudet

Kun haluat nähdä kirjoittimen ominaisuudet, valitse Kirjoittimet-kansion Tiedosto-valikosta Ominaisuudet tai napsauta Kirjoittimet-kansion LBP-660-kuvaketta hiiren oikealla painikkeella ja valitse ponnahdusvalikosta Ominaisuudet.

Kirjoittimen ominaisuudet -valintaikkunassa on kuusi seuraavassa kuvattavaa välilehteä. Koska kunkin välilehden asetukset ovat yhteiset kaikille Microsoft Windows NT -kirjoittimille, seuraavat kuvaukset antavat vain yleiskäsityksen välilehtien sisällöstä sekä seikoista, joihin pitää kiinnittää huomiota LBP-660:tä käytettäessä.

Asetusten tarkat selitykset ovat Microsoft Windows NT:n oppaissa. Voit myös napsauttaa valintaikkunan oikeassa yläkulmassa olevaa kysymysmerkkiä (?) ja sitten asetusta, jotta näet asetusta kuvaavan ohjeen.



SUOMI

■ Yleistä-välilehti

Tämän välilehden asetukset koskevat koko kirjoitinohjainta.

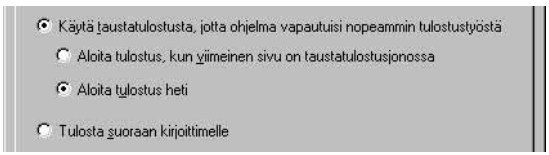
- LBP-660 ei tue erotinsivujen lisäämistä. Vaikka napsauttaisit Erotinsivu-valintanappia, erotinsivu ei tulostu.
- Älä muuta oletusasetuksia Tulostuksen käsittely -valintaikkunassa, joka avataan napsauttamalla Tulostuksen käsittely… -painiketta. Jos vaihdat oletusdatatyypin, et voi tulostaa asiakastietokoneista, joissa ei ole Microsoft Windows NT:tä.
- Jos haluat tulostaa testisivun, napsauta tämän välilehden Tulosta testisivu -painiketta. Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT:hen kuuluvassa LBP-660-tilaikkunassa ei ole kirjoittimen testauspainiketta.

■ Portit-välilehti

Valitse tästä välilehdestä portti, johon LBP-660 on kytketty.
Jos olet jo kytkenyt LBP-660:n ja käytät sitä, sinun ei tarvitse muuttaa tätä asetusta.

■ Ajoitus-välilehti

- Tässä välilehdessä voit määrittää tulostusajan, valita tulostuksen prioriteetteja ja valita taustatulostusmenetelmän.
- Valitse LBP-660:tä varten aina ”Käytä taustatulostusta, jotta ohjelma vapautuisi nopeammin tulostustyöstä” -asetus. Jos valitset ”Tulosta suoraan kirjoittimelle” -asetuksen, et voi tulostaa sovelluksista.


Käytä taustatulostusta, jotta ohjelma vapautuisi nopeammin tulostustyöstä
Aloita tulostus, kun viimeinen sivu on taustatulostusjonossa
Aloita tulostus heti
Tulosta suoraan kirjoittimelle

- Valitse ”Aloita tulostus, kun viimeinen sivu on taustatulostusjonossa” tai ”Aloita tulostus heti”. Huomaa, että tämä asetus vaikuttaa tilaikkunassa näkyvän tilanneilmaisimen toimintaan. Lisätietoja on kohdassa ”LBP-660-tilaikkuna”.

■ Jakaminen-välilehti

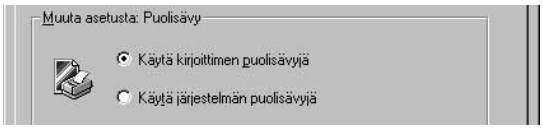
Tässä välilehdessä määritetään, onko LBP-660 jaettu kirjoitin. Lisätietoja on luvussa 2, ”Microsoft Windows Printing Systemin asentaminen”.

■ Suojaus-välilehti

Tässä välilehdessä on LBP-660:n suojausasetuksia.
Tietoja kirjoittimen suojaustoiminnoista on Microsoft Windows NT:n oppaissa.

■ Laitteen asetukset -välilehti

Tässä välilehdessä määritetään, miten puolisävyt käsitellään kuvia tulostettaessa. LBP-660 pystyy tulostamaan käyttäen joko omia puolisävyjään tai Microsoft Windows NT -järjestelmän puolisävyjä. Jos haluat valita käytettävät puolisävyt, napsauta Puolisävy-asetusta ja valitse haluamasi puolisävymenetelmä napsauttamalla ”Muuta asetusta: Puolisävy” -ryhmän valintanappia.



Jos valitset ”Käytä järjestelmän puolisävyjä”, voit muuttaa järjestelmän puolisävyasetuksia Laitteen väri- ja puolisävyominaisuudet -valintaikkunassa. Tietoja järjestelmän puolisävyjen muuttamisesta on käytönaikaisessa ohjeessa ja Microsoft Windows NT:n oppaissa.



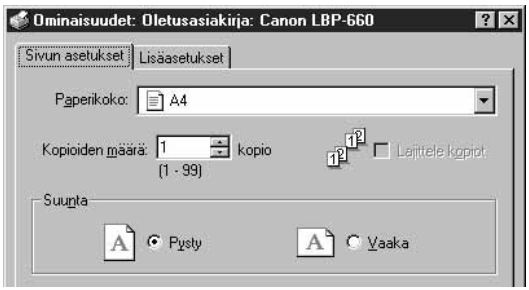
- Asiakirjan ominaisuuksiin kuuluvan puolisävyjen säätöasetuksen toiminta riippuu siitä, mikä puolisävyjen käsittelytapa valitaan tässä valintaikkunassa.

SUOMI

Ominaisuudet: Oletusasiakirja

Ominaisuudet: Oletusasiakirja -valintaikkunassa voit määrittää LBP-660:n tulostusasetusten oletusarvot. Kun haluat tarkistaa asiakirjan oletusominaisuudet, valitse Kirjoittimet-kansion Tiedosto-valikosta ”Asiakirjan oletukset…” tai napsauta Kirjoittimet-kansion LBP-660-kuvaketta hiiren oikealla painikkeella ja valitse ponnahdusvalikosta ”Asiakirjan oletukset…”.

Ominaisuudet: Oletusasiakirja -valintaikkunassa on usein tarvittava Sivun asetukset -välilehti ja tarkempia tulostusasetuksia sisältävä Lisäasetukset-välilehti. Jos tarvitset lisätietoja, napsauta valintaikkunan oikeassa yläkulmassa olevaa kysymysmerkkiä (?) ja sitten asetusta, jotta näet asetusta kuvaavan ohjeen.



- Voit avata vastaavan valintaikkunan ja määrittää asetukset myös valitsemalla sovelluksen Tiedosto-valikosta ”Tulosta” tai ”Sivun asetukset”. Huomaa kuitenkin, että sovelluksessa määritetyt asetukset koskevat ainoastaan juuri käsiteltävää asiakirjaa eivätkä vaikuta asiakirjojen oletuksiin.

■ Sivun asetukset -välilehti

Tämän välilehden asetuksilla valitaan esimerkiksi paperikoko, tulostussuunta ja kopioiden määrä.

Paperikoko
Valitse paperikoko avattavasta luetteloruudusta. Jos valitset mukautetun paperikoon, sinun pitää määrittää paperin mitat Lisäasetukset-välilehdessä.

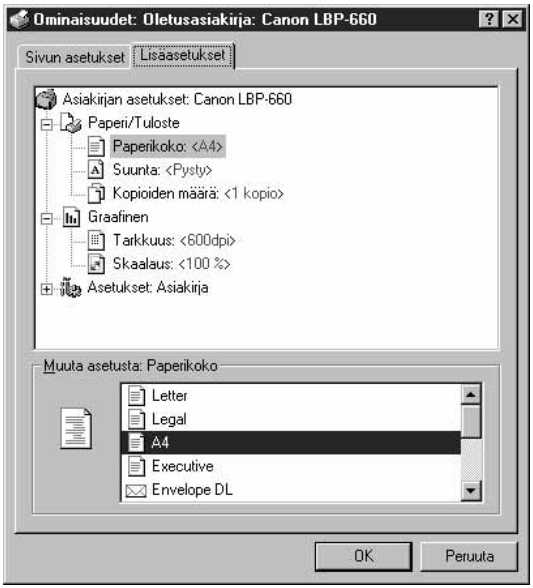
Kopioiden määrä
Kirjoita tulostettavien kopioiden määrä tähän tekstiruutuun.

Lajittele kopiot
Jos määritit tulostettavaksi kaksi kopiota tai enemmän, voit lajitella kopiot napsauttamalla tätä valintaruutua.

Suunta
Valitse valintanappeja napsauttamalla tulostussuunnaksi Pysty tai Vaaka.

■ Lisäasetukset-välilehti

Lisäasetukset-välilehden asetukset jakautuvat ryhmiin nimeltä Paperi/Tuloste, Graafinen ja Asetukset: Asiakirja. Kunkin ryhmän asetukset on lueteltu hierarkkisesti ryhmän nimen alapuolella. Kunkin asetuksen nykyinen arvo näkyy sinisellä kirjoitettuna asetuksen oikealla puolella. Jos asetukset eivät näy, napsauta ryhmän nimen vasemmalla puolella olevaa plusmerkkiä (+).



Jos napsautat muutettavan asetuksen nimeä, asetuksen mahdolliset arvot (tai painikkeet muiden valintaikkunoiden avaamista varten) ilmestyvät valintaikkunan alaosaan. Valitse tai kirjoita asetuksen uusi arvo. Uusi arvo näkyy punaisella kirjoitettuna asetuksen oikealla puolella. Punainen väri osoittaa, että uutta asetusta ei ole vielä tallennettu asiakirjan oletukseksi. Uudet asetukset tallentuvat asiakirjan oletuksiksi vasta painettuasi valintaikkunan alareunassa olevaa OK-painiketta.

Paperi/Tuloste-ryhmän asetukset
Paperi/Tuloste-ryhmässä on kolme asetusta: Paperikoko, Suunta ja Kopioiden määrä. Nämä asetukset ovat samat kuin edellä kuvatut Sivun asetukset -välilehden asetukset. Kun muutat niitä, Sivun asetukset -välilehdenkin asetukset muuttuvat.

SUOMI

Graafinen-ryhmän asetukset
Graafinen-ryhmässä on kaksi asetusta: Tarkkuus ja Skaalaus.

- Tarkkuus
  Valitse ”Muuta asetusta: Tarkkuus” -ryhmän valintanappeja napsauttamalla, millä tarkkuudella LBP-660:n pitää tulostaa.
- Skaalaus
  Kirjoita pienennys- tai suurennussuhde ”Muuta asetusta: Skaalaus” -ryhmän tekstiruutuun. Suhde voi olla 1 %:n välein 10 - 200 %.

Asetukset: Asiakirja -ryhmän asetukset
Asetukset: Asiakirja -ryhmässä on viisi asetusta: Halftone Color Adjustment, Automatic Image Refinement, Toner Saver, Toner Density ja Custom Paper Size.

- Halftone Color Adjustment
  Napsauta Halftone Color Adjustment -painiketta, jotta näyttöön tulee valintaikkuna kirjoittimen puolisävyjen säätämistä varten.



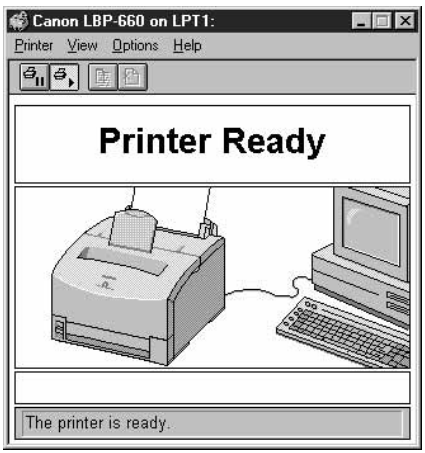
- Halftone Color Adjustment -valintaikkuna vaihtelee sen mukaan, mikä vaihtoehto on valittu kirjoittimen ominaisuuksien Laitteen asetukset -välilehdestä.
  - Jos ”Käytä kirjoittimen puolisävyjä” on valittu, LBP-660:n alkuperäinen valintaikkuna tulee esiin samanlaisena kuin valitessasi Ominaisuudet: Microsoft Windows 95 -valintaikkunan Graafinen-välilehden.
    Tässä valintaikkunassa voit valita puolisävyjen esitystavan (Smooth, Pattern 1 tai Pattern 2) ja säätää kirkkautta ja kontrastia. Lisätietoja on käyttöoppaan kohdassa ”Harmaasävykuvien käsittely”.
  - Jos ”Käytä järjestelmän puolisävyjä” on valittu, näet harmaasävykaavion ja Microsoft Windows NT:n valintaikkunan puolisävyjen säätämistä varten. Tietoja tämän valintaikkunan käyttämisestä on käytönaikaisessa ohjeessa ja Microsoft Windows NT:n oppaissa.

- Automatic Image Refinement
  Valitse tällä asetuksella, onko LBP-660:n tasoitustoiminto käytössä.
- Toner Saver
  Valitse tällä asetuksella, onko väriaineen säästö käytössä.
- Toner Density
  Valitse tällä asetuksella yksi viidestä tulostustummuustasosta. Medium tarkoittaa normaalia tummuutta.
- Custom Paper Size
  Määritä tällä asetuksella paperikoko, jos olet valinnut Sivun asetukset -välilehdestä mukautetun paperikoon. Napsauta Custom Paper Size -painiketta, jotta Custom Paper Size -valintaikkuna tulee esiin ja voit määrittää paperin pituuden ja leveyden.

LBP-660-tilaikkuna Microsoft Windows NT:ssä

Jos LBP-660 on kytketty Microsoft Windows NT:tä käyttävään tietokoneeseen paikalliskirjoittimeksi, sen tilaikkuna tulee esiin automaattisesti, kun tulostaminen alkaa tai kun käyttäjän toimenpide tarvitaan esimerkiksi virheen tapahduttua.

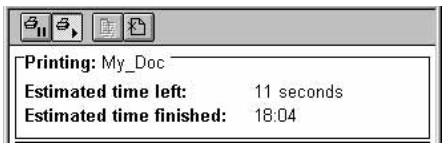
Voit avata LBP-660-tilaikkunan milloin tahansa napsauttamalla kahdesti Windows Printing System -ryhmässä olevaa LBP-660 Status Window -kuvaketta. Tilaikkunan avulla voit esim. seurata tulostustöiden edistymistä, keskeyttää tulostuksen tai jatkaa sitä.



Tämä tilaikkuna on suunnilleen samanlainen kuin Microsoft Windows Printing Systemin tilaikkuna, joka näkyy Microsoft Windows 95:ssä, Microsoft Windows 3.1:ssä ja Microsoft Työryhmä-Windowsissa. Lisätietoja tilaikkunasta on käyttöoppaassa.

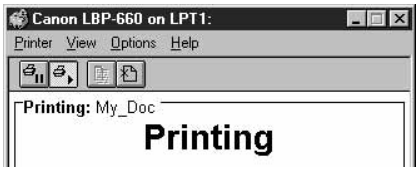
Tässä kuvauksessa käsitellään vain niitä tehtäviä ja toimintoja, joissa Microsoft Windows NT:lle tarkoitettu LBP-660-tilaikkuna eroaa muille Microsoft Windowsin versioille tarkoitetuista tilaikkunoista.

- Jos valitsit kirjoittimen ominaisuuksien Ajoitus-välilehdestä ”Aloita tulostus, kun viimeinen sivu on taustatulostusjonossa”, arvioitu jäljellä oleva aika ja arvioitu valmistumisaika näkyvät ilmoitusalueella asiakirjan tulostamisen aikana ja tilanneilmaisin osoittaa tulostettujen sivujen määrän ja tulostettavien sivujen kokonaismäärän.



SUOMI

- Jos valitsit ”Aloita tulostus heti”, ilmoitusalueella näkyy vain teksti ”Printing” ja tilanneilmaisin osoittaa tulostettujen sivujen määrän.



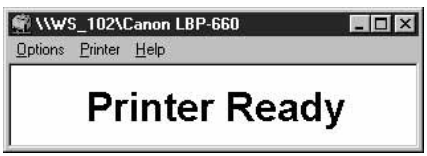
- Työkalurivillä ei ole kirjoittimen testauspainiketta.
  Jos haluat tulostaa testisivun, napsauta kirjoittimen ominaisuusikkunan Yleistä-välilehden Tulosta testisivu -painiketta.
- Options-valikossa ei ole Printer-komentoa. Jos haluat muuttaa tulostustummuutta, avaa Ominaisuudet: Oletusasiakirja -valintaikkuna ja käytä Lisäasetukset-välilehden Toner Density -asetusta.
- Options-valikon komennolla Client Operation valitaan, voiko käyttäjä keskeyttää, jatkaa, lopettaa tai pakottaa tulostamisen Microsoft Windows NT -asiakastietokoneen Network Status Monitorilla.
  Jos Client Operation -asetuksen vasemmalla puolella näkyy valintamerkki, kyseinen toimenpide on sallittua suorittaa Network Status Monitorilla.

LBP-660 Network Status Monitor

LBP-660 Network Status Monitor on ohjelma, jolla verkon kirjoittimeen kytketty Microsoft Windows NT -asiakastietokone pystyy tarkistamaan LBP-660:n tilan tai keskeyttää, jatkaa, lopettaa tai pakottaa tulostamisen samalla tavoin kuin työpöydän tilaikkunassa. Se toimii Microsoft Windows -asiakastietokoneissa, mutta ei Microsoft Windows 95:ssä, Microsoft Windows 3.1:ssä eikä Microsoft Työryhmä-Windowsissa.

LBP-660 Network Status Monitor näyttää kirjoittimen tilan vain tekstinä. Siinä ei ole samanlaista animoitua kuvaa eikä tilanneilmaisinta kuin LBP-660-tilaikkunassa.

Kun kytket Microsoft Windows NT -asiakkaan verkkokirjoittimeen, Network Status Monitor asennetaan automaattisesti tulostuspalvelimesta.



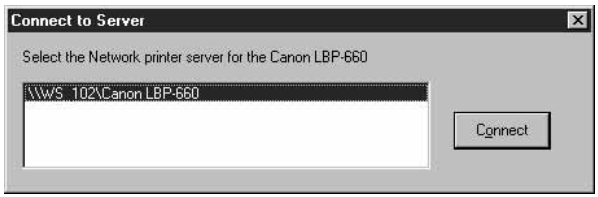
LBP-660 Network Status Monitorin käyttö

■ Network Status Monitorin käynnistäminen

Voit käynnistää LBP-660 Network Status Monitorin milloin tahansa seuraavalla tavalla:

1. Napsauta kahdesti Windows Printing System -ryhmässä olevaa Canon LBP-660 Network Status Monitor -kuvaketta tai työpöydällä olevaa Canon LBP-660 Network Status Monitor -pikakuvaketta.

2. Kun näyttöön tulee kysymys, haluatko avata yhteyden verkkokirjoittimeen, napsauta Kyllä-painiketta.
   - Näyttöön tulee valintaikkuna verkkokirjoittimen valitsemista varten.



3. Valitse luetteloruudusta kirjoitin, johon haluat avata yhteyden, ja napsauta Connect-painiketta.
   - Kun olet avannut yhteyden verkkokirjoittimeen, sen nykyinen tila näkyy tekstiruudussa.

■ Status Monitorin asetukset

LBP-660 Network Status Monitorin valikkorivillä on kolme valikkoa: Options, Printer ja Help.



Options-valikko
Options-valikon komennoilla määritetään Network Status Monitorin toimintaan vaikuttavia asetuksia.

- Connect to Server
  Valitse tämä komento, jos yhteys verkkokirjoittimeen on katkennut jostakin syystä tai jos haluat valita jonkin toisen verkkokirjoittimen (vain LBP-660). Näet saman Connect to Server -valintaikkunan kuin käynnistäessäsi Network Status Monitorin. Valitse haluamasi kirjoittimen nimi ja napsauta Connect-painiketta.
- Sound
  Valitse tällä komennolla, pitääkö ohjelman antaa kirjoittimen virheestä puhuttu sanoma.

SUOMI



- Network Status Monitor antaa puhuttuja sanomia vain virheen sattuessa. Ellei tietokoneessa ole äänikorttia, tämä komento on himmennetty eli sitä ei voi valita.

- Default Size
  Jos olet muuttanut Network Status Monitorin ikkunan kokoa, voit palauttaa ikkunan alkuperäiseen kokoonsa tällä komennolla.
- Hide Menu
  Tällä asetuksella piilotetaan Network Status Monitorin valikkorivi. Jos haluat palauttaa valikkorivin ennalleen, paina **Esc**, kun Network Status Monitor on aktiivinen ikkuna, tai napsauta kahdesti mitä tahansa ilmoitusalueen kohtaa.
- Always On Top
  Jos valitset tämän komennon niin, että sen vasemmalle puolelle ilmestyy valintamerkki, Network Status Monitor on aina työpöydän päällimmäinen ikkuna.

Printer-valikko
Printer-valikon komennoilla ohjataan kirjoittimen toimintaa. Huomaa, että ellei tulostuspalvelimen tilaikkunan Options-valikosta ole valittu komentoa Client Operation, Printer-valikko on himmennetty eli kirjoitinta ei voi ohjata asiakastietokoneesta.

Lisätietoja Printer-valikosta on käyttöoppaan kohdassa ”Kirjoitin-valikon käyttö”.



- Printer-valikon komennot vaikuttavat muista asiakastietokoneista tuleviin tulostustöihin. Kun palvelimen tulostusjonossa on useasta asiakastietokoneesta tulleita tulostustöitä, virheellinen tulostuksen lopetuskomento voi aiheuttaa muiden käyttäjien tulostustöiden häviämisen. Muista tämä, jos aiot lopettaa tulostustyön.

Help-valikko
Tästä valikosta avataan valintaikkuna, joka näyttää Network Status Monitorin versiotiedot.

Luku 5
Vianmääritys

Tässä luvussa kuvataan sellaisten ongelmien ratkaisemista, joita voi syntyä asennettaessa Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT tai käytettäessä LBP-660:tä Microsoft Windows NT -verkon kirjoittimena.

Katso LBP-660:n käyttöoppaan luvusta 6, ”Vianmääritys”, ohjeet, jotka koskevat kirjoittimesta johtuvia ongelmia (paperitukoksia ym.), tulostuslaadun puutteita sekä Microsoft Windows Printing Systemin ongelmia ja virheilmoituksia.

Jos et pysty löytämään ongelman syytä, käynnistä Windows Printing System -ryhmässä oleva Trouble Shooter -apuohjelma. Sillä voidaan ratkaista ongelmia, jotka johtuvat asetuksista tai asennetuista tiedostoista.

Ellet sittenkään pysty ratkaisemaan ongelmaa, poista Microsoft Windows Printing System tulostuspalvelimesta, käynnistä palvelin ja asenna Microsoft Windows Printing System uudelleen. Microsoft Windows Printing System poistetaan käynnistämällä Uninstallation-ohjelma, joka on Windows Printing System -ryhmässä.



- Käynnistä Microsoft Windows NT uudelleen aina poistettuasi jonkin ohjelman. Ellet käynnistä sitä uudelleen, et pysty asentamaan poistettua ohjelmaa takaisin.

SUOMI

Ongelmat Microsoft Windows Printing Systemiä asennettaessa

Ongelmat paikallisasennuksessa

Ongelma	Syy	Ratkaisu
Ohjattu kirjoittimen asennus -valintaikkunan Oma tietokone -valintanappia ei voi valita.	Ohjelmistoa asentavalla käyttäjällä ei ole pääkäyttäjän oikeuksia.	Microsoft Windows Printing Systemiä asennettaessa tarvitaan pääkäyttäjän oikeudet. Pyydä jotakuta pääkäyttäjän oikeudet omistavaa suorittamaan asennus.
Kun tiedostot on kopioitu, näyttöön tulee ilmoitus siitä, että pääkäyttäjän oikeudet vaaditaan.	Ohjelmiston on asentanut käyttäjä, jolla ei ole pääkäyttäjän oikeuksia.	Pyydä jotakuta pääkäyttäjän oikeudet omistavaa suorittamaan asennus uudelleen.
Näyttöön tulee ilmoitus siitä, että korvaava asennus vaaditaan.	Suoritat paikallisasennusta tietokoneeseen, johon on jo asennettu LBP-660-kirjoitinohjain verkon kautta.	Aloita asentaminen alusta ja valitse Ohjattu kirjoittimen asennus -valintaikkunassa Korvaa olemassa oleva ohjain.

Ongelmat verkkoasennuksessa

Ongelma	Syy	Ratkaisu
Kytkettävän jaetun kirjoittimen tai tulostuspalvelimen nimeä ei näy Jaetut kirjoittimet -luettelossa.	• Tulostuspalvelin ei ole käynnissä. • Kirjoitinta ei ole määritetty jaetuksi. • Sinulla ei ole oikeuksia, jotka tarvitaan otettaessa yhteys kirjoittimeen tai tulostuspalvelimeen.	• Käynnistä tulostuspalvelin. • Määritä kirjoitin jaetuksi Kirjoittimen ominaisuudet -valintaikkunassa. • Pyydä verkon pääkäyttäjää muuttamaan oikeuksiasi.

Ongelmat verkkotulostuksessa

Ongelma	Syy	Ratkaisu
Network Status Monitor ei saa yhteyttä tulostuspalvelimeen tai jaettuun kirjoittimeen.	• Tulostuspalvelin ei ole käynnissä. • Kirjoitinta ei ole määritetty jaetuksi. • Sinulla ei ole oikeuksia, jotka tarvitaan otettaessa yhteys kirjoittimeen tai tulostuspalvelimeen.	• Käynnistä tulostuspalvelin. • Määritä kirjoitin jaetuksi Kirjoittimen ominaisuudet -valintaikkunassa. • Pyydä verkon pääkäyttäjää muuttamaan oikeuksiasi.
Network Status Monitorin Printer-valikko ei toimi.	Tulostuspalvelimen tilaikkunan Options-valikosta ei ole valittu Client Operation -asetusta.	Valitse Options-valikosta Client Operation.
Tulostaminen Microsoft Windows NT -asiakastietokoneesta Microsoft Windows 95/3.1- tai Microsoft Työryhmä-Windows-palvelimen kautta ei onnistu.	Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT ei tue Microsoft Windows 95/3.1- eikä Microsoft Työryhmä-Windows-tulostuspalvelimia.	Käytä Microsoft Windows NT -tulostuspalvelinta.
Tulostaminen Microsoft Windows 95/3.1- tai Microsoft Työryhmä-Windows-asiakastietokoneesta ei onnistu.	• Tulostuspalvelimen WPS-hakemistoa ei ole jaettu. • Tulostuspalvelimen oletusdatatyyppi ei ole WPS.	• Muuta tulostuspalvelimen WPS-hakemisto jaetuksi. • Napsauta Kirjoittimen ominaisuudet -valintaikkunan Yleistä-välilehden Tulostuksen käsittely -painiketta ja valitse oletusdatatyypiksi WPS.

SUOMI

Muille Microsoft Windowsin versioille tarkoitettujen Microsoft Windows Printing Systemien vertailu

Eräät Microsoft Windows Printing System for Microsoft Windows NT 4.0:n toiminnot ovat erilaiset kuin Microsoft Printing Systemeissä, jotka on tarkoitettu Microsoft Windows 95:lle, Microsoft Windows 3.1:lle tai Microsoft Työryhmä-Windowsille.

Huomaa seuraavat seikat, kun luet LBP-660:n käyttöopasta.

Paikallis- tai verkkotulostus Microsoft Windows NT 4.0:sta ja verkkotulostus Microsoft Windows 95:stä, Microsoft Windows 3.1:stä tai Microsoft Työryhmä-Windowsista

- Koska PCL-emulointi ei toimi, et voi tulostaa komentokehotteesta (Microsoft Windows NT) tai MS-DOS-kehotteesta (Microsoft Windows 95).

Paikallis- tai verkkotulostus Microsoft Windows NT 4.0:sta

- Et voi käyttää lomakkeiden päällekkäistulostusta.
- Et voi tulostaa testisivua LBP-660-tilaikkunasta. Käytä Kirjoittimen ominaisuudet -valintaikkunan Yleistä-välilehden Tulosta testisivu -painiketta.
- LBP-660-tilaikkunan Options-valikossa ei ole Printer Options -komentoa. Säädä tulostustummuus Ominaisuudet: Oletusasiakirja -valintaikkunan Lisäasetukset-välilehden Asiakirjan asetukset -ryhmässä.

Canon

LBP-660 LASERSKRIVARE

Handbok för Microsoft® Windows® Printing System
för Microsoft® Windows NT®

VIKTIGT:
Läs igenom den här handboken noggrant innan du använder skrivaren. Spara handboken om du skulle behöva den senare.

SVENSKA

Copyright

Copyright © 1998 Canon Inc. Alla rättigheter förbehålles
Copyright © 1996 Microsoft Corporation. Alla rättigheter förbehålles

Meddelande

Canon Inc. utfäster inga garantier av något slag vad gäller detta material, uttryckligen eller underförstått, utöver vad som här anges, inklusive, men inte begränsat till, garantier vad gäller marknadsmässighet, säljbarhet, anpassning för ett visst syfte eller intrång i något patent. Canon Inc. kan inte hållas ansvariga för direkta skador, indirekta skador eller följdskador av något slag, eller förluster eller utgifter som beror på att detta material använts.
Detta dokument innehåller information om äganderätt som är skyddad av copyright. Alla rättigheter förbehålles. Ingen del av detta dokument får fotokopieras, reproduceras eller översättas till något annat språk utan skriftligt tillstånd från Canon Inc.
Användningen av detta dokument lyder under villkoren i det licensavtal (Microsoft® Windows® Printing System) som följde med skrivaren.
Informationen i detta dokument kan ändras när som helst.

Varumärken

LBP, Canon och Canons logotyp är varumärken som tillhör Canon Inc.
PCL är ett varumärke som tillhör Hewlett-Packard Company.
IBM är ett varumärke som tillhör International Business Machines Corporation.
Microsoft, Windows, Windows NT, Windows-logotypen och MS-DOS är antingen registrerade varumärken eller varumärken som tillhör Microsoft Corporation i USA och/eller andra länder.
NetWare® är ett registrerat varumärke och Novell är ett varumärke som tillhör Novell, Inc.
TrueType är ett varumärke som tillhör Apple Computer, Inc.
Lucida är ett varumärke som tillhör Bigelow & Homes.
Övriga märkes- och produktnamn är varumärken eller registrerade varumärken som tillhör respektive företag.
I den här handboken kallas Microsoft®, Microsoft® Windows® och Microsoft® Windows NT® för Microsoft, Microsoft Windows respektive Microsoft Windows NT.

Konventioner

I den här handboken används följande konventioner:



Ger råd eller förslag som hjälper dig att använda din skrivare på bästa sätt.



Anger att om du inte följer föreslagen procedur kan maskin- eller programvaran skadas.

Kapitel 1
Introduktion

Om handboken

Denna handbok för Microsoft® Windows® Printing System (kallas hädanefter Microsoft Windows Printing System) för Microsoft® Windows NT® (kallas hädanefter Microsoft Windows NT) beskriver hur man installerar och använder Microsoft Windows Printing System för Microsoft Windows NT på en dator som använder Microsoft Windows NT version 4.0 (för servrar eller arbetsstationer) och som är ansluten till en Canon LBP-660 laserskrivare.

Den här handboken innehåller följande kapitel:

Kapitel 1 Introduktion 1

Det här kapitlet beskriver hur du använder den här handboken och vilka systemkrav som gäller för att installera Microsoft Windows Printing System på en PC som använder Microsoft Windows NT.

Kapitel 2 Installera Microsoft Windows Printing System 3

Det här kapitlet beskriver hur man installerar Microsoft Windows Printing System för Microsoft Windows NT med LBP-660 som en lokal skrivare, och hur man delar en LBP-660 i ett Microsoft Windows NT-nätverk.

Kapitel 3 Ansluta till LBP-660 som en nätverksskrivare 10

Det här kapitlet beskriver hur man använder LBP-660 från andra datorer som använder Microsoft Windows NT, och från datorer som använder Microsoft® Windows® (kallas hädanefter Microsoft Windows) 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 eller Microsoft Windows för Workgroups.

Kapitel 4 Använda Microsoft Windows Printing System 13

Det här kapitlet beskriver hur man använder Network Status Monitor, Canon LBP-660 Status Window och egenskapsdialogrutorna i Microsoft Windows Printing System för Microsoft Windows NT.

Kapitel 5 Felsökning 23

Det här kapitlet beskriver hur man löser problem som uppstår under installation av Microsoft Windows Printing System eller vid användning av Microsoft Windows Printing System i ett Microsoft Windows NT-nätverk.

Bilaga 26

Det här avsnittet i bilagan visar vilka punkter i beskrivningarna i användarhandboken för LBP-660 där Microsoft Windows Printing System för Microsoft Windows NT skiljer sig från Microsoft Windows Printing System för Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 och Microsoft Windows för Workgroups.

Innan du installerar den här programvaran

Innan du installerar Microsoft Windows Printing System på en PC som använder Microsoft Windows NT, måste du kontrollera att datorn uppfyller de maskinvaru- och systemkrav som räknas upp nedan.

- IBM-PC eller kompatibel dator med en Pentium 90 MHz CPU eller bättre, och med Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 (för servrar eller arbetsstationer) installerat.



- Microsoft Windows Printing System för LBP-660 som beskrivs i den här handboken kan köras i Microsoft Windows NT version 4.0 för PC/AT-kompatibla datorer. Detta Microsoft Windows Printing System kan inte användas i system som använder Microsoft Windows NT version 3.51 eller tidigare, eller Microsoft Windows NT för en RISC-baserad processor.
- Använder du ett Novell NetWare®-nätverk, går det inte att installera denna programvara på en NetWare®-server. Det går inte att använda denna programvara till att skriva ut från Novell Netware®-klienter för Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 eller Microsoft Windows för Workgroups.

- Minst 24 MB RAM
- Minst 10 MB ledigt utrymme på hårddisken
- CD-ROM-enhet
- Standard Centronics parallell skrivarport (om LBP är ansluten som en lokal skrivare)
- Nätverkskort (om LBP delas i ett nätverk)

Det kan visserligen gå att installera Microsoft Windows Printing System på datorer som inte uppfyller ovanstående krav, men då kan Canon inte garantera att programvaran fungerar korrekt. För optimala prestanda från LBP-660 rekommenderas följande maskinvara och systemprogramvara:

- Pentium 166 MHz CPU eller bättre
- Minst 48 MB RAM
- ECP-skrivarport
- Ljudkort (krävs för ljudmeddelanden i Microsoft Windows Printing System)

Vill du dela LBP-660 i ett nätverk måste något av följande nätverksprotokoll vara installerade:

- NetBEUI
- TCP/IP
- NWLink IPX/SPX



- Du måste ha administratörsbehörighet för att kunna installera Microsoft Windows Printing System för Microsoft Windows NT. Installationen måste utföras av en nätverksadministratör eller skrivaransvarig med administratörsbehörighet.

Kapitel 2
Installera Microsoft Windows Printing System

Du installerar Microsoft Windows Printing System för Microsoft Windows NT med hjälp av den medföljande installationsdisken.

Installera Microsoft Windows Printing System för lokala skrivare

Det här avsnittet beskriver hur man installerar Microsoft Windows Printing System för att använda LBP-660 som en lokal skrivare. En beskrivning av hur man ansluter LBP-660 som nätverksskrivare hittar du i kapitel 3, ”Ansluta till LBP-660 som en nätverksskrivare”.

Starta guiden Lägg till skrivare

Använd guiden Lägg till skrivare i Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 för att installera Microsoft Windows Printing System i Microsoft Windows NT. Så här installerar du programvaran.

1. Slå på den dator LBP-660 är ansluten till och starta Microsoft Windows NT 4.0.

2. Logga på som administratör.

3. Starta guiden Lägg till skrivare på något av följande sätt:

   a. Klicka på Start i aktivitetsfältet och peka på Inställningar i menyn Start. I undermenyn som visas klickar du på Skrivare så att mappen Skrivare visas, och sedan dubbelklickar du på ikonen Lägg till skrivare.

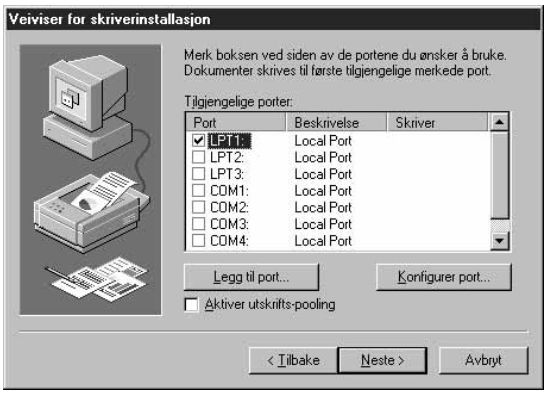
   b. Dubbelklicka på ikonen Den här datorn på skrivbordet. Öppna sedan mappen Skrivare och dubbelklicka på ikonen Lägg till skrivare.

- Dialogrutan för guiden Lägg till skrivare visas, där du kan installera skrivardrivrutiner.


Veiviser for skriverinstallasjon
Veiviseren hjelper deg til å installere skriveren eller å gjøre skrivertilkoblinger. Denne skriveren skal administreres av:
Min datamaskin
Alle innstillinger blir administrert og konfigurert på denne maskinen.
Skriverserver for nettverket
Koble til en skriver fra en annen maskin. Alle innstillingene for denne skriveren blir styrt av en skriverserver som er satt opp av en administrator.
< Tilbake
Neste >
Avbryt

4. Kontrollera att alternativknappen Den här datorn är vald och klicka på Nästa >.
   - En lista där du kan välja anslutningsport visas.

Välja skrivarport



1. Kryssa för rutan bredvid den port LBP-660 är ansluten till (normalt LPT1:) och klicka sedan på Nästa >.



- Det går bara att ansluta LBP-660 till en LPT-port (parallell port). Det går inte att skriva ut på LBP-660 om du väljer en seriell port eller någon annan port än den LBP-660 är ansluten till.

   - En lista visas med skrivartillverkare och skrivarmodeller som understöds av Microsoft Windows NT som standard.

2. Eftersom LBP-660 inte finns med i listan, sätter du in CD-ROM-skivan med Microsoft Windows Printing System för Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 i CD-ROM-enheten, och klickar sedan på knappen Diskett finns…

3. När dialogrutan Installera från diskett visas skriver du in enhetsbokstaven för CD-ROM-enheten i fältet ”Kopiera tillverkarens filer från”, och klickar sedan på Bläddra…

4. Dubbelklicka på mappen Winnt40 i dialogrutan Ange plats.
   - Mapparna för de olika språken visas i dialogrutan Ange plats.



5. Dubbelklicka på mappen för den språkversion av Microsoft Windows NT du använder.
   - När Wpsc3nt visas i dialogrutan Ange plats klickar du på Öppna.

- Om det inte finns någon mapp för det språk du använder, väljer du den engelska mappen.

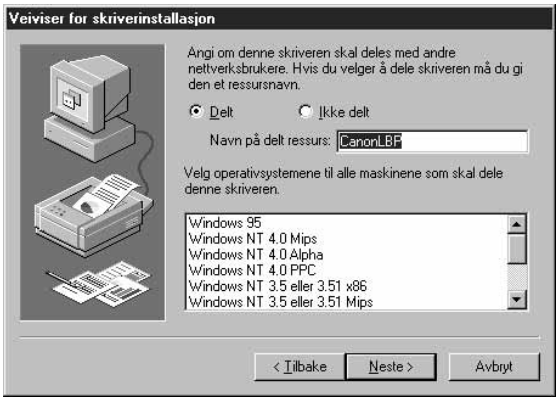
6. Klicka på OK i dialogrutan Installera från diskett.

7. När ”Canon LBP-660” visas i listan över skrivare i guiden Lägg till skrivare, klickar du på Nästa >.
   - Ett fönster visas där du kan namnge skrivaren, med ”Canon LBP-660” redan valt. Vill du ändra skrivarens namn, skriver du in ett nytt namn enligt instruktionerna på skärmen.

8. Klicka på Nästa >.
   - Nu visas fönstret för skrivardelning.

Ställa in delning av skrivare

Det här avsnittet beskriver hur man anger om LBP-660 ska delas i ett nätverk eller ej. Du kan även ange inställningar för delning av skrivaren efter att du installerat Microsoft Windows Printing System. Se avsnittet ”Dela skrivaren” för mer information.


Veiviser for skriverinstallasjon
Angi om denne skriveren skal deles med andre nettverksbrukere. Hvis du velger å dele skriveren må du gi den et ressursnavn.
Delt
Ikke delt
Navn på delt ressurs:
CanonLBP
Velg operativsystemene til alle maskinene som skal dele denne skriveren.
Windows 95
Windows NT 4.0 Mips
Windows NT 4.0 Alpha
Windows NT 4.0 PPC
Windows NT 3.5 eller 3.51 x86
Windows NT 3.5 eller 3.51 Mips
< Tilbake
Neste >
Avbryt

1. Vill du dela LBP-660 i ett nätverk, klickar du på alternativknappen Delad.

2. Klicka på Nästa >.

   - Ett fönster visas med en fråga om du vill skriva ut en testsida.

Ställa in utskrift av testsida

När du har installerat Microsoft Windows Printing System klart, kan du skriva ut en testsida på LBP-660.

1. Vill du skriva ut en testsida klickar du på knappen Slutför, så skrivs en testsida ut automatiskt. Vill du inte skriva ut någon testsida klickar du på Nej, och klickar sedan på knappen Slutför.

När du klickar på Slutför kopieras de filer som krävs från installationsdisken till hårddisken. Under kopieringen visas en meddelanderuta med en stapel som visar hur processen fortgår.

När kopieringen är klar visas en ikon för Canon LBP-660 i mappen Skrivare. Utseendet på ikonen varierar beroende på om skrivaren är delad eller ej.

Sedan visas meddelandet ”Initializing… Please wait!” medan Microsoft Windows Printing System startar initieringen. Under initieringen skapas en programgrupp för Microsoft Windows Printing System som läggs till i menyn Start. Ett fönster för Windows Printing System visas också på skrivbordet tillsammans med en genvägsikon till gruppen Microsoft Windows Printing System (se nästa sida).

Vill du ansluta till LBP-660 och skriva ut från en klient i Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 eller Microsoft Windows för Workgroups som är ansluten till Microsoft Windows NT-nätverket, klickar du på Ja när nästa dialogruta visas.

Vill du inte dela LBP-660, eller om alla klienter är Microsoft Windows NT-datorer, klickar du på Nej.


Microsoft Windows Printing System Installation
Do you want to share the WPS directory for allowing Windows95/Windows3.1 clients to print?
Ja
Nej

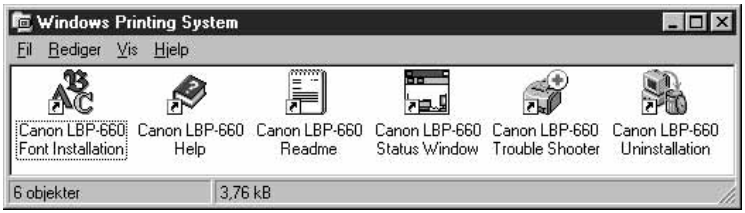
Avsluta installationen

När installationen av Microsoft Windows Printing System är klar, visas ett bekräftelsemeddelande. Klicka på OK, så slutförs installationen.

Om du valde att skriva ut en testsida under drivrutinsinstallationen, börjar denna nu att skrivas ut. Om hela installationen slutfördes utan missöden visas Canon LBP-660 Status Window på skrivbordet och testsidan skrivs ut. Kontrollera testsidan och stäng dialogrutan genom att klicka på Ja.

När installationen av Microsoft Windows Printing System är klar, kan du genast börja skriva ut på den Microsoft Windows NT-dator LBP-660 installerats på som lokal skrivare. Om du däremot vill använda denna dator som utskriftsserver och skriva ut från en klient via nätverket, måste du först starta om Microsoft Windows NT.

Gruppen Windows Printing System som skapades under installationen av Microsoft Windows Printing System innehåller de sex ikoner som visas nedan.



Canon LBP-660 Font Installation
Detta är ett tillbehör som installerar TrueType-teckensnitten (22 Lucida TrueType-teckensnitt) på diskett 3 av Microsoft Windows 95/3.1 installationsdisketter i Microsoft Windows NT. Vill du installera TrueType-teckensnitt dubbelklickar du på ikonen Canon LBP-660 Font Installation. Följ sedan de instruktioner som visas på skärmen.

- De installerade TrueType-teckensnitten tas inte bort ens om du avinstallerar Microsoft Windows Printing System.

Canon LBP-660 Help
Denna ikon visar hjälpen för Microsoft Windows Printing System.

Canon LBP-660 Readme
Detta är en textfil med ytterligare information om den installerade versionen av Microsoft Windows Printing System. Läs den här filen innan du använder Microsoft Windows Printing System.

Canon LBP-660 Status Window
Denna ikon öppnar Canon LBP-660 Status Window.

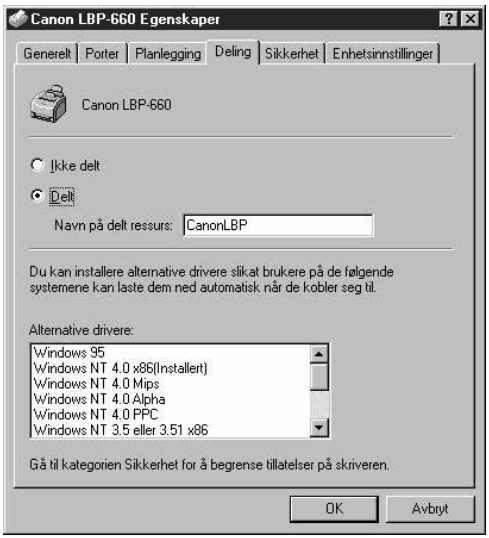
Canon LBP-660 Trouble Shooter
Detta är ett tillbehör som hjälper dig att lösa problem med Microsoft Windows Printing System. Se kapitlet ”Felsökning” i användarhandboken för information om hur man använder det här tillbehöret.

Canon LBP-660 Uninstallation
Detta är ett tillbehör som avinstallerar Microsoft Windows Printing System. Se kapitlet ”Felsökning” i användarhandboken för information om hur man använder det här tillbehöret.

Dela skrivaren

När du har installerat Microsoft Windows Printing System kan du ange LBP-660 som delad skrivare i dialogrutan Canon LBP-660 Egenskaper.

1. Så här visar du fliken Dela ut i dialogrutan Canon LBP-660 Egenskaper.
   - Öppna mappen Skrivare, högerklicka på ikonen för LBP-660 och välj Delning… i menyn som visas.



2. Klicka på alternativknappen Delad.

- När du klickar på Delad visas de första åtta tecknen av det skrivarnamn du valde när du installerade drivrutinen i fältet Delad som, utan mellanslag. Du kan ändra detta namn genom att skriva in ett nytt namn i fältet.
  Om klienterna som ska dela skrivaren i nätverket innefattar några datorer som använder Microsoft Windows 3.1 eller Microsoft Windows för Workgroups, får namnet inte vara längre än åtta tecken.

- Anger du skrivare som delad skrivare ska du inte välja operativsystem i listan Alternativa drivrutiner längst ner i dialogrutan. Drivrutinen för LBP-660 kan inte installeras i andra system än Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 (x86).

3. Klicka på OK.
   - LBP-660 är nu definierad som delad skrivare och ikonen i mappen Skrivare ändras till ikonen för en delad skrivare.

Kapitel 3
Ansluta till LBP-660 som en nätverksskrivare

Om du anger LBP-660 som en delad skrivare på den Microsoft Windows NT-dator skrivaren är ansluten till, och sedan anger den datorn som utskriftsserver, kan skrivaren sedan användas inte bara av Microsoft Windows NT-klienter, utan även av klienter som använder Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 och Microsoft Windows för Workgroups och som är anslutna till Microsoft Windows NT-nätverket.

- Vill du använda den Microsoft Windows NT-dator som LBP-660 är ansluten till som utskriftsserver måste du först starta tjänsten Server på den datorn. Starta tjänsten Server innan du ansluter till nätverksskrivaren.
- Vill du ansluta till en Microsoft Windows NT-utskriftsserver från en klientdator och skriva ut ett dokument måste klienten ha behörighet att ansluta till servern och den delade skrivaren. Om du inte är säker på vilken behörighet du har, hör du efter med den nätverksansvarige.

Ansluta från en Microsoft Windows NT-klient

Om klienten som använder LBP-660 som nätverksskrivare använder Microsoft Windows NT, räcker det med att lägga till skrivaren, så läses skrivardrivrutinen och Network Status Monitor automatiskt ner och installeras från utskriftsservern. Det behövs ingen administratörsbehörighet för att lägga till skrivaren. Normalt kan vem som helst göra detta.

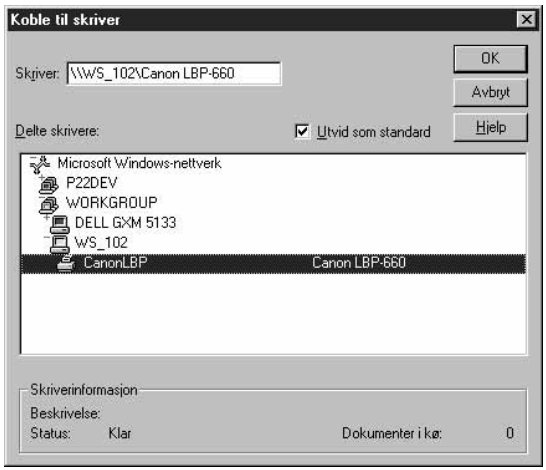
Starta guiden Lägg till skrivare

1. Slå på klientdatorn, starta Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 och logga in.
2. Starta guiden Lägg till skrivare
   - Se kapitel 2, ”Installera Microsoft Windows Printing System” för information om hur man startar guiden Lägg till skrivare.

Välja nätverksskrivare


Veiviser for skriverinstallasjon
Veiviseren hjelper deg til å installere skriveren eller å gjøre skrivertilkoblinger. Denne skriveren skal administreres av:
Min datamaskin
Alle innstillinger blir administrert og konfigurert på denne maskinen.
Skriverserver for nettverket
Koble til en skriver fra en annen maskin. Alle innstillingene for denne skriveren blir styrt av en skriverserver som er satt opp av en administrator.
< Tilbake
Neste >
Avbryt

1. Klicka på alternativknappen Utskriftsserver och sedan på Nästa >. Dialogrutan Anslut till skrivare visas.



2. Dubbelklicka på utskriftsserverns namn i listan Delade skrivare.
   - Genom att dubbelklicka på utskriftsserverns namn visas en lista över de delade skrivare som är anslutna till utskriftsservern.
3. Klicka på namnet för den delade skrivare du vill ansluta till.
   - Den valda skrivarens nätverkssökväg visas i fältet Skrivare.

4. Klicka på OK.
   - Skrivardrivrutinen för LBP-660 och Network Status Monitor läses ner från servern och installeras på klienten.
   - När programvaran lästs ner visas en ikon för Canon LBP-660 i mappen Skrivare, och gruppen Windows Printing System registreras i menyn Start. En genväg till Network Status Monitor (WpsC3Nsm.exe) skapas också på skrivbordet.
5. Klicka på Slutför i guiden Lägg till skrivare.

Ansluta från en klient som använder Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 eller Microsoft Windows för Workgroups

Vill du ansluta till LBP-660 från en klient som använder Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 eller Microsoft Windows för Workgroups via en Microsoft Windows NT-utskriftsserver, måste LBP-660 Microsoft Windows Printing System för respektive operativsystem först installeras på klienten. Information om hur man installerar Microsoft Windows Printing System på en klient som använder Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 eller Microsoft Windows för Workgroups hittar du i användarhandboken.

Kapitel 4
Använda Microsoft Windows Printing System

Microsoft Windows Printing System för Microsoft Windows NT används i stort på samma sätt som Microsoft Windows Printing System för övriga versioner av Microsoft Windows. Se kapitel 3, ”Använda Microsoft Windows Printing System” i användarhandboken för en översikt över Microsoft Windows Printing System.

Dialogrutorna i Microsoft Windows Printing System

Microsoft Windows Printing System för Microsoft Windows NT har två huvuddialogrutor: dialogrutan Egenskaper och dialogrutan Egenskaper för standarddokument. Vilken användare som helst kan öppna dessa dialogrutor och kontrollera inställningarna, men det är bara användare med fullständig skrivarbehörighet som kan ändra dem.

Skrivaregenskaper

Vill du se skrivaregenskaperna väljer du Egenskaper i menyn Arkiv i mappen Skrivare, eller högerklickar på ikonen för LBP-660 i mappen Skrivare och väljer Egenskaper i menyn som visas.

Dialogrutan Egenskaper innehåller de sex flikar som beskrivs nedan. Eftersom inställningarna på varje flik är gemensamma för alla Microsoft Windows NT-skrivare, är de beskrivningar som ges här bara allmänna översikter över flikarna, tillsammans med särskilda saker att tänka på om du använder en LBP-660.

Detaljerad information om de olika inställningarna hittar du i handböckerna för Microsoft Windows NT. Du kan även klicka på frågetecknet (?) i dialogrutans övre högra hörn och sedan klicka på det du vill ha hjälp med, så visas en förklarande text.



SVENSKA

■ Fliken Allmänt

De inställningar som görs här gäller hela skrivardrivrutinen.

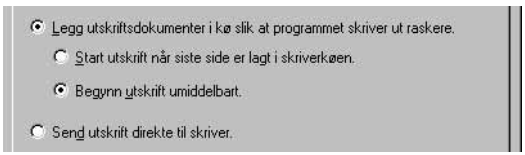
- LBP-660 kan inte skriva ut delningssidor. Även om du klickar på Delningssida, skrivs ingen delningssida ut.
- Ändra inte standardinställningarna i dialogrutan Skrivarprocessor som visas om du klickar på knappen Utskriftsprocessor… Ändrar du Standarddatatyp går det inte att skriva ut från klienter som inte använder Microsoft Windows NT.
- Vill du skriva ut en testsida klickar du på knappen Skriv ut testsida på den här fliken. I Microsoft Windows Printing System för Microsoft Windows NT innehåller LBP-660 Status Window inte knappen Testa skrivare.

■ Fliken Portar

På den här fliken anger du till vilken port LBP-660 är ansluten till.
Om du redan har anslutit till skrivaren och använder den, behöver du inte ändra den här inställningen.

■ Fliken Schemaläggning

- På den här fliken kan du ange en bestämd tidpunkt för utskrift, ange utskriftsprioritet och ange hur överföringen ska ske.
- För en LBP-660 ska du alltid välja ”Överför utskriftsdokument så programmet avslutar utskriften snabbare”. Väljer du ”Skriv ut direkt till skrivaren” går det inte att skriva ut från program.


Legg utskriftsdokumenter i kø slik at programmet skriver ut raskere.
Start utskrift når siste side er lagt i skriverkøen.
Begynn utskrift umiddelbart.
Send utskrift direkte til skriver.

- Välj ”Starta utskriften när sista sidan har överförts” eller ”Starta utskriften när första sidan har överförts”. Observera dock att detta val påverkar funktionen för stapeln som visar fortskridande i statusfönstret. Se avsnittet ”LBP-660 Status Window” för mer information.

■ Fliken Dela ut

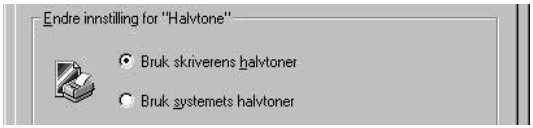
På den här fliken kan du ange om skrivaren ska delas. Se kapitel 2 ”Installera Microsoft Windows Printing System” för mer information.

■ Fliken Säkerhet

På den här fliken anger du säkerhetsinställningar för LBP-660.
Se handböckerna för Microsoft Windows NT för information om skrivarsäkerhet.

■ Fliken Enhetsinställningar

På den här fliken kan du ange hur halvtoner ska hanteras vid utskrift av grafik.
LBP-660 kan skriva ut antingen med skrivarens egna halvtoner, eller med halvtonerna från Microsoft Windows NT-systemet. Vill du välja halvtoner klickar du på Halvtoner och väljer sedan alternativ under ”Ändra inställningar för Halvton”.



Väljer du ”Används systemets halvtoner” kan du ändra systemets halvtonsinställningar i dialogrutan Egenskaper för färg/färgskala. Information om hur man ändrar systemets halvtoner hittar du i hjälpen eller handböckerna för Microsoft Windows NT.

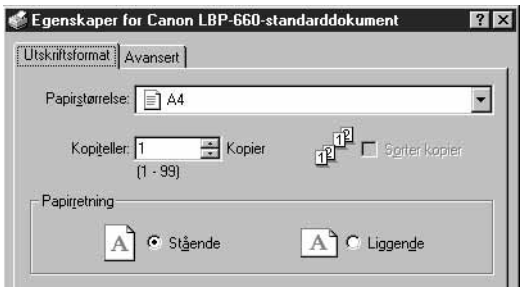


- Funktionen för inställningen Halvtonsfärgjustering i dokumentegenskaperna ändras beroende på inställningarna du gör här.

Egenskaper för standarddokument

I dialogrutan Egenskaper för Canon LBP-660 Standarddokument kan du ange standardinställningar för de utskriftsalternativ som är tillgängliga vid utskrift på LBP-660. Vill du se standarddokumentegenskaperna väljer du ”Dokumentstandard…” i menyn Arkiv i mappen Skrivare, eller högerklickar på ikonen för LBP-660 i mappen Skrivare och väljer ”Dokumentstandard…” i menyn som visas.

Dialogrutan Egenskaper för Canon LBP-660 Standarddokument innehåller den ofta använda fliken Utskriftsformat och fliken Avancerat för mer detaljerade utskriftsinställningar. Information om dessa inställningar får du om du klickar på frågetecknet (?) i dialogrutans övre högra hörn och sedan klickar på det du vill ha hjälp med, så visas en förklarande text.



- Du kan även öppna en motsvarande dialogruta och ange inställningar genom att välja ”Skriv ut” eller ”Utskriftsformat” i menyn Arkiv i ett program. Observera dock att inställningar som gjorts från ett program bara gäller det dokument du arbetar med i det programmet, och inte ändrar standardinställningarna.

■ Fliken Utskriftsformat

På den här fliken kan du ange parametrar som pappersformat, orientering och antal kopior.

Pappersformat
Välj pappersformat i listan. Väljer du Annat som pappersformat, måste du ange pappersformatet på fliken Avancerat.

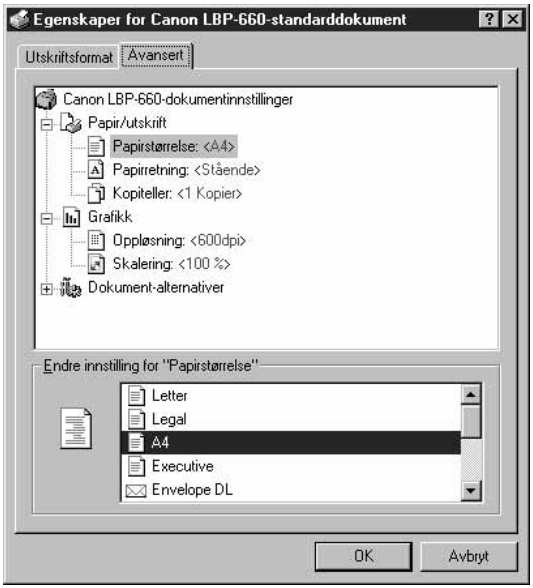
Antal kopior
Ange hur många kopior du vill skriva ut i fältet Antal kopior.

Sortera exemplaren
Har du angett två eller flera kopior i Antal kopior, kryssar du för rutan Sortera exemplaren om du vill att kopiorna ska skrivas ut sorterade.

Orientering
Ange utskriftsorientering med alternativknapparna (Stående eller Liggande).

■ Fliken Avancerat

Inställningarna på fliken Avancerat är grupperade under Papper/utmatning, Grafik och Dokument Alternativ. Alternativen i varje grupp räknas upp hierarkiskt under gruppnamnet. Den aktuella inställningen för varje alternativ visas i blått till höger om alternativet. Om alternativen inte visas klickar du på plustecknet (+) till vänster om gruppnamnet.



När du klickar på namnet för det alternativ du vill ändra visas tillgängliga inställningar för alternativet (eller knappar som öppnar andra dialogrutor) längst ner i dialogrutan. Välj eller skriv in en ny inställning. Den nya inställningen visas i rött till höger om alternativet. Den röda färgen betyder att den nya inställningen ännu inte sparats som dokumentstandard. Nya inställningar sparas inte som dokumentstandard förrän du klickar på OK längst ner i dialogrutan.

Papper/utmatning
Gruppen Papper/utmatning består av tre alternativ: Pappersformat, Orientering och Antal kopior. Dessa alternativ är desamma som på fliken Utskriftsformat, som beskrivits ovan. Ändrar du dessa inställningar här, ändras även inställningarna på fliken Utskriftsformat.

Grafik
Gruppen Grafik består av två alternativ: Upplösning och Skalning.

- Upplösning
  Med alternativknapparna under ”Ändra inställning för Upplösning” anger du med vilken upplösning LBP-660 ska skriva ut.
- Skalning
  Ange förstoring eller förminskning i fältet ”Ändra inställning för Skalning”. Du kan ange ett värde mellan 10% och 200% i steg om 1%.

Inställningar för gruppen Dokument Alternativ
Gruppen Dokument Alternativ består av fem alternativ: Halftone Color Adjustment, Automatic Image Refinement, Toner Saver, Toner Density och Custom Paper Size.

- Halvtonsfärgjustering
  Klicka på knappen Halvtonsfärgjustering, så visas dialogrutan Halftone Color Adjustment där du kan justera skrivarens halvtoner.



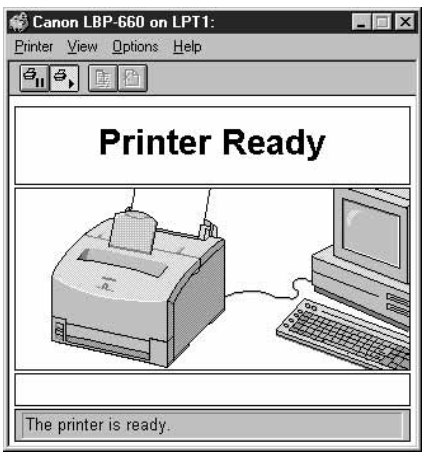
- Dialogrutans utseende beror på inställningarna på fliken Enhetsinställningar i skrivaregenskaperna.
  - Om ”Använd skrivarens halvtoner” är valt, visas den vanliga dialogrutan för LBP-660 på samma sätt som om du valt fliken Grafik i dialogrutan Egenskaper för Microsoft Windows 95.
    I den här dialogrutan kan du ange halvtonsåtergivning (Smooth, Pattern 1 eller Pattern 2) och justera Brightness och Contrast. Mer information hittar du i avsnittet ”Arbeta med gråskalegrafik” i användarhandboken.
  - Om ”Använd systemets halvtoner” är valt, visas ett gråskalediagram och dialogrutan Inställning av färgskala från Microsoft Windows NT-systemet. Information om hur man använder den här dialogrutan hittar du i hjälpen eller handböckerna för Microsoft Windows NT.

- Automatic Image Refinement
  Med det här alternativet anger du om funktionen Smoothing för LBP-660 är aktiv eller ej.
- Toner Saver
  Med det här alternativet anger du om tonersparläget är aktivt eller ej.
- Toner Density
  Med det här alternativet kan du välja hur mycket toner som ska användas vid utskrift i fem olika nivåer. Medium är standardvärdet.
- Custom Paper Size
  Med det här alternativet anger du pappersformat om du har valt Custom på fliken Utskriftsformat. Klicka på knappen Custom Paper Size, så visas dialogrutan Custom Paper Size där du kan ange papperets höjd och bredd.

Microsoft Windows NT LBP-660 Status Window

Om LBP-660 är ansluten till en Microsoft Windows NT-dator som lokal skrivare, visas LBP-660 Status Window automatiskt när utskriften startar eller om någon åtgärd från användaren krävs, t.ex. om ett fel uppstår.

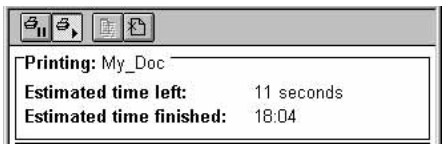
Du kan även visa LBP-660 Status Window när som helst genom att dubbelklicka på ikonen för Canon LBP-660 Status Window i gruppen Windows Printing System. Sedan kan du använda Status Window till att övervaka utskriftsjobben, göra en paus i utskriften, fortsätta utskriften, o.s.v.



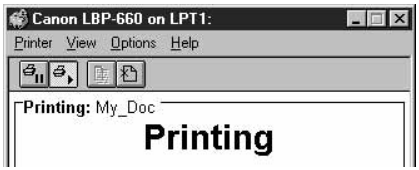
Detta fönster är i stort detsamma som det statusfönster för Microsoft Windows Printing System som visas i Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 och Microsoft Windows för Workgroups. Se användarhandboken för mer information om hur man använder Status Window.

Den här beskrivningen tar bara upp de användningsområden och funktioner där LBP-660 Status Window för Microsoft Windows NT skiljer sig från statusfönstren i andra versioner av Microsoft Windows.

- Valde du ”Starta utskriften när sista sidan har överförts” på fliken Schemaläggning i dialogrutan Egenskaper, visas uppskattad kvarvarande tid och uppskattat klockslag när utskriftsjobbet är klart i meddelandefältet under utskriften, och statusstapeln visar antal utskrivna sidor och totalt antal sidor som ska skrivas ut.



- Valde du ”Starta utskriften när första sidan har överförts”, visas bara meddelandet ”Printing” i meddelandefältet, och statusstapeln visar bara antal sidor som skrivits ut.



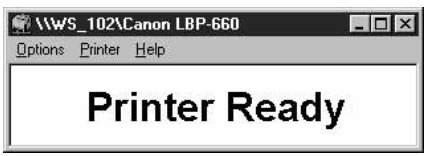
- Det finns ingen knapp för skrivartest i verktygsfältet.
  Vill du skriva ut en testsida klickar du på knappen Skriv ut testsida på fliken Allmänt i dialogrutan Egenskaper.
- Det finns inget alternativ för skrivare i menyn Options. Vill du ändra tonerdensiteten öppnar du dialogrutan Egenskaper för standarddokument och väljer Toner Density på fliken Avancerat.
- Med alternativet Client Operation i menyn Options kan du ange om en användare ska kunna göra en paus i utskriften, fortsätta utskriften, tvinga utskrift eller avbryta utskrift från Network Status Monitor på en Microsoft Windows NT-klient.
  Bockmärket till vänster om alternativet Client Operation aktiverar eller avaktiverar ovanstående operationer från Network Status Monitor.

LBP-660 Network Status Monitor

LBP-660 Network Status Monitor är en funktion som gör det möjligt för en Microsoft Windows NT-klient som är ansluten till nätverksskrivaren att kontrollera status för LBP-660, göra en paus i utskriften, fortsätta utskriften, tvinga utskrift och avbryta utskrift på samma sätt som i ett statusfönster på skrivbordet. Denna funktion är bara tillgänglig för Microsoft Windows NT-klienter och kan inte användas från Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 eller Microsoft Windows för Workgroups.

LBP-660 Network Status Monitor visar bara skrivarens status som text, och har ingen animerad grafik eller någon statusstapel som LBP-660 Status Window.

Om du ansluter en Microsoft Windows NT-klient till nätverksskrivaren installeras Network Status Monitor automatiskt från utskriftsservern.



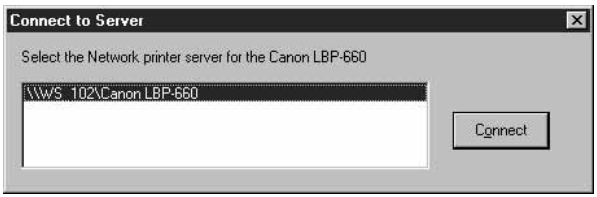
Använda LBP-660 Network Status Monitor

■ Starta Network Status Monitor

Så här kan du starta LBP-660 Network Status Monitor när som helst:

1. Dubbelklicka på ikonen för Canon LBP-660 Network Status Monitor i gruppen Windows Printing System på klienten, eller dubbelklicka på genvägsikonen för Canon LBP-660 Network Status Monitor på skrivbordet.

2. När ett meddelande visas som frågar om du vill ansluta till nätverksskrivaren, klickar du på Yes.
   - En dialogruta visas där du anger vilken nätverksskrivare du vill ansluta.



3. Markera namnet på skrivaren du vill ansluta till i listan och klicka på Connect.
   - När du har anslutit till nätverksskrivaren visas aktuell skrivarstatus i ett textfält.

■ Statusalternativ

Menyraden i LBP-660 Network Status Monitor innehåller tre menyer: Options, Printer och Help.



Menyn Options
I menyn Options kan du ange alternativ som rör användningen av Network Status Monitor.

- Connect to Server
  Välj det här alternativet om anslutningen till nätverksskrivaren av någon anledning har kopplats ner, eller om du vill byta anslutning till någon annan nätverksskrivare (endast LBP-660). Du ser samma Connect to Server-dialogruta som när du startar Network Status Monitor. Markera namnet på önskad skrivare och klicka på knappen Connect.
- Sound Option
  Välj det här alternativet om du vill ange om ljudmeddelanden ska användas eller ej när ett skrivarfel uppstår.

- Network Status Monitor kan bara ge ljudmeddelanden om ett fel uppstår. Om inget ljudkort finns installerat i klientdatorn, är detta alternativ gråtonat och kan inte väljas.

- Default Size
  Har du ändrat storlek på fönstret för Network Status Monitor, återställer detta alternativ fönstret till ursprunglig storlek.
- Hide Menu
  Detta alternativ döljer menyerna i Network Status Monitor. Vill du visa menyraden igen trycker du på **Esc** när Network Status Monitor är det aktiva fönstret, eller dubbelklickar var som helst i meddelandefältet.
- Always On Top
  Väljer du det här alternativet och fyller i kryssrutan till vänster om Always On Top, visas Network Status Monitor alltid överst på skrivbordet.

Menyn Printer
Via menyn Printer kan du styra skrivaren. Observera dock att om Client Operation inte är förbockat i menyn Options i statusfönstret på utskriftsservern, är menyn Printer gråtonad och skrivaren kan inte styras från en klient.

Mer information om menyn Printer hittar du i ”Använda menyn Printer” i användarhandboken.

- Det du gör i menyn Printer påverkar även utskriftsjobb från andra klienter. Om utskriftsjobb från flera klienter lagras i serverns utskriftskö, kan oförsiktiga avbrott av utskrifter även få utskrifter från andra klienter att gå förlorade. Tänk på detta när du avbryter ett utskriftsjobb.

Menyn Help
Den här menyn visar en dialogruta med versionsinformation för Network Status Monitor.

Kapitel 5
Felsökning

Det här kapitlet beskriver hur du löser problem som kan uppstå när du installerar Microsoft Windows Printing System för Microsoft Windows NT och medan du använder LBP-660 som nätverksskrivare i ett Microsoft Windows NT-nätverk.

Se kapitel 6 ”Felsökning” i användarhandboken för LBP-660 för instruktioner om hur du löser problem med själva skrivaren (papperskvadd, etc.), dålig utskriftskvalitet, problem med Microsoft Windows Printing System och felmeddelanden i Microsoft Windows Printing System.

Kan du inte lista ut orsaken till ett problem, startar du tillbehöret Trouble Shooter som installerats i gruppen Windows Printing System. Detta tillbehör kan lösa problem med installerade filer eller inställningar.

Om du fortfarande inte kan lösa problemet, avinstallerar du Microsoft Windows Printing System på utskriftsservern, startar om servern och installerar om Microsoft Windows Printing System. Vill du avinstallera Microsoft Windows Printing System startar du tillbehöret Uninstaller som installerats i gruppen Windows Printing System.



- Starta alltid om Microsoft Windows NT efter att du avinstallerat något program. Om du inte startar om Microsoft Windows NT, går det inte att installera om programvaran som tagits bort.

Problem under installation av Microsoft Windows Printing System

Problem under lokal installation

Problem	Orsak	Lösning
Det går inte att klicka på knappen Den här datorn i guiden Lägg till skrivare.	Användaren som installerar programvaran har inte administratörs- eller Power User-behörighet.	Administratörsbehörighet krävs för att installera Microsoft Windows Printing System. Låt någon med administratörsbehörighet utföra installationen.
När kopieringen av filer är klar visas ett felmeddelande om att administratörsbehörighet krävs.	En användare med Power User-behörighet försökte installera programvaran.	Låt någon med administratörsbehörighet installera om programvaran.
Ett felmeddelande visas om att en ersättningsinstallation krävs.	Du utför en lokal installation på en dator där skrivardrivrutinen för LBP-660 redan har installerats för nätverk.	Utför den lokala installationen igen och klicka på Ersätt befintlig drivrutin i guiden Lägg till skrivare.

Problem under nätverksinstallation

Problem	Orsak	Lösning
Namnet på den delade skrivare eller utskriftsserver som ska anslutas visas inte i listan Delade skrivare.	• Utskriftsservern är inte igång. • Skrivaren är inte inställd för delning. • Du har inte den behörighet som krävs för att ansluta till skrivaren eller utskriftsservern.	• Starta utskriftsservern. • Ställ in skrivaren för delning i dialogrutan Egenskaper. • Be den nätverksansvarige att ändra din användarbehörighet.

Problem under nätverksutskrift

Problem	Orsak	Lösning
Det går inte att anlsuta till utskriftsservern eller den delade skrivaren i Network Status Monitor.	• Utskriftsservern är inte igång. • Skrivaren är inte inställd för delning. • Du har inte den behörighet som krävs för att ansluta till skrivaren eller utskriftsservern.	• Starta utskriftsservern. • Ställ in skrivaren för delning i dialogrutan Egenskaper. • Be den nätverksansvarige att ändra din användarbehörighet.
Det går inte att använda menyn Printer i Network Status Monitor.	Alternativet Client Operation är inte förbockat i menyn Options i utskriftsserverns statusfönster.	Välj Client Operation i menyn Options.
Det går inte att skriva ut på en utskriftsserver som använder Microsoft Windows 95/3.1 eller Microsoft Windows för Workgroups från en Microsoft Windows NT-klient.	Microsoft Windows Printing System för Microsoft Windows NT understödjer inte utskriftsservrar som använder Microsoft Windows 95/3.1 eller Microsoft Windows för Workgroups.	Använd en utskriftsserver som använder Microsoft Windows NT.
Det går inte att skriva ut från en Microsoft Windows 95/3.1- eller Microsoft Windows för Workgroups-klient.	• WPS-katalogen på utskriftsservern är inte delad. • Utskriftsserverns standarddatatyp är inte satt till WPS.	• Ange delning för WPS-katalogen på utskriftsservern. • Klicka på knappen Utskriftsprocessor på fliken Allmänt i dialogrutan Egenskaper och välj WPS som standarddatatyp.

Bilaga

Jämförelse med Microsoft Windows Printing System för andra versioner av Microsoft Windows

Vissa av funktionerna i Microsoft Windows Printing System för Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 skiljer sig från dem i Microsoft Windows Printing System för Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 och Microsoft Windows för Workgroups.

Betänk följande punkter när du läser användarhandboken för LBP-660.

Under lokal utskrift eller nätverksutskrift med Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 och nätverksutskrift med Microsoft Windows 95, Microsoft Windows 3.1 eller Microsoft Windows för Workgroups

- Eftersom PCL-emulering inte kan användas, går det inte att skriva ut från kommandoprompten (Microsoft Windows NT) eller MS-DOS-prompten (Microsoft Windows 95).

Under lokal utskrift eller nätverksutskrift med Microsoft Windows NT 4.0

- Det går inte att använda formuläröverläggsfunktionen.
- Det går inte att skriva ut en testsida från LBP-660 Status Window. Använd knappen Skriv ut testsida på fliken Allmänt i dialogrutan Egenskaper.
- Alternativet Printer Options finns inte i menyn Options i LBP-660 Status Window. Ange tonerdensitet i gruppen Dokument Alternativ på fliken Avancerat i dialogrutan Egenskaper för standarddokument.